CÆSAR IN GAUL

D'OOGE AND EASTMAN





From the painting by Lionel Royer

SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CÆSAR

(See page 166)

CÆSAR IN GAUL

WITH INTRODUCTION, REVIEW OF FIRST-YEAR SYNTAX, NOTES, GRAMMAR, PROSE COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

AND

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

ATLANTA · DALLAS · COLUMBUS · SAN FRANCISCO

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

626.12

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

THE modern demand for economy and efficiency, which pervades the educational world as well as the world of business, has led to the preparation of this new edition of Cæsar. It comprises in a single volume all of the material needed for the second year of Latin, and, by the elimination of all matter not directly serviceable, aims to promote efficiency in its presentation.

After a brief introduction devoted to historical matters and the Roman art of war, a thorough review of the first year's work in syntax is presented by means of Ritchie's "The Argonauts," Nepos's "Hannibal," and a simple biography of Cæsar.

The text, which is Meusel's with a few minor changes, comprises the first four books of the "Gallic War" and interesting episodes from the remaining books, with notes written from the standpoint of the pupil rather than from that of the teacher, and fully adequate to his needs. To remove a real obstacle to progress, the long passages of indirect discourse occurring in the first two books are given in the direct form. The same passages are given later in their unchanged form, for purposes of comparison and for the use of such teachers as prefer a more strenuous course. The text closes with Cæsar's account of the battle of Pharsalia, the climax of the "Civil War," and events that immediately follow. These will be found particularly valuable for sight work; they are provided with footnotes and special vocabularies of the words not used in the preceding text of the "Gallic War."

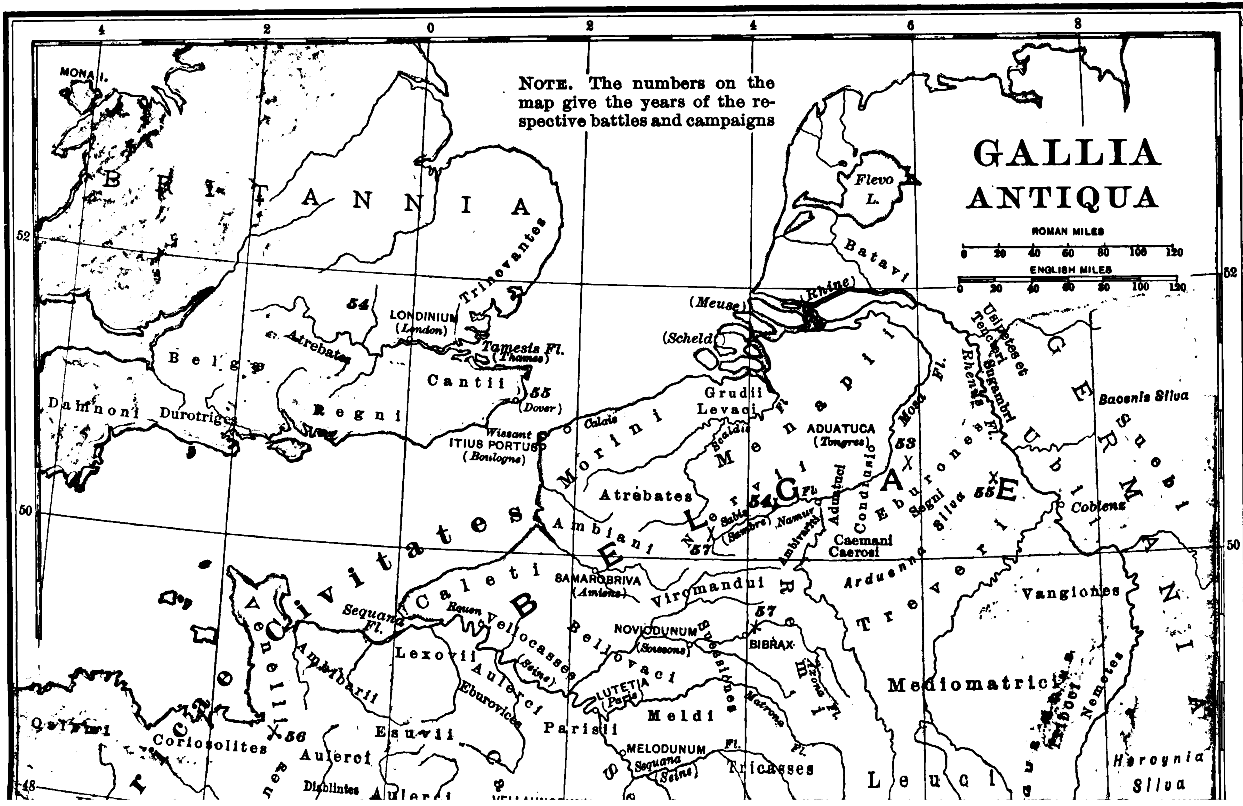
In the Grammar the attempt has been made to present the syntax of Cæsar in the most direct and simple form, and the Latin Composition discusses the fundamental constructions. While the authors have not been at all radical in the matter of nomenclature, such of the new names have been used as seem likely to gain general adoption.

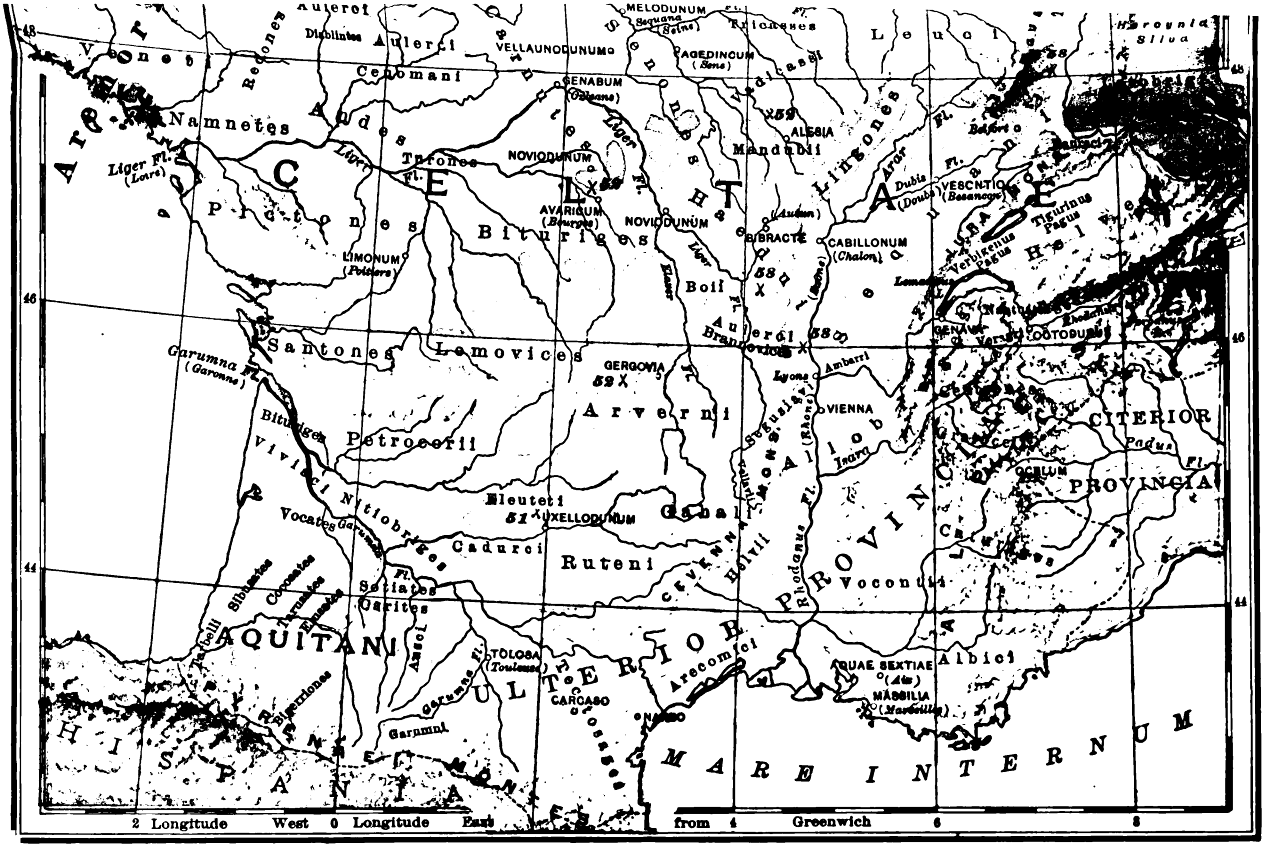
The vocabulary gives the essentials of etymology and contains only such idioms and definitions as are fundamental to the text.

Battle plans, maps, and illustrations of every sort have been inserted with a lavish hand, and it is hoped that these will tend to make the great story more real to the pupil's imagination. Special attention is called to the four colored plates made from paintings.

This book covers the requirements of the New York Syllabus. The special vocabularies of one thousand words prescribed by the Syllabus for the first and second years are reprinted in a form valuable for drill. Provision is made, also, for the study of the formation and derivation of words, as suggested in the New York course.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE
FREDERICK C. EASTMAN


GALLIA ANTIQUA
ROMAN MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 120
ENGLISH MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 120
NOTE. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns
MONA I.
BRITANNIA
Trinovantes
LONDINIUM (London)
Tamesis Fl. (Thames)
Cantii
55 (Dover)
Atrebates
Belgae
Regni
Durotriges
Damnoni
54
Wissant
ITIUS PORTUS (Boulogne)
Calais
Flevo L.
Batavi
(Rhine)
(Meuse)
(Scheld)
Grudii
Levaci
Menapii
ADUATUCA (Tongres)
Mosa Fl.
53
Eburones
Segni
Condrusi
Aduatuci
Caemani
Caerosi
Silua
55
Rhenus Fl.
Usipetes et Tencteri
Sugambri
Ubii
Coblens
GERMANIA
Suebi
Baoenis Silua
Morini
Atrebates
Ambiani
Nervii
57
Sabis (Sambre)
Namur
Scaldis
Ambivariti
BELGAE
SAMAROBRIVA (Amiens)
Viromandui
Remi
57
BIBRAX
Axona Fl.
NOVIODUNUM (Soissons)
Suessiones
Bellovaci
Matrona Fl.
Meldi
LUTETIA (Paris)
Parisii
MELODUNUM
Sequana (Seine)
Fl.
Tricasses
Arduenna
Treveri
Vangiones
Mediomatrici
Triboci
Nemetes
Hercynia Silua
Leuci
Civitates
Caleti
Rouen
Veliocasses
(Seine)
Sequana Fl.
Lexovii
Aulerci
Eburovices
Esuvii
Aulerci
Diablintes
Ambibarii
Venelli
56
Coriosolites
Osismi
50
52
48



MELODUNUM
Sequana (Seine)
VELLAUNODUNUM
AGEDINCUM (Sens)
GENABUM (Orléans)
ALESIA
Mandubii
Lingones
Namnetes
Andes
Cenomani
Diablintes
Aulerci
Redones
Veneti
Liger Fl. (Loire)
Turones
NOVIODUNUM
AVARICUM (Bourges)
NOVIODUNUM
BIBRACTE
CABILLONUM (Chalon)
Pictones
LIMONUM (Poitiers)
Bituriges
Boii
Santones
Lemovices
GERGOVIA
Garumna Fl. (Garonne)
Arverni
Petrocorii
VIENNA
Lyons
Ambarri
Eleuteti
UXELLODUNUM
Gabali
Vocates
Nitiobriges
Cadurci
Ruteni
Sotiates
Helvii
Rhodanus Fl.
Vocontii
AQUITANI
TOLOSA (Toulouse)
CARCASO
Arecomici
AQUAE SEXTIAE (Aix)
MASSILIA (Marseille)
Albici
VESONTIO (Besançon)
Dubis (Doubs)
Arar Fl.
Tigurinus Pagus
Verbigenus Pagus
GENAVA
OCTODURUS
OCELUM
CITERIOR
PROVINCIA
Padus Fl.
MARE INTERNUM
HISPANIA
Garumni
Tarbelli
2 Longitude West 0 Longitude East from 4 Greenwich 6 8

CONTENTS

FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS

MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

INTRODUCTION

I. CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

THIS is a book of exploration, adventure, and conquest. It tells the story of some of the most thrilling events in the life of one of the greatest men in history — Caius Julius Cæsar, the Roman. It is his own account of his explorations and conquests; his own description of his fierce battles with the half-civilized Gauls who occupied what we now know as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, with the barbarous Britons of England, and with the savage tribes then inhabiting Germany. The curtain of centuries is drawn aside and we see as in a moving picture the dawn of civilization in Europe two thousand years ago. We learn of the strange customs of its inhabitants and of the methods by which they were subdued, reduced to order, and brought under the government of Rome by the extraordinary energy and generalship of one man. The time of this drama is the interval between the years 58 and 49 B.C.

1. ROME, THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Rome in its early history was a monarchy; but four hundred years before Cæsar's birth the last of the kings, Tarquinius Superbus, had been expelled, and a republican form of government had taken the place of the kingly rule. In Cæsar's time Rome was a great commonwealth. To it belonged, as tributary provinces, all the countries surrounding the Mediterranean

Sea, and this meant, practically, all the civilized world. The central power was at Rome, and the provinces were governed by officials sent out from the capital city.

2. Political Conditions and Parties

At the time of Cæsar's birth, 100 B.C., or, according to some authorities, 102 B.C., there were two great political parties at Rome: the nobility, or aristocracy (*optimātēs*), and the democratic, or popular, party (*populārēs*). Between these parties there had long been a bitter strife. The *optimātēs*, for the most part, had the upper hand, exercising their authority through a senate of six hundred men, all *optimātēs*. The two great political leaders during Cæsar's early years were Sulla for the *optimātēs*, and Marius for the *populārēs*. The rivalry between these men and these parties resulted in something far more grave than a mere political contest. They kept Rome in a turmoil of strife and bloodshed.



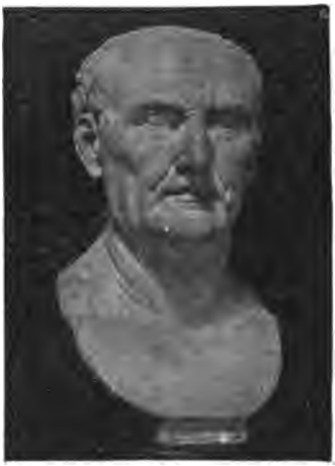
LUCIUS CORNELIUS SULLA

Both leaders sought the command of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. Sulla prevailed. During his absence in the east, hundreds of his adherents at Rome, including many leading senators, were put to death by the order of Marius. Sulla, returning, retaliated with similar carnage, the friends of Marius now being the victims. It was the custom of the Romans, in times of peril, to elect a temporary dictator, who had absolute power. Sulla, now in control of the political situation, caused himself to be proclaimed dictator

for an unlimited period, and reorganized the government wholly in the interests of the *optimātēs*. These events occurred between 88 and 81 B.C., while the boy Cæsar was passing from his twelfth to his nineteenth year.

3. Cæsar's Political Affiliations

These circumstances attending Cæsar's youth must have had much to do with the shaping of his ideals and career. Cæsar's family belonged distinctly to the nobility, for the Julii traced their ancestry back to the Trojan Æneas, who was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus. But something of the independence and self-reliance that told for so much in his later military and civic victories is shown by the fact that, in spite of his political inheritance which marked him an aristocrat, he chose, even in his youth, to attach himself to the side of the *populārēs*.


CAIUS MARIUS

In his seventeenth year he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the party of Marius. Sulla, in the height of his power, ordered him to divorce her. Cæsar, a mere youth, defied the great dictator of Rome, and refused. On this account he was obliged to leave Rome. Sulla at last, through the influence of Cæsar's friends, although against his own judgment, consented to his return. "Let him come back, if so you will," was his remark, "but this same young man will some day overthrow the nobility; for I see in him many a Marius."

4. Cæsar's Education and Training

Cæsar's early life was, no doubt, like that of the average Roman boy of noble birth. His education probably did not differ materially from that of hundreds of others. Cæsar aspired, as did other Roman boys, to a distinguished career. The two chief avenues that were open to advancement were the political and the military. He must be well educated in a general way. Then he must be versed in the law, in statesmanship, and in oratory, or else in the art of war. If he were trained in both disciplines, so much the better. The youthful Cæsar devoted himself to the study of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory, studying for several months at Rhodes under Apollonius, the most famous teacher of the time. He also gained some valuable military experience in Asia Minor, and distinguished himself by his valor in saving a comrade's life. His education for the highest offices was ample.



ROMAN BOY

5. Roman Political Offices

The highest office in a political career was the consulship; but there were three successive offices that were usually held as preliminary to this, those of quæstor, ædile, and prætor.

The quæstor had to do with the public treasury, the collection of revenues, disbursements, and the like. Under Sulla there were twenty quæstors, ten being assigned to duties at Rome, and ten attached to the armies of the provincial governors.

The ædile was concerned with the care of streets and public buildings, the superintendence of commerce, and the administration of the great public festivals. The Romans were very



A CHARIOT RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

fond of spectacular games, and to gain the favor of the people for future elections the ædiles often incurred enormous personal expense in their presentation. The number of ædiles was four.

The prætor was concerned with the administration of justice, and represented the consul in his absence. Under Sulla the number of prætors was eight.

But it was to the office of consul that the young Roman looked forward as the consummation of his political efforts. There were two of these officers, elected each year, and the guidance of the republic was largely in their hands.

After either the prætorship or the consulship it was customary to appoint the ex-prætor or ex-consul to the governorship of one of the Roman provinces. Such officers were called proprætors or proconsuls according to the office which they had held. Such appointments afforded great opportunities to amass wealth, and for this reason were eagerly sought. For the sake of gain unscrupulous methods were often employed in the administration of these offices. The provincials were imposed on in various ways, and extortion was common. Many of the provincial governors returned to Rome with enormous riches. But aside from all unfair means it was quite possible to make this office an unusually profitable one.

6. Cæsar's Political Career

Cæsar doubtless looked forward to a political rather than to a military career. His military training had been only incidental, but he had made careful preparation for the field of politics and he entered upon it with his customary earnestness.

He was elected quæstor for 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two years old. Three years later, in 65 B.C., he was ædile. In this capacity he played with the highest stakes for securing the favor of the people. As he had little means of his own, he borrowed enormous sums on the strength of his office and his prospects,

and presented the most magnificent games that Rome had ever known. He left the ædileship, as he remarked in jest, with more than a million dollars less than nothing.

In 63 B.C. he was elected pontifex maximus, an office that carried great prestige and dignity, though it was not in the regular course of civil honors. This office he held all his life.

In 62 B.C. he was prætor, and during the following year served as proprætor of Spain. But he was now staggering under the load of debt that he had contracted during his ædileship, and was in danger of being detained at Rome by his creditors. To meet these obligations he borrowed a large sum from Crassus, the richest man in Rome.

While engaged in his duties in Spain he gained a military experience that was of great value to him in his future campaigns, and likewise made money enough to pay all his debts. In the year 60 B.C. he returned to Rome and now fixed his attention on the consulship. Pompey had just returned victorious from the Mithridatic War. He had been identified with the *optimātēs*, but, because of their jealous efforts to curtail his power, he was becoming estranged. Cæsar took advantage of this attitude to form an alliance with him. With them they associated Crassus, who represented the moneyed interests, and thus was formed a most powerful political alliance, commonly called the First Triumvirate. This was one of the shrewdest of Cæsar's moves, for his individual influence at this time was far less than that of the other two. It is easy to see how unwelcome this alliance was to the *optimātēs*. Backed by the triumvirate Cæsar gained the consulship without difficulty for 59 B.C. During his year of office he made many valuable and humane reforms, chiefly in the interest of the lower classes, and in general distinguished himself by his wise and good government.

7. Cæsar in Gaul

Cæsar's restless energy and ambition could not, of course, rest satisfied with the consulship. He looked forward eagerly to larger fields of action in which to display his ability. Such an opportunity was now presented to him. The triumvirate, in making up the political "slate," agreed that Cæsar should have the governorship of Gaul for five years. This district consisted of what were known as Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and the office presupposed the protection of the northern frontier of Italy. The relative position of these territories may be seen from the map at the beginning of the book. Cæsar's term of office as governor of Gaul, beginning in 58 B.C., was afterwards extended to ten years, and it is of the stirring events of these years that Cæsar tells us in this book.



CONSUL AND LICTORS

8. The Civil War

The agreement of the triumvirate by which Cæsar became governor of Gaul assigned to Crassus the province of Syria, and to Pompey that of Spain. However, not only the harmony but even the existence of the triumvirate came to a speedy close. Crassus was killed in battle in his province. Pompey,

made sole consul in 52 B.C., began to be intensely jealous of Cæsar's reputation and influence, and finally laid plans to destroy him. To this end he made an alliance with the senate, with which his former friendly relations had been reëstablished by their common hatred of Cæsar.

Cæsar had laid plans to run for the consulship a second time for the year 48 B.C. He could easily do this, for his term as governor would expire in 49 B.C. The senate, wishing to prevent this, ordered him to disband his army before the regular close of his official term. They knew that if they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they could crush him.

This was the most critical time in Cæsar's career, and one that clearly shows his decision and courage. Instead of complying with the senate's demand he promptly gathered his devoted men and descended on Rome.

Pompey and the senatorial forces were panic-stricken and fled to Brundisium, whence they sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. In sixty days Cæsar made himself master of Italy, and, before autumn, had put down all opposition in Spain, where Pompey had numerous adherents and an armed force. Soon thereafter he followed Pompey across the sea, and completely crushed him in a battle near Pharsalia, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there lost his life by assassination. The remnants of the Pompeian forces were conquered in two battles, one at Thapsus, in Africa, and the other at Munda, in Spain.

9. Cæsar, the Dictator

On his return to Rome Cæsar was master of the world. He was made imperator, which conferred on him complete military authority, and dictator for life, which gave him all political power. This vesting of dominion in one man was the beginning

of the abolition of the republican form of government, and led to the establishment of the empire under Cæsar's grandnephew and adopted son, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus.

Cæsar continued the beneficent constructive work that he had begun in his consulship. He made many reforms in the interest of good government, and began the construction of many remarkable public works.

10. The Conspiracy and Assassination



CÆSAR, THE DICTATOR

In spite of all political disturbances the Romans had always been proud of their republican institutions, and from the time that the Tarquins had been expelled they had repudiated the idea of royalty. Now Cæsar's unlimited power and his readiness in using it began to breed apprehension and suspicion. There were rumors that he wanted to be king in name, as he already was in fact. This resulted in a conspiracy to assassinate him, the leaders of which were Brutus and Cassius. These men and their accomplices, in the name of the republic and liberty, calling themselves in fact *līberātōrēs*, attacked Cæsar during a session of the senate on the Ides (the fifteenth) of March, 44 B.C., and stabbed him to death with their daggers.

11. Cæsar's Personal Appearance

No one can be interested in the life and writings of Julius Cæsar without the desire of knowing how this great man looked. Suetonius, the historian, who wrote about one hundred and fifty

years later, gives us this graphic picture. He says that Cæsar was tall, slender, and handsome, with sharp, dark eyes, a sallow complexion, a large nose, refined features, and a thick, sinewy neck. He adds that he was partially bald, and, being sensitive to this deformity, used to draw the hair forward to the crown of his head; and that, on account of this baldness, he greatly appreciated the privilege granted him by the senate of wearing a laurel wreath.

But perhaps our most satisfactory knowledge of his form and features is gained from coins and the portrait busts and statues that have come down to us. Some of the best of these are shown at pages 1, 11, and 170.

12. Cæsar's Accomplishments and Character

Cæsar's accomplishments were many and diverse. He was a thorough scholar, well versed in language and literature. He wrote a grammar while in the midst of a campaign; as an orator he might have rivaled even Cicero; his generalship has never been surpassed; in addition, he was without doubt the greatest politician and statesman of Rome. There is no question that he was ambitious, but he exercised his ambition for the good of the state as well as for his own advancement. Strange as it may seem from his life of conflict, he was inclined to peace, and engaged in war only when he deemed it unavoidable.

Cæsar has been accused of cruelty and various vices. Judged by our moral standards he was doubtless far from perfect, but it is certain that he was a man of remarkable self-control. His cruelty must be judged in the light of Roman standards. The Romans, as a people, held human life cheap, and gave little regard to suffering. Further, the thousands who were slain by Cæsar's orders were barbarians — Gauls and Germans — for whom the Romans entertained no respect whatever. He

certainly exhibited a care and anxious solicitude for the welfare of his own soldiers, and a forbearance with their mistakes that is remarkable. Their love for him and their devotion were touching and complete. His readiness to pardon his former enemies when he was master of the world was more than mere diplomacy; it rather shows a large magnanimity and a fine quality of mercy.

He was fond of athletics, a splendid horseman, and in danger without fear. A peerless leader of men, he is considered by many the foremost character in history.

13. Cæsar as a Writer

Cæsar wrote many books, but only two have survived: the "Commentaries on the Gallic War" and the "Civil War." The former consists of eight books, the latter of three. The last book of the "Commentaries" was not written by Cæsar, but by Hirtius, one of his officers.

The narration in both works is direct, vigorous, and clear; successive events are presented with dramatic and graphic power. His high literary quality is the more remarkable when we remember that he wrote the "Commentaries" hastily as a sort of journal in the midst of his most strenuous campaigns.

14. Conclusion

In the following pages are presented such parts of Cæsar's works as are most entertaining and inspiring to the general reader. The story will speak for itself. The "Gallic War" has a peculiar interest for us because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of

their present political and social peculiarities. The selections from the "Civil War" relate the climax of the long struggle for supremacy between Cæsar and Pompey, which culminated in the battle of Pharsalia, Pompey's flight to Egypt, Cæsar's pursuit, and the stirring events that followed his arrival there.

15. Important Events in Cæsar's Life

100 B.C.	Born, July 12th.
83 B.C.	Marries Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna.
80–78 B.C.	Serves with the army in Asia.
76–75 B.C.	Studies oratory at Rhodes.
68 B.C.	Quæstor.
65 B.C.	Ædile.
63 B.C.	Pontifex Maximus.
62 B.C.	Prætor.
61 B.C.	Proprætor in Spain.
60 B.C.	Forms the First Triumvirate.
59 B.C.	Consul.
58–49 B.C.	Proconsul in Gaul.
50 B.C.	The trouble with Pompey begins.
49 B.C.	Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begins.
48 B.C.	The battle of Pharsalia.
46 B.C.	The battle of Thapsus. Declared dictator for ten years.
45 B.C.	The battle of Munda. Appointed imperator for life.
44 B.C.	The conspiracy. Assassinated in the senate house on the Ides of March.

II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY

1. Gaul

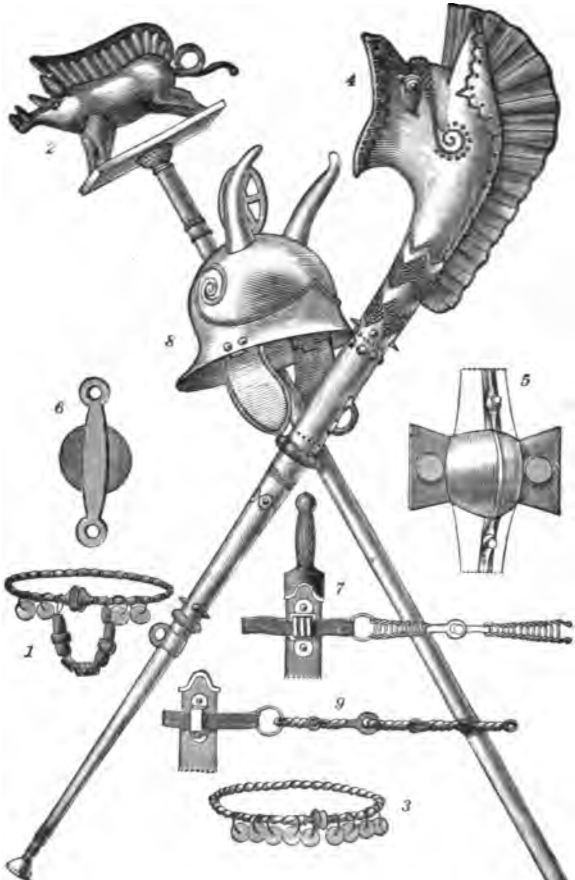
The province to which Cæsar was assigned as proconsul in 58 B.C. by the agreement of the triumvirate, comprised Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum (see map at the beginning of the book).

Cisalpine Gaul, or *Citerior Prōvincia*, had been subdued and reduced to order by the Romans long before Cæsar's time. The inhabitants were fully in accord with the Roman government, and upon them the governor relied largely for his troops and supplies.

Transalpine Gaul, in its narrower sense called also *Ulterior Prōvincia* or Narbonnese Gaul, had more recently come under Roman dominion. Its inhabitants, while subservient to Rome, still retained in great part their own customs.

Illyricum had been added to Rome in 168 B.C. It was a fertile country and a considerable source of supplies, but required little of Cæsar's attention.

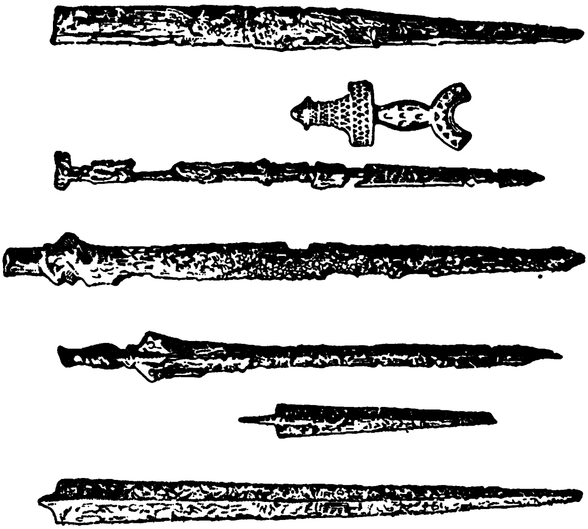
The unsubdued territory north of Cæsar's province, between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, was known as Free Gaul (*Lībera Gallia*). It was inhabited by various tribes, wild, warlike, and turbulent, agreeing only in their defiance of Roman rule. Their numbers were great, and the country was savage, dangerous, and unexplored. Although this great territory was not under his authority and was outside of his province, Cæsar undertook its subjugation, a task of formidable proportions.



GALLIC REMAINS

1 and 3, necklaces with amber and coral pendants ; 2, military standard ; 4, bronze trumpet ; 5, iron boss of shield ; 6, iron fastening ; 7, sword-hilt and belt ; 8, iron helmet ; 9, iron belt-chain

The Gauls were not all on the same plane of civilization. Those that were nearest to the Province had become somewhat civilized through contact with the traders, but those in the north were still barbarous. Their houses were huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. They raised the coarser grains, but knew little about the cultivation of fruits. They kept large herds, and lived to a great extent upon meat.



GALLIC SWORDS

They understood the art of weaving, and their chief garments were trousers and bright-colored tunics. The coast tribes were skillful sailors and familiar with the building of ships. The Aquitani and some other tribes worked mines. The Gauls in general used a rough sort of coinage.

Their weapons were pikes and lances, bows and slings, and long, two-edged swords hanging from a metal chain. The chief warriors wore a kind of chain armor. They also

used helmets and shields. On the helmets they often wore great horns and grotesque images of beasts.

2. Britain

Our acquaintance with Britain begins with Cæsar, though Phœnician traders had visited the island centuries before. The people that he found there differed but little from those of northern Gaul. Cæsar gained some victories, but made no lasting conquests in the short time that he remained there. Britain was not invaded again by the Romans for almost a hundred years.

3. Germany

Germany was for the Romans a country wild, unknown, and full of mystery. They found it necessary constantly to protect their boundaries against the German tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar met them in several battles, but his chief object was to drive German invaders from Gallic territory, to defend the Gallic frontier, and to inspire the Germans with a dread of Roman might.

As in the case of the Gauls and the Britons, Cæsar is the first writer to give an account of Germany and the Germans. His description of this country and its inhabitants, in Books IV and VI of the "Commentaries," is full of interest.



A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER

III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

Cæsar, for all his genius, could not have performed his great work of conquest without a well-trained army. His foes were unnumbered; the country was strange, vast, and difficult, with miles of forests and swamps; the perils were great, and the hardships innumerable. Against such odds he had a force of only a few thousand men. To understand the marvelous efficiency of his army we must know how it was organized, the Roman methods of warfare, and the meaning of the frequent military terms that Cæsar employs.

1. The Legion

The smallest division of the Roman army was the *century*, which, as its name indicates, was made up of 100 men; two centuries made a *maniple* of 200 men; three maniples made a *cohort* of 600 men; and ten cohorts made a *legion* of 6000 men. This number, however, is only theoretical, for, as the size of the legion was constantly diminished by disease and battle without being replenished, the actual number of soldiers was much smaller than this. Each of Cæsar's legions contained, on an average, about 3600 men, and its divisions were as follows:

1 century (*centuria*)	60 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple (*manipulus*)	120 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort (*cohors*)	360 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion (*legiō*)	3600 men

The legion (of about 3600 men) was the regular unit of the infantry force of the army.

2. The Cavalry

Cæsar's cavalry (*equitātus*, *equitēs*) was made up chiefly of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. It was engaged, for the most part, in skirmishing and scouting, and he relied little upon it in battle. It was divided into *ālae* of about 330 horsemen each; these were divided into 10 squadrons (*turmae*) of 33 horsemen each, and these again into 3 squads (*decuriae*) of 11 each. The officers of the cavalry were called decurions (*decuriōnēs*).


ROMAN CAVALRYMAN

3. The Auxiliaries

By the word *auxilia* Cæsar means the infantry forces that were enlisted from allied and subject states. A number of these *auxilia* were enrolled with his regular army. They were the so-called light-armed soldiers (*mīlitēs levis armātūrae*); some of them were bowmen and slingers, others wore light armor and carried light, round shields (see pp. 61, 64, 65). As they lacked both the training and the trustworthiness of the legions, Cæsar did not greatly depend on them in emergencies.

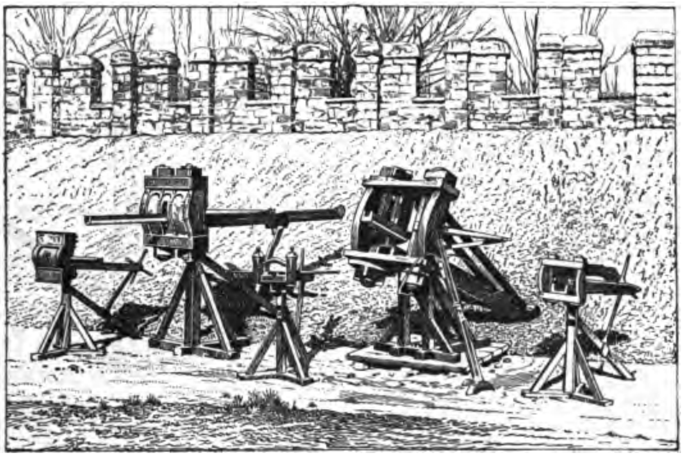
4. The Artillery

The Romans had no knowledge of gunpowder, siege cannon, or field guns; but the place of modern artillery was supplied by what in general were called *tormenta*. These were powerful engines for hurling missiles, the propelling force being furnished by the twisting (*torqueō*, *tortus*) of rope, sinews, or hair.

They were used in siege operations rather than in ordinary battle. Three kinds are mentioned by Cæsar:

a. The *catapulta* (see pp. 104, 120), which shot great arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction, like a cannon.

b. The *ballista* (see p. xxviii), which hurled huge stones through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells.



TORMENTA WITHIN A FORTIFIED CAMP

c. The *scorpiō* (see p. xxix), which may be described as a mounted crossbow or a small *catapulta*, with the same kind of propelling force. All these *tormenta* were accurate and deadly weapons. The range of the first two was from 1000 to 1500 feet.

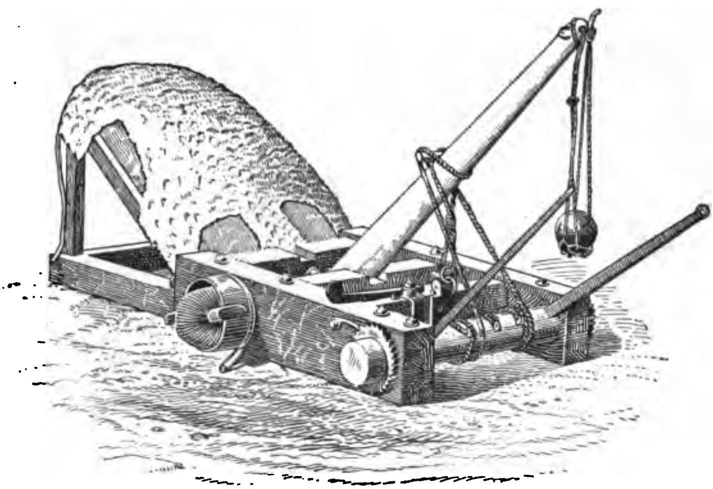
5. The Baggage Train

Impedīmenta is the name given to all the baggage of the army except that which was carried by the individual soldiers. It was borne on the backs of horses and mules, or, at times, in wagons (*carrī*). Those in charge of this baggage were called *cālōnēs*.

6. The Officers

a. Imperātor. The chief officer was the *dux bellī*, who after his first victory was called *imperātor*.

b. Lēgātī. The *lēgātī* were a body of men of senatorial rank who acted as a board of advisers to the commander. Cæsar had ten of these officers. They were sometimes put in charge



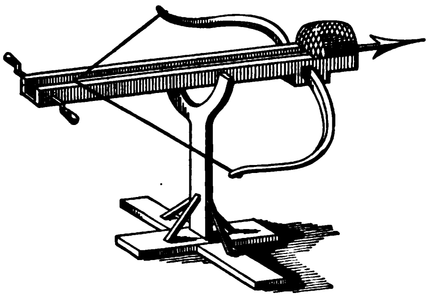
BALLISTA

of legions, and sometimes sent as ambassadors, according to the orders of the general. This will account for the twofold use of the word in the "Commentaries."

c. Quaestōrēs. The *quaestōrēs* were officers elected annually by the people. A *quaestor* attended each *imperātor* in his province and looked after the pay, clothing, equipment, and the like of the soldiers.

d. Tribūnī. In each legion were six *tribūnī mīlitum*. Each of them in turn had command of the legion. They were usually young men without experience, some of them from the

nobility, and owed their appointment to family influence. Their inefficiency was such that Cæsar transferred their military duties to the *lēgātī*, and employed them in an administrative capacity.



SCORPIO

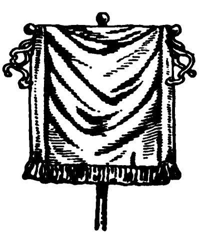
e. Centuriōnēs. The *centuriō*, as the name indicates, was the commander of the century. Thus there were two centurions in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. These were the real leaders of the men and were promoted from the ranks for their fighting qualities. The first centurion of the first cohort was called *prīmus*, or *prīmipīlus*, and was always an officer of unusual ability and prowess.



CENTURION

7. The Standards

Signa (see p. 73) is the general word used for all the standards of the army. That of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle, *aquila* (see pp. 121, 129). Each cohort had its own standard. That of the light-armed troops was called the *vēxillum*, which was also the name given to the flag of the general at headquarters.



VEXILLUM


AQUILA

The latter was a large white banner, with the name of the general and of the army in red.

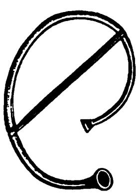
8. The Music

The *būcina*, or bugle, the shape of which is uncertain, sounded the changes of the night watch and the morning reveille. The *tuba*, or trumpet, was a straight, deep-toned horn of brass, more than three feet long, which gave the signal for attack or retreat. The same signal was repeated by the *cornū*, or horn, a circular instrument with a sharp tone. The *lituus*, a brass trumpet about four feet long with a curved joint at the end, was used by the cavalry.


TUBA

9. Equipment of the Legionary Soldiers

The legion was made up of picked Roman soldiers, and was Cæsar's main reliance in battle. Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six might be drafted for the legion. Its discipline was almost perfect. The period of service of a legionary was twenty years.


CORNU

a. The Clothing. The uniform of the legionary soldiers consisted of a sleeveless or partly sleeved woolen tunic, reaching nearly to the knee. Over this was a coat of leather, reënforced by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders. This was the *lōrīca*. In cold weather a heavy cloak was worn, fastened over the right shoulder with a clasp. About the waist was a leather belt, bound with metal, and with strips


LITUUS

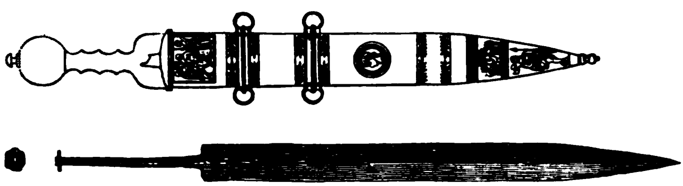
of protecting metal hanging in front. The covering for the feet was a low boot (see p. 102).

b. The Armor. The defensive armor, besides the *lōrīca*, consisted of a helmet and shield. The helmet was made of iron or leather strengthened with brass, open in front, and adorned with a white crest (see p. 74). Adornments of this character were what Cæsar calls *īnsignia*. The shield was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide. It was made of wood, was slightly curved, with metal around the rim and also in the middle. In the center was a metal knob, the *umbō*, used both for diverting weapons and for striking blows. The regular name for the shield is *scūtum* (see p. 128).



SCUTUM

c. The Weapons. The weapons of offense were the sword and spear. The sword, *gladius*, was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was hung from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip. The spear, *pīlum*, used for hurling rather than for thrusting, was six or seven feet



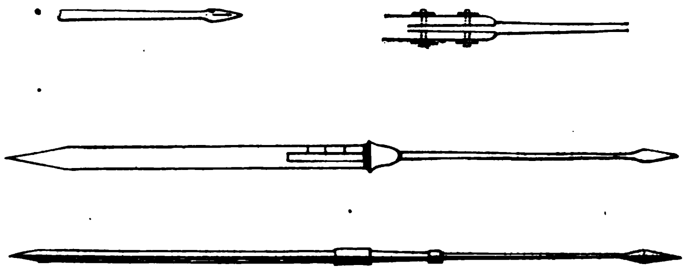
ROMAN SWORDS (*GLADII*)

long. It consisted of a strong iron shank fitted into a wooden shaft about four feet long. The *pīlum* took the place of the rifle in modern warfare. Its weight was about three pounds, and it could be hurled with deadly effect.

NOTE. For all matters discussed in section 9, see the illustration of the legionary soldier facing page xxiv.

d. Other Equipment. Besides his arms and armor each soldier carried tools for digging, cooking utensils, including a small handmill for grinding his allowance of grain, a supply of grain for two weeks, *cibāria*, and two stakes, *vāllī*, for fortifying the camp. Most of this equipment was carried in a bundle on a forked stick over the shoulder. This personal baggage of the soldier was called *sarcina* (see p. 69).

e. Food; Pay; Discipline. The food was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley, for which the general word *frūmentum* was used. Corn was unknown. The allowance of



PILA

grain for a day was about two pounds. An allotment of about two pecks was made every fifteen days. This regular diet might be varied by foraging or by purchase from the traders who followed the army.

The soldier was paid at the rate of twelve and a half cents a day, about the usual daily wage of laborers at Rome. Deduction was made from this for food and equipment furnished by the state. The discipline was strict. Punishments for insubordination or neglect of duty consisted in degradation from rank, dismissal from service, withholding of pay, extra assignments of labor, reduction of rations, flogging, or even death. There were also various rewards of merit.

10. The Camp

No matter where the army halted for the night or how little was the likelihood of attack, a camp, *castra*, was always made with the utmost care. The site chosen was, if possible, on high ground and near to wood and water. If the nature of the location permitted, the camp was made in the form of a



ROMAN SOLDIERS AND EQUIPMENT

1, funditor; 2, 2, mīlitēs levis armātūrae; 3, 3, legiōnāriī; 4, sarcina

square. A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select a site for the camp and to stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the position of the four gates: the *porta prætōria* facing the enemy, the *porta decumāna* in the rear, the *porta prīncipālis dextra* on the right side, and the *porta prīncipālis sinistra* on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street called the *via prīncipālis*. The forward part of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear part to the officers and their

attendants. A vacant space about one hundred feet wide was left all about the inside of the encampment. In an open square near the middle was the tent of the commander (*prætōrium*).

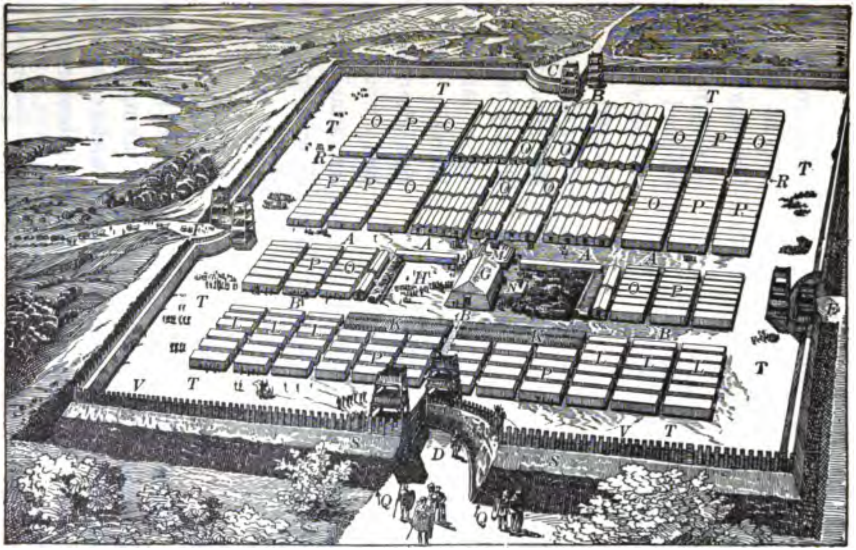
As soon as the legions arrived on the spot selected, the soldiers began the construction of the camp (see p. 52). A ditch, *fossa*, usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep was dug all around the square, and the earth therefrom, thrown on the inside, was built into an embankment, *agger*, from six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top for standing room. On this wall was erected a breastwork, *vāllum*, made with the stakes that the soldiers carried. After the camp was fortified, the quarters of the soldiers were put up, which were leather tents in summer and huts in the winter. Guards were kept constantly at the gates.

11. The March

An ordinary day's march was about fifteen miles. Cæsar, however, made many forced marches, *magna itinera*, of as many as twenty-five miles a day. When an enemy was near, a vanguard, *agmen prīmum*, of cavalry and light-armed infantry and scouts preceded. The rear was also protected by a guard, *agmen novissimum*. The legions regularly marched one behind another, each followed by its own *impedīmenta*; but if an enemy was near, most of the legions in fighting trim, that is, without packs, went ahead in an unbroken line, followed by the combined baggage train (*impedīmenta*), and one or two legions guarded the rear. When the legions were without encumbrance and hence ready for fighting, they were said to be *expedītae*. See page 45.

12. The Battle

The usual order of battle was what was called the *aciēs triplex*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the

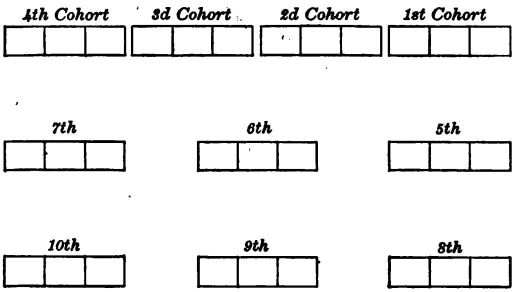


CASTRA ROMANA

A, via prīncipālis	*F*, porta prīncipālis sinistra	*M*, āra	*R*, via quīntāna
B, via decumāna	*G*, praetōrium	*N*, tribūnal	*S*, agger
C, porta praetōria	*H*, forum	*O*, equitēs	*T*, intervāllum
D, porta decumāna	*K*, *K*, tribūnī	*P*, peditēs	*V*, vāllum
E, porta prīncipālis dextra	*L*, auxilia	*Q*, fossa	

three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other. The legions occupied the center of the battle line, *media aciēs*, and the auxiliaries and cavalry the wings, *cornua*.

When the hostile army was within range (not more than one hundred feet), the soldiers hurled their javelins and then charged with drawn swords. When the first line was weary or in disorder, it was relieved by the second while it recovered for another charge. The third line was constantly held in reserve and only brought into action when the first two were hard pressed, or when it was necessary to repel an attack in the rear or on the flanks. This general method was varied, of course, according to circumstances (see p. 31).

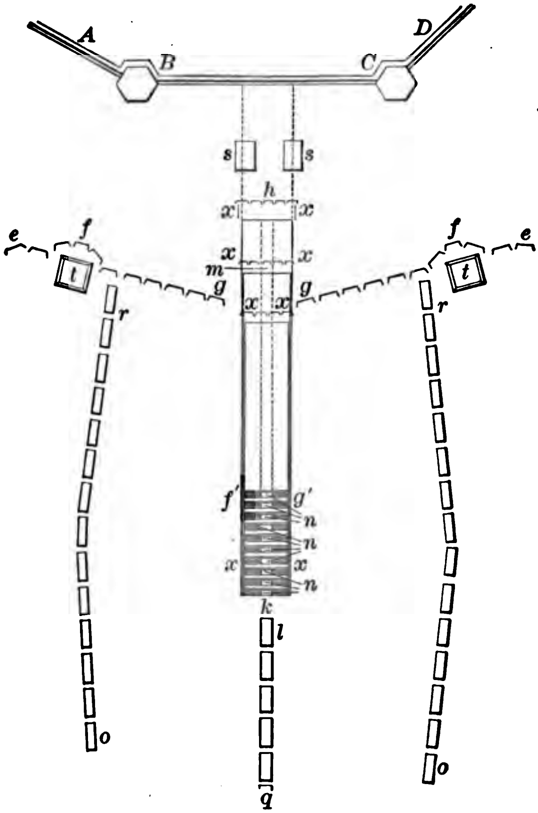


ACIES TRIPLEX

13. The Siege

Cæsar often found the towns in Gaul protected by massive stone walls surrounded by a great moat. The taking of these towns usually called for a particular mode of warfare in which the Romans had attained great skill. There were three methods of taking a town:

a. Oppugnātiō Repentīna. If there seemed to be a chance of success, the town was stormed at once, without siege preparations. This was the *oppugnātiō repentīna*. The *tormenta* were brought up and trained on the defenders upon the walls. When these were driven off, the moat was filled with brush

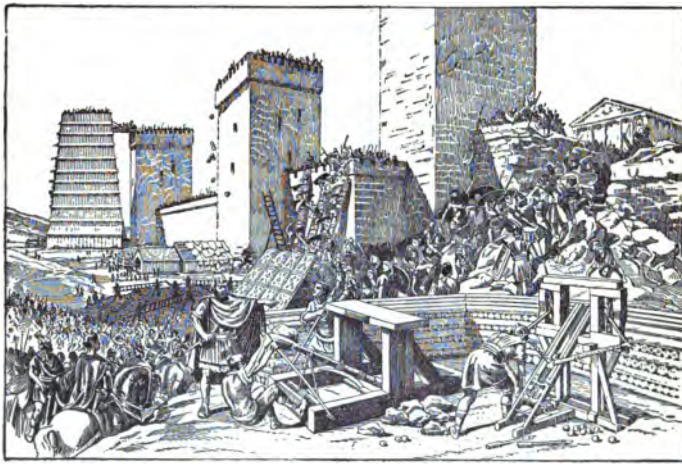


GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS

ABCD, hostile wall; *ss*, *testūdinēs aggestitiae*, protecting those leveling the ground; *hk*, *agger*; *xx*, *plutei*, protecting those working on the *agger*; *efg*, line of *plutei*, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, *turrēs*, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with *tormenta*; *ro*, covered way of *vīneae*, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lq*, covered way of *vīneae* approaching the point of beginning the *agger*; *f'g'*, position of *plutei* covering the beginning of the *agger*; *mn*, covered gallery through the *agger*; *nnn*, steps and platforms of the several stories

and earth, and the Romans, locking their shields in a *testūdō* (see the picture below and at page 110), attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

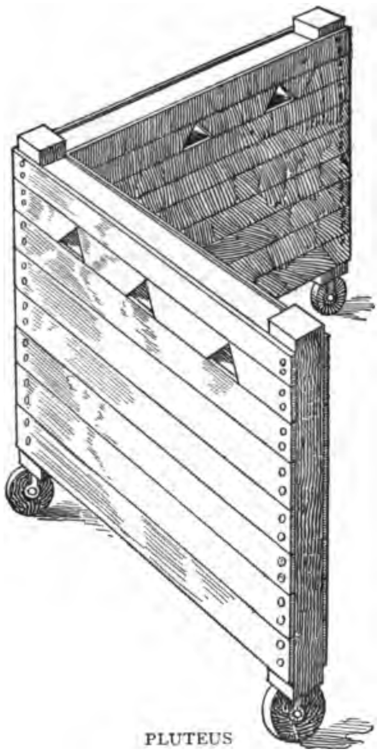
b. *Oppugnātiō*. If this mode seemed impracticable, a regular siege, *oppugnātiō*, was begun. A mound of earth and timber, *agger*, was begun at a distance from the wall nearly out of reach of the missiles of the defenders. This mound was



OPPUGNATIO

gradually extended in the direction of the wall, its height being constantly increased until it was even with the top of the wall. Connecting galleries ran through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover. Those working on the outside of the *agger* were protected by lines of large standing shields, *plutei*, which were moved forward as the work advanced. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of arbor-like sheds called *vīneae*, extending the length of the *agger*. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers (see pp. 61, 64) and by *tormenta* standing

behind *pluteī*. As a further protection light-armed soldiers were stationed in large movable towers, *turrēs*, which stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, being increased in height, story by story, as it advanced. When close to the wall, the besiegers were protected by strong sheds of wood called *testūdinēs* or *mūsculī*, instead of by the *pluteī*. When the *agger* reached the moat, this was quickly filled up with brush and wood. The walls of the town were sometimes undermined, or pulled down from the top by means of huge iron hooks called *falcēs mūrālēs*. But the surest engine of destruction was the battering-ram, *ariēs*, a huge swinging beam from sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This, swung under a *vīnea*, or in the lowest story of a *turris*, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. Sometimes the top of the wall was gained by means of the *turris* without the *agger*.



PLUTEUS

c. *Obsidiō*. When all other means were unavailing, the town was invested on every side (*obsidiō*) and the inhabitants were starved into submission.

14. The Ships

Two kinds of ships were used by Cæsar:

a. The war galleys, *nāvēs longae* (see pp. 92, 94, 117). These were the vessels used in naval battles, and were made long, low, and narrow. They were armed at the prow with a sharp beak (*rōstrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships, and were propelled by both sails and oars. The sails were one or two in number, and the oars were arranged in two or three rows, or banks. When these vessels were under full sail and oarage, they could nearly equal a modern steamship in speed.



VINEA

b. The freight and transport vessels, *nāvēs onerāriae* (see p. 117). These were made shorter, broader, and deeper than the war galleys, and could thus carry heavier burdens and more successfully weather a heavy sea.

RITCHIE

THE ARGONAUTS

The voyage of the Argonauts is one of the most famous of Greek stories. Pelias had expelled his brother Æson from his kingdom in Thessaly, and had attempted to take the life of Jason, the son of Æson. Jason, however, escaped, and grew up to manhood in another country. At last he returned to Thessaly; and Pelias, fearing that he might attempt to recover the kingdom, sent him to fetch the Golden Fleece from Colchis, supposing this to be an impossible feat.

Jason, with a band of heroes, started in the ship Argo (called after Argus, its builder), and after many adventures reached Colchis. Here Æetes, king of Colchis, who was unwilling to give up the Fleece, set Jason to perform what seemed an impossible task, namely, to plow a field with certain fire-breathing oxen, and then to sow it with dragon's teeth. Medea, the daughter of the king, however, assisted Jason by her skill in magic, first to perform the task appointed, and then to procure the Fleece. Medea then fled with Jason, and to delay the pursuit of her father, sacrificed her brother Absyrtus.

After reaching Thessaly, Medea caused the death of Pelias, and was, with her husband, expelled from the country. They removed to Corinth; and here Medea, becoming jealous of Glauce, daughter of Creon, caused her death by means of a poisoned robe. After this Medea was carried off in a chariot sent by the sun god, and Jason was soon afterwards accidentally killed.

The wicked uncle

ERANT ōlim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Ex hīs Aesōn rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte adductus, nōn modo frātrem suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Iāsonem, Aesonis fīlium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amīcīs Aesonis, ubi sententiam

Peliae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō perīculō ēripere cōnstituērunt. Noctū igitur Iāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum haec audīvisset, etsī rē vērā magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praebuit, et quae causa esset mortis quaesīvit. Illī tamen, cum intellegerent dolōrem eius falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam dē morte puerī fīnxērunt.

A careless shoestring

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā vī et fraude occupātum āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit, quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit, et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōnstrāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in praesentiā perīculum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis venīret calceum ūnum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset: nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīserat, et certam diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē cōnstitūtā magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit; inter quōs autem Iāsōn fuit, quī ā puerō apud centaurum quendam habitāverat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō nesciō quō flūmine āmīsit.

The Golden Fleece

Iāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit: quem cum vīdisset Peliās, subitō timōre adfectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum, quod Phrixus ōlim ibi relīquerat.

Cōnstituit igitur Peliās Iāsonī negōtium dare ut hōc vellere potīrētur: cum enim rēs esset magnī perīculī, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse: Iāsonem igitur ad sē arcessīvit, et quid fierī vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Iāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

The building of the good ship Argo

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Iāsōn sōlus proficīscī; dīmīsit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent et diem certam conveniendī dīcerent. Intereā, postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs comportārī iussit, negōtium dedit Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt; Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam dīligentiam adhibēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trānsportandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbore facta est.



THE BUILDING OF THE ARGO

The anchor is weighed

Intereā ea diēs adpetēbat quam Iāsōn per nūntiōs ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī, quōs aut reī novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat, undique conveniēbant. In

hōc numerō Herculem ferunt fuisse et Orpheum, citharoedum praeclārissimum, et Thēseum et Castorem et multōs aliōs, quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex hīs Iāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda perīcula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adiūnxit; tum paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

A fatal mistake

Nōn multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum attigērunt, et ē nāvī ēgressī ā rēge illīus regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorātī ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt; at, postquam pauca mīlia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum perīculō dēicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscūra, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī arma rapuērunt, et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx ipse, quī cum aliīs dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum iam dīlūcēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et arma abiēcērunt; Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

The loss of Hylas

Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse arbitrātus (summa enim tranquillitās iam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit, et pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs exspectāvit; ā nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam

quam sēcum habērent iam dēficere: quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī, dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem, quae fontem colēbant, cum iuvenem vīdissent, eī persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

Comitēs eius, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre adfectī diū frūstrā quaerēbant; Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vēstīgia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Iāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

Dining made difficult

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad oppidum Salmydēssum nāvem adpulērunt, in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi cum ab incolīs quaesīssent quis rēgnum eius regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et quōdam suppliciō adficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in fīliōs suōs praebuisset. Cuius supplicī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Iove mōnstra quaedam, speciē horribilī, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpȳiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam adferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum adpositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, haud multum āfuit quīn Phīneus famē morerētur.

The Harpies beaten

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant cum Argonautae nāvem adpulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat

enim quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit, quī Iāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in perīculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse sī illī remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna adposita est, Harpȳiae cēnāculum intrāvērunt, et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum gladiīs volucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētēs et Calais, quī ālīs īnstrūctī sunt, in āera sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpȳiae, reī novitāte perterritae statim aufūgērunt, neque posteā umquam rediērunt.

The Symplegades

Hōc factō, Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritās grātiās referret, Iāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vītāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitūdine, quae ā Iove positae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenīret. Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant, et sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid faciendum esset, Iāsōn sublātīs ancorīs nāvem solvit, et lēnī ventō prōvectus mox ad Symplēgadēs adpropinquāvit: tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit, et priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt, incolumis ēvāsit, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, intellegentēs omnem spem salūtis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās

libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī essent; sciēbant enim nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem tam fēlīciter ēvēnisse.

A heavy task

Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in fīnibus Colchōrum erat. Eō cum nāvem adpulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētēn sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, īrā commōtus est, et diū negābat sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Iāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā prōmīsit sē vellus trāditūrum, sī Iāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum Iāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Prīmum iungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, hīs iūnctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. Hīs audītīs, Iāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

The magic ointment

At Mēdēa, rēgis fīlia, Iāsonem adamāvit, et ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Iāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam scientiam medicīnae habēbat) hōc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte clam ex urbe ēvāsit; et postquam in montēs fīnitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum sūcō expressō unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfīrmāret. Hōc factō Iāsonī unguentum dedit: praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī

essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Iāsōn, etsī paene omnibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis antecellēbat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnstiterat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum esse.

Sowing the dragon's teeth

Ubi ea diēs vēnit quam rēx ad arandum agrum ēdīxerat, Iāsōn ortā lūce cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit in quō taurī inclūsī erant: tum portīs apertīs taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficultāte iugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil contrā Iāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim fīliam suam auxilium eī dedisse. Tum Iāsōn, omnibus adspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam dīligentiam praebuit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit: quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum dīligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur.

A strange crop

Nōndum tamen Iāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat: imperāverat enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur sōlus interficeret. Postquam igitur omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Iāsōn lassitūdine exanimātus quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum tamen ē somnō subitō excitātus rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedictum esset cognōvit: nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeīsque armātī, mīrum in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Iāsōn cōnsilium quod dedisset Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa)

in mediōs virōs coniēcit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quisque sibi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est. Mox, strictīs gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepērunt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī volneribus cōnfectī ā Iāsone nūllō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

Flight of Medea

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Iāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, īrā graviter commōtus est: intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore perīculō sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur rēbus ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsit, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Iāsonis sē prōiēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrīmine mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per eius auxilium ē magnō perīculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīmum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum.

The seizure of the Fleece

Postrīdiē eius diēī Iāsōn cum sociīs suīs ortā lūce nāvem dēdūxit, et tempestātem idōneam nactī ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōnstrāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Iāsōn in terram ēgressus est, et sociīs ad mare relictīs, quī praesidiō nāvī essent, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās contendit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam prōgressus vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis: nōn modo

enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam speciē terribilī arborem custōdiēbat. At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, medicīnae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō īnfēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum adpropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs adventum exspectābat, venēnō sparsit: deinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Iāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

Back to the Argo

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō anxiō reditum Iāsonis exspectābant: intellegēbant enim id negōtium summī esse perīculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā exspectāvērunt, dē eius salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium ducī ferrent: et dum proficīscī parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōnspiciunt mīrum in modum inter silvās refulgēns: et magnopere mīrātī quae causa esset eius reī, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Iāsonī et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis eius causam esse cognōvērunt. Omnī timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās libenter rettulērunt quod rēs tam fēlīciter ēvēnisset.

Pursued by the angry father

Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscendērunt, et sublātīs ancorīs prīmā vigiliā solvērunt: neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī iam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit fīliam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse,

sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī iussit, et mīlitibus impositīs fugientēs īnsecūtus est. Argonautae, quī sciēbant rem in discrīmine esse, omnibus vīribus rēmīs contendēbant; cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingentī esset magnitūdine, nōn eādem celeritāte quā Colchī prōgredī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, minimum āfuit quīn ā Colchīs sequentibus caperentur, neque enim longius intererat quam quō tēlum adicī posset. At Mēdēa, cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omnī spē dēpositā īnfandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

A fearful expedient

Erat in nāve Argonautārum fīlius quīdam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa ex urbe fugiēns sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere, eō cōnsiliō, ut membrīs eius in mare coniectīs cursum Colchōrum impedīret; sciēbat enim Aeētēn, cum membra fīlī vīdisset, nōn longius prōsecūtūrum esse. Neque opīniō eam fefellit; omnia enim ita ēvēnērunt ut spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi prīmum membra vīdit, ad ea conligenda nāvem dētinērī iussit; dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ex cōnspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus sī longius prōgressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut fīlī corpus ad sepultūram daret.

The bargain with Pelias

Tandem post multa perīcula Iāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus ad rēgem Peliam (quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat) statim sē contulit, et vellere aureō mōnstrātō ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum

sibi trāderētur: Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Iāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum. Postquam Iāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās prīmum nihil respondit, sed diū in eādem trīstitiā tacitus permānsit; deinde ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque dubium est quīn suprēmus meus diēs adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vīvam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; tum, cum ego ē vītā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus Iāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāsset.

Boiled mutton

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit, et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta cōnstituit mortem rēgī per dolum īnferre. Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad fīliās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte iam esse cōnfectum, neque ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūrsus iuvenem fierī?" Tum fīliae rēgis, hīs audītīs, ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene iuvenis factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit: "Scītis mē medicīnae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbīs dēmōnstrābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit." Hīs dictīs, cum arietem aetāte iam cōnfectum interfēcisset, membra eius in vāse aēneō posuit, et igne suppositō in aquam herbās quāsdam īnfūdit. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen magicum cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse exsiluit et vīribus refectīs per agrōs currēbat.

A dangerous experiment

Dum fīliae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat medicīna. Vōs igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās

conicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō." Hīs audītīs, fīliae rēgis cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum putāvērunt: patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt et membra eius in vās aēneum coniēcērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quīn hoc maximē eī prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac spērāverant: Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit quibus ipsa ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā exspectāvērunt, patrem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum coniuge suō rēgnum acceptūram esse: at cīvēs, cum intellegerent quō modō Peliās periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt: itaque Iāsone et Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

A fatal gift

Post haec Iāsōn et Mēdēa ē Thessaliā expulsī ad urbem Corinthum vēnērunt, cuius urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī fīlia ūna, nōmine Glaucē; quam cum vīdisset, Iāsōn cōnstituit Mēdēam uxōrem ab sē dīmittere, eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātrimōnium dūceret. At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, īrā graviter commōta iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē tantam iniūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit summā arte contextam et variīs colōribus tīnctam: hanc quōdam īnfēcit venēnō, cuius vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset, corpus eius quasi ignī ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem ad Glaucēn mīsit: illa autem nihil malī suspicāns dōnum libenter accēpit, et vestem novam (mōre fēminārum) statim induit.

Flight of Medea, and the death of Jason

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum summō cruciātū adfecta ē vītā excessit. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa furōre atque

āmentiā impulsa fīliōs suōs necāvit: tum magnum sibi fore perīculum arbitrāta sī diūtius ibi manēret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōnstituit. Hōc cōnstitūtō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō perīculō auxilium sibi ferret. Sōl autem hīs precibus commōtus currum quendam mīsit, cui dracōnēs ālīs īnstrūctī iūnctī erant. Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Iāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Iāsōn iacēbat subitō dēlāpsa virum īnfēlīcem oppressit.



HANNIBAL

CORNELIUS NEPOS

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

Hannibal as a general

HANNIBAL, Hamilcaris fīlius, Karthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est īnfitiandum Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentiā quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine cūnctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēnscumque cum eō congressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Sed multōrum obtrectātiō dēvīcit ūnīus virtūtem.

His hatred of the Romans

Hic autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut prius animam quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum indigēret, numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

2. Nam ut omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte incendit bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit īnferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte explōrārent darentque operam cōnsiliīs clandestīnīs ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem rēgī addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptus alia atque anteā sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent,

idque Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōnsiliīs sēgregārī vīdisset, tempore datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāsset, hoc adiūnxit: "Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, in Hispāniam imperātor proficīscēns Karthāgine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre īnstituerat, eamque cēterīs remōtīs tenentem iūrāre iussit numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūs iūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus. Quā rē, sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē cēlāris; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris."

He takes Saguntum, and marches to Italy

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Karthāginem dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum est. Sīc Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam cīvitātem, vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pӯrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter



THE ROUTE OF HANNIBAL

fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs cōnflīxit; nēminem nisi victum dīmīsit. Ad Alpēs posteāquam vēnit, quae Italiam ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibēre trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcit, itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā elephantus ōrnātus īre posset quā anteā ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiamque pervēnit.

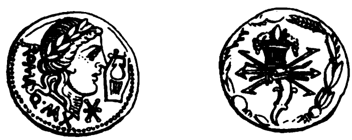
He defeats the Romans, and advances into Apulia

4. Cōnflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidī apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō īdem Scīpiō cum conlēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum iīs manum cōnseruit, utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Apennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī morbō adficitur oculōrum ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiamtum premerētur lectīcāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasimēnum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī vēnērunt duo cōnsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārēs, in iīs Cn. Servīlium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōnsul.

He outwits Quintus Fabius Maximus, and wins other battles

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquīs urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverterētur,

Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē obiēcit. Hīc clausus locōrum angustiīs noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expedīvit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit verba. Namque obductā nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencōrum dēligāta incendit eiusque generis multitūdinem magnam dispālātam immīsit. Quō repentīnō obiectō vīsū tantum terrōrem iniēcit exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredī extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multīs diēbus M. Minucium Rūfum, magistrum equitum parī ac dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in Lūcānīs absēns in īnsidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēs cōnsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quā rē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quam diū in Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in campō castra posuit.



A COIN OF THE FABIAN FAMILY

Hannibal is recalled to Africa, and is defeated by Scipio

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēnsum revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, fīlium eius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hōc exhaustīs iam patriae facultātibus cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur. In conloquium convēnit: condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum paucīs diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōnflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) biduō et

duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īnsidiātī sunt eī; quōs



PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS

nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā conlēgit; novīs dīlēctibus paucīs diēbus multōs contrāxit.

Peace between Rome and Carthage; Hannibal flees to Syria

7. Cum in adparandō ācerrimē esset occupātus, Karthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit ūsque ad P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt quī senātuī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs essent captīvīque

redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: 'Mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs quō locō rogārent futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimīcissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem.' Hōc respōnsō Karthāginiēnsēs cognitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō secundō et vīcēsimō: ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Karthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset quae in aerāriō repōnerētur. Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōnsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Karthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam factā Poenī nāvēs duās quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōnsequī, mīsērunt; bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

Hannibal aids Antiochus

8. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in fīnibus Cȳrēnaeōrum, sī forte Karthāginiēnsēs ad bellum indūcere posset Antiochī spē fīdūciāque, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt, Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē

Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est: namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsīus interfectum eum scrīptum relīquērunt. Antiochus autem, sī tam in gerendō bellō cōnsiliīs eius pārēre voluisset quam in suscipiendō īnstituerat, propius Tiberī quam Thermopylīs dē summā imperī dīmicāsset. Quem etsī multa stultē cōnārī vidēbat, tamen nūllā dēseruit in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iīsque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphȳliō marī cōnflīxit. In quō cum multitūdine adversāriōrum suī superārentur, ipse quō cornū rem gessit fuit superior.



A COIN OF ANTIOCHUS THE GREAT

Hannibal goes to Crete

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine dubiō accidisset sī suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētam ad Gortȳniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsīderāret. Vīdit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore perīculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam Crētēnsium; magnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit tāle cōnsilium. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus prīncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fideī crēdere. Hīs in errōrem inductīs, statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domī abicit.

Gortȳniī templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs quam ab Hannibale, nē ille īnscientibus iīs tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

Hannibal in Pontus

10. Sīc cōnservātīs suīs rēbus Poenus, inlūsīs Crētēnsibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticīs opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānīs amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et marī et terrā. Sed utrobīque Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī; quem sī remōvisset, faciliōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucīs diēbus erant dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armīs. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vīvās conligī eāsque in vāsa fictilia conicī. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium classiāriōs convocat iīsque praecipit omnēs ut in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēterīs tantum satis habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōnsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut scīrent sē factūrum; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

He helps Prusias to defeat Eumenes

11. Tālī cohortātiōne mīlitum factā classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēdūcitur. Quārum aciē cōnstitūtā, priusquam signum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suīs quō

locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scrīptum. Tabellārius, ducis nāve dēclārātā suīs, eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā epistulā nihil in eā repperit nisi quae ad inrīdendum eum pertinērent. Cuius reī etsī causam mīrābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bīthȳnī Hannibalis praeceptō ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit, quam cōnsecūtus nōn esset nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant conlocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conicī coepta sunt. Quae iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārunt neque quā rē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suās opplētās cōnspexērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterritī, cum quid potissimum vītārent nōn vidērent, puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sīc Hannibal cōnsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum sōlum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiīs parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

Hannibal is demanded by the Romans; he takes poison

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent, lēgātōs in

Bīthȳniam mīsērunt, in iīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsiās negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent: locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs adpārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificī circumīret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāsset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor prīstinārum virtūtum venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat, sūmpsit.

The date of Hannibal's death. His writings

13. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque perfūnctus labōribus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsimō. Quibus cōnsulibus interierit nōn convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōnsulibus mortuum in annālī suō scrīptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque hic tantus vir tantīsque bellīs districtus nōn nihil temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōnfectī, in iīs ad Rhodiōs dē Cn. Mānlī Volsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestīs. Huius bellī

gesta multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex hīs duo quī cum eō in castrīs fuērunt simulque vīxērunt quam diū fortūna passa est, Sīlēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.

Sed nōs tempus est huius librī facere fīnem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius, conlātīs utrōrumque factīs, quī virī praeferendī sint possit iūdicārī.



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

CÆSAR IN GAUL

CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

I. HIS EARLY YEARS

GĀIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā nātus est. Annō sextō decimō patrem āmīsit. Cornēliam, Cinnae fīliam, in mātrimōnium dūxit. Cinna, Cornēliae pater, erat inimīcus Sullae. Hāc rē Caesar bonīs ā Sullā spoliātus est. Nē necārētur, Rōmā excessit et in occultō sē continēbat. Postrēmō veniam impetrāvit et Rōmam revertit.

In bellō prīmum in Asiā versābātur. Post expugnātiōnem urbis magnae, corōna, honōris causā, eī dōnāta est. Post mortem Sullae ex Asiā Rhodum dēcessit ut in hāc īnsulā artī ōrātōriae operam daret. Hūc dum prōgreditur, ā praedōnibus captus est. Apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs mānsit. Postrēmō comitēs eius per pecūniās magnās eum praedōnum manibus līberāvērunt.

Deinde Caesar in urbem Mīlētum properāvit classemque contrāxit. Hāc classe praedōnēs persecūtus est et superāvit.

NOTE. The syntax used in this biographical sketch is confined to the constructions presented during the first year of the study of Latin. The constructions named below each section are illustrated in the accompanying text, and should be reviewed by a study of the references to the grammar (see pp. 342 ff.).

The special vocabularies contain the words not found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

Agreement of Appositives, § 58
Dative of Indirect Object, § 82
Dative with Adjectives, § 90
Accusative of Direct Object, § 91
Accusative of Place Whither, § 97
Ablative of Agent, § 104
Ablative of Cause, § 109
Ablative of Place Where or in Which, § 120
Ablative of Place from Which, § 101. *a*
Ablative of Time When, § 119

expugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.* a storming
Mīlētus, -ī, *f.* Mile´tus
ōrātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of oratory
praedō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate
Rhodus, -ī, *f.*, Rhodes
sextus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sixth

II. HIS POLITICAL CAREER

Caesar creātus quaestor Hispāniam ulteriōrem obtinuit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsīret, parvus quīdam vīcus cōnspectus est. Tum comitēs inter sē disputābant et rogābant, "Num etiam illīc est locus glōriae?" "Mālō," respondit Caesar, "ibi prīmus esse quam Rōmae secundus."

Aedīlis creātus Forum et Capitōlium porticibus ōrnāvit. Etiam multōs et amplōs lūdōs fēcit. Hīs rēbus in grātiam populī vēnit, sed in aes aliēnum magnum incidit.

Cōnsul deinde cum Bibulō creātus, societātem cum Pompēiō et Crassō iūnxit. Lēgem quandam cum tulisset et huic lēgī senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum rettulit. Bibulus in Forum profectus ut lēgī resisteret, ā populō armīs expulsus est, et ex eō tempore Caesar ūnus erat cōnsul.

Agreement of Adjectives, § 59
Agreement of Finite Verbs, § 65
Dative with Intransitive Verbs, § 83
Ablative of Means, § 106
Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113
Ablative of Place Where; Locative, § 120. *a*
Clauses of Purpose, § 174

aedīlis, -is, *m.*, ædile, commissioner of public works
Capitōlium, Capitōlī, *n.*, the Capitol (chief temple of Jupiter at Rome)
Forum, -ī, *n.*, the Roman Forum
lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, sport
porticus, -ūs, *f.*, covered walk between columns, colonnade

III. THE CONQUEST OF GAUL

Post cōnsulātum Caesar Galliam prōvinciam obtinuit. Haec prōvincia multa mīlia passuum aberat. Illīc novem annīs, quibus in imperiō erat, Gallōs superāvit et Galliam in fōrmam prōvinciae redēgit. Cum Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum contendit et eōs magnīs calamitātibus oppressit.

Dē rēbus gestīs mīlitum Rōmānōrum et Caesaris ipsīus hae et multae aliae fābulae nārrantur. Ōlim Caesar, exercitū perturbātō, scūtum ē mīlitis manū ēripuit, et in prīmam aciem prōgrediēns proelium restituit. Īdem aliō proeliō legiōnis aquiliferum in fugam conversum comprehendit et in contrāriam partem retrāxit. Tum dextram manum ad hostem tendēns, "Quō tū," inquit, "abīs? Illīc sunt hostēs quibuscum dīmicāmus." Hāc cohortātiōne timōrem minuit et legiōnēs vincī parātās vincere docuit.

Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. *a*
Prepositions, §§ 148, 149, 150. *a*
Partitive Genitive, § 76
Accusative of Extent of Space, § 96
Ablative of Time within Which, § 119
Pronouns **īdem, ipse,** §§ 25, 136

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go away
fābula, -ae, *f.* story
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, relate
ōlim, *adv.* once upon a time, once

IV. CÆSAR CROSSES THE RUBICON

Intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus erat. Post mortem Iūliae, Caesaris fīliae quae Pompēiō nūpta erat, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ērūpit; nam nec Pompēius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat. Caesar adhūc in Galliā dētinēbātur, neque Rōmam redīre volēbat ut cōnsulātum alterum peteret. Itaque ad senātum scrīpsit

sē petere absentem velle. Id senātus, ab amīcīs Pompēī permōtus, negāvit. Hanc iniūriam ut vindicāret, Caesar in Italiam rediit.

Caesar ad bellum gerendum parātus, cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, prōvinciae suae fīnem, trānsiit. Hoc ad flūmen paulum cōnstitit, et cōgitāns quantam rem inciperet, "Etiam nunc," inquit, "revertī possumus; quod sī hoc



CÆSAR CROSSING THE RUBICON

parvum flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agī necesse erit." Postrēmō autem cum verbīs "Iacta est ālea" exercitum trādūcī iussit. Plūrimīs urbibus occupātīs, Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Possessive Genitive, § 73
Accusative as Subject of Infinitive, § 92
Ablative Absolute, § 117
Demonstrative Pronouns **hic, ille,** § 134. *a*
Clauses of Purpose, § 174
Indirect Discourse, §§ 202–204, 92, 204. *a*
Tenses of the Infinitive, Present; Perfect, § 166. *a*, *b*
Indirect Questions, § 201

aemulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* rivalry
ālea, -ae, *f.* a die (used in playing a game of dice)
Brundisium, Brundisī, *n.* Brundisium (a port of southern Italy)
gener, -erī, *m.* son-in-law
Parthī, -ōrum, *m.* the Parthians (a people living near the Caspian Sea)
Rubicō, -ōnis, *m.* the Rubicon (a river in northern Italy)
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, avenge

V. THE WARS IN THESSALY, PONTUS, AND AFRICA

Eōs, cum in Ēpīrum fūgissent, Brundisiō Caesar secūtus est. Dyrrachī complūrēs diēs morātus est, dum cōpiae quās subsequī iusserat pervenīrent. Dum hīc morātur, summae audāciae facinus magnum fēcit; nam castrīs noctū ēgreditur et clam nāviculam cōnscendit. Quamquam turbida tempestās coörta est, in mare prōtinus dērigī nāvigium iubet. Gubernātōrī trepidantī, "Cūr timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis"; neque prius ventō et fluctibus cessit quam paene obrutus est.

Deinde Caesar per Ēpīrum prōgressus Pompēium Pharsālicō proeliō obruit. Fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus, rēgī Aegyptī bellum intulit. Eō victō in Pontum trānsiit et Pontī rēgem quīnque diēbus prōflīgāvit. Hoc proelium mōre fulminis fēcit, quod prope eōdem tempore vēnit, cōnfēcit, discessit. "Prius victus hostis est quam vīsus est," erat Caesaris praedicātiō. Posteā hunc triumphum tribus verbīs nūntiāvit, "*Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.*" Tum Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, hostibus suīs auxilium dantem, superāvit.

Agreement of Appositives, § 58
Genitive of Description, § 77
Dative with Compounds, § 84
Accusative of Duration of Time, §§ 89, 96
Ablative of Manner, § 110

Aegyptus, -ī, *f.* Egypt
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachī, *n.* Dyrrach'ium (in Epirus)
Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.* Epi'rus (in Greece)
fulmen, -inis, *n.* thunderbolt
quamquam, *conj.* although

Iuba, -ae, *m.*, Juba
Numidia, -ae, *f.*, Numidia (in northern Africa)
obruō, -ere, obruī, obrutus, overwhelm
Pharsālicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pharsa'lus (scene of Pompey's defeat)

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, Pontus (in Asia Minor)
praedicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, announcement
triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumph
turbidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, violent
vehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, bear, carry

VI. CÆSAR IN SPAIN. TRIUMPHANT RETURN TO ROME

Dèinde Caesar gravius Āfricō bellum in Hispāniā suscēpit. Huius bellī, ingentis atque horribilis, Cn. Pompēius, Magnī fīlius, adulēscēns fortissimus, dux causaque erat. Undique ad eum auxilia propter patris nōmen conveniēbant. Nūllum bellum illō perīculōsius umquam ā Caesare initum est. Proeliō quōdam dubiō dēscendit equō cōnstititque ante cēdentem acièm suōrum, increpitāns Fortūnam quod sē ad eam calamitātem servāsset. Namque sine dubiō crēdidit calamitātī sibi id bellum futūrum esse. Etiam dēnūntiāvit mīlitibus suīs sē nōn cessūrum. "Vidēte," inquit, "quō in locō imperātōrem vestrum dēserātis." Pudor magis quam virtūs aciem restituit. Cn. Pompēius victus est et Caesar, omnium victor, Rōmam rediit. Omnibus quī contrā eum arma tulerant ignōvit et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Agreement of Predicate Noun, § 58
Ablative of Comparison, § 105
Interrogative Pronoun, § 27
Possessive Adjectives, § 131
Tenses of the Infinitive, § 166
Dative of Purpose or End, § 89

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa, African
Fortūna, -ae, *f.*, Fortuna (the goddess of fortune)
Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain
quīnquiēns, *adv.*, five times
triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, celebrate a triumph

VII. THE REFORMS OF CÆSAR. HIS AMBITIONS

Deinde Caesar effēcit ut status rei pūblicae īnstruerētur. Fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit. Repetundārum convictōs ōrdine senātōriō mōvit. Portōria peregrīnīs mercibus imposuit. Lēgēs quae praecipuē lūxuriam minuerent exercuit. Dē ōrnandā īnstruendāque urbe cōnsilia plūra ac maiōra in diēs iniit.

Haec et alia agentem et cōgitantem mors oppressit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere īnsolentius coepit. Senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit, et quendam monentem ut adsurgeret inimīcō voltū respexit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellīs comes et tum cōnsul alter, capitī eius diadēma, īnsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō repulsum est ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Hīs rēbus commōtī ūnus et alter rogābant, "Rēxne esse cupit Caesar?" Quā rē nōn nūllī, quōrum Cassius et Brūtus erant ducēs, contrā eum coniūrāvērunt cōnstituēruntque eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū interficere.

Ablative of Separation, § 101
Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160–162
Clauses of Result introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**, § 179
Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177
Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctūrus, rise
corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, correct
diadēma, -atis, *n.*, royal crown
dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator (Roman magistrate, appointed for six months in emergencies)
fāstī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the calendar
Mārtius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of March
merx, mercis, *f.*, merchandise
peregrīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign
repetundae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, extortion
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit
senātōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, senatorial

VIII. THE IDES OF MARCH

Futūrī perīculī plūrima indicia obtulerant dī immortālēs. Calpurnia, uxor Caesaris, territa nocturnō vīsū timēbat nē quid eī accideret, ōrābatque ut Īdibus Mārtiīs domī manēret. Spurinna, haruspex, monuerat ut proximōs diēs trīgintā cavēret nē fātālēs essent. Eōrum diērum ultimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Itaque hōc diē Caesar Spurinnae "Nōnne scīs," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās vēnisse?" Spurinna respondit, "Nōn Īdūs praeteriērunt." Eō diē cum Caesar in senātum vēnisset, quīdam ex coniūrātīs, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit, et Caesarem, cum recūsāret, utrōque umerō comprehendit. Deinde Caesarem clāmitantem, "Ista quidem vīs est!" Casca, quī erat in numerō coniūrātōrum, volnerat. Caesar cōnātus prōsilīre, aliō volnere tardātus est, neque, cum undique coniūrātī pugiōnibus eum peterent, ab eīs sē dēfendere potuit. Tum vērō dictātor togā caput tēxit et ita tribus et vīgintī volneribus cōnfectus concidit.

Personal Pronouns, §§ 129, 130
Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 183
Causal Clauses introduced by **cum**, § 189
Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184
Temporal Clauses introduced by **cum**, § 194. 2
Indefinite Pronouns, § 144

coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, conspirators
fātālis, -e, *adj.*, fated, *hence* dangerous
haruspex, -icis, *m.* a soothsayer
iste, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.* this, that (referring to the person addressed)
prōsiliō, -īre, -uī, ——, leap forward
pugiō, -ōnis, *m.*, short dagger, poniard
toga, -ae, *f.*, toga (the outer garment of the Romans)
umerus, -ī, *m.* the upper arm, the shoulder
vīsus, -ūs, *m.* an apparition, vision



From the painting by C. Rochegrosse

THE ASSASSINATION OF CÆSAR, 44 B. C.

IX. THE CHARACTER OF CÆSAR

Caesar, sī potestās dēligendī sibi data esset, tālem mortem optāvisset; nam prīdiē quam occīsus est, in sermōne cum quibusdam amīcīs conlātō, dīxit repentīnam mortem esse suā quidem sententiā commodissimam.

Temperantia, quō rārior in prīncipibus est, hōc magis laudārī dēbet. Caesar, quamquam studiīs bellī erat asperrimus, tamen in victōriā erat clēmentissimus. Cum enim dēprehendisset quāsdam litterās ad Pompēium missās ab eīs quī sibi restiterant, tamen legere nōluit, sed combussit; nam praeterita condōnāre, nōn novās offēnsiōnis causās reperīre voluit. Haec laudātiō est Cicerōnis: "Nihil oblīvīscī solet Caesar nisi iniūriās." Eōs quī inimīcī sibi fuerant nōn sōlum amīcōs fēcit, sed etiam honōribus auxit. C. Memmium cōnsulem efficere cōnātus est, etsī asperrimae fuerant eius in ipsum ōrātiōnēs.

Predicate Genitive, § 73. *a*
Two Accusatives, Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative, with Verbs of Making, Choosing, etc., § 94
Ablative of Measure of Difference, § 114
Ablative of Respect, § 115
Concessive Clauses with **cum**, § 192

asper, -era, -erum, *adj.*, harsh, savage, cruel, fierce
Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (the great orator)
clēmēns, -entis, *adj.*, mild, merciful
dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, seize, discover
laudātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, praise, eulogy
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, desire, pray for

X. PERSONAL APPEARANCE OF CÆSAR

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ōre plēnō, nigrīs oculīs, capite calvō. Quam calvitī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe inimīcīs iocō erat, molestē ferēbat. Quā rē iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae, quod eī senātus dēcrēverat, libenter recēpit

atque ūsūrpāvit. Tam temperātus erat in omnibus vītae partibus ut Catō dīceret ūnum Caesarem ēvertendae reī pūblicae cōnsilium cēpisse sōbrium. Reī mīlitāris et equitandī perītissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns erat. In agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus antecēdēbat, capite nūdō, seu sōl seu imber erat. Longissima itinera incrēdibilī celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe ante nūntiōs pervenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae nandō trāiciēbat. Nihil, ut vīsum est, eum potuit prohibēre cōnāta sua perficere. Omnīnō Caesar erat vir quem hostēs timērent, amīcī amārent, omnēs admīrārentur.

Ablative of Description or Quality, § 116

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

Gerund (an active verbal noun), § 223. 1–4

Gerundive (a passive verbal adjective), § 224. *a–d*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love
calvitium, calvitī, *n.*, baldness
calvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bald
dēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.*, disfigurement
equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ride (on horseback)
ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, upset, overthrow
excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tall, high
gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wear
iocus, -ī, *m.*, jest
laurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel wreath
niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black, dark
nō, nāre, nāvī, ——, swim
persaepe, *adv.*, very often
sōbrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, sober, in one's senses
ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make use of



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR IMPERATOR



THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

CÆSAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gaul, its divisions and nations

GALLIA est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

The characters of the nations

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

The boundaries of each

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur, pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

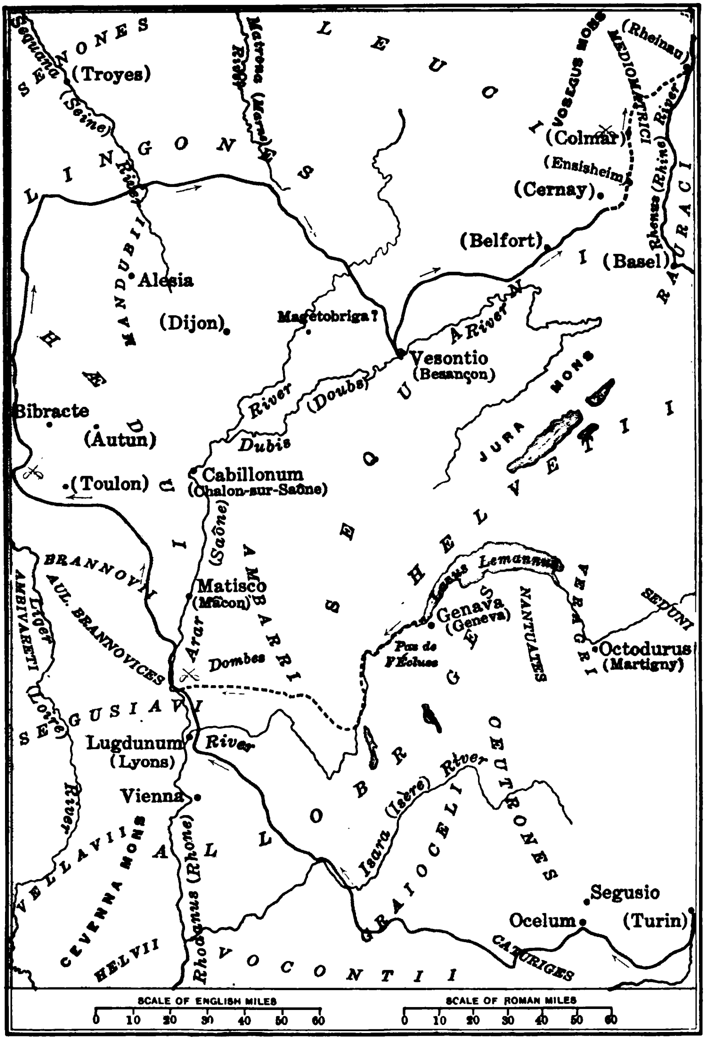
Orgetorix, the Helvetian, plans to invade Gaul

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtĭus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

The Helvetii are persuaded because they need more territory

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 58 B.C.

They decide on the preparations that must be made

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre: iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Orgetorix is placed in charge, but conspires with neighboring chiefs to seize the sovereignty

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Orgetorix is brought to trial, but escapes

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt. Damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur.

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.

His death

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetii burn their towns and begin their journey

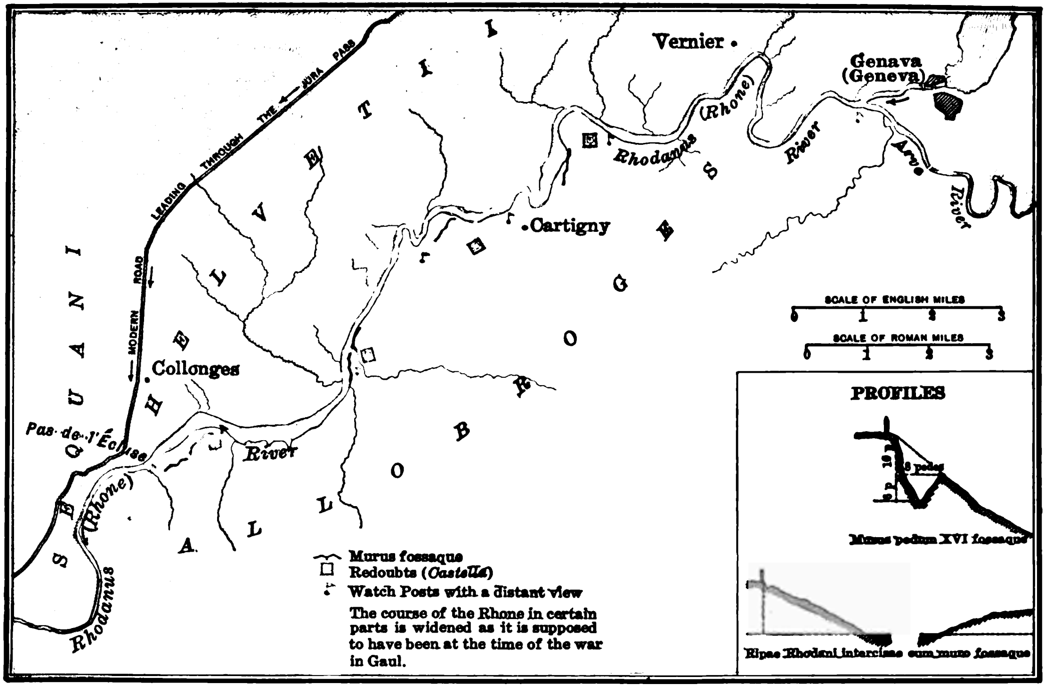
5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

They are joined by other tribes

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

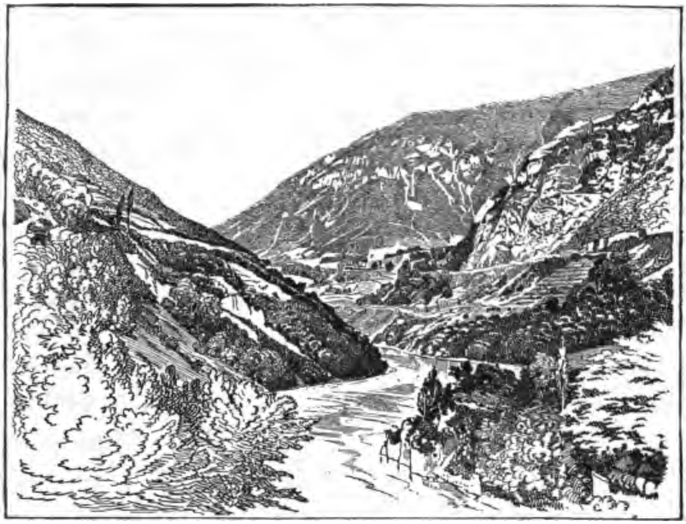
The two possible routes are described

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut



THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE

facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod



THE JURA PASS (*PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE*)

inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur.

They decide to go through the Province

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Cæsar takes measures to stop them

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

They send an embassy to Cæsar to ask his permission

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Cæsar puts them off to gain time

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he fortifies the bank of the Rhone to prevent their crossing

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum

ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī mūrum, in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii attempt to cross, but are driven back

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Persuaded by Dumnorix, a Hæduan chief, the Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cæsar deems this movement also a danger to the Province

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

He adds to his forces and marches against the Helvetii

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

He meets with resistance, but crosses the Rhone with his army

Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetii ravage the ccuntry of the Haedui

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt

rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint.'

The Haedui and their neighbors ask Cæsar for help

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Saône

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Cæsar attacks and destroys the Tigurini, who had not yet crossed

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est.

And thus avenges a former disgraceful defeat

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est; quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Cæsar crosses the Saône and receives a Helvetian embassy

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō eius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico begs and threatens

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: *"Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū, Caesar, cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sīn bellō persequī persevērābis, reminīscere et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere, aut nōs dēspicere; nōs

* **Passages marked with a star have been changed from indirect to direct discourse. For the indirect form, see pp. 199 ff.**

ita ā patribus maiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nītāmur. Quā rē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat."

Cæsar offers conditions of peace which Divico declines

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: *" Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāvērunt memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāstis, memoriam dēpōnere possum?

" Quod vestrā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinet. Cōnsuērunt enim dī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

" Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam."

Dīvicō respondit: *" Ita Helvētiī ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Cæsar's cavalry meets with a slight reverse

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii march north and Cæsar follows

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Hædui fail to furnish the grain which they promised

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Cæsar is embarrassed and upbraids the Hæduan chiefs

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, — in

hīs Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Liscus lays the blame on a faction opposed to the Romans

17. Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: *"Sunt nōn nūllī quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hī sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbent: 'Praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī.' Ab eīsdem vestra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur: hī ā mē coërcērī nōn possunt. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus tibi ēnūntiāvī, intellegō quantō id cum perīculō fēcerim, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuī, tacuī."

In private he discloses the power and ambition of Dumnorix, the leader of this faction

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius.

Others support the charges of Liscus

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: * "Ipse est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habet, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circum sē habet, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter potest; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāvit.

They declare that Dumnorix favors the Helvetii

"Favet et cupit Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Sī quid accidit Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venit; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat."

Cæsar discovers that Dumnorix caused the defeat of the Roman cavalry

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus, — nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Other proofs of the treachery of Dumnorix. Cæsar thinks he should be punished, but does not wish to offend Diviciacus

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur.

He summons Diviciacus, who pleads for his brother's pardon

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Procillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. *"Sciō," inquit, "haec esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam

posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur; ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgī commoveor. Quod sī quid eī abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur."

Dumnorix is spared, but is closely watched

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Cæsar prepares for battle

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The error of Considius prevents the action

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Cæsar marches toward Bibracte. The Helvetii follow

23. Postrīdiē eius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duodēvīgintī aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse

cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Both sides prepare for battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

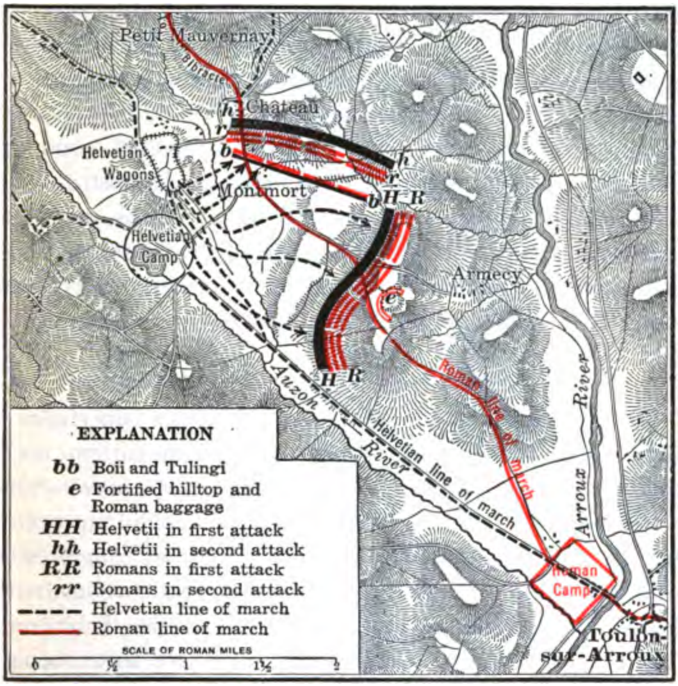
The battle begins

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut, diū iactātō bracchiō, praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

The Helvetii retreat, but rally

Tandem volneribus dēfessī et pedem referre, et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passuum, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī

hominum mīlibus circiter quīndecim agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī,



THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

As the battle plan shows, only the third line of the Roman army faced about (*conversa signa*, l. 5) to meet the advancing Boii and Tulingi. The other two lines continued to face the Helvetii as before. The verb *intulērunt* (l. 6) refers to the whole Roman force, which made the attack in two divisions as described

quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

After a desperate conflict the Helvetii are defeated

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque volnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

The survivors retreat into the territory of the Lingones

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetii negotiate for surrender

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.



"ITA ANCIPITI PROELIO DIU ATQUE ACRITER PUGNATUM EST"

(See page 30, line 1)

Six thousand of them try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia sex eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

The Helvetii and their allies return home

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent, et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

The Boii are allowed to settle among the Hædui

Bōiōs petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

The number of the Helvetii and their allies

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia XCII. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The Gallic chiefs come to congratulate Cæsar

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: * "Intellegimus," inquiunt, "tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīstī, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquērunt, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent."

A day is set for a future council

Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: 'Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere

vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

Certain chiefs have a private interview with Cæsar

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: * "Nōn minus," inquiunt, "nōs id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dīxerimus ēnūntientur, quam utī ea quae velīmus impetrēmus; propter eā quod, sī ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus."

Diviciacus describes the factions in Gaul and the bringing in of the Germans

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: * "Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterīus prīncipātum tenent Haeduī, alterīus Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum.

The subjection of the Hædui

"Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsērunt. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā

plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut līberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte profūgī et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar.

The wretched lot of the Sequani

"Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum vīgintī quattuor ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsībunt; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō vīctūs cum illā comparanda.

The tyranny and cruelty of Ariovistus

"Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

All Gaul looks to Cæsar for deliverance

"Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcērunt, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre potes nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere."

The silence of the Sequani

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Eius reī quae causa esset mīrātus, ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre.

Diviciacus explains their desperate plight

Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: *"Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audent; absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī."

Cæsar promises his assistance and dismisses the chiefs

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit.

His reasons for deciding to expel Ariovistus

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in prīmīs quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Cæsar asks Ariovistus for an interview, but he declines

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: * "Sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego

ad eum venīrem; sī quid ille mē volt, illum ad mē venīre oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mīrum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī sit."

Cæsar commands Ariovistus to restore the liberties of the Hædui

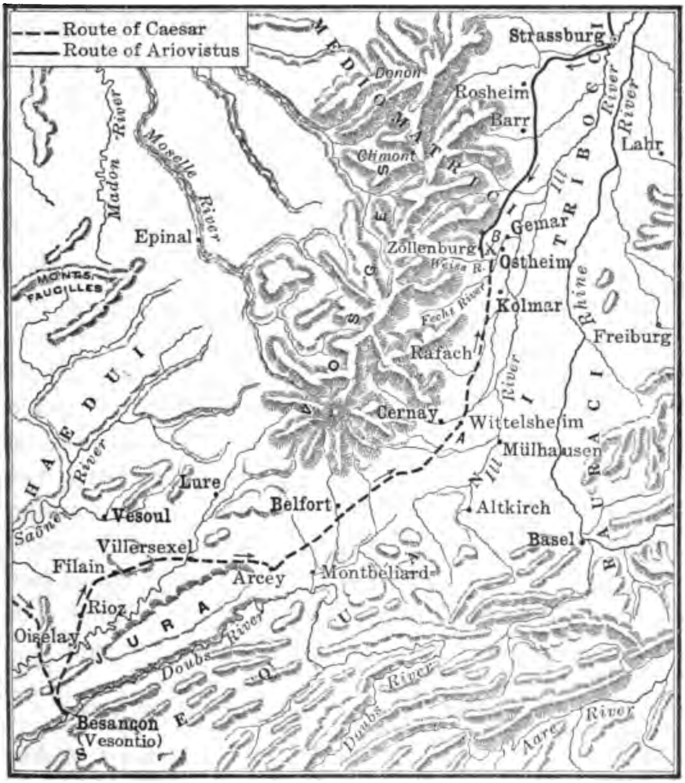
35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: * "Quoniam tantō meō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū meō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus sit, hanc mihi populōque Rōmānō grātiam refert, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcat; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduīs reddat, Sēquanīsque permittat ut quōs illī habent voluntāte eius reddere illīs liceat; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacessat, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferat.

"Sī id ita fēcerit, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcitia cum eō erit; sī nōn impetrābō, ego — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuit utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet — Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglegam."

Ariovistus sends back an insolent reply

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: * "Iūs est bellī ut quī vīcerint, eīs quōs vīcerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent; item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad alterīus praescrīptum,

sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre consuēvit. Sī ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescrībō quem ad modum suō iūre ūtātur, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impedīrī.



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

"Haeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superātī sunt, stīpendiāriī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque

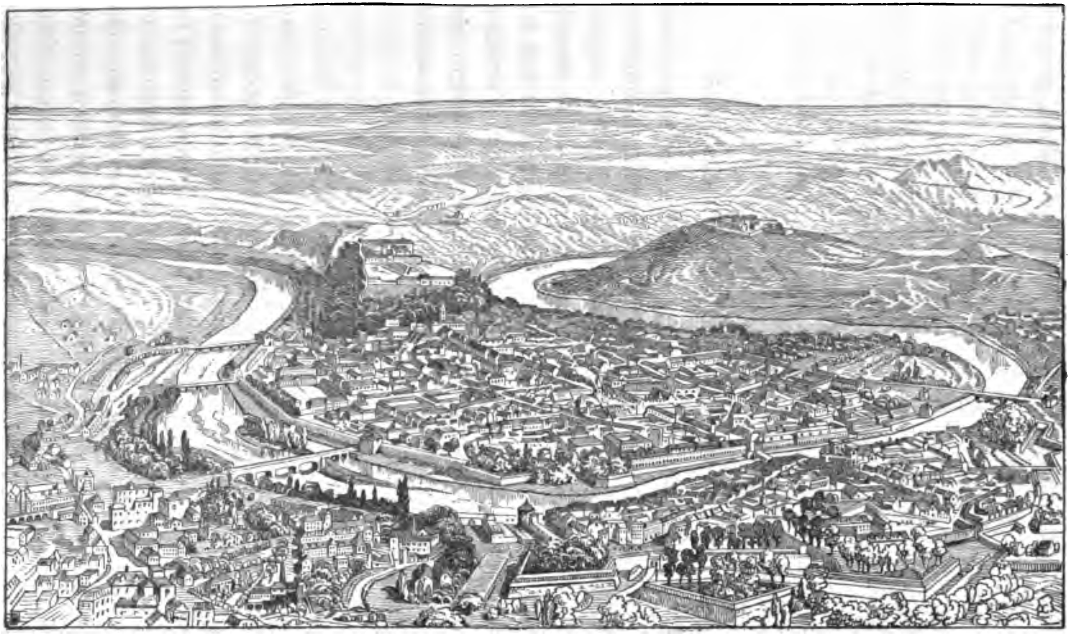
hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum īnferam, sī in eō manēbunt quod convēnit stīpendiumque quotannīs pendent; sī id nōn fēcerint, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congrediātur; intelleget quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint."

New encroachments of the Germans are reported to Cæsar, who hastens against Ariovistus

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: 'Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs.' Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both strive to reach Vesontio. Cæsar arrives there first

38. Cum triduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut



BESANÇON (VESONTIO)

magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports about the Germans frighten Cæsar's men

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant, — saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret.

The inexperienced are panic-stricken

Hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque voltum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur.

Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Cæsar makes light of their fears and recalls the victories of Marius

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. * "Ariovistus," inquit, "mē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetiit. Cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognitīs meīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminī? aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā dīligentiā dēspērētis? Factum est eius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistis, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis.

Even the Helvetians and other Gauls have often defeated the Germans

"Dēnique hī sunt īdem Germānī quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuērunt. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, sī quaerent, reperīre poterunt, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

He deprecates their lack of confidence in him

"Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt, faciunt adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere videantur. Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere vōs ipsī brevī tempore iūdicābitis.

"Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcuntur mīlitēs, nihil eā rē commoveor; sciō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta.

He proposes an immediate advance

"Itaque quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuī, repraesentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam prīmum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod sī praetereā nēmō

sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihique ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

Remarkable effect of Cæsar's speech

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī



ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

innāta est; prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.'

He advances near to the forces of Ariovistus

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret.' Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret.

A conference is agreed upon; each party to bring only cavalry

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.'

Cæsar takes precaution against treachery

Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae,

cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: 'Plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum; ad equum rescrībere.'

Cæsar's speech. He pleads for peace, but renews his demands

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequō ferē spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam adpetīssent. 'Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī adtulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset?'

Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus makes an arrogant reply

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: *"Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquī; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capiō iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātae sunt. Sī iterum experīrī volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī volunt, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt.

"Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportet; atque hāc spē petiī. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittētur et dēditīciī subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam adpetiī.

"Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā faciō; eius reī testimōnium est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī, et quod bellum nōn intulī, sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vīs? Cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sīcut illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdī



CONFERENCE BETWEEN CÆSAR AND ARIOVISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS

" Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sīcut illa vestra"

(See page 48, line 29)

nōn oporteat, sī in vestrōs fīnēs impetum faciam, sīc item vōs estis inīquī quod in meō iūre mē interpellātis.

"Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīcis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperītus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

"Dēbeō suspicārī simulātā tē amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habēs, meī opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē interfēcerō, multīs nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum faciam (id ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habeō), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam tuā morte redimere poterō. Quod sī discesseris et līberam possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemiō remūnerābor, et quaecumque bella gerī volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et perīculō cōnficiam."

Cæsar restates his position and disputes the claim of Ariovistus to Gaul

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: *"Neque mea neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdō patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stīpendium imposuit. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportet, lībera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluerit."

A treacherous attack of the Germans puts an end to the conference

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere, et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in volgus mīlitum ēlātum est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

Cæsar declines a renewal of the conference

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: 'Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōnstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.' Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis, quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum perīculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat.

Two of Cæsar's envoys are seized by Ariovistus

Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, — cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam

Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, — ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae dīceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: *"Quid ad mē vēnistis? an speculandī causā?" Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Ariovistus moves his camp. Cavalry skirmishes

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē eius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deësset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

The German method of fighting

Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Gērmānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre volnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Cæsar fortifies another camp and divides his forces

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum



FORTIFYING THE CAMP

locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.

Ariovistus attacks the smaller camp with part of his forces

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs volneribus in castra redūxit.

A German superstition delays a general engagement

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.'

Cæsar forces a decisive battle

51. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est relīquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs, passīs manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

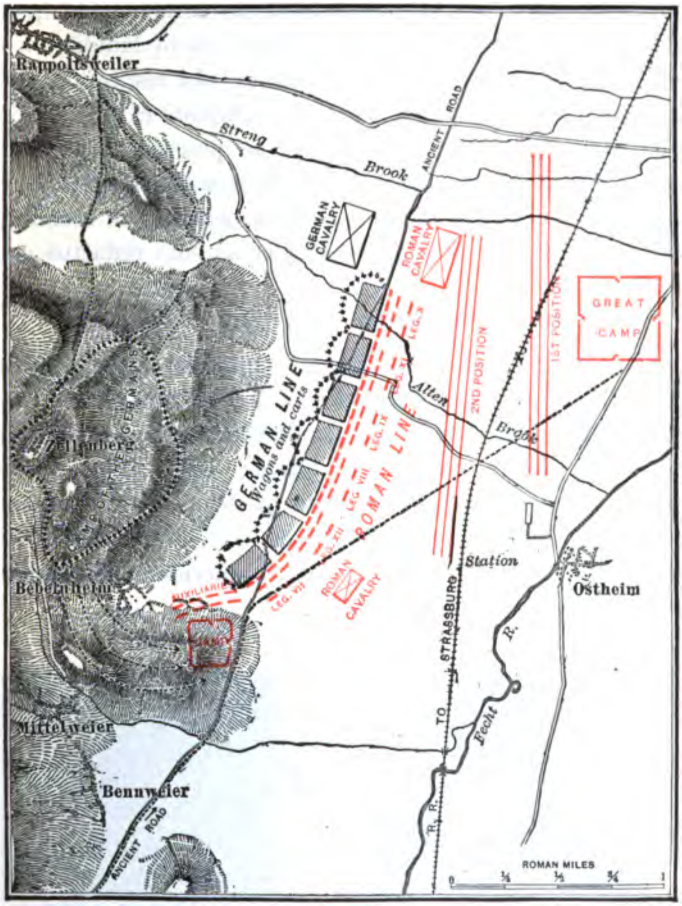
Desperate fighting at close quarters

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Et ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Reiectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper volnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

The Germans flee. Ariovistus escapes

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.



THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

Cæsar's two envoys are rescued

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vīnctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn

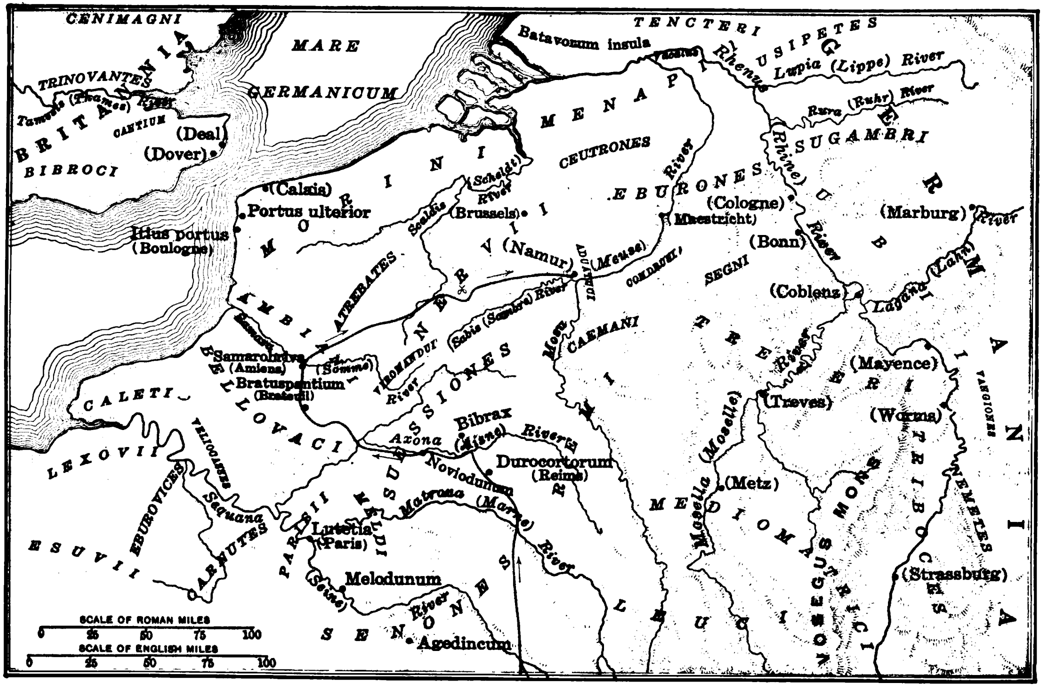
minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque eius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat utrum ignī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The end of the campaign. Cæsar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex eīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.



WRITING TABLETS WITH LATIN SCRIPT



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 57 B.C.

BOOK II

CÆSAR'S SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

The reasons for the conspiracy

Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, — ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Cæsar moves against them early in the spring

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit, et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit.

Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise aid and report on the situation

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt quī dīcerent: *"Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittimus; neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvimus, parātīque sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānīque quī cis Rhēnum incolunt sēsē cum hīs coniūnxērunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nōbīscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent."

The origin and warlike character of the Belgæ

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: *"Plērīque Belgae sunt ortī ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlīque sunt

quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmant.

The strength of the Belgian tribes

"Dē numerō eōrum omnia habēmus explōrāta, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitī ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostrī sunt fīnitimī; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācus, tōtīus Galliae potentissimus, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō XII, pollicentur mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviī, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; XV mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī X mīlia, Morinī XXV mīlia, Menapiī VII mīlia, Caletī X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduī totidem, Aduatucī XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur ‹cōnficere posse› ad XL mīlia."

Cæsar asks the assistance of Diviciacus

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum magnopere

cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit: 'Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint.' Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit.

He crosses the Aisne and there fortifies a camp

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit neque iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī iubet.

The Belgæ attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles away

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum

oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: 'Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.'

Cæsar sends relief to Bibrax. The Belgæ advance on his camp

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, īsdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.



A SLINGER (*FUNDITOR*)

Cavalry skirmishes. Cæsar fortifies his position and draws up his forces in front of the camp

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur.

Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, — ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent.

Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscrīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

A swamp between the two forces prevents a general engagement

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.

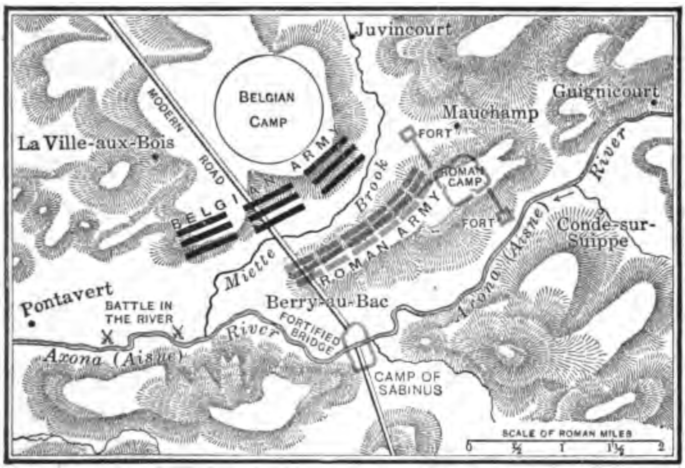
The Belgæ attempt an attack in the rear

Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

Cæsar defeats them with great losses

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum



THE BATTLE ON THE AISNE (*AXONA*)

est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine adgressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt, prīmōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

The Belgæ, discouraged, decide to disband

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt,

atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīviciācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.



BOWMAN (*SAGITTARIUS*)

Cæsar pursues them and inflicts great slaughter

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Auruncul̄ēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit.

Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod 4
abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exauditō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.



A LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER

He leads his army into the territory of the Suessiones

12. Postrīdiē eius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.

He prepares to storm Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender

Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque

cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

The Bellovaci beg for mercy

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus, the Hæduan, pleads for them

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: *"Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuērunt; impulsī ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcēbant Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Haeduī ut tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod sī fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt."

Cæsar spares the Bellovaci and receives the Ambiani in surrender

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

He hears that the Nervii are defiant

Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: *"Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiuntur vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimant; sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; increpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtūtem prōiēcerint; cōnfīrmant sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs."

He marches against the Nervii and their allies

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab eīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii decide to attack Cæsar while he is pitching camp

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

The hedges of the Nervii

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs, crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effēcerant ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

The Romans choose a hill for their camp. The Nervii hide on a hill opposite

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius,

passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās



SOLDIERS MARCHING WITH PACKS (*SUB SARCINIS*)

silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Romans begin to fortify their camp

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat,

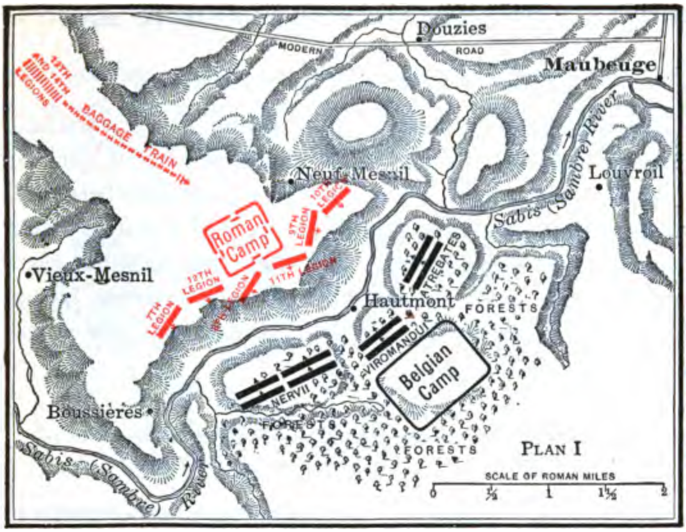
cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

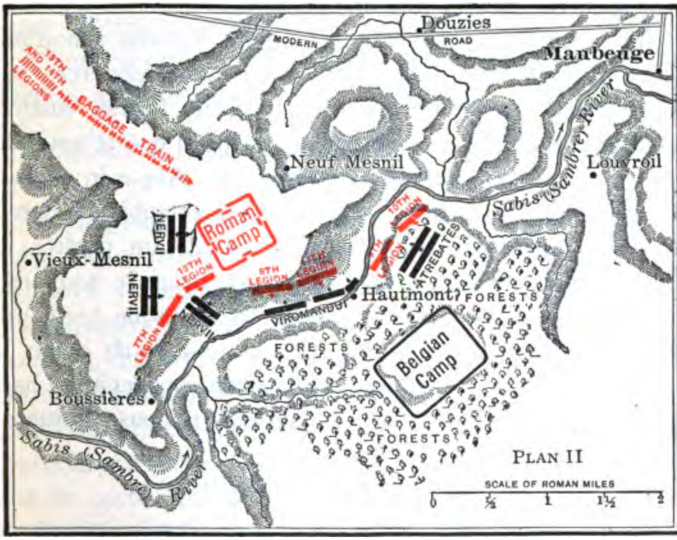
The Nervii make a sudden and furious attack

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The situation of the Romans is critical

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat.





THE DEFEAT OF THE NERVII

Plan I shows the positions of the contending forces before the attack. Plan II shows their positions at the crisis of the battle

Their skill and training serve them well

Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, — scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

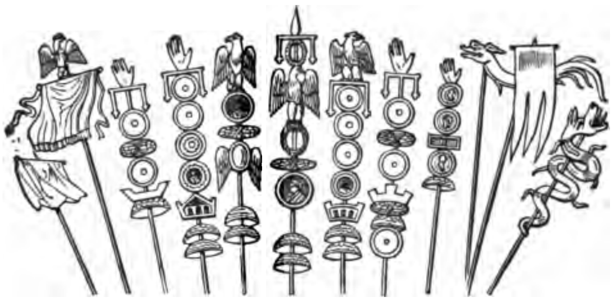
Lack of time compels the omission of all formalities and of some of the usual preparations for battle

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

They fight as necessity demands

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in

parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus



ROMAN MILITARY STANDARDS

esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

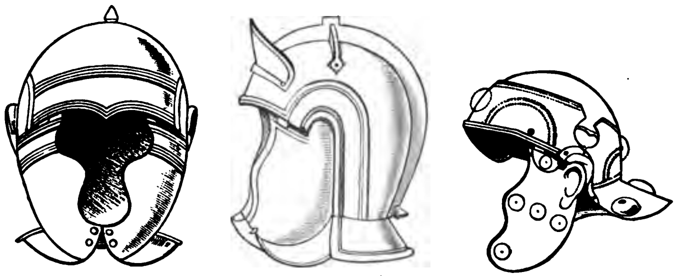
The Atrebates and Viromandui are defeated, but the Nervii gain the camp

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō

cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Panic prevails in the Roman camp

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium



ROMAN HELMETS

impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

The Treveri think all is lost and hasten home

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium

castra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs 4
impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Cæsar snatches a shield and rushes to the front

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, — quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut volnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque volneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī 25
posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent.



STANDARD BEARER
(*SIGNIFER*)

His presence inspires his men

Cuius adventū spē inlātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Cæsar effectively combines two of his legions

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

He receives reënforcements

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The tide of battle turns in Cæsar's favor

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent.

Cæsar praises the valor of the enemy

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii are almost completely destroyed

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus sexāgintā vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit, suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci, allies of the Nervii, withdraw to their stronghold

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās

rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

Origin of the Aduatuci

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

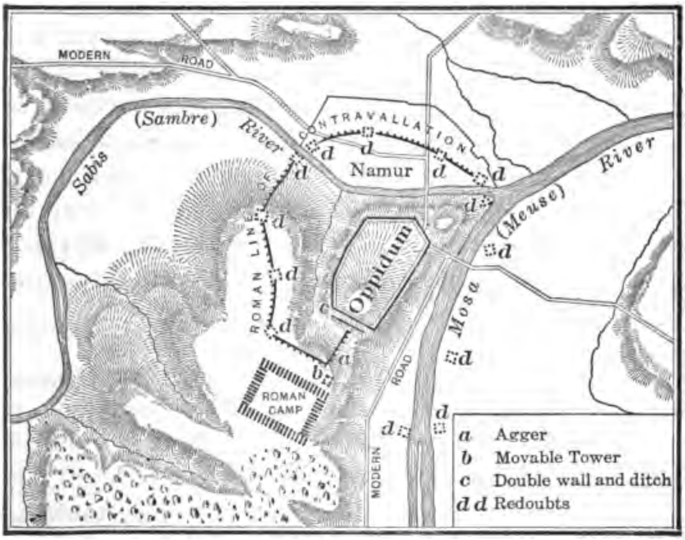
They ridicule Cæsar's siege works

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium, crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: * "Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae"—nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est—"tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfīdunt?"

But, becoming alarmed, they offer to surrender if allowed to keep their arms

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: * "Nōn existimāmus

vōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possītis; nōs nostraque omnia tuae potestātī permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: sī forte prō tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine,



SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

quam ab aliīs audīmus, statueris Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē fīnitimī sunt inimīcī ac nostrae virtūtī invident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn poterimus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcāmur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēvimus."

Cæsar demands their arms. They yield, but treacherously keep part of them

32. Ad haec Cæsar respondit: *" Magis cōnsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō cīvitātem cōnservābō, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiciō nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nerviīs fēcī faciam, fīnitimīsque imperābō nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

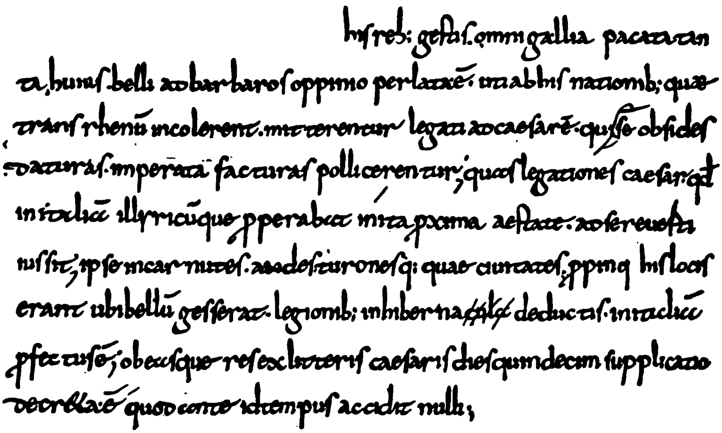
They make a night attack, but are defeated

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret.

Over fifty thousand of them are sold as slaves

Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē eius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam


his reb; gestis omni gallia pacata tan
ta huius belli ad barbaros oppinio perlata e uti ab his nationib; quae
trans rhenu incolerent mitterentur legati ad caesare qui se obsides
daturas imperata facturas pollicerentur; quas legationes caesar qd
in italia illyricuque pperabat inita proxima aestate ad se reverti
iussit; ipse in carnutes andes turonesq; quae civitates ppinq his locis
erant ubi bellu gesserat legionib; in hibernacula deductis in italia
pfectus e; ob easque res ex litteris caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio
decreta e quod ante id tempus accidit nulli;

LATIN MANUSCRIPT

The text of Book II, chapter 35, as it appears in a Latin manuscript of the ninth century. For many years the manuscript was in the monastery of St. Benedict at Fleury-sur-Loire. It is now in Paris and is known as Codex Parisinus Latinus, 5763

dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

The tribes on the coast surrender to Crassus

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

The army goes into winter quarters. Cæsar returns to Italy
A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta huius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.



GALLIC COINS

BOOK III

CÆSAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

Galba is sent with one legion to guard a pass of the Alps

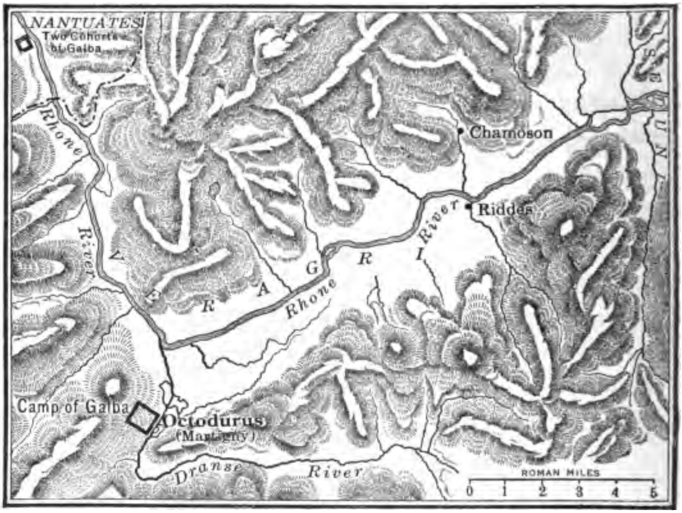
CUM in Italiam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret.

He makes his winter quarters at Octodurus

Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

An army of Gauls seizes the heights above the town and threatens his camp

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat



OCTODURUS AND THE SURROUNDING TERRITORY

omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum quod legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem

posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Conditions are unfavorable, but the Romans decide to defend the camp

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut, impedīmentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls make a violent attack with superior numbers

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eīs rēbus quās cōnstituissent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum

ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

After fighting six hours, the Romans decide to make a sally

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum volneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are disastrously defeated

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac, subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā, neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt.



IAM AMPLIUS HORIS SEX CONTINENTER PUGNATUM EST

Galba withdraws to the Province

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

THE WAR WITH THE VENETI

The coast tribes revolt against Roman rule

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Eius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

The Veneti seize the Roman messengers

8. Huius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī

cōnsuērunt habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.

Other states do the same and demand back their hostages

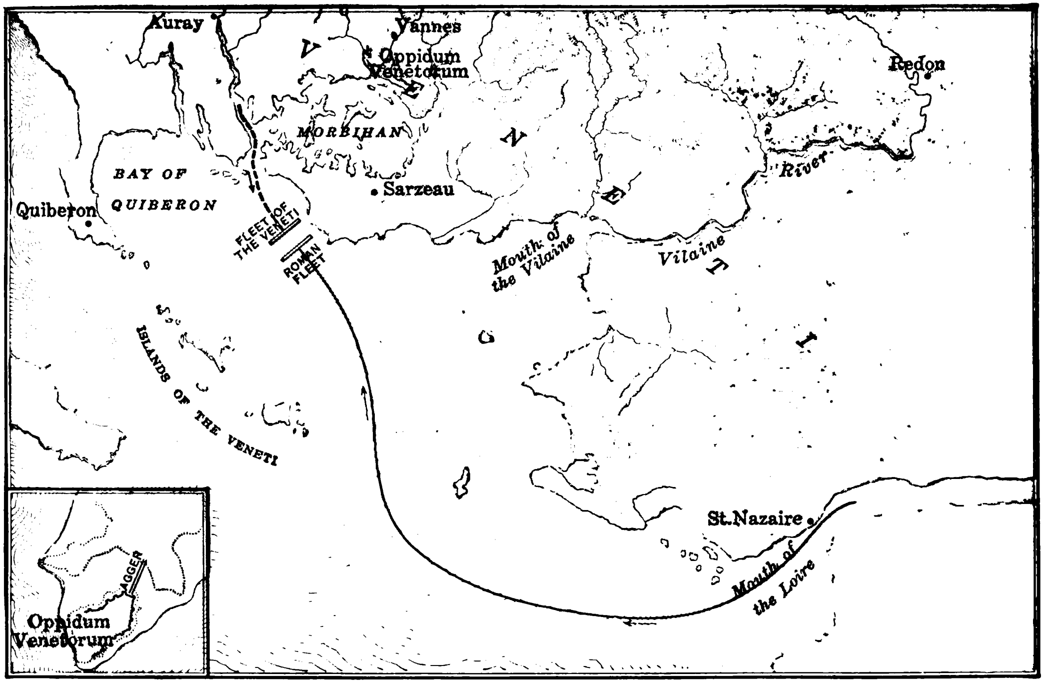
Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā lībertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Cæsar orders a fleet to be built and hastens to the scene

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

The Veneti and their neighbors prepare for war

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre, et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant.



THE VENETI AND NEIGHBORING COAST REGION

They have great confidence in their natural advantages

Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Cæsar has good reasons for undertaking this war

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

He divides his forces to keep the rest of Gaul loyal

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat; Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret.

Brutus is placed in command of the fleet

D. Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit, et cum prīmum possit in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

The town sites of the Veneti are described

12. Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs adflīctārentur.

The difficulty of storming them

Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō — magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs — dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium

adpulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

The ships of the Veneti

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revīnctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam sīve eō (quod est magis vērīsimile) quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

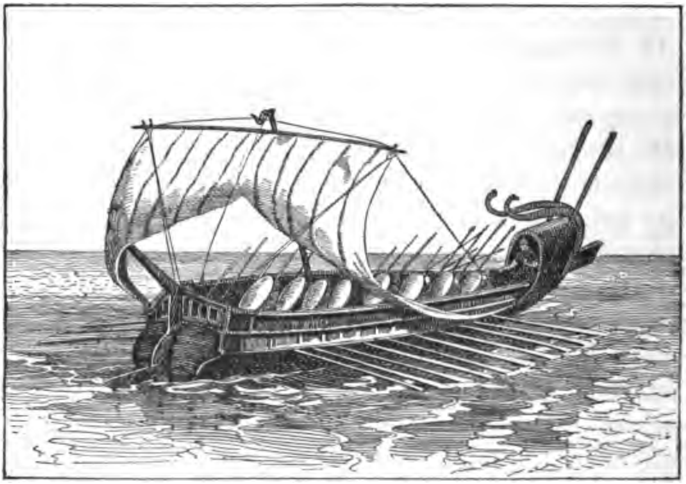
They are better adapted to existing conditions than those of the Romans

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō — neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō

dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Roman fleet arrives and is attacked by the Veneti

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs



ROMAN BATTLESHIP (*NAVIS LONGA*)

oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō

puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

A Roman device disables the ships of the enemy

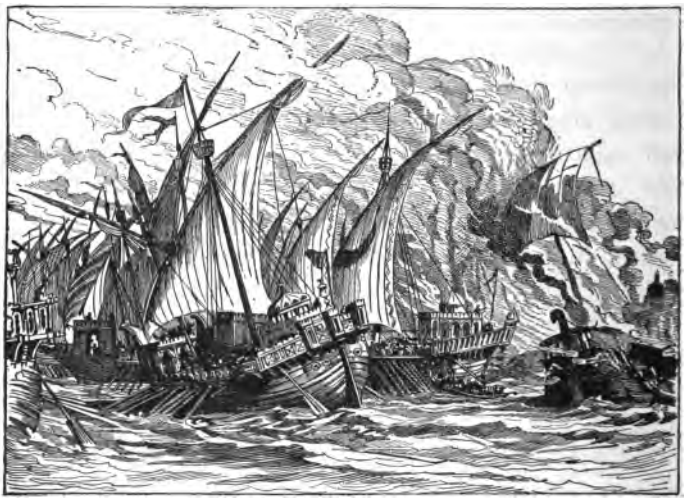
Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, — falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae adfīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Romans win the victory and capture the hostile ships

15. Disiectīs (ut dīximus) antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The Veneti surrender and are punished

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat



A NAVAL BATTLE

in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.



"RELIQUOS SUB CORONA VENDIDIT"

(See page 94, line 10)

THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI

Sabinus, arriving among the Venelli, finds them hostile

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus, cum eīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.

He leads the Gauls to the belief that he is afraid

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

He strengthens this belief by a stratagem

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat et quid fierī velit

ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet: 'Neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur.' Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre.

Thoroughly convinced, they prepare an immediate attack

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque conlēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

They rush to the camp, where they arrive exhausted

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt.

Sabinus suddenly sallies forth and defeats them

Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs

vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī, paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt.

Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus; cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, — quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, — cum intellegeret in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mānlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs prōfūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne (quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus) nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

He defeats them and they surrender

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent; nostrī autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus, adulēscentulō duce, efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī volneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cuius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, proptereā quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussī, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his brothers in arms

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī solduriōs appellant, — quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret, — cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Other hostile tribes gather their armies against Crassus

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum, et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum, paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt.

Crassus believes that conditions demand an immediate action

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, — suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, — nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Crassus offers battle, but the enemy declines

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs

viīs, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Crassus attacks the enemy's camp

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat) lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

A Roman force surprises the camp in the rear

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās dīximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid reī gererētur cognōscī posset.

The enemy abandon their camp and flee

Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the other Aquitanian tribes now surrender

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

CÆSAR'S EXPEDITION TO THE NORTH

Cæsar marches against the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt.

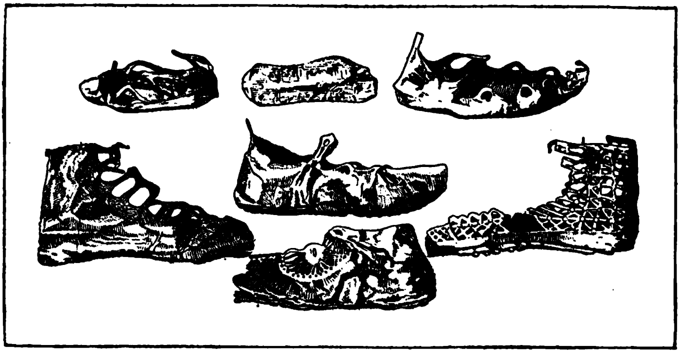
They hide in the forests and swamps

Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre

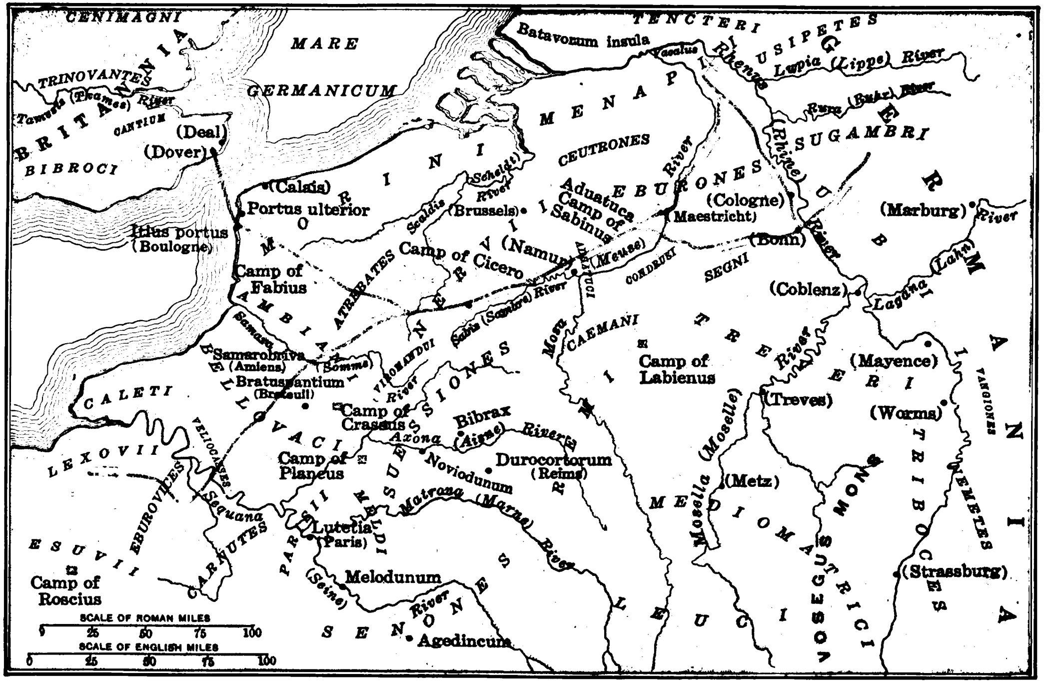
īnstituisset neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Violent storms put an end to further action

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit, et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs conlocāvit.



ROMAN FOOTWEAR



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.

This map shows also the location of the various camps where the divisions of Cæsar's forces were quartered after the campaign of 54 B.C. (see Book V, chapters 24 and 25)

BOOK IV

CÆSAR'S FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE GERMANS IN GAUL

Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul

EĀ QUAE secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

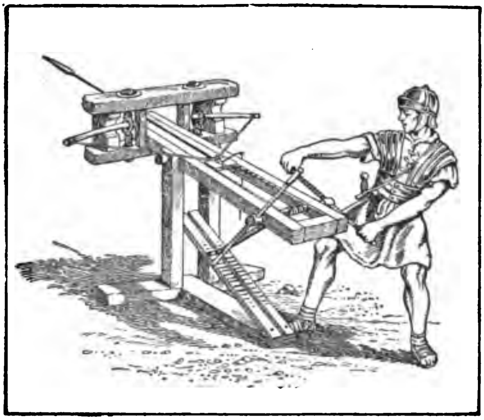
Strength and customs of the Suebi

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et

immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their relations with traders

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.



A CATAPULT (*TORMENTUM*)

Their horsemanship. Their sobriety

Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent.

Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

They destroy and oppress their neighbors

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, prop툴 quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri are checked at the Rhine by the Menapii

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis aditū perterritī, ex eīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant.

By a ruse they succeed in crossing into Gaul

Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et triduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt; quī, dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Cæsar distrusts the Gauls because of their fickle character

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He finds proof of Gallic disloyalty and resolves on war with Germany

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta

cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs, equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

The German envoys ask Cæsar for lands in Gaul

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

Cæsar refuses and orders them to leave the country

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine

iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

The envoys seek delay

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, — multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

The envoys return. More parleying to gain time

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur

ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum IIII aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

A treacherous attack is made on the Roman cavalry

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat V mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

Heroic death of Piso and his brother

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII et LXX; in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs volneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Cæsar decides that the situation demands stern measures

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs quī, per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat.

He arrests the German chiefs who come asking a truce

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē eius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus maiōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commisissent; simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit;



"MILITES NOSTRI IN CASTRA INRUPERUNT"

(See page 111, line 10)

ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

He then makes a quick march on the German camp and surprises it

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

The Germans are thoroughly demoralized and many perish

15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs volnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY

Cæsar's reasons for believing that he ought to cross the Rhine

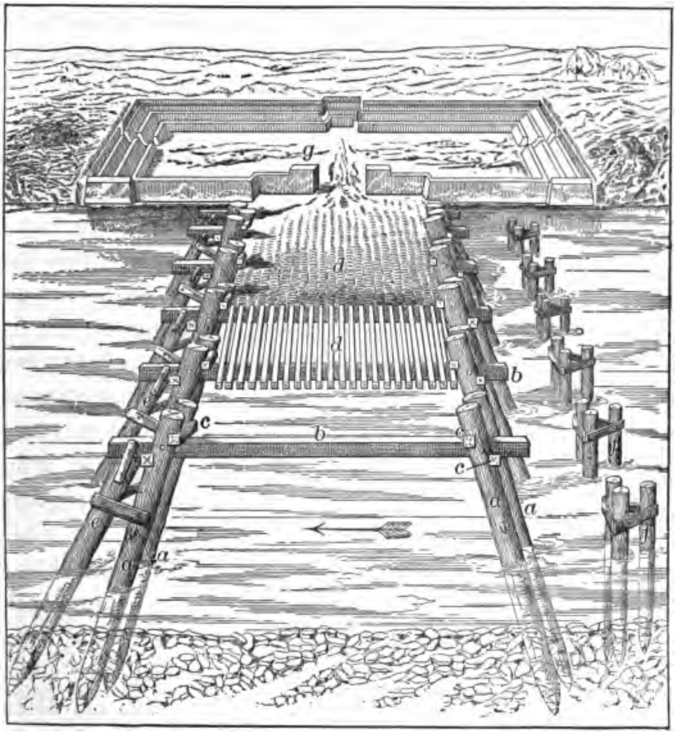
16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum: quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?'

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He decides to bridge the river

17. Caesar hīs de causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; ***bb***, trabes bipedales; ***cc***, fibulae; ***dd***, derecta materia longuriis cratibusque constrata; ***ee***, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae; ***ff***, sublicae supra pontem immissae; ***g***, castellum ad caput pontis positum

esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem,

altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

The plan of the bridge

Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, — nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revīnctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

Cæsar crosses the bridge and invades Germany

18. Diēbus x quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī

veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī, ex eō tempore quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

The invasion fills the Germans with terror

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cognōvit: 'Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.'

Cæsar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Cæsar decides to invade Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

He sends Volusenus to reconnoiter and Commius as a peace envoy

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī

Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat



AN ANCIENT HARBOR

quās possit adeat cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

While the ships are gathering, the Morini surrender

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod

hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

The muster of the fleet and disposition of the forces

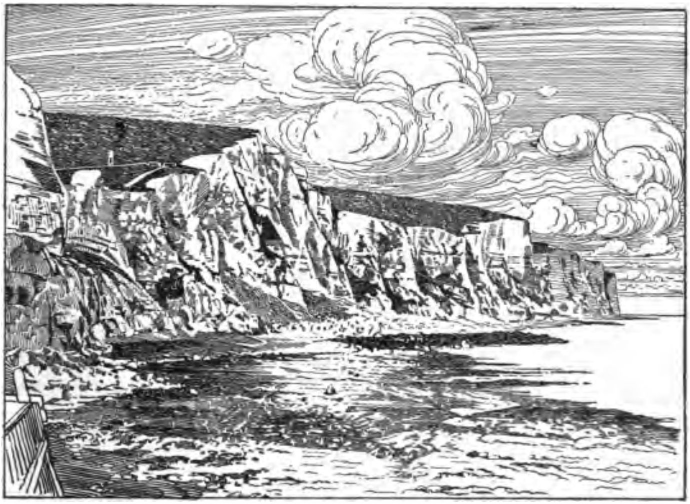
Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Auruncolēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Cæsar crosses the channel and seeks a good landing place

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in

lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent

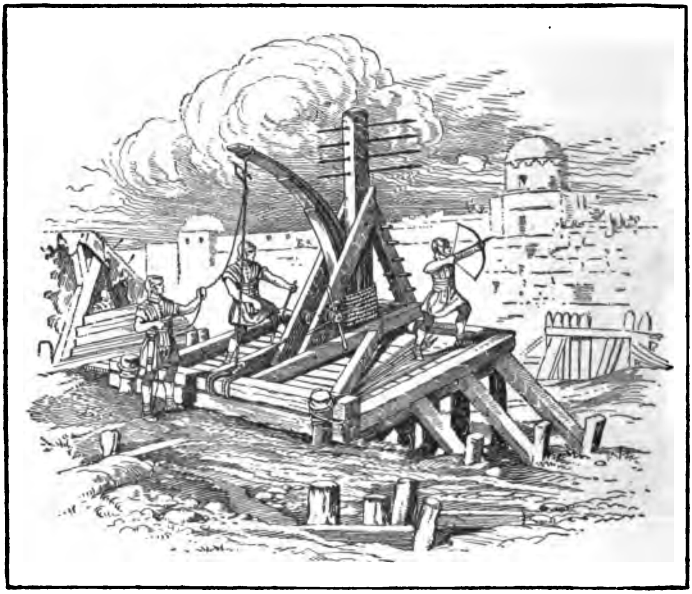


THE CLIFFS OF DOVER

(ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons oppose the landing of the Romans

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod



A LARGE CATAPULT (*TORMENTUM*)

nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī



LANDING OF THE ROMANS ON THE COAST OF BRITAIN

perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

Cæsar tries to drive them away

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.



EAGLE BEARER

Valor of a Roman standard bearer

Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

The Romans land and the Britons flee

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant; atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

British envoys sue for peace. Cæsar grants it

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent,

ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

A storm drives back the cavalry transports

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coörta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Wind and tide dash the fleet on the British coast

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deërant

quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

These disasters encourage the Britons to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deësse intellegerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, — quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, — optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere; quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Cæsar suspects their design and prepares accordingly

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

Part of his men gather grain, others guard the camp

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

The Britons attack a foraging party

Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

The Britons' mode of fighting with war chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum

habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The foragers are rescued. The Britons gather a great army

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt.

Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

They are defeated and their country is laid waste

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt

ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cæsar demands hostages and returns to Gaul

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.



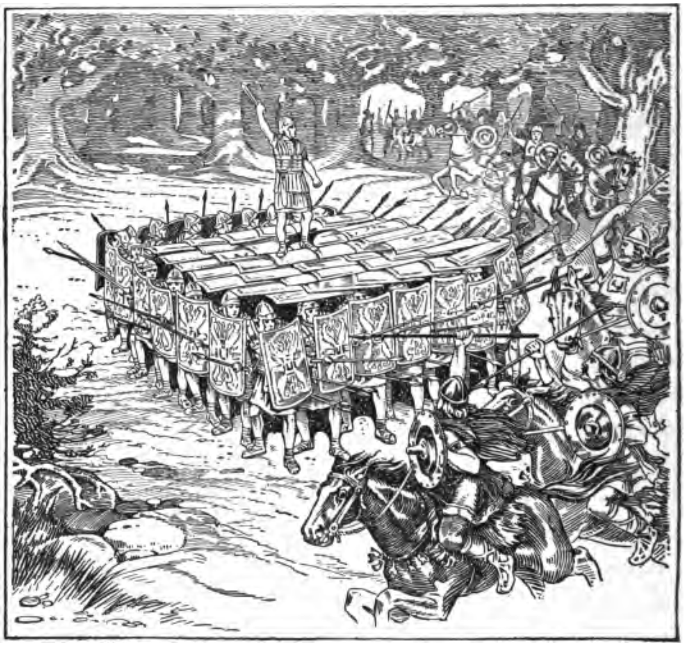
CAVALRYMAN CHARGING

THE REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII

The Morini attack Cæsar's troops

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter CCC atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum

illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia VI convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim



ORBIS MILITUM

nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucīs volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

They are subdued. The Menapii hide away

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus quās ex Britanniā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Close of the campaign

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.



BOOK V

CÆSAR'S FIFTH CAMPAIGN, 54 B.C.

THE REBELLION IN NORTHERN GAUL

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1–39

Cæsar contemplates a second invasion of Britain in the following spring (54 B.C.). He orders the building of a suitable fleet, and goes to northern Italy and thence to Illyricum to settle disturbances there (1). On his return to Gaul he has the new fleet assemble at Port Itius. Trouble among the Treveri calls him thither (2). Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, rival chiefs of the Treveri, appeal to him (3). He settles the dispute in favor of Cingetorix (4).

Cæsar's troops assemble at Port Itius (5).

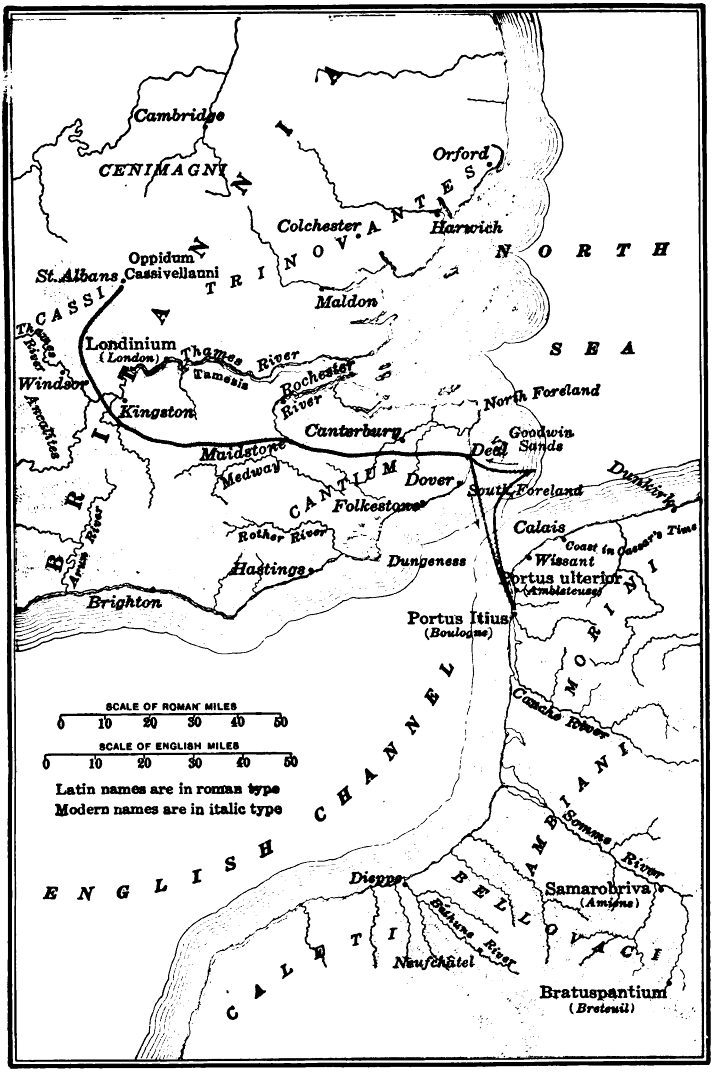
Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Hæduan, again appears and tries to make trouble (6). Cæsar is on his guard. Dumnorix flees, but is captured and put to death (7).

Cæsar sails for Britain with more than eight hundred ships. The natives withdraw from the coast (8). Cæsar lands, and drives the Britons out of their stronghold (9). A storm damages the fleet (10). Cæsar has the ships hastily repaired, and sends word to Labienus, whom he left on the continent, to build others (11).

Cæsar describes the inhabitants of Britain and the resources of the country (12). He tells the shape and the size of the island (13). He describes the customs of the people (14). He again defeats the Britons (15). He describes their methods of fighting (16). He again defeats them (17). He crosses the Thames (18). Various tribes yield to him (19–22).

Cæsar returns to Gaul and distributes his army for the winter (23, 24; the camps are shown on the map facing page 103). Fresh risings occur among the Gauls, with reverses for the Romans (25–37).

Ambiorix, a prince of the Eburones, persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to join the revolt (38). A large force attacks the camp of Quintus Cicero, the orator's brother (39).



THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.

Cicero makes vigorous preparations for resistance

MITTUNTUR ad Caesarem cōnfestim ab Cicerōne litterae, magnīs prōpositīs praemiīs sī pertulissent; obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē resistitur: hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn volnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur; pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō mīlitum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervian chiefs try to persuade Cicero to retire. He refuses

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: 'Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppugnārī.' Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs

per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: 'Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

They lay siege to the camp

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum xv in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

They make a furious assault, which is gallantly resisted

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coörtō ventō ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sīc utī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta

atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium volnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of two centurions

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs, quāque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Āvertit

hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huic rūrsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque diiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Summary of Chapters 45–47

Cicero makes efforts to inform Cæsar of his danger; but the letters are intercepted, and the messengers are put to death. After many days, when Cicero's forces are reduced almost to the last extremity, a message finally reaches Cæsar through a slave (45).

Cæsar sends directions to his lieutenants. He bids Crassus to come to him at once with one legion. He orders Fabius, with another legion, to advance into the territory of the Atrebates, where he intends to join him on the march. He sends word to Labienus to take one legion and proceed to the territory of the Nervii, if he thinks it wise to do so (46).

Cæsar advances, and meets Crassus, whom he leaves in command at Samarobriva (now Amiens), an important center of supplies. Continuing his march, he is joined by Fabius. Labienus writes to Cæsar of the danger in withdrawing one of his legions from winter quarters. He describes what has taken place among the Eburones, and says that he is threatened by the forces of the Treveri (47).

How a letter is conveyed to Cicero

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs

itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls abandon the siege and march against Cæsar, who avoids a conflict

49. Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat magnī perīculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem

sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium VII, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

Summary of Chapters 50 and 51

Mere skirmishes take place between the cavalry; for the Gauls are awaiting reënforcements, and Cæsar, through a pretense of fear, tries to draw the enemy to his own ground. At daybreak the Gallic cavalry approaches Cæsar's camp, and engages with his cavalry. Cæsar orders his cavalry to yield and retire to the camp, while throughout the camp he causes a display of fear (50).

The Gauls are now tempted to give battle, and boldly attack the camp. Cæsar orders a general sally, and routs the enemy with great loss (51).

Cæsar reaches the camp of Cicero, and congratulates him and his men on their gallant defense

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine volnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū

Sabīni et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Summary of Chapters 53–58

The report of Cæsar's victory reaches Labienus. When the Treveri hear what has taken place, Indutiomarus, their chief, defers his intended attack on Labienus. All signs now point to a general uprising of the Gauls, and Cæsar decides to spend the winter with his army (53).

Cæsar calls the chiefs of the states to him, and is able to restrain a large part of Gaul; but the Senones and other tribes are ready to revolt (54). The Treveri, led by Indutiomarus, lose no time in making preparations (55). Many tribes join Indutiomarus, and he decides to attack Labienus (56). Labienus acts cautiously. He keeps his forces within his fortifications, and uses whatever means he has to feign fear (57). By an unexpected sally he puts the enemy to flight. Indutiomarus is captured and slain. The forces of the Eburones and Nervii withdraw, and Gaul becomes more peaceful (58).

BOOK VI

CÆSAR'S SIXTH CAMPAIGN, 53 B.C.

THE SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

The campaign of 54 B.C. had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results. On his return Cæsar had found Gaul in a condition of revolt. In spite of some successes the advantage had been, on the whole, with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they received support from across the Rhine, a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check. His plans therefore included not only an invasion of the territory of the northern states, but also a second expedition into Germany.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1–8

On account of the critical situation in Gaul, Cæsar sends recruiting officers to Italy to raise fresh levies, and also requests Pompey, his fellow triumvir, to send him the forces which were enlisted during his consulship in Cisalpine Gaul. He particularly desires these reënforcements to impress the Gauls with the strength and resources of Rome. In response to his request three more legions are added to his forces in Gaul (1). Cæsar learns what the Treveri and others are doing, and hastens his plans (2).

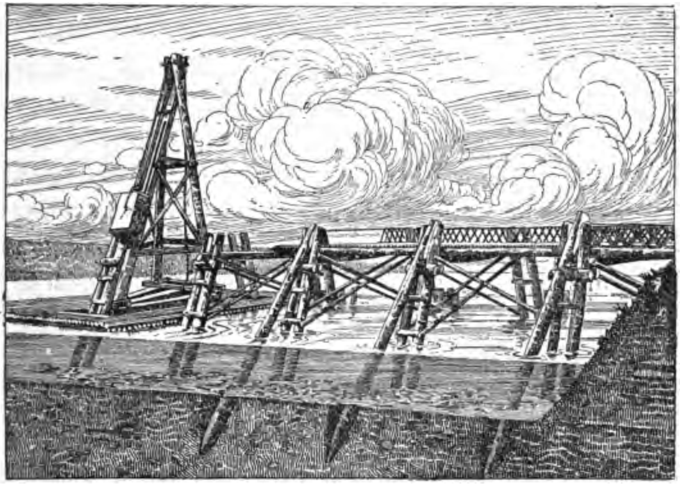
His first move is a swift inroad into the territory of the Nervii, whose fields he lays waste. Then he sets out against the Senones and Carnutes, and receives the submission of both states without a battle (3, 4). He next makes a swift march without baggage into the country of the Menapii, the most northerly of the Gallic peoples, and the ones who alone have failed to send ambassadors to him. They withdraw into their swamps and forests, but Cæsar follows them, ravaging their country, until ambassadors are sent to make peace (5, 6).

While Cæsar is thus engaged, the Treveri make preparation to attack Labienus, who is wintering in their territories. Timely reënforcements

permit Labienus to assume the offensive. He attacks the Treveri, while they are waiting for promised help from the Germans, and after destroying their forces takes possession of their country (7, 8).

Cæsar builds his second bridge across the Rhine

CAESAR postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs



CÆSAR'S BRIDGE OVER THE RHINE

cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne, magnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur.

He crosses, and spares the Ubii

Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem

vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquīrit.

The Ubii inform Cæsar that the Suebi are assembling their forces

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cognitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs, inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs, ad inīquam pugnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant.

Scouts report that the Suebi have retreated to the Bacenis forest

Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermissīs referunt: 'Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā magnitūdine, quae appellētur Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'

A digression on the Gauls and Germans is announced

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere.

The political organization of the Gauls

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae sunt in duās partēs.

The factional struggle between the Hædui and Sequani

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterīus factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterīus Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant, eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim

occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Dīviciācus auxilī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat.

The favor of Cæsar gives the Hædui the supremacy

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant.

The Remi hold the second place

In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

The Gallic nobility and the common people

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

The druids hold the religious and judicial power

Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant, neque eīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

Their organization and their meetings

Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs, dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur; et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Their prerogatives and system of education

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā

sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur : quod neque in volgus disciplīnam efferrī velint neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre — quod ferē plērīsque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant.

Their beliefs

In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights do the fighting

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

The Gauls are superstitious and offer human sacrifices

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus; atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō



A DRUID SACRIFICE

victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut latrōciniō aut aliā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods whom the Gauls worship

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere.

To Mars they give the spoils of war

Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent. Cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Time is measured by the number of nights

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

There is no open association between boys and their fathers

In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs and funeral rites

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sīcut in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspīciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt.

Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īnferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

All news is first reported to the magistrates

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant; quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

The customs of the Germans are very different from those of the Gauls

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs labōrī ac dūritiae student.

Agriculture is discouraged. Land is held in common and apportioned yearly by the magistrates and leading men

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōnsuētūdine

captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

They glory in wide frontiers of deserted land

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere: simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō.

They give great power to their chiefs

Cum bellum cīvitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

They rob outsiders, but respect guests

Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs cuiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque hīs rērum posteā



EARLY GERMANS

"Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit"

fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sānctōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

Summary of Chapters 24–44

The Gauls were once more valorous than the Germans, and sent colonies across the Rhine; but now they are inferior to them (24). The Hercynian forest and its animals are described (25–28).

Cæsar returns to Gaul and proceeds against Ambiorix, who has the good fortune to escape (29, 30). The forces of Ambiorix disband, and withdraw to the forest and marshes (31).

Cæsar marches to Aduatuca, and puts Quintus Cicero in command there (32). He then divides his forces, and proceeds to search for Ambiorix (33). Having learned of the difficulties before him, he seeks alliance with Gallic tribes against the Eburones, the people of Ambiorix (34).

The Sugambri, a German tribe near the Rhine, cross the river to join in plundering the Eburones, and advance toward Cicero's camp (35). Cicero unwisely sends out large numbers of his men to forage (36). The Germans assault the camp and cause a panic (37). Publius Sextius Baculus again distinguishes himself (38). The foragers return, and reach the camp with some difficulty and loss (39, 40). The Germans lose hope and withdraw. Cæsar arrives. Ambiorix again escapes (41, 42).

Cæsar inflicts further military severities on the resisting tribes. He then distributes his legions in winter quarters and sets out for Italy (43, 44).

BOOK VII

CÆSAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN, 52 B.C.

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

General movement among the Gauls for independence

QUIĒTĀ Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede; dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere vidēbātur) retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiīs dēposcunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. In prīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine

praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes begin the revolt. Rapid spread of the news

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanciātur petunt, conlātīs mīlitāribus signīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius reī cōnstitūtō, a conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt, cīvēsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque inlūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, takes the lead

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, — cuius pater prīncipātum

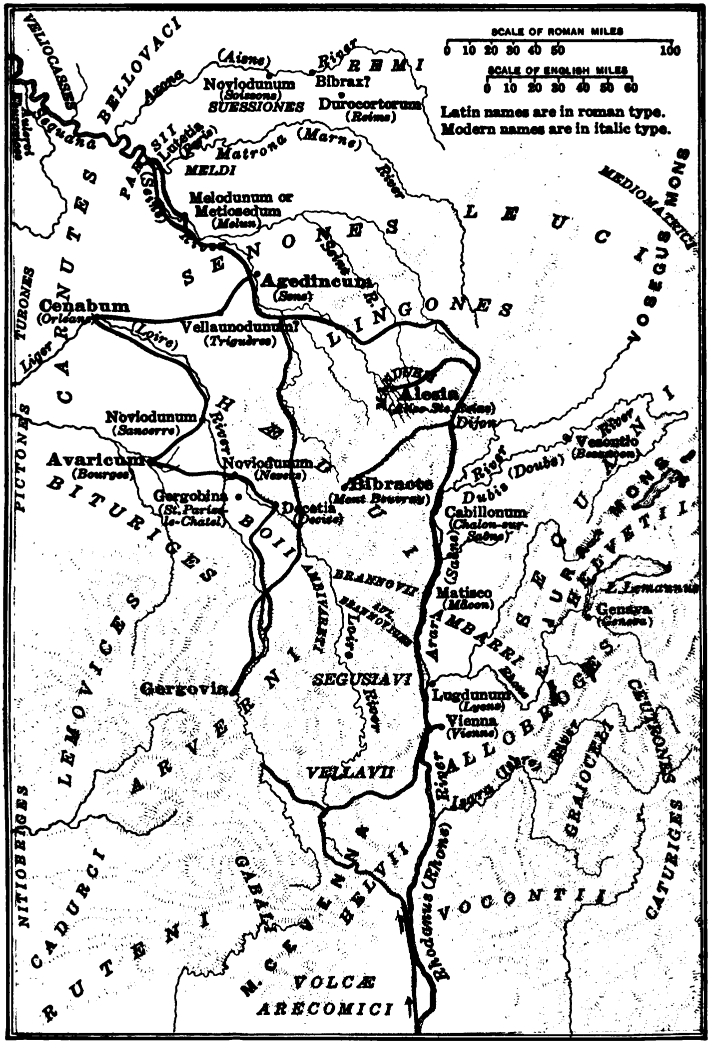
tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum adpetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, — convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant; magnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōqueversus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.



STATUE OF VERCINGETORIX

Many tribes join his standard

Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 52 B.C.

iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; in prīmīs equitātuī studet.

He maintains severe discipline

Summae dīligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; magnitūdine supplicī dubitantēs cōgit: nam maiōre commissō dēlictō ignī atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et magnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He invades the country of the Bituriges, who ask the Hædui to send them assistance

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

The Hædui fail them, and so, unable to resist, they join Vercingetorix

Haeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī, domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsilī fuisse cognōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod

nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

Cæsar leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul

6. Hīs rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

He proceeds to Narbo to counteract the plans of Lucterius

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit, et magnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

Cæsar crosses the Cévennes Mountains through the snow. Vercingetorix goes to protect the Arverni

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab

Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, discussā nive in altitūdinem pedum VI atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum labōre ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs existimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant.



COIN OF BRUTUS AND ALBINUS

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Cæsar leaves Brutus in command and seeks reënforcements. Vercingetorix moves toward Gorgobina, a town of the Boii

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīge ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam maximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte

praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cognitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre īnstituit.

Cæsar, though much perplexed, determines to relieve the Boii

10. Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Haeduōrum expugnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

Summary of Chapters 11–62

Cæsar takes two towns near the Loire (11). Noviodunum surrenders; but when the inhabitants see Vercingetorix approaching, they prepare for defense (12). Cæsar takes Noviodunum, and marches toward Avaricum (13). Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste their country, and thus keep the Romans from supplies (14). The Gauls burn many of their cities, but spare Avaricum (15, 16). The Roman soldiers suffer from lack of food, but maintain a resolute spirit (17). Cæsar marches to engage with Vercingetorix (18). But he finds him too strongly intrenched to warrant an attack (19).

Vercingetorix is accused of treason; but he clears himself, and appeals to his countrymen (20, 21). The Gauls defend Avaricum with much skill against the Roman works (22, 23). They set fire to the Roman works, and make a sortie, displaying great heroism (24, 25). They finally decide to abandon Avaricum, but are dissuaded by the women (26). The Romans storm the walls and take the town. Most of the inhabitants are put to the sword (27, 28).

Vercingetorix appeals to the Gauls to continue the war (29). His appeal inspires them to further efforts, and he levies new troops (30, 31).

The Hædui appeal to Cæsar to settle a dispute (32). Cæsar goes to them in person (33). He then sends Labienus northward, and he himself proceeds to Gergovia (34, 35). Here he gains an advantage of position over Vercingetorix (36).

Some of the Hædui organize a revolt (37). Litaviccus, commander of the Hæduan contingent, halts his troops at some distance from Gergovia, and persuades them to desert the Roman cause (38). Eporedorix, a Hæduan, conveys the news to Cæsar (39). Cæsar goes to the Hædui and suppresses the revolt (40). He then hastens back to Gergovia to relieve Fabius (41). Further plots are made among the Gauls (42). The Hædui seek reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not cease plotting (43).

Cæsar now devotes himself to the capture of Gergovia (44). He skillfully arranges his troops, and by a sudden attack captures the enemy's camp. His troops are eager to assault the town (45–47). The Gauls receive reënforcements (48). After a close and doubtful struggle the Romans are driven back. Cæsar reproves them for their too great eagerness, but praises their courage (49–52). After some skirmishing Cæsar advances toward the Hædui (53). He is confirmed in his suspicion that the Hædui mean to revolt, but tries to dissuade them (54). Eporedorix and Viridomarus kill the Roman garrison at Noviodunum, destroy Cæsar's stores, and burn the town (55). Cæsar crosses to the north side of the Loire (56).

Labienus marches toward Lutetia, and is opposed by Camulogenus, a chief of the Aulerci (57). Labienus falls back to Metiosedum, which he captures. He is followed by the enemy (58). He now learns of Cæsar's repulse at Gergovia, and of the spread of the Gallic revolt (59). By a stratagem he induces the Gauls to divide their forces, and having attacked and routed them, he joins Cæsar (60–62).

Further extension of the revolt. Vercingetorix appointed commander in chief by a general vote. The Hædui dissatisfied

63. Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requīrunt; neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercingetorīgī pārent.

Vercingetorix lays extensive plans to spread the revolt and weaken the Romans

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs; dēnique eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre;

aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Cæsar sends to Germany for cavalry

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helvii suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur, et C. Valeriō Donnotaurō, Caburī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs magnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix addresses a council of cavalry officers, urging an attack on the Romans. They eagerly assent

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx cōnsēdit; convocātīsque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī; maiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.' Conclāmant equitēs: 'Sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

The attack is made, and the Gauls are defeated with considerable loss

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō agmine iter impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque



DEFEAT OF VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE

A Cæsar's camp the night before the battle
B The three camps of Vercingetorix
C The Roman column of march at the time of the attack
D The Gallic lines of infantry
E Cæsar's camp the night after the battle
F Cæsar's Roman cavalry
G Cæsar's German cavalry
H The Gallic cavalry

equitātum tripartītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferrī Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilī cōnfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitavī proximīs comitiīs habuerat; et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat; et Eporēdorīx, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia, which Cæsar determines to invest

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū (quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant) erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.



ALISE-SAINTE-REINE (ALESIA)

Description of Alesia and its defenses

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur. Cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A cavalry battle in the plain. The Gauls are defeated with great slaughter

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn

minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry and calls for help from without

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam eīs quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 72–90

The last chapters of the seventh book (72–90) describe the siege and capture of Alesia. Froude says of this achievement: "The most daring feat in the military annals of mankind had been successfully accomplished. A Roman army which could not at the utmost have amounted to fifty thousand men had held blockaded an army of eighty thousand, not weak

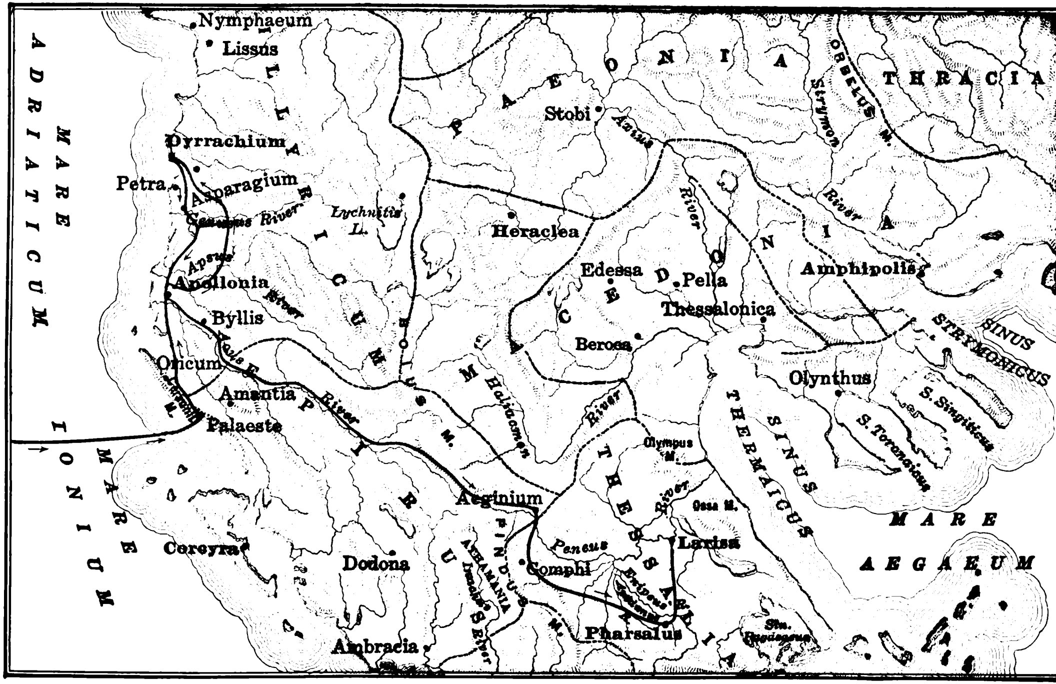
Asiatics, but European soldiers, as strong and as brave individually as the Italians were; and they had defeated, beaten, and annihilated another army which had come expecting to overwhelm them, five times as large as their own."

Plutarch describes the surrender as follows:

"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate and rode round Cæsar, who was seated; then he dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The fate remaining for this gallant patriot, who lacked only success to be hailed as the savior of his country, was to be kept in chains for six years, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. A gigantic statue in his memory stands to-day on the heights of Alesia (see p. 152). Cæsar's own narration closes with the surrender of Vercingetorix. The remainder of the story of the Gallic War is told in the eighth book by Cæsar's faithful officer and friend, Aulus Hirtius.

After the fall of Alesia, sporadic attempts at revolt in various parts of Gaul were put down, and a final rally of the patriotic party at the stronghold of Uxellodunum was crushed. Cæsar then invited the chiefs of the tribes to come to him, told them of the great future that lay before them as members of a splendid imperial state, and gave them magnificent presents. He so impressed them by his gracious clemency that they served him faithfully thereafter, and never again made an effort to recover their independence.



CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 48 B.C.

THE CIVIL WAR

BOOK III

CHAPTERS 82–112

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA AND THE BEGINNING OF THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR, 48 B.C.

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly

POMPĒIUS paucīs post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit cōntiōnātusque apud cūnctum exercitum suīs agit grātiās, Scīpiōnis mīlitēs cohortātur ut partā iam victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, receptīsque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum Scīpiōne honōrem partītur classicumque apud eum canī et alterum illī iubet praetōrium tendī.

The soldiers are confident of victory

Auctīs cōpiīs Pompēī duōbusque magnīs exercitibus coniūnctīs prīstina omnium cōnfīrmātur opīniō et spēs victōriae augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, id morārī reditum in Italiam vidērētur, et, sī quandō quid Pompēius tardius aut cōnsīderātius faceret, ūnīus esse negōtium diēī, sed illum dēlectārī imperiō et cōnsulārēs praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dīcerent.

They quarrel over the division of the expected booty

Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiīs ac sacerdōtiīs contendēbant in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfīniēbant, aliī domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant;

magnaque inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportēretne Lūcīlī Hirrī, quod is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximīs comitiīs praetōriīs absentis ratiōnem habērī, cum eius necessāriī fidem implōrārent Pompēī, praestāret quod proficīscentī recēpisset, nē per eius auctōritātem dēceptus vidērētur, reliquī, in labōre parī ac perīculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing; sound
cīvīlis, -e, civil; of citizens
classicum, -ī, *n.*, signal; trumpet
cōnsīderātus, -a, -um, *part. as adj.*, with deliberation
cōnsulāris, -e, of consular rank
cōntiōnor, -ārī, -ātus, harangue, make an address
dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, determine
Hirrus, -ī, *m.*, Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, produce; gain
Parthī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians
particeps, -cipis, *m.*, sharer
praetōrium, -ī, *n.*, a general's tent
praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, prætorian; *masc. as noun*, ex-prætor
sacerdōtium, -ī, *n.*, priesthood
Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Cæcilius Metellus Pius Scipio, colleague of Pompey
Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly

3. **partā iam victōriā**: 'as if the victory had already been gained.' 6. **apud eum**: 'at his quarters.' 7. **tendī**: 'to be set up' (lit. 'stretched'). 12. **tardius aut cōnsīderātius**: 'rather slowly or deliberately.' 14. **servōrum habēre numerō**: 'regarded as slaves.' 16. **in annōs**: 'for succeeding years.' 18. **oportēretne Lūcīlī Hirrī . . . absentis ratiōnem habērī**: 'whether Lucilius Hirrus ought to be considered in his absence.' 21. **praestāret . . . recēpisset**: 'that he should fulfill that which he had guaranteed to him at his departure.' 22. **eius**: i.e. Pompey's. 24. **recūsārent**: 'made objection.'

The officers revile each other

83. Iam dē sacerdōtiō Caesaris Domitius, Scīpiō Spintherque Lentulus cotīdiānīs contentiōnibus ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiam dignitātemque iactāret, Scīpiō adfīnitāte Pompēī cōnfīderet.

Postulāvit etiam L. Afrānium prōditiōnis exercitūs Acūtius Rūfus apud Pompēium, quod gestum in Hispāniā dīceret.

Domitius suggests a plan for future vengeance on their enemies

Et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dīxit placēre sibi bellō cōnfectō ternās tabellās darī ad iūdicandum eīs quī ōrdinis essent senātōriī bellōque ūnā cum ipsīs interfuissent, sententiāsque dē singulīs ferrent quī Rōmae remānsissent quīque intrā praesidia Pompēī fuissent neque operam in rē mīlitārī praestitissent; ūnam fore tabellam quī līberandōs omnī perīculō cēnsērent; alteram quī capitis damnārent; tertiam quī pecūniā multārent.

In their greed for spoils they forget that the victory is yet to be won

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suīs aut dē praemiīs pecūniae aut dē persequendīs inimīcitiīs agēbant, nec quibus ratiōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victōriā dēbērent cōgitābant.

Acūtius, -ī, *m.*, Acutius Rufus, mentioned only here

Afrānius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Afranius, a lieutenant of Pompey

Domitius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, a supporter of Pompey

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, punish (by fine)

senātōrius, -a, -um, senatorial

Spinther, -eris, *m.*, Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, one of Pompey's officers

tabella, -ae, *f.*, tablet, ballot

1. **sacerdōtiō**: Cæsar's office as pontifex maximus. 3. **cum . . . ostentāret**: 'Lentulus urging the respect due to his age.' 4. **urbānam grātiam dignitātemque**: 'his influence and standing in the city.' 5. **adfīnitāte**: Pompey had married Scipio's daughter. 6. **Postulāvit . . . exercitūs**: 'accused of betraying the army.' 9. **ad iūdicandum**: 'for voting.' 10. **sententiās . . . quī**: 'that they should express their opinions on each one of those who' etc. The antecedent of *quī* is (*eīs*) *singulīs*. 13. **līberandōs**: refers to *quī Romae remānsissent* etc. 14. **quī capitis damnārent**: 'who would inflict the death penalty.' With verbs of condemning etc. the penalty is expressed sometimes by the genitive (as *capitis*) and sometimes by the ablative (as *pecūniā* in the same line). — **quī pecūniā multārent**: 'who would inflict a fine.' 16. **agēbant**: 'wrangled.'

Cæsar vainly offers battle several days in succession

84. Rē frūmentāriā praeparātā cōnfīrmātīsque mīlitibus et satis longō spatiō temporis a Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs intermissō, quō satis perspectum habēre mīlitum animum vidērētur, tentandum Caesar exīstimāvit quidnam Pompēius prōpositī aut voluntātis ad dīmicandum habēret. Itaque ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit, aciemque īnstrūxit, prīmō suīs locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompēī longius, continentibus vērō diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs collibusque Pompēiānīs aciem subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōnfīrmātiōrem eius exercitum efficiēbat.

Being inferior in cavalry, he trains a mixed force of light-armed infantry and horse

Superius tamen īnstitūtum in equitibus, quod dēmōnstrāvimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset īnferior, adulēscentēs atque expedītōs ex antesignānīs ēlēctīs ad pernīcitātem armīs inter equitēs proeliārī iubēret, quī cotīdiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque eius generis proeliōrum perciperent. Hīs erat rēbus effectum ut equitum mīlle etiam apertiōribus locīs VII mīlium Pompēiānōrum impetum, cum adesset ūsus, sustinēre audērent neque magnopere eōrum multitūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proelium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex duōbus quōs perfūgisse ad Pompēium suprā docuimus cum quibusdam interfēcit.

antesignānus, **-ī**, *m.*, a soldier fighting in the first line
Dyrrachīnus, **-a**, **-um**, of Dyrrachium
pernīcitās, **-ātis**, *f.*, swiftness
Pompēiānus, **-a**, **-um**, of Pompey
tentō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, make trial

3. **quō . . . vidērētur**: a descriptive clause. The antecedent of *quō* is *spatiō*. 4. **quidnam . . . habēret**: 'what purpose or wish Pompey entertained



CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR CONSUL

for the combat.' 6. **suīs locīs**: 'ground of his own choosing.' 7. **continentibus vērō diēbus**: 'but during successive days'; contrasting with *prīmō* above. 8. **collibus Pompēiānīs**: 'the hills occupied by Pompey's men.' 11. **Superius . . . īnstitūtum**: 'the former arrangement.' 12. **ut . . . iubēret**: in apposition with *īnstitūtum*. 13. **ēlēctīs ad pernīcitātem armīs**: 'equipment chosen with reference to speed' (i.e. light armor). 16. **perciperent**: 'acquired.' 21. **suprā docuimus**: 'I have said above' (i.e. in a preceding chapter).

Despairing of a battle, Cæsar decides to break camp

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īnfimās rādīcēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns, sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar, nūllā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī posse Pompēium exīstimāns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dīmicandī nancīscerētur et īnsolitum ad labōrem Pompēī exercitum cotīdiānīs itineribus dēfatīgāret.

Pompey unexpectedly offers battle. Cæsar addresses his troops and leads them forth

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus signō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs, animadversum est paulō ante extrā cotīdiānam cōnsuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēī prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dīmicārī vidērētur. Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, "Differendum est," inquit, "iter in praesentiā nōbīs et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sīcut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō sīmus ad dīmicandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus"; cōnfestimque expedītās cōpiās ēdūcit.

dētendō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsus, take down (a tent) (*lit.* unstretch)

ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitus, entice out, draw out

insolitus, -a, -um, unaccustomed, unused

tunc, *adv.*, then, thereupon, forthwith

3. **sē subiceret**: 'would advance' ('would expose himself'). 6. **semperque . . . itineribus**: 'keep constantly on the move.' 8. **commodiōre . . . ūterētur**: 'avail himself of supplies more advantageously.' 12. **extrā**: 'contrary to.' 14. **nōn inīquō**: i.e. to Cæsar.

Pompey, relying on his cavalry, is confident of an easy victory. He explains his plan of attack

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dīxerat, priusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērīque admīrātī, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem cōnsilī meī accipite, quō fīrmiōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs, idque mihi factūrōs cōnfīrmāvērunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō adgrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine perīculō legiōnum et paene sine volnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parātī in posterum et, quoniam fieret dīmicandī potestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opīniōnem fallerent.

7. **quō . . . prōdeātis**: clause of purpose. 9. **sit accessum**: impersonal. 10. **prius**: to be construed with *quam*. 15. **in posterum**: 'for the future.'—**ut**: 'as.' 16. **ūsū manūque**: i.e. in the actual test of their prowess; opposed to *cōgitāvissent*.—**reliquōrum**: 'the rest' (of their comrades who were not present).

Labienus follows, and speaks with contempt of Cæsar's army

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit et, cum Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompēī cōnsilium summīs laudibus efferret, "Nōlī," inquit, "exīstimāre, Pompēī, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvīcerit. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs, neque temerē incognitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua pars illīus exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliīs fuit necesse, multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōnsūmpsit, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in continentī. An nōn audīstis ex eīs quī per causam valētūdinis remānsērunt cohortēs esse Brundisī factās? Hae cōpiae quās vidētis ex dēlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērīque sunt ex colōniīs Trānspadānīs. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris duōbus proeliīs Dyrrachīnīs interiit."

All swear never to return to camp unless victorious

Haec cum dīxisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum, reliquōsque ut idem facerent hortātus est. Hoc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec cum facta sunt in cōnsiliō, magnā spē et laetitiā omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiēbant, quod dē rē tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfīrmārī vidēbātur.

autumnus, -ī, *m.*, autumn
Brundisium, -ī, *n.*, Brundisium, a seaport in southern Italy
laetitia, -ae, *f.*, gladness, joy
pestilentia, -ae, *f.*, scourge, pestilence
Trānspadānus, -a, -um, dwelling across the Po

1. **excēpit**: 'followed' (in speaking).—**cum . . . dēspiceret (et) efferret**: 'while he depreciated . . . (and) extolled.' 3. **quī . . . dēvīcerit**: clause of description. 9. **continentī**: i.e. Italy.—**ex eīs**: construe with *esse factās*. 13. **quod fuit rōboris**: 'what strength there was'; *rōboris*, partitive genitive. 18. **discessum est**: impersonal, but translate, 'they departed.'

Formation of Pompey's line of battle

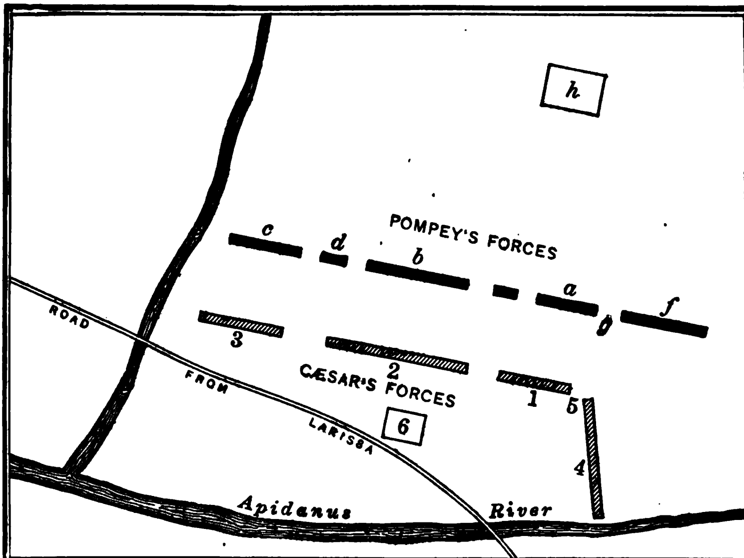
88. Caesar, cum Pompēī castrīs adpropinquāsset, ad hunc modum aciem eius īnstrūctam animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēnsiōnis ex senātūs cōnsultō; quārum ūna prīma, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūncta cum cohortibus Hispānīs, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās fīrmissimās sē habēre Pompēius exīstimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat numerōque cohortēs CX explēverat. Haec erant mīlia XLV, ēvocātōrum circiter duo, quae ex beneficiāriīs superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs VII in castrīs propinquīsque castellīs praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impedītīs rīpīs mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūnctum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū obiēcerat.

beneficiārius,-ī, *m.*, a soldier exempt from menial duties; a favorite
Ciliciēnsis, -e, Cilician
Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria

1. **ad hunc modum**: 'after this fashion.' 4. **ex senātūs cōnsultō**: 'by a decree of the senate.' 5. **Mediam aciem**: 'the middle of the line.' 7. **trāductās**: sc. *esse*. 8. **Hās . . . exīstimābat**: 'Pompey considered these the steadiest that he had.' 10. **numerō**: ablative of respect. 14. **praesidiō**: dative of purpose. 15. **impedītīs**: 'presenting obstructions.'

Formation of Cæsar's line of battle

89. Caesar superius īnstitūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsī erat Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs vehementer attenuāta, et huic sīc adiūnxit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX



EXPLANATION

POMPEY'S LINE OF BATTLE

a Two legions turned over to Pompey by Cæsar before the Civil War began
b The center, commanded by Scipio
c The right wing, consisting of the Cilician legion in conjunction with the cohorts brought from Spain by Afranius
d The remaining cohorts
e A river
f The left wing, consisting of the cavalry commanded by Labienus, the archers and slingers
g Pompey
h Pompey's camp, guarded by seven cohorts

CÆSAR'S LINE OF BATTLE

1 The right wing, consisting of the tenth legion, commanded by Sulla
2 The center, commanded by Domitius
3 The left wing, consisting of the eighth and ninth legions, commanded by Antony
4 The fourth line, of six cohorts, designed to protect the right wing against Pompey's cavalry
5 Cæsar, opposite Pompey
6 Cæsar's camp, guarded by two cohorts

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA, 48 B.C.

cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs duās castrīs praesidiō relīquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs quārtam īnstituit equitātuīque opposuit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque eius diēī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul tertiae aciēī tōtīque exercituī imperāvit nē iniussū suō concurreret; sē, cum id fierī vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Antōnius, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Antonius, the famous triumvir; served in the Civil War under Cæsar and was one of his active partisans

attenuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make thin; lessen

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *lit.* stand together; **cōnstat**, depend upon (*with* **in**)

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Publius Cornelius Sulla, an officer of Cæsar; nephew of Sulla, the great dictator

8. **praeposuerat**: 'had placed in command.' We should expect datives with the accusatives. 14. **cōnstāre**: 'depended upon.'

Cæsar reminds his men of his efforts for peace, then gives the signal for battle

90. Exercitum cum mīlitārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetuī temporis officia praedicāret, imprīmīs commemorāvit 'testibus sē mīlitibus ūtī posse quantō studiō pācem petīsset; quae per Vatīnium in conloquiīs, quae per Aulum Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset; quibus modīs ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendīs lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī mīlitum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū prīvāre voluisse.' Hāc habitā ōrātiōne exposcentibus mīlitibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā signum dedit.

abūtor, -ūtī, -ūsus, sacrifice
alteruter, -tra, -trum, either
Libō, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Scribonius Libo, father-in-law of Sextus Pompey
Ōricum, -ī, *n.*, Oricum, a town of Illyricum
Vatīnius, -ī, *m.*, Publius Vatinius, a subordinate of Cæsar

2. **sua . . . officia**: 'his constant services to it.' 3. **testibus . . . posse**: 'he could call his soldiers to witness.' 4. **in conloquiīs**: 'to gain a conference' (with Labienus). 6. **contendisset**: 'he had striven.'

Heroism of Crastinus, a veteran volunteer

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hic signō datō, "Sequiminī mē," inquit, "manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī quam cōnstituistis operam date. Ūnum hoc proelium superest; quō cōnfectō, et ille suam dignitātem et nōs nostram lībertātem recuperābimus." Simul respiciēns Caesarem, "Faciam," inquit, "hodiē, imperātor, ut aut vīvō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās." Haec cum dīxisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit, atque eum ēlēctī mīlitēs circiter cxx voluntāriī eiusdem centuriae sunt prōsecūtī.

centuria, -ae, *f.*, century, a company of nominally a hundred men
Crāstinus, -ī, *m.*, Crastinus
hodiē, *adv.*, to-day
manipulāris, -is, *m.*, comrade (of the same maniple)
voluntārius, -ī, *m.*, volunteer

2. **prīmum pīlum . . . dūxerat**: 'had been primipilus' etc. 5. **quam . . . date**: 'exert yourselves as you have resolved' (lit. 'give the service which you have resolved upon'). 6. **ille**: i.e. Cæsar. 8. **ut . . . agās**: 'that you will thank me whether alive or dead.'

Pompey does not charge, but awaits Cæsar's attack

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatī, ut satis esset ad concursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suīs praedīxerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō

movērent, aciemque eius distrahī paterentur; idque admonitū C. Triārī fēcisse dīcēbātur, ut prīmus excursus vīsque mīlitum īnfringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suīs ōrdinibus dispositī dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat in locō retentīs mīlitibus quam sī ipsī immissīs tēlīs occucurrissent; simul fore ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris mīlitēs exanimārentur et lassitūdine cōnficerentur.

He is criticized for so doing

Quod nōbīs quidem nūllā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō vidētur, propterea quod est quaedam animī incitātiō atque alacritās nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus īnstitūtum est ut signa undique concinerent clāmōremque ūniversī tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs incitārī exīstimāvērunt.

admonitus, -ūs, *m.*, advice
concinō, -ere, -uī, ——, sound together
distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, stretch out; break
excursus, -ūs, *m.*, dash
incitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, enthusiasm
īnfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, break
innātus, -a, -um, *part. of* **innāscor,** inborn
nātūrāliter, *adv.*, naturally
praedīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, say beforehand; command beforehand, advise
Triārius, -ī, *m.*, Caius Valerius Triarius

3. **ut . . . exciperent**: 'to await Cæsar's attack.' 4. **distrahī**: 'to be thrown into disorder.' 6. **in . . . dispositī**: 'and that they (i.e. the Pompeians) remaining in their ranks.' 7. **leviusque . . . spērābat**: 'he hoped that the javelins would fall with less effect' (lit. 'more lightly'). 8. **retentīs mīlitibus**: ablative absolute with conditional force. — **immissīs . . . occucurrissent**: 'should charge against the missiles that were hurled against them.' 11. **nōbīs**: 'to me,' i.e. Cæsar. — **nūllā ratiōne**: 'with no good reason.' 13. **nātūrāliter . . . omnibus**: 'implanted by nature in all.' 14. **neque . . . īnstitūtum est**: 'nor was it a vain institution of our ancestors.'

Cæsar's men advance, halt to get breath, then charge

93. Sed nostrī mīlitēs datō signō cum īnfēstīs pīlīs prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn concurrī ā Pompēiānīs, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnīs exercitātī suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt, nē cōnsūmptīs vīribus adpropinquārent, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat praeceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt.

Pompey's infantry receives the attack bravely. His cavalry attempts a flank movement

Neque vērō Pompēiānī huic reī dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs cōnservārunt pīlīsque missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēī cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitūdō sagittāriōrum sē prōfūdit; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompēī hōc ācrius īnstāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumīre coepērunt.

Cæsar's fourth line stampedes Pompey's cavalry, destroys the archers and slingers, and attacks the left wing in the rear

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēī, quam īnstituerat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illī celeriter prōcucurrērunt īnfēstīsque signīs tantā vī in Pompēī equitēs impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret omnēsque conversī nōn sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus submōtīs omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt.

Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānīs circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortī.

explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, unfold; extend

īnfēstus, -a, -um, hostile; in hostile array, *i.e.* with weapons and standards advanced

prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *with* **sē,** rush forward

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictus, draw

turmātim, *adv.*, by squadrons

1. **cum**: conjunction. 2. **concurrī**: impersonal. 3. **ūsū . . . exercitātī**: 'skilled through practice and trained in former battles.' 8. **huic reī dēfuērunt**: 'lack resources to meet these tactics.' 24. **etiam tum**: 'even under these circumstances.'

Cæsar's third line enters the action. Pompey's infantry breaks and flees

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque integrī dēfessīs successissent, aliī autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit, quīn ab eīs cohortibus quae contrā equitātum in quārtā aciē conlocātae essent, initium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs mīlitibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim prīmum equitātus est pulsus, ab eīsdem factae caedēs sagittāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab eīsdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum.

Pompey quits the field, flees to the camp, and retires into his tent in utter despair

Sed Pompēius, ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem cui maximē cōnfīdēbat perterritum animadvertit, aliīs quoque diffīsus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra

equō contulit et eīs centuriōnibus quōs in statiōne ad praetōriam portam posuerat, clārē, ut mīlitēs exaudīrent, "Tuēminī," inquit, "castra et dēfendite dīligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia cōnfīrmō." Haec cum dīxisset, sē in praetōrium contulit summae reī diffīdēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

clārē, *adv.*, loudly, clearly, distinctly

diffīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, distrust, not have confidence

3. **dēfessīs successissent:** 'had come to the support of those who were exhausted.' 5. **Caesarem fefellit:** 'escape Cæsar's notice.' 7. **ut:** 'as.' 12. **ut:** 'when.' 14. **aliīs . . . diffīsus:** 'having no confidence in the others.' 17. **sī quid dūrius acciderit:** 'if it goes too hard with us.' 18. **circumeō:** translate as future; also *cōnfīrmō*. 20. **summae reī diffīdēns:** 'apprehensive of the issue.'

Cæsar follows up his advantage and attacks the camp

95. Caesar Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs nūllum spatium perterritīs dare oportēre exīstimāns, mīlitēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū (nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī imperiō pāruērunt.

The camp is taken and its defenders flee

Castra ā cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius a Thrācibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Nam quī aciē refūgerant mīlitēs, et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missīs plērīque armīs signīsque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vāllō cōnstiterant multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed cōnfectī volneribus locum relīquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs

ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, ——, flee, take refuge

industriē, *adv.*, with energy

Thrāx, -ācis, *m.*, a Thracian

3. **beneficiō**: 'favor.' 4. **magnō aestū**: ablative absolute.—**rēs erat perducta**: 'the contest had been prolonged.' 15. **ducibus . . . tribūnīsque**: 'under the leadership of the centurions and tribunes.'

Luxurious appointments of the camp

96. In castrīs Pompēī vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās, magnum argentī pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, Lūcī etiam Lentulī et nōn nūllōrum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriae fīdūciam dēsignārent, ut facile exīstimārī posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius diēī timuisse, quī nōn necessāriās conquīrerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercituī Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent.

Pompey with thirty horsemen escapes to the coast and embarks

Pompēius, iam cum intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētrāctīs īnsignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castrīs ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū equitum XXX ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscendit, saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum sē opīniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāsset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

comitātus, -ūs, *m.*, attendance; company

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, *part. of* **cōnsternō,** covered over, paved

hedera, -ae, *f.*, ivy
Lārīsa, -ae, *f.*, Larissa, a town in Thessaly
Lentulus, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Cornelius Lentulus
nimius, -a, -um, excessive
prōtēctus, -a, -um, *part. of* **prōtegō,** shielded
struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, erect, build
trichila, -ae, *f.*, arbor, summer-house

5. **victōriae fīdūciam**: 'confidence of victory.' 6. **nōn**: construe with *necessāriās*. 7. **conquīrerent**: subjunctive in a descriptive causal clause. 8. **lūxuriam obiciēbant**: 'imputed extravagance.' 9. **dēfuissent**: in a descriptive concessive clause. 11. **dētrāctīs . . . imperātōris**: 'stripping (from himself) the trappings of commander in chief.' 16. **tantum . . . fefellisse**: 'his expectations had so far failed him.' 18. **ab eō**: sc. *genere*.

Cæsar, leaving a guard at Pompey's camp and his own, pursues the retreating enemy with four legions

97. Caesar castrīs potītus, ā mīlitibus contendit nē in praedā occupātī reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circummūnīre īnstituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompēī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remīsit, IIII sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus mīlia passuum VI aciem īnstrūxit.

He besieges the remnants of Pompey's army on a mountain

Quā rē animadversā Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus, etsī tōtīus diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere illī dē dēditiōne missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt.

Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum eīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt.

aquor, -ārī, -ātus sum, get water
sēclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off
subluō, -ere, ——, -lūtus, flow at the foot of

1. **ā mīlitibus contendit:** 'earnestly entreated the soldiers.' 2. **reliquī negōtī gerendī:** 'of finishing the business.' 5. **iugīs eius:** 'along its ridges.' 9. **Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit:** 'started to intercept the Pompeians.'

They surrender and are pardoned. Cæsar goes to Larissa

98. Caesar prīmā lūce omnēs eōs quī in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passīsque palmīs prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit, mīlitibusque suīs commendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsīderārent. Hāc adhibitā dīligentiā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārīsam pervēnit.

recūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, refusal, objection
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus, rest

4. **passīsque palmīs:** 'and with outstretched hands.' 5. **pauca . . . locūtus:** 'speaking briefly' 6. **quō . . . timōre:** 'to alleviate their fear'; *quō* being equivalent to *ut* and *timōre* being ablative of description. 8. **neu quid suī dēsīderārent:** 'and that they should not suffer any loss'; *suī*, partitive genitive.

Cæsar's losses

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius CC mīlitēs dēsīderāvit, sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter XXX āmīsit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius

mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ōs adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficīscēns dīxerat. Sīc enim Caesar exīstimābat eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat.

Pompey's losses

Ex Pompēiānō exercitū circiter mīlia XV cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt amplius mīlia XXIIII (namque etiam cohortēs quae praesidiō in castellīs fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs refūgērunt; signaque mīlitāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta CLXXX et aquilae VIIII. L. Domitius ex castrīs in montem refugiēns, cum vīrēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

excellēns, -entis, *part. of* **excellō,** surpassing

falsus, -a, -um, untrue

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention

1. **dēsīderāvit:** 'he suffered the loss of' (lit. 'he missed'). 4. **gladiō . . . coniectō:** 'struck right in the face by a sword.' 5. **quod . . . dīxerat:** in chapter 91. 7. **optimē . . . meritum:** 'that he had most excellently served his (Cæsar's) interests.'

Cæsar pursues Pompey into Macedonia, where the latter tries to raise an army

102.[1] Caesar omnibus rēbus relictīs persequendum sibi Pompēium exīstimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā recēpisset, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum renovāre posset, et, quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere poterat, cotīdiē prōgrediēbatur, legiōnemque ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequī iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēī nōmine Amphipolī prōpositum, utī omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graecī cīvēsque Rōmānī, iūrandī causā convenīrent. Sed

[1] Chapters 100 and 101 are omitted.

utrum āvertendae suspīciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novīs dēlēctibus, sī nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārētur, exīstimārī nōn poterat.

At Cæsar's approach Pompey sails from Amphipolis

Ipse ad ancoram ūnā nocte cōnstitit et, vocātīs ad sē Amphipolī hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs corrogātā, cognitō Caesaris adventū, ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās paucīs diēbus vēnit. Bīduum tempestāte retentus nāvibusque aliīs additīs āctuāriīs in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit.

At Cyprus he learns that Antioch is closed against him. Rhodes too is hostile

Ibi cognōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium cīviumque Rōmānōrum quī illīc negōtiārentur arcem captam esse exclūdendī suī causā, nūntiōsque dīmissōs ad eōs quī sē ex fugā in fīnitimās cīvitātēs recēpisse dīcerentur, nē Antiochīam adīrent; id sī fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis perīculō futūrum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre annō cōnsul fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulārī ac nōn nūllīs aliīs acciderat Rhodī; quī cum ex fugā Pompēium sequerentur atque in īnsulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū receptī nōn erant missīsque ad eōs nūntiīs ut ex hīs locīs discēderent, contrā voluntātem suam nāvēs solvērunt. Iamque dē Caesaris adventū fāma ad cīvitātēs perferēbātur.

āctuārius, -a, -um, fast-sailing
Amphipolis, -is, *f.*, a city of Macedonia
Antiochēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Antioch; *masc. as noun*, an inhabitant of Antioch
Antiochīa, -ae, *f.*, Antioch, capital of Syria
Cilicia, -ae, *f.*, Cilicia, a district of southeastern Asia Minor
corrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, collect, obtain by soliciting

Cyprus, -ī, *f.*, Cyprus, an island near Cilicia

ēdictum, -ī, *n.*, edict

Macedonia, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia

Mytilēnae, -ārum, *f.*, Mytilene, the chief city of the island of Lesbos

quantumcumque, -īcumque, *n.*, however much

Rhodos, -ī, *f.*, Rhodes, an island in the Aegean Sea, about twelve miles south of Caria in southwestern Asia Minor

7. **Amphipolī**: 'at Amphipolis.' 8. **iūrandī causā**: 'to take the oath of allegiance.' 11. **dēlēctibus**: ablative of means. 16. **diēbus**: ablative of time within which. 19. **cōnsēnsū**: modifies *captam esse*. 21. **exclūdendī suī causā**: 'for the sake of shutting him out'; see G. § 225. *b*.—**suī**: indirect reflexive (G. § 133). 23. **sī fēcissent**: future more probable condition in indirect discourse (G. §§ 199. II. *a*, 210).—**magnō . . . futūrum**: 'they would be in great danger of losing their lives.' 26. **Rhodī**: locative case.

Provided with men and money he sails from Cyprus for Pelusium, a city on the easternmost mouth of the Nile

103. Quibus cognitīs rēbus Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae Syriae cōnsiliō, pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā quibusdam prīvātīs sūmptā et aeris magnō pondere ad mīlitārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque mīlibus hominum armātīs, partim quōs ex familiīs societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suīs quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs exīstimābat, Pēlūsium pervēnit.

Through envoys Pompey begs Ptolemy, king of Egypt, for asylum in Alexandria

Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castrīs distābant. Ad eum Pompēius mīsit, ut, prō hospitiō atque amīcitiā patris, Alexandriā reciperētur atque illīus opibus in calamitāte tegerētur.

The envoys arouse suspicion by talking with the king's troops

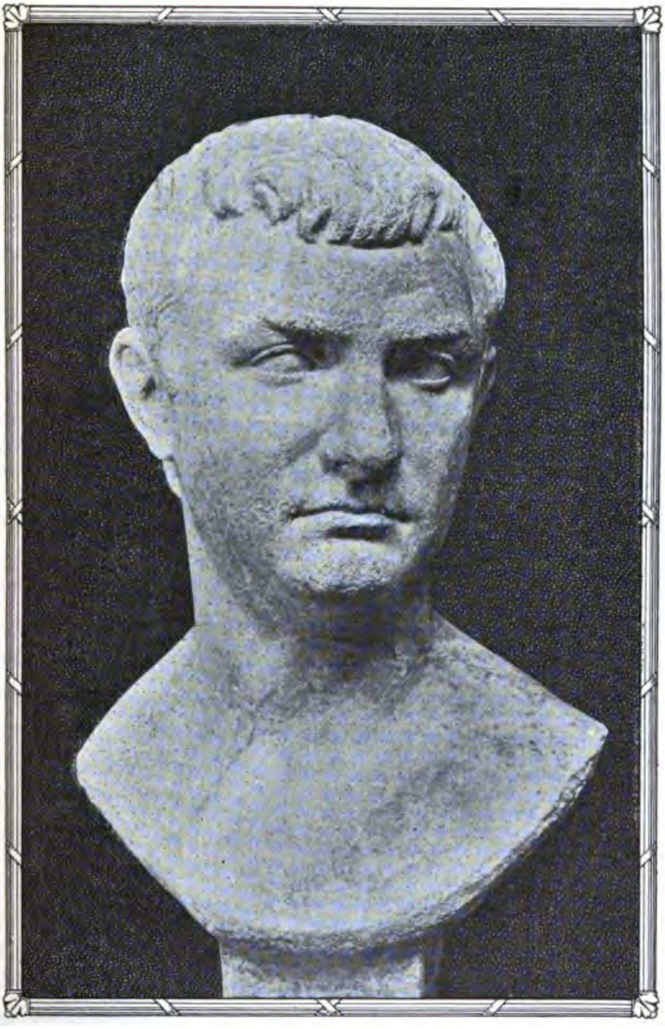
Sed quī ab eō missī erant, cōnfectō lēgātiōnis officiō, līberius cum mīlitibus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eōsque hortārī ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēī mīlitēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā Gabīnius Alexandrīam trādūxerat bellōque cōnfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem puerī, relīquerat.

Alexandrīa, -ae, *f.*, Alexandria, capital of Egypt
Cleopatra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, the famous Egyptian queen
Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius, an officer of Cæsar
negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, business man
Pēlūsium, -ī, *n.*, Pelusium, a city on the Nile
Ptolemaeus, -ī, *m.*, Ptolemy, Egyptian king
societās, -ātis, *f.*, *esp.* **pūblicānōrum,** guild of revenue collectors
Syria, -ae, *f.*, Syria

2. **pecūniā . . . sūmptā**: 'taking money from the tax collectors' guild and exacting it from certain private citizens.' 5. **ex familiīs**: 'from the slaves.' 6. **ex suīs**: 'of his friends.' 8. **aetāte**: ablative of respect. 11. **spatiō**: ablative of measure of difference. 15. **quī**: the antecedent is the subject understood of *coepērunt*. — **ab eō**: i.e. by Pompey.

The king's advisers act treacherously

104. Hīs tunc cognitīs rēbus amīcī rēgis, quī propter aetātem eius in cūrātiōne erant rēgnī, sīve timōre adductī, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō, nē Pompēius Alexandrīam Aegyptumque occupāret, sīve dēspectā eius fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amīcīs inimīcī exsistunt, hīs quī erant ab eō missī palam līberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulārī hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnum mīlitum, ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsērunt.



GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS

Pompey is murdered

Ab hīs līberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimī prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum apud eum ōrdinem dūxerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscendit cum paucīs suīs; ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur.

Achillās, -ae, *m.*, Achillas, a prefect of the young Ptolemy
Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*, Egypt
cūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, management
praedō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, pirate
rēgius, -a, -um, royal
Septimius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius Septimius

2. **in cūrātiōne erant rēgnī**: 'held the regency of the kingdom.' 6. **hīs**: indirect object of *respondērunt*. —**palam**: contrasts with *clam* below. 11. **ipse**: i.e. Pompey. 12. **prōductus**: 'led on,' 'induced.'—**praedōnum**: 'pirates.'—**apud . . . dūxerat**: 'had commanded a division under him.' 13. **cum paucīs suīs**: 'with a few of his men.' 15. **in custōdiā**: 'while under guard,' or 'in prison.'

Cæsar arrives in Asia and prevents the pillage of Diana's temple at Ephesus

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque reī causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut hīs testibus in summā pecūniae ūterētur, sed interpellātum adventū Caesaris prōfūgisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit.

Strange events occur on the day of Cæsar's victory

Item cōnstābat Ēlide in templō Minervae, repetītīs atque ēnumerātīs diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fēcisset, simulācrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulacrum Minervae spectāvisset, ad valvās sē templī līmenque convertisse. Eōdemque

diē Antiochīae in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et signōrum sonus exaudītus est, ut in mūrīs armāta cīvitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit. Pergamī in occultīs ac reconditīs templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adīre fās nōn est, quae Graecī ἄδυτα appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coāgmenta lapidum ex pavīmentō exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Ampius, -ī, *m.*, Titus Ampius Balbus, a friend of Pompey
Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia Minor
coāgmentum, -ī, *n.*, joint
cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make sacred
Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, the goddess
discurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to and fro
Ēlis, -idis, *f.*, Elis, a city in the Peloponnesus
ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, count, reckon
Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian
Ephesus, -ī, *f.*, Ephesus, a city of Ionia
fānum, -ī, *n.*, temple
līmen, -inis, *n.*, threshold
Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess
pavīmentum, -ī, *n.*, pavement
Pergamum, -ī, *n.*, Pergamum, a city in western Asia Minor
Ptolemāis, -idis, *f.*, Ptolemais, a city of Phœnicia
reconditus, -a, -um, deep, hidden
sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m.*, priest
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, sound, ring out
sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound
statua, -ae, *f.*, statue, image
templum, -ī, *n.*, temple
Trallēs, -ium, *f.*, Tralles, a city of Caria
tympanum, -ī, *n.*, drum, tambourine
valva, -ae, *f.*, door

2. **pecūniās**: 'treasures.' 4. **testibus in summā**: 'witnesses to the amount.' 5. **duōbus temporibus**: 'on two occasions.' 7. **repetītīs . . . diēbus**: 'by recalling and reckoning the dates.' 10. **ante**: adverb, 'previously.' 12. **Antiochīae**: locative (as is also *Pergamī* below); see G. § 120. *a.* 13. **armāta cīvitās**: 'the citizens in arms.' 14. **in occultīs ac reconditīs templī**: 'in secret and remote parts of the temple.' 16. **ἄδυτα**: 'adyta,' a Greek neuter plural, 'shrines,' but meaning literally 'not to be entered.'

Cæsar with a small force follows Pompey to Egypt

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus cum audīsset Pompēium Cyprī vīsum, coniectāns eum Aegyptum iter habēre propter necessitūdinēs rēgnī reliquāsque eius locī opportūnitātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex Thessaliā sequī iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q. Fūfiō lēgātō ēvocāverat, equitibusque DCCC et nāvibus longīs Rhodiīs X et Asiāticīs paucīs Alexandrīam pervēnit. In hīs erant legiōnibus hominum mīlia tria CC; reliquī volneribus ex proeliīs et labōre ac magnitūdine itineris cōnfectī cōnsequī nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar cōnfīsus fāmā rērum gestārum īnfīrmīs auxiliīs proficīscī nōn dubitāverat, aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore exīstimāns.

At Alexandria he hears of Pompey's death. The Alexandrians resent Cæsar's display of authority

Alexandrīae dē Pompēī morte cognōscit atque ibi prīmum ē nāve ēgrediēns clāmōrem mīlitum audit quōs rēx in oppidō praesidī causā relīquerat, et concursum ad sē fierī videt, quod fascēs anteferrentur. In hōc omnis multitūdō maiestātem rēgiam minuī praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō tumultū crēbrae continuīs diēbus ex concursū multitūdinis concitātiōnēs fīēbant complūrēsque mīlitēs huius urbis omnibus partibus interficiēbantur.

Achāia, -ae, *f.*, Achaia, a Roman province, nearly corresponding to modern Greece

Asiāticus, -a, -um, of, *or* from, Asia

concitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, uprising

coniectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, infer

fascis, -is, *m.*, a bundle; *in the plural*, fasces, the bundle of rods carried before the higher magistrates by a lictor

Fūfius, -ī, *m.*, Quintus Fufius Calenus, a lieutenant of Cæsar

Rhodius, -a, -um, of, *or* from, Rhodes

sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, allay, settle

2. **Cyprī**: locative.—**Aegyptum**: accusative of the place whither. We should expect a preposition. 3. **necessitūdinēs rēgnī**: 'his close relations with the kingdom.' 10. **cōnfīsus . . . gestārum**: 'relying on the reputation of his exploits.' 13. **Alexandrīae**: locative. 15. **concursum . . . videt**: 'saw a crowd throng toward him.'

Cæsar, detained by contrary winds, sends for more troops

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi aliās ex Asiā addūcī iussit, quās ex Pompēiānīs mīlitibus cōnfēcerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsiīs tenēbātur, quī nāvigantibus Alexandrīā sunt adversissimī ventī.

He decides to act as arbiter between Ptolemy and Cleopatra

Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre exīstimāns, atque eō magis officiō suō convenīre, quod superiōre cōnsulātū cum patre Ptolemaeō et lēge et senātūs cōnsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolemaeum atque eius sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs habērent dīmittere, et dē contrōversiīs iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armīs disceptāre.

disceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, contend, dispute

etēsiae, -ārum, *m.*, the etesian winds, trade winds

3. **etēsiīs**: these winds prevail more than a month every summer in the eastern part of the Mediterranean. 7. **officiō suō convenīre**: 'it was in accord with his official duty.' 11. **iūre apud sē**: contrasts with *inter sē armīs*.

The king's friends, angered, plot to destroy Cæsar and his army

108. Erat in prōcūrātiōne rēgnī, propter aetātem puerī, nūtrīcius eius, eunūchus nōmine Pothīnus. Is prīmum inter suōs querī atque indignārī coepit rēgem ad causam dīcendam ēvocārī; deinde adiūtōrēs quōsdam cōnsilī suī nactus ex

rēgis amīcīs, exercitum ā Pēlūsiō clam Alexandrīam ēvocāvit atque eundem Achillam, cuius suprā meminimus, omnibus cōpiīs praefēcit. Hunc, incitātum suīs et rēgis īnflātum pollicitātiōnibus, quae fierī vellet litterīs nūntiīsque ēdocuit.

The will of Ptolemy, father of Ptolemy and Cleopatra

In testāmentō Ptolemaeī patris hērēdēs erant scrīptī ex duōbus fīliīs maior et ex duābus fīliābus ea quae aetāte antecēdēbat. Haec utī fierent, per omnēs deōs perque foedera quae Rōmae fēcisset, eōdem testāmentō Ptolemaeus populum Rōmānum obtestābātur. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae per lēgātōs eius Rōmam erant adlātae, ut in aerāriō pōnerentur (hae, cum propter pūblicās occupātiōnēs pōnī nōn potuissent, apud Pompēium sunt dēpositae), alterae eōdem exemplō relictae atque obsignātae Alexandrīae prōferēbantur.

adiūtor, -ōris, *m.*, helper, confederate
aerārium, -ī, *n.*, treasury
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put down, deposit
eunūchus, -ī, *m.*, eunuch
hērēs, -ēdis, *c.*, heir
īnflātus, -a, -um, *part. of* **īnflō,** elated
nūtrīcius, -a, -um, fostering; *masc. as noun*, guardian
prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, administration
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring forward, find

3. **rēgem . . . ēvocārī**: 'that a king should be summoned to defend himself.' 13. **Tabulae testāmentī ūnae**: 'one copy of the will.' 16. **alterae**: i.e. *tabulae*.—**eōdem exemplō**: 'exactly like it'; ablative of description.

Achillas marches on Alexandria with the king's army

109. Dē hīs rēbus cum agerētur apud Caesarem, ipse maximē vellet prō commūnī amīcō atque arbitrō contrōversiās rēgum compōnere, subitō exercitus rēgius equitātusque omnis venīre Alexandrīam nūntiātur. Caesaris cōpiae nēquāquam erant tantae, ut eīs, extrā oppidum sī esset

dīmicandum, cōnfīderet. Relinquēbātur ut sē suīs locīs oppidō tenēret cōnsiliumque Achillae cognōsceret. Mīlitēs tamen omnēs in armīs esse iussit, rēgemque hortātus est ut ex suīs necessāriīs quōs habēret maximae auctōritātis lēgātōs ad Achillam mitteret, et quid esset suae voluntātis ostenderet.

He kills the king's ambassadors, sent by Cæsar's advice

Ā quō missī Dioscoridēs et Serāpiōn, quī ambō lēgātī Rōmae fuerant magnamque apud patrem Ptolemaeum auctōritātem habuerant, ad Achillam pervēnērunt. Quōs ille, cum in cōnspectum eius vēnissent, priusquam audīret aut cuius reī causā missī essent cognōsceret, corripī atque interficī iussit; quōrum alter acceptō volnere occupātus per suōs prō occīsō sublātus, alter interfectus est. Quō factō rēgem ut in suā potestāte habēret Caesar efficit, magnam rēgium nōmen apud suōs auctōritātem habēre exīstimāns, et ut potius prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum quam rēgiō cōnsiliō susceptum bellum vidērētur.

ambō, ambae, ambō, both
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, settle
corripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, seize, arrest

2. **prō**: 'in the capacity of.' 10. **quid esset suae voluntātis**: 'what his desire was'; *voluntātis*, partitive genitive. 16. **occupātus per suōs** etc.: 'was caught up by his friends and carried off for dead.' 20. **prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum . . . cōnsiliō**: 'by the private design of a few men, and brigands at that, than by that of the king.'

The forces of Achillas, their number and character

110. Erant cum Achillā cōpiae, ut neque numerō neque genere hominum neque ūsū reī mīlitāris contemnendae vidērentur. Mīlia enim xx in armīs habēbat. Haec cōnstābant ex Gabīniānīs mīlitibus, quī iam in cōnsuētūdinem Alexandrīnae vītae ac licentiae vēnerant et nōmen disciplīnamque

populī Rōmānī dēdidicerant uxōrēsque dūxerant ex quibus plērīque līberōs habēbant. Hūc accēdēbant conlēctī ex praedōnibus latrōnibusque Syriae Ciliciaeque prōvinciae fīnitimārumque regiōnum. Multī praetereā capitis damnātī exsulēsque convēnerant; fugitīvīs omnibus nostrīs certus erat Alexandrīae receptus certaque vītae condiciō, ut datō nōmine mīlitum essent numerō; sī quis ā dominō prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū mīlitum ēripiēbātur, quī vim suōrum, quod in similī culpā versābantur, ipsī prō suō perīculō dēfendēbant. Hī rēgum amīcōs ad mortem dēposcere, hī bona locuplētum dīripere, stīpendī augendī causā rēgis domum obsidēre, rēgnō expellere, aliōs arcessere vetere quōdam Alexandrīnī exercitūs īnstitūtō cōnsuērant. Erant praetereā equitum mīlia duo. Inveterāverant hī omnēs complūribus Alexandrīae bellīs; Ptolemaeum patrem in rēgnum redūxerant, Bibulī fīliōs duōs interfēcerant, bella cum Aegyptiīs gesserant. Hunc ūsum reī mīlitāris habēbant.

Alexandrīnus, -a, -um, of Alexandria
Bibulus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Calpurnius Bibulus, naval commander under Pompey
contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temptus, despise
dēdiscō, -ere, -didicī, ——, forget
exsul, -ulis, *m.*, exile
Gabīniānus, -a, -um, of Gabinius
licentia, -ae, *f.*, looseness
locuplēs, -ētis, rich
prehendō, *see* **prēndō** *in the vocabulary*

3. **cōnstābant ex**: 'consisted of.' 4. **in cōnsuētūdinem . . . vēnerant**: 'had become habituated.' 7. **conlēctī . . . latrōnibusque**: 'a collection of robbers and highwaymen.' 9. **capitis damnātī**: 'who had been condemned to death.' 10. **fugitīvīs**: dative of reference (G. § 85). 11. **receptus**: 'refuge.'—**ut . . . essent**: in apposition with *condiciō*.—**mīlitum essent numerō**: 'they should enlist as soldiers.' 12. **prehenderētur**: 'was on the point of being seized.' 13. **vim suōrum**: 'violence offered to any of their number.' 14. **prō suō perīculō**: 'at the risk of their lives.'—**Hī**: subject of *cōnsuērant*, l. 18. 15. **dēposcere**: this and the following infinitives depend upon *cōnsuērant*. 17. **vetere quōdam . . . īnstitūtō**: 'by an old privilege of the Alexandrian army.'

Achillas seizes the whole city except the part occupied by Cæsar

111. Hīs cōpiīs fīdēns Achillās paucitātemque mīlitum Caesaris dēspiciēns occupābat Alexandrīam praeter eam oppidī partem quam Caesar cum mīlitibus tenēbat. Prīmō impetū domum eius inrumpere cōnātus est; sed Caesar dispositīs per viās cohortibus impetum eius sustinuit.

At the port, however, Cæsar gains the victory

Eōdemque tempore pugnātum est ad portum, ac longē maximam ea rēs adtulit dīmicātiōnem. Simul enim dīductīs cōpiīs plūribus viīs pugnābātur, et magnā multitūdine nāvēs longās occupāre hostēs cōnābantur; quārum erant L auxiliō missae ad Pompēium proeliōque in Thessaliā factō domum redierant, illae trirēmēs omnēs et quīnquerēmēs aptae īnstrūctaeque omnibus rēbus ad nāvigandum, praeter hās XXII quae praesidī causā Alexandrīae esse cōnsuērant; cōnstrātae omnēs; quās sī occupāvissent, classe Caesarī ēreptā portum ac mare tōtum in suā potestāte habērent, commeātū auxiliīsque Caesarem prohibērent. Itaque tantā est contentiōne āctum quantā agī dēbuit, cum illī celerem in eā rē victōriam, hī salūtem suam cōnsistere vidērent. Sed rem obtinuit Caesar omnēsque eās nāvēs et reliquās quae erant in nāvālibus incendit, quod tam lātē tuērī parvā manū nōn poterat, cōnfestimque ad Pharum nāvibus mīlitēs exposuit.

fīdēns, -entis, *part. of* **fīdō,** relying upon
nāvālia, -ium, *n.*, docks, shipyards
Pharus, -ī, *f.*, Pharos, an island opposite Alexandria, with a lighthouse of the same name, which was one of the seven wonders of the world

10. **proeliōque . . . factō**: 'and at the conclusion of the war in Thessaly.' 14. **sī occupāvissent**: a future condition thrown into past time on the principle of indirect discourse (implied). Their own thought was, 'if

we shall have seized' etc. 17. **āctum**: impersonal; 'the contest was carried on with as great a struggle as might have been expected' (lit. 'as it ought to have been carried on'). — **quantā**: correlative with *tantā*, ablative of manner. 18. **rem obtinuit**: 'won the contest.' 21. **exposuit**: 'landed,' 'set on shore.'

Description of Pharos and its lighthouse

112. Pharus est in īnsulā turris magnā altitūdine, mīrificīs operibus exstrūcta; quae nōmen ab īnsulā accēpit. Haec īnsula obiecta Alexandrīae portum efficit; sed ā superiōribus regiōnibus in longitūdinem passuum DCCCC, in mare iactīs mōlibus, angustō itinere et ponte cum oppidō coniungitur. In hāc sunt īnsulā domicilia Aegyptiōrum et vīcus oppidī magnitūdine; quaeque ibi cumque nāvēs imprūdentiā aut tempestāte paulum suō cursū dēcessērunt, hās mōre praedōnum dīripere cōnsuērunt. Eīs autem invītīs ā quibus Pharus tenētur, nōn potest esse propter angustiās nāvibus introitus in portum.

Cæsar takes possession of Pharos. Elsewhere the battle is indecisive. Cæsar fortifies his headquarters

Hoc tamen veritus Caesar, hostibus in pugnā occupātīs, mīlitibus expositīs Pharum prehendit atque ibi praesidium posuit. Quibus est rēbus effectum ut tūtō frūmentum auxiliaque nāvibus ad eum supportārī possent. Dīmīsit enim circum omnēs propinquās prōvinciās atque inde auxilia ēvocāvit. Reliquīs oppidī partibus sīc est pugnātum, ut aequō proeliō discēderētur et neutrī pellerentur (id efficiēbant angustiae locī), paucīsque utrimque interfectīs Caesar loca maximē necessāria complexus noctū praemūnit. In hōc trāctū oppidī pars erat rēgiae exigua, in quam ipse habitandī causā initiō erat inductus, et theātrum coniūnctum domuī, quod arcis tenēbat locum aditūsque habēbat ad portum et ad reliqua

nāvālia. Hās mūnītiōnēs īnsequentibus auxit diēbus, ut prō mūrō obiectās habēret neu dīmicāre invītus cōgerētur.

The younger daughter of Ptolemy joins Achillas. The Alexandrian War now begins in earnest

Interim fīlia minor Ptolemaeī rēgis, vacuam possessiōnem rēgnī spērāns, ad Achillam sēsē ex rēgiā trāiēcit ūnāque bellum administrāre coepit. Sed celeriter est inter eōs dē prīncipātū contrōversia orta; quae rēs apud mīlitēs largītiōnēs auxit; magnīs enim iactūrīs sibi quisque eōrum animōs conciliābat. Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothīnus, nūtrīcius puerī et prōcūrātor rēgnī, in parte Caesaris, cum ad Achillam nūntiōs mitteret hortārēturque nē negōtiō dēsisteret nēve animō dēficeret, indicātīs dēprehēnsīsque internūntiīs, ā Caesare est interfectus. Haec initia bellī Alexandrīnī fuērunt.

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, dwell
indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, discover
internūntius, -ī, *m.*, negotiator, messenger between (two parties)
mīrificus, -a, -um, causing wonder, wonderful
praemūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify
prōcūrātor, -ōris, *m.*, governor, manager
rēgia, -ae, *f.*, royal palace
theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater
tractus, -ūs, *m.*, region, district

3. **obiecta**: 'situated opposite,' with the dative. — **ā superiōribus regiōnibus**: 'on the upper side.' 4. **in mare iactīs mōlibus**: 'piles being set in the sea.' 7. **magnitūdine**: ablative of description; 'of the size of a town.' — **cumque**: with *quae*, equal to *quaecumque*; 'whatever ships.' 9. **Eīs . . . invītīs**: ablative absolute with conditional force. 10. **nōn potest esse . . . nāvibus introitus**: 'ships cannot enter.' 15. **Dīmīsit**: supply *hominēs* as object. 22. **arcis tenēbat locum**: 'served as a citadel.' 24. **ut . . . habēret**: 'that he might have them before him as a rampart.' 26. **vacuam . . . spērāns**: 'hoping to get possession of the kingdom (now left) vacant.' 29. **prīncipātū**: 'leadership.' 30. **magnīs . . . conciliābat**: 'for each tried by generous gifts to win their allegiance.'

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

BOOK I

13. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: 'Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret, aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter

glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.'

Dīvicō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus . . . prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.'

18. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem

familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.'

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. 'Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propthereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne volgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.'

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; propthereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās

Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.'

31. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea quae vellent impetrārent; propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et XX mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

'Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

'Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque līberōs poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

'Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

32. Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent; absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī

cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.'

34. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.'

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē — quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet — sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent, eīs quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterīus praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse.' Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convēnisset stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.'

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetīsse. Cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis perīculum

patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbīs accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

'Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

'Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

'Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur ⟨mīlitēs⟩, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

'Itaque sē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.'

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

'Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam adpetierit.

'Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs

venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

'Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

'Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō eius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.'

47. 'Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā?'

BOOK II

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.'

4. Cum ab eīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: 'Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta' Rēmī dīcēbant, 'propterea quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum,

pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs X mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs XIX mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ⟨cōnficere posse⟩ ad XL mīlia.'

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.'

15. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: 'Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs

rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.'

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: 'Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere' dīxērunt. 'Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.'

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent.'

ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
abl. abs. = ablative absolute
adv. = adverb
cf. = cōnfer, *i.e.* compare
dir. = direct
disc. = discourse
f. = feminine
ff. = and following
fig. = figure
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
ill. = illustration
impers. = impersonal
impv. = imperative
ind. = indicative
indef. = indefinite
indir. = indirect
inf. = infinitive
Introd. = Introduction
l., *ll.* = line, lines
lit. = literally
m. = masculine
n. = neuter
neg. = negative
obj. = object *or* objective
p., *pp.* = page, pages
part. = partitive
pass. = passive
past abs. = past absolute
past descr. = past descriptive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
pred. = predicate
reflex. = reflexive
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, *i. e.* supply
sing. = singular
subj. = subject *or* subjective
subjv. = subjunctive
subord. = subordinate
subst. = substantive
transl. = translate

NOTES

THE ARGONAUTS

References preceded by a section sign (§) are to the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.)

PAGE **xli**, introduction. This introduction and the story of the Argonauts are taken (with a few slight changes) from "Fabulae Faciles," a first Latin reader prepared by Mr. F. Ritchie, an Englishman. In style and in vocabulary the Latin imitates that of Cæsar, and is excellent in preparing for the reading of Nepos and Cæsar.

PAGE **xli**, LINE 1 **quōrum**: part. gen. with *alter* (§ 76).

xli 2 Ex hīs: 'of these (brothers).' The abl. with *ex* is here used instead of the part. gen. With cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) the abl. is the regular construction: *ūnus ex mīlitibus*, 'one of the soldiers.'

xli 4 rēgnī cupiditāte: 'by a desire for (of) the kingdom' (§ 75).

xli 6 Quīdam . . . ex amīcīs: *quīdam* commonly takes the same construction as cardinal numerals (see note on l. 2).

xlii 3 cum . . . rediissent: 'when they had returned,' a descriptive clause of time (§ 194. *b*).

xlii 4 puerum mortuum esse: 'that the boy was dead' (lit. 'had died'); *puerum* is the subj. of *esse*, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 217. *b*). The direct words of the speaker were *puer mortuus est*. In indir. disc. the subj. (*puer*) becomes accusative, and the verb (*est*) becomes an inf. — **haec**: 'this' (lit. 'these things'); Latin frequently uses the plur. to denote not two or more things, but the details or circumstances of one thing.

xlii 6 esset: 'was,' subjv. in an indir. question (§ 201).

xlii 7 cum: 'since,' introducing a causal clause (§ 195). — **esse**: as in l. 4. — **nesciō quam fābulam . . . fīnxērunt**: 'they got up some story, I don't know what.'

xlii 9 nē . . . āmitteret: 'that he should lose,' obj. of *veritus* (§ 184).

xlii 10 vī, fraude: ablatives of means (§ 106). — **Delphōs**: place whither (§ 97). At Delphi, in central Greece, was the famous shrine of Apollo.

xlii 11 quī . . . cōnsuleret: 'to consult,' a clause of purpose (§ 175). — **ōrāculum**: 'oracle.' The word means here the priestess through whom Apollo delivered his prophetic utterances. The word 'oracle' may also mean the place where the utterance is delivered, or the utterance itself.

xlii 12 vēnisset: like *esset* in l. 6.

xlii 14 ut . . . cavēret: 'to beware of' (lit. 'that he should guard against'), a clause of purpose depending on *monuit* (§ 183). — **sī quis:** 'if anybody'; a pronoun after *sī* is usually indef.

xlii 15 ut . . . factūrus esset: a clause of result (§ 187. II).

xlii 17 certam diem: the sing. *diēs*, when it denotes an appointed time or duration of time, is usually feminine. — **Diē cōnstitūtā:** abl. of the time at which (§ 119).

xlii 19 ā puerō: 'from a boy,' 'from boyhood.'

xlii 21 in trānseundō . . . flūmine: 'in crossing a river' (lit. 'in a river to be crossed'; § 224). — **nesciō quō:** see note on l. 7.

xlii 23 alterō pede nūdō: 'with one foot bare' (lit. 'one foot being bare'; §§ 117, 118). — **quem:** 'and him,' 'him.' A rel. is equivalent to a connective and a demonstrative; the connective may be omitted in translating (§ 143).

xlii 25 dēmōnstrāvisset: to be translated as if it were ind., 'had spoken of.' The form is subjv. because the rel. clause depends on *esse*, an inf. in indir. disc. (§ 208).

xlii 26 nōmine: 'by name'; abl. of respect (§ 115).

xlii 28 illud: 'the famous,' a common meaning of this pronoun when it follows the noun. — **Phrixus:** Phrixus and his sister Helle escaped from their wicked stepmother by being carried away on a flying ram with a golden fleece. Helle fell into the sea (named Hellespont after her). Phrixus was carried to Colchis. He sacrificed the ram and gave the fleece to Æetes, who hung it in a sacred grove and had it guarded by a sleepless dragon.

xliii 1 ut . . . potīrētur: 'of getting' (lit. 'that he should get'), a subst. clause in apposition with *negōtium* (§§ 181, 183). — **vellere:** for the case see § 107.

xliii 2 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xliii 6 iter: accusative of extent of space with *abesset* (§ 96).

xliii 8 quī . . . docērent . . . dīcerent: like *quī . . . cōnsuleret*, p. xlii, l. 11.

xliii 11 ūsuī: 'of use,' 'useful' (lit. 'for a use'; § 89).

xliii 21 operī: dative after *prae* in *praeerat* (§ 84); but some verbs of this kind take the accusative.

xliii 22 nē . . . quidem: 'not . . . even'; the emphatic word or words stand between *nē* and *quidem*.

xliii 24 paulō . . . lātior: 'a little broader' (lit. 'broader by a little'; § 114). — **quam quibus:** 'than those which'; the antecedent of *quibus*, if expressed, would be *eae*; *quibus* is in the abl. after *ūtī* (§ 107). — **nostrō marī:** the Mediterranean. The author writes as if he were an ancient Roman. — **cōnsuēvimus:** the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect of certain verbs are to be translated as if they were the present, the past descriptive or perfect, or the future. Thus *cōnsuēvī* means 'I *am* (lit. '*have become*') accustomed.'

xliii 25 tōta: an adjective agreeing with *nāvis*, but to be translated as an adv., 'all,' 'wholly' (§ 126).

xliv 1 ferunt: 'they say,' 'it is said.'—**citharoedum:** in apposition with *Orpheum*, which is in the accusative as subj. of *fuisse* (§ 217. *b*).

xliv 3 quōs: subj. of *esse* (l. 4); its antecedent is *eōs* (§ 139).

xliv 5 sociōs: 'as allies'; in apposition with *eōs* (§§ 54, 58).

xliv 9 multō post: 'much later' (lit. 'afterwards by much'; § 114).

xliv 10 nōmine: see p. xlii, l. 26.

xliv 11 hospitiō: 'hospitably,' an abl. of manner without an adjective or *cum* (§ 110).

xliv 14 ut . . . possent . . . dēicerentur: see § 179.

xliv 16 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xliv 18 ēgredī: 'from landing' (lit. 'to land'), obj. of *prohibēbant* (§ 185. *a*).

xliv 19 pugnātum est: 'they fought' (§ 66).

xliv 20 ab Argonautīs: abl. of agent (§ 104).

xliv 21 sē: 'they themselves,' 'they' (§ 217. *b*).

xliv 28 ā nautīs: see § 102.—**cōpiam:** subj. of *dēficere*.

xlv 1 habērent: like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25.

xlv 3 fōrmā praestantissimā: 'of' etc. (§ 116).

xlv 4 dum . . . quaerit: for the tense see § 198. I.

xlv 6 eī persuādēre: see § 83.

xlv 19 in: 'toward.'—**praebuisset:** like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25.—**Cuius:** see note on *quem*, p. xlii, l. 23.

xlv 24 Quae cum ita essent: 'this being so' (§ 189); with *quae*, cf. *haec*, p. xlii, l. 4.

xlv 25 haud . . . morerētur: 'Phineus was nearly dying of hunger' (lit. 'not much was wanting but that Phineus should die of hunger'); the clause *quīn . . . morerētur* is a rel. clause of result (§ 180); *famē* is an abl. of cause (§ 109).

xlvi 1 opīniōnem virtūtis: 'reputation for valor' (lit. 'opinion of valor'; obj. gen., § 75).—**nec dubitābat quīn:** see § 186.

xlvi 3 quī . . . vocāret: 'to invite' (§ 175).

xlvi 5 sī . . . repperissent: 'if they should find' (lit. 'should have found'), a subord. clause in indir. disc. (like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25). The direct words of Phineus were *magna praemia vōbīs dabō sī remedium reppereritis*, in which *reppereritis* ('shall have found') is a fut. perf. (§ 199. II. *a*).

xlvi 12 Quod: 'this'; see note on *quem*, p. xlii, l. 23.

xlvi 15 Hōc factō: 'when this had been done' (§ 117. *b*).

xlvi 17 ingentī magnitūdine: see § 116.

xlvi 18 eō cōnsiliō: 'with this design,' an abl. of accordance (§ 111).—**nē quis . . . pervenīret:** a neg. clause of purpose (§ 174), in apposition with *cōnsiliō*; for *quis* see p. xlii, l. 14.

xlvi 19 parvō intervāllō: 'at a small distance apart' (§ 118).

xlvi 22 faciendum esset: 'needed to be done' (§§ 224. *a*, 201). — **sublātis ancorīs nāvem solvit**: 'weighed anchor and set sail' (§ 117). If all verbs had a past participle active (as in deponent verbs, § 37), the abl. abs. would be far less frequent; here, for example, we should then have *ancorās sublātus nāvem solvit*, in which *sublātus* would agree with the subj. of *solvit*. Cf. *adductus* . . . *expulit* (p. xli, l. 4) and *veritus* . . . *mīsit* (p. xlii, l. 9).

xlvi 25 rēctā viā: 'in a straight course' (§§ 106. *a*, 120. note 1).

xlvi 26 caudā tantum āmissā: 'having lost its tail only'; see note on *sublātīs ancorīs*, l. 22.

xlvi 27 antequam . . . concurrerent: 'before they should run together' (§ 197. *b*).

xlvii 1 quōrum auxiliō . . . ērepti essent: 'since by their aid they had been snatched,' a rel. clause of cause (§ 190 and note).

xlvii 12 trāditūrum: *trāditūrum esse*. When the inf. is formed with the participle, *esse* is often omitted.

xlvii 13 prius: 'first' (lit. 'before'). — **perfēcisset**: 'should perform,' like *sī* . . . *repperissent*, p. xlvi, l. 5.

xlvii 17 serendī (*erant*): in such cases the auxiliary *est* is often omitted; for *serendī* see *faciendum*, p. xlvi, l. 22.

xlvii 19 reī: 'his task.'

xlvii 23 eō ipsō cōnsiliō: like *eō cōnsiliō*, p. xlvi, l. 18; transl. *ipsō* by 'very.'

xlvii 27 quod . . . aleret . . . cōnfīrmāret: see § 175.

xlviii 1 essent: 'were'; subjv. because it is subord. to *ut* . . . *oblineret*. This is called the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

xlviii 2 omnibus . . . antecellēbat: see § 84. — **magnitūdine et vīribus**: see § 115.

xlviii 7 ortā lūce: 'at daybreak' (lit. 'light having risen'; § 117).

xlviii 13 quā in rē: 'in this' (§ 143). A monosyllabic preposition often stands between adjective and noun.

xlviii 18 essent: as in l. 1.

xlviii 21 gignerentur: like *essent*, ll. 1, 18.

xlviii 24 dum: see § 198. III. *b*.

xlviii 25 ita . . . ut: 'just as.'

xlviii 26 esset: like *dēmōnstrāvisset*, p. xlii, l. 25.

xlviii 27 ingentī magnitūdine: see § 116. — **gladiīs galeīsque**: see § 106.

xlviii 28 mīrum in modum: 'wonderfully.'

xlviii 29 dedisset: 'had given' (§ 208).

xlix 2 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

xlix 11 sī . . . mānsisset: 'if she should stay.' Medea said *in magnō erō perīculō sī in rēgiā mānserō* (§ 199. II. *a*); see note on p. xlvi, l. 5.

xlix 17 prōfuisset: 'had aided'; like *essent*, p. xlviii, ll. 1, 18.

xlix 19 nē . . . timēret: see § 183.

xlix 26 quī . . . essent: see § 175. — **praesidiō nāvī**: double dative (§ 89).

l 7 dum . . . dormit: see § 198. I.

l 12 id negōtium . . . perīculī: 'that this undertaking was one of the greatest danger'; pred. gen. (§ 77. *a*).

l 15 mātūrandum (*esse*) **sibi**: 'that they ought to hasten' (lit. 'that there should be a hastening by them'; §§ 87, 222. II).

l 18 esset: 'was' (§ 201).

l 20 advenientibus occurrērunt: see § 84.

l 23 quod rēs . . . ēvēnisset: 'because, as they said, the undertaking' etc. (§ 188. *b*).

l 27 inimīcō . . . animō: 'hostilely minded' (§ 116).

li 1 hōc dolōre: 'by his anger at this' (lit. 'by this anger'; § 109).

li 5 cum: 'since' (§ 189). — **quā**: 'by which' (§ 106).

li 6 eādem celeritāte quā: 'with the same speed as' (§ 110).

li 7 minimum āfuit quīn . . . caperentur: like *haud . . . morerētur*, p. xlv, l. 25.

li 8 neque . . . posset: 'for the distance between them was only a javelin's throw' (lit. 'for it was not farther between than whither' etc.).

li 13 nōmine: see p. xlii, l. 26.

li 18 Neque opīniō eam fefellit: 'nor was she mistaken.' Literally?

li 21 quod necesse fuit: 'as was inevitable.'

li 22 prius . . . quam: 'until.'

li 24 prōgressus esset: like *sī . . . repperissent*, p. xlvi, l. 5. Æetes said *nihil mihi prōderit sī longius prōgressus erō* (§ 199. II. *a*); translate this.

li 25 animō dēmissō: 'dejected' (§ 117).

lii 2 rettulisset: 'should bring back'; cf. p. li, l. 24.

lii 5 neque dubium est quīn . . . adsit: see § 186.

lii 6 Liceat . . . mihi: 'permit me' (lit. 'let it be permitted to me'; § 172. *b*). — **dum vīvam**: 'while I live' (§ 214).

lii 9 rogāsset: 'asked'; a short form for *rogāvisset* (*vi* of the perf. stem is frequently omitted). His words were *id faciam* (fut.) *quod rogāvistī*.

lii 14 Vultisne: for *vultis* see *volō*, § 42; for *-ne* see the vocabulary.

lii 15 fierī: see § 45.

lii 16 Num . . . potest: 'this can't be done, can it?' See *num* in the vocabulary.

lii 19 possit: see § 201.

lii 22 dum . . . effervēsceret: see § 198. III. *b*; cf. p. xlviii, l. 24.

lii 28 ipsae: agreeing with *vōs* (l. 27).

liii 6 quibus: see § 107.

liii 20 **ultūram**: like *trāditūrum*, p. xlvii, l. 12.

liii 23 **induisset**: 'put on'; like *essent*, p. xlviii, l. 1.

liii 24 **nihil malī**: 'no harm' (lit. 'nothing of harm'; § 76).

liii 25 **mōre fēminārum**: 'like a woman' (§ 111).

liv 1 **magnum . . . manēret**: her direct words were *magnum mihi erit perīculum sī diūtius hīc manēbō* (§ 210); translate this.

liv 7 **ita'que**: 'and thus'; this is *ita* with *-que* attached, not the adv. *i'taque* ('therefore').

liv 9 **cāsū sīve cōnsiliō**: see § 111.

THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL

lvii 1 CHAP. 1. **Hannibal . . . Karthāginiēnsis**: these words (without a verb) serve as a title to the biography.

lvii 3 **superārit**: cf. *rogāsset*, p. lii, l. 9, and see note; for the mood see § 187. II and note 1.

lvii 4 **tantō praestitisse . . . quantō**: 'as much surpassed . . . as' (lit. 'by so much surpassed . . . by how much'; § 114). *Praestitisse* here takes the accusative; see note on *operī*, p. xliii, l. 21. — **prūdentiā**: see § 115.

lvii 5 **antecēdat**: 'excels'; for the subjv. see § 208.

lvii 6 **eō**: *populō Rōmānō*.

lvii 7 **Quod**: 'in view of which,' 'and therefore' (see note on *quem*, p. xlii, l. 23); the adverbial use of the accusative neuter singular. — **nisi . . . potuisse**: a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. *b*) in indir. disc. (§ 213). The dir. form would regularly be *nisi dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs superāre potuisset.* But *potuisse* stands for *potuit*, the perf. ind., which is often used instead of the past perf. subjv. when the verb (such as *potuit*) denotes possibility, propriety, or necessity. Transl. *superāre potuit* 'he could have overcome.' Instead of saying *vidētur eum Rōmānōs superāre potuisse* (§ 217. *b*), 'it seems that he could have' etc., the Latin prefers to make *eum* the personal subj. of *vidētur* and say *vidētur Rōmānōs superāre potuisse*, 'he seems to have been able to overcome the Romans.' When the subj. of the inf. is thus made the subj. of the principal verb, we have what is called the personal construction in indir. disc.

lvii 11 **ut . . . dēposuerit**: 'that he gave up his life before that' (lit. 'that he sooner gave up his life than he gave up that'); a clause of result (§ 179).

lvii 12 **quī . . . numquam dēstiterit**: 'a man who never ceased,' or 'since he never ceased'; a clause of characteristic (§ 177). The translation of such clauses may begin with 'since,' 'although,' 'such that,' or the like, according to the context. — **cum**: 'although' (§ 192). — **opum indigēret**: the gen. (instead of the abl.) is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives denoting plenty or want.

lvii 13 animō: abl. after *dēstiterit* (§ 101).

lvii 14 CHAP. 2. **ut omittam:** 'to say nothing of' (§ 174).

lvii 17 rubrō marī: 'the Persian Gulf'; an early use of the name.

lvii 18 vēnissent . . . fēcissent . . . comperisset . . . vīdisset: all these depend on *cum* (§ 194. *b*). — **quī . . . explōrārent dārentque:** see § 175.

lvii 20 in suspīciōnem rēgī: 'under the king's suspicion' (§ 85).

lvii 21 alia atque: 'otherwise than' ('other things than').

lviii 2 tempore: 'opportunity' (§ 117).

lviii 3 commemorāsset: cf. *rogāsset*, p. lii, l. 9, and see note.

lviii 4 puerulō mē: see § 118.

lviii 5 utpote . . . nātō: 'since I was not more than nine years old' (explaining why he refers to himself as *puerulō*); *nātō* agrees with *mē* (l. 4).

lviii 6 Karthāgine: see § 101. *a*.

lviii 7 dum cōnficiēbātur: the present would be the proper tense (§ 198. I).

lviii 10 Faciam . . . dederis: see § 199. II. *a*.

lviii 15 eādem mente: see § 116.

lviii 16 sim futūrus: 'I shall be.' — **sī quid:** see note on *sī quis*, p. xlii, l. 14.

lviii 17 nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē cēlāris (for *cēlāveris*): 'you would act not unwisely if you should conceal (it) from me' (§ 199. II. *b*); *mē* is accusative after *cēlāris*, which may take two accusatives (the person and the thing).

lviii 18 frūstrāberis sī nōn . . . posueris: see § 199. II. *a*.

lviii 20 CHAP. 3. **Hāc . . . aetāte:** see § 119. — **quā dīximus:** the complete sentence would be *quā dīximus eum profectum esse* (supplied from *profectus est*).

lviii 21 imperātōre: pred. (§ 58).

lviii 23 Id: his appointment. — **Karthāginem:** see § 97.

lviii 25 vīgintī annīs nātus: cf. *novem annōs nātō*, l. 5; see § 119. note. Duration of time is regularly expressed by the accusative (§ 96).

lx 4 quō factō: see § 117.

lx 6 eā (*viā*) . . . **quā** (*viā*): 'there . . . where'; originally ablatives (§ 106. *a*).

lx 10 CHAP. 4. **Clastidī:** see § 120. *a*.

lx 16 dextrō (*oculō*): see § 107. — **cum:** see § 192.

lx 22 ūnō proeliō: the famous battle of Cannæ, 216 B.C. The Roman army was almost annihilated.

lxi 3 CHAP. 5. **dētrīmentō exercitūs:** 'harm to his army'; obj. gen. (§ 75).

lxi 6 Quō . . . obiectō vīsū: see § 117.

lxi 9 Hanc post rem: cf. *quā in rē*, p. xlviii, l. 13, and see note.

lxi 11 diēbus: see § 114.

lxi 13 parī ac dictātōrem imperiō: *parī ac dictātor fuit imperiō*, 'having the authority of dictator.' For *parī . . . imperiō* see § 116. *Dictātōrem* agrees, by attraction, with *magistrum* (accusative).

lxi 15 absēns: 'in his absence'; his brother Mago was in command.

lxi 18 **Longum est**: 'it would be a long story.' Here the Latin uses the ind. where we use the subjv.

lxi 19 **ex quō . . . possit**: 'that from this' etc. (§ 175).

lxi 23 CHAP. 6. **dēfēnsum**: see § 226. *a*.

lxi 26 **fugārat**: for *fugāverat*; cf. *rogāsset*, p. lii, l. 9. — **Cum hōc**: 'with him.'

lxi 27 **quō valentior . . . congrederētur**: see § 176; for the case of *quō* see § 114.

lxi 28 **In conloquium convēnit**: 'a conference was arranged.' *Convēnit* is impers., 'it was agreed.'

lxi 29 **Post . . . paucīs diēbus**: see § 114.

lxi 30 **dictū**: see § 226. *b*.

lxii 2 **mīlia passuum trecenta**: apparently an exaggeration or an error. See the map, p. lix.

lxii 4 **Hadrūmētī**: like *Clastidī*, p. lx, l. 10.

lxii 5 **novīs dīlēctibus**: see § 106.

lxii 10 CHAP. 7. **ad . . . cōnsulēs**: the names of the consuls were commonly used to designate the year of an event. The names may or may not be connected by *et*. — **Hīs enim magistrātibus**: see § 118.

lxii 11 **quī . . . agerent . . . dōnārent . . . peterent**: 'to express' etc. (§ 175).

lxii 12 **quod . . . fēcissent**: 'because they had made' (§ 208; see also § 188. *b*).

lxii 13 **eōs**: i.e. the Romans.

lxii 14 **eōrum**: i.e. of the Carthaginians. — **Fregellīs**: see § 120. — **essent**: 'might be.'

lxiii 1 **ex**: 'in accordance with.'

lxiii 2 **Mūnus . . . Māgōnem**: see §§ 202, 203. The direct words of the senate were *mūnus vestrum grātum acceptumque est; obsidēs quō locō rogātis erunt; captīvōs nōn remittēmus, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum est, . . . habētis . . . Māgōnem*.

lxiii 3 **remissūrōs**: the subj. is *sē* (to be supplied), referring to the Romans.

lxiii 4 **cuius operā**: 'through whose effort.'

lxiii 6 **Hōc respōnsō . . . cognitō**: see § 117.

lxiii 7 **domum**: see § 97.

lxiii 8 **postquam . . . annō secundō et vīcēsimō**: 'twenty-two years (lit. 'in the twenty-second year') after he had become commander in chief.'

lxiii 11 **parī dīligentiā . . . ac**: 'as earnest (lit. 'of equal earnestness'; § 116) as.'

lxiii 13 **ut esset pecūnia . . . penderētur**: 'that there was money to pay.' For *ut esset* see § 187. I; for *quae . . . penderētur*, § 175.

lxiii 15 **M. Claudiō . . . cōnsulibus**: see § 118, and the note on p. lxii, l. 10.

lxiii 16 **suī exposcendī grātiā**: 'for the purpose of demanding him' (§ 224. *b*). — **missōs**: *missōs esse* (§ 217. *b*).

lxiii 17 **senātus**: 'an audience of the senate.'

lxiii 19 quae . . . comprehenderent . . . cōnsequī: 'to seize him if they could overtake (him).' The direct words were *comprehendite eum, sī poteritis cōnsequī* (§ 199. II. *a*; the impv., *comprehendite*, is equivalent to a fut. ind.). For the mood and tense of *possent* see §§ 208, 209 and note, 210.

lxiii 24 Chap. 8. **sī . . . posset**: 'to see if he could' (§ 201).

lxiii 25 Antiochī spē: 'through their hope in Antiochus' (obj. gen., § 75).

lxiii 27 Hūc: 'to this place' (Cyrene).

lxiii 29 Illī: Hannibal and Mago. Begin the sentence with *cum*; *illī*, indicating a change of subj., and hence being emphatic, is placed first in the sentence (p. 405). — **dēspērātīs rēbus**: 'despairing of success.'

lxiv 2 naufragiō: see § 106. — **ā servulīs**: see § 104. — **interfectum**: *interfectum esse* (§ 217. *b*), depending on *scrīptum relīquērunt*, 'have left the statement' (lit. 'have left written'; *scrīptum* is the accusative neuter sing. of the past participle).

lxiv 3 sī . . . voluisset . . . dīmicāsset (*dīmicāvisset*): see § 199. III. *b*.

lxiv 8 Tiberī . . . Thermopylīs: after the adv. *propius* (§ 90).

lxiv 11 Quem: 'Antiochus.' English is not well supplied with pronouns, and clearness often requires the repetition of the noun.

lxiv 13 vidēbat: 'Hannibal saw'; see the preceding note.

lxiv 16 In quō: 'in this battle.' — **cum**: 'while.' — **suī**: 'his forces.'

lxiv 17 quō cornū: *eō cornū quō* (§ 140). — **rem gessit**: 'fought.'

lxiv 18 Chap. 9. **verēns nē dēderētur**: see § 184.

lxiv 19 sī . . . potestātem: 'if he had offered a chance at himself' (§ 75).

lxiv 21 vir omnium callidissimus: 'this shrewdest of men' (lit. 'shrewdest man of all'; § 76). — **in magnō . . . prōvīdisset**: his direct words were *in magnō erō perīculō, nisi quid prōvīderō* (§ 199. II. *a*); for *quid* see note on *quis*, p. xlii, l. 14.

lxiv 23 exīsse: for *exiisse* (from *exeō*); for the mood see § 217. *b*.

lxiv 25 summās (*amphorās*): 'the tops of the jars.' A few superlative adjectives commonly denote not what object, but what part of the object is meant; thus *summus mōns* does not mean 'the highest mountain,' but 'the highest part (top) of the mountain.'

lxiv 29 domī: 'at his house' (§ 120. *a*).

lxv 2 tolleret: the obj., *amphorās*, is to be supplied.

lxv 6 Chap. 10. **quam . . . armāvit**: 'than arm.'

lxv 8 opibus: see § 115.

lxv 10 eō: 'Prusias'; see note on p. lxiv, l. 11.

lxv 11 et marī et terrā: 'both at sea and on land'; cf. *terrā marīque*, 'on land and sea.' The preposition *in* is not required with these expressions (§ 120). — **utrobīque**: i.e. *et marī et terrā*.

lxv 12 quō magis: 'and all the more' (§ 114).

lxv 13 quem sī . . . fore: see note on p. lxiv, l. 21.

lxv 16 multitūdine: 'in the number' (§ 115).—**dolō**: see § 106.—**cum**: 'since' (§ 189).

lxv 17 armīs: see § 115.—**Imperāvit . . . serpentēs . . . conligi**: see § 217. *a*. *Imperō* ordinarily takes the subjv. with *ut* (§ 183).

lxv 21 omnēs ut: *ut omnēs*; *omnēs* is more emphatic before *ut* (p. 405).

lxv 22 tantum . . . sē dēfendere: 'merely to defend themselves.'

lxv 23 cōnsecūtūrōs (*esse*): see § 217. *b*; the verb of saying is implied in *praecipit* (l. 20).—**Rēx . . . factūrum** (*esse*): the order of the words is determined by their emphasis (p. 405). *Rēx* is the subj. of *veherētur*, and this clause is in turn the obj. of *scīrent* (§ 201). For *ut scīrent* see § 187. I.

lxv 24 quem sī . . . fore: 'he promises that if' etc.

lxv 25 magnō iīs . . . praemiō fore: 'they shall be richly rewarded' (lit. 'it shall be to them for a great reward'; § 89).

lxv 28 Chap. 11. **darētur**: 'should be given' (§ 197. *b*).

lxvi 4 quod: 'because' (§ 188. *a*).

lxvi 7 quae . . . pertinērent: see § 177.

lxvi 10 praeceptō: see § 111.

lxvi 16 Quae iacta . . . concitārunt (*concitāvērunt*): 'the throwing of these (lit. 'which thrown') made the fighters laugh' (lit. 'provoked laughter for' etc.; § 85).

lxvi 18 opplētās . . . serpentibus: 'filled with serpents' (§ 106).

lxvi 22 aliās: 'on other occasions'; an adv.

lxvi 28 Chap. 12. **quī Hannibale vīvō . . . exīstimārent**: 'since they thought (§ 190) that so long as Hannibal lived' (§ 118).

lxvi 29 futūrōs: *futūrōs esse*.

lxvii 2 suum . . . sibique: indir. reflexives, referring to the Romans (§ 133). —**sēcum**: a dir. reflex. referring to Prusias (§ 132).

lxvii 3 illud . . . nē . . . postulārent: 'he objected to their asking' (§ 185). —**id . . . fierī**: see § 217. *a*; *id* is the antecedent of *quod*.

lxvii 4 quod . . . esset: 'which was' (§ 214).—**ipsī . . . comprehenderent**: 'that they themselves should seize (him)'; in indir. disc., a verb of saying being implied in *recūsāvit*. His direct words were *ipsī comprehendite* (impv.).

lxvii 5 ubi esset: see § 208.—**inventūrōs**: (*eōs*) *inventūrōs esse* (§ 217. *b*). His direct words were *locum ubi est facile inveniētis*.

lxvii 7 mūnerī: see § 89.—**aedificārat**: *aedificāverat*.

lxvii 13 num . . . obsidērētur: see § 201. note.

lxvii 15 occupātōs: *occupātōs esse* (§ 217. *b*).

lxvii 16 factum: *factum esse* (§ 217. *b*).

lxvii 17 Quam nē . . . dīmitteret: 'that he might not lose his life at another's will'; for *aliēnō arbitriō* see § 111.—**memor . . . virtūtum**: see § 80.

lxvii 20 Chap. 13. **perfūnctus labōribus**: see § 107.

lxvii 21 Quibus cōnsulibus: see note on p. lxii, l. 10.—**interierit**: see § 201.

lxvii 23 scrīptum relīquit: see note on p. lxiv, l. 2.

lxvii 26 Atque: 'and it is noteworthy that'; the conjunction *et* simply connects; *atque* always throws emphasis on what follows. — **tantus . . . tantīsque:** 'great' (do not say 'so great').

lxvii 27 nōn nihil temporis: see § 76. *a*.

lxvii 29 Huius bellī gesta: 'Hannibal's (lit. 'this man's') exploits in war'; for *bellī* see §§ 72, 73.

lxviii 1 duo: *duo sunt*.

lxviii 4 ūsus est doctōre: 'had as instructor' (§ 107).

lxviii 6 quō facilius . . . possit: see § 176. — **utrōrumque:** 'of both' (Roman and foreign leaders).

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

1 1 CHAP. I. **Gāius:** the regular Latin form, usually written 'Caius' in English. — **familiā:** abl. of origin (§ 102).

1 3 Cinnae: a prominent leader of the popular party.

1 4 Sullae: the great partisan of the nobility and the opponent of Cinna.

1 10 Rhodum: Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.

1 11 prōgreditur: historical present (§ 153. *a*).

1 13 per pecūniās magnās: 'by a great ransom.' What literally?

2 1 CHAP. II. **quaestor:** an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or prætor in charge of a province; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2 6 Aedīlis: an officer at Rome, among whose duties was the charge of public buildings and games; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.

2 7 lūdōs: games were presented in the circus in great variety, and often at great expense, by the officials to gain the favor of the people. See p. xii.

2 8 in aes aliēnum . . . incidit: 'he incurred debt.'

2 9 Cōnsul: the consuls were the highest officers at Rome. Two were elected each year. See Introd. I. 5 and 6. — **societātem:** the alliance known as the First Triumvirate; see Introd. I. 6.

2 10 Lēgem . . . tulisset: 'he had proposed a law.'

2 11 rem ad populum rettulit: 'he laid the matter before the people.'

3 5 CHAP. III. **prīmus Rōmānōrum:** i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.

3 11 conversum: past participle of *convertō* modifying *aquiliferum*; transl. by a clause, 'who had turned' (§ 220. *e*).

3 14 quibuscum: for the preposition *cum* as enclitic see § 150. *a*.

3 15 parātās: past participle modifying *legiōnēs*; *vincī* depends on *parātās*.

3 16 CHAP. IV. **Parthōs:** a warlike people southeast of the Caspian Sea.

3 21 ut . . . peteret: 'that he might be a candidate for the consulship a second time.'

4 1 **sē . . . velle**: 'that he wished to be a candidate while absent.'

4 4 **Rubicōnem**: a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province. The crossing of this boundary with an army was equivalent to a declaration of war.

4 6 **cōgitāns**: see § 167.

4 9 **iacta est ālea**: 'the die is cast'; i.e. 'the decisive step has been taken.'

4 10 **Brundisium**: a port of Calabria in southern Italy, whence ships sailed, and still sail, to Greece.

5 1 CHAP. V. **Ēpīrum**: Epi'rus, a district in northern Greece. See map, p. 167.

5 2 **Dyrrachī**: Dyrrach'ium, a town in Illyricum. — **dum cōpiae . . . pervenīrent**: 'until the forces . . . should arrive'; for the subjv. mood see § 198. III. *b*.

5 4 **ēgreditur**: historical present (§ 153. *a*); transl. as a past abs. (§ 156. *b*); so also *cōnscendit*.

5 8 **prius**: to be taken with *quam*; the parts of *antequam* and *priusquam* are often separated in this way; for the ind. mood see § 197. *a*.

5 14 **mōre**: some ablatives of manner, even when not accompanied by an adjective, are used without *cum*.

6 1 CHAP. VI. **Āfricō**: understand *bellō*.

6 2 **Magnī**: an honorary name given to Pompey. See ill., p. 188.

6 6 **Proeliō quōdam**: 'in a certain battle'; *proeliō* is an abl. of time (§ 119), though the English idiom would lead us to expect *in proeliō*, an abl. of place where.

6 7 **suōrum**: the possessive reflex. adjective (§ 132); sc. *mīlitum*. — **quod . . . servāsset**: a cause stated on the authority of some one other than the writer (§ 188. *b*); 'he upbraided Fortune because (as it seemed to him) she had kept him for this disaster.'

6 9 **sibi**: the dative of reference (§ 85), often used with the dative of purpose or end (§ 89); 'he thought that that war would prove disastrous to him' (lit. 'for a disaster to him').

6 13 **omnium**: an obj. gen. (§ 75. *b*); if *victor*, on which the gen. depends, were a verb, *omnium* would be the dir. obj. (accusative), *vīcit omnēs*.

7 2 CHAP. VII. **annumque . . . accommodāvit**: i.e. he made the number of days in the calendar year accord with that in the solar year. See § 227. *a*.

7 3 **Repetundārum**: a gen. used with a verb of convicting; 'those convicted of extortion.' — **convictōs**: a past participle agreeing with *eōs* understood.

7 4 **quae . . . minuerent**: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

7 5 **exercuit**: 'enforced.'

7 7 **Dictātor**: a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger and having absolute power. When Cæsar was appointed dictator *in perpetuum*, that

is, for a term extending beyond the period of danger and necessity, it was feared that he was aiming at regal authority. See Introd. I. 9.

7 8 **īnsolentius**: 'too arrogantly'; see § 145.

7 13 **ūnus et alter rogābant**: i.e. people generally were asking etc.

7 14 **Rēxne . . . Caesar**: see Introd. I. 10.

8 CHAP. VIII. The dramatic events recorded in this chapter are graphically presented by the colored plates, pp. 8, 305.

8 6 **Nōnne scīs**: 'don't you know?' See § 170. *a*. 2.

8 7 **Īdūs Mārtiās**: see § 227. *d*.

8 8 **cum . . . vēnisset**: note the difference in time between *vēnisset* and *recūsāret* (l. 10); 'when he had come . . . when he kept refusing.'

8 11 **Caesarem**: obj. of *volnerat*, of which *Casca* is the subj.

9 1 CHAP. IX. **sī . . . data esset**: 'if it had been in his power to choose' (lit. 'if the power of choosing had been given to him'); a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. *b*).

9 2 **prīdiē quam occīsus est**: 'on the day before he was killed.' There is a comparative idea in *prīdiē* ('the day sooner'), which allows the use of the same construction as follows *priusquam* (§ 197. *a*).

9 3 **conlātō**: with *sermōne*; *sermōnem cōnferre*, 'to carry on a conversation.'

9 5 **quō . . . hōc**: these abls. of measure of difference may best be translated by the English correlatives 'the . . . the' (cf. "the deeper the well, the colder the water"); lit. 'by how much the more infrequent . . . by so much the more praiseworthy.'

9 7 **Cum enim dēprehendisset**: 'for when he had seized.'

9 8 **ab eīs . . . restiterant**: 'by those who had opposed him'; for the case of *sibi*, see § 83.

9 15 CHAP. X. **Caesar . . . statūrā**: 'Cæsar is said to have been tall' (lit. 'of high stature'). The abl. of description, *statūrā*, is in the pred. of the sentence, as are also *ōre*, *oculīs*, and *capite* (§ 116. *b*). See Introd. I. 11.

9 16 **Quam**: 'and this,' or simply 'this'; see § 143.

9 17 **molestē ferēbat**: 'he was annoyed at' (lit. 'he bore ill').

9 18 **gestandae**: the gerundive is to be carefully distinguished from the gerund, which is always governed as a noun, but has an active verbal force and so sometimes, but not generally, has an obj. in the accusative. The gerundive is pass. and agrees with its noun like an adjective. The gerund form corresponding to *iūs laureae gestandae* would be *iūs gestandī lauream*, 'the right of wearing the laurel wreath.' The gerundive is to be translated in the same way, though lit. it means 'the right of the laurel wreath to be worn.'

10 1 **Reī mīlitāris . . . perītissimus**: see § 80. See Introd. I. 12.

10 3 **equō**: 'on horseback.'—**pedibus**: 'on foot.'

10 5 **ut . . . pervenīret**: a result clause.

10 7 **ut vīsum est**: 'as it seemed.'

THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

11 1 CHAP. 1. **Gallia**: the whole country of Gaul excepting the Roman Province (*Ulterior Prōvincia*) and Cisalpine Gaul (*Citerior Prōvincia*, now known as northern Italy). See the map at the beginning of the book, and the Introd. II. 1. — **omnis**: 'as a whole.' — **dīvīsa**: past participle used as an adjective.

11 2 **ūnam**: sc. *partem* from *partēs* above. — **incolunt**: 'inhabit.' The words *quārum . . . incolunt* etc. may be translated freely, 'one of which is inhabited by the Belgæ' etc. — **quī**: the antecedent is *eī* ('those') understood, subj. of *incolunt*.

11 3 **ipsōrum**: shown to be emphatic by its position (see Composition, Lesson I. 2); 'in their own language.'

11 4 **linguā**: abl. of respect (§ 115). — **inter sē**: 'from one another' (lit. 'among themselves').

11 5 **Gallōs** etc.: trace these boundaries on the map. Use the maps in all cases to locate the names of places and peoples.

11 6 **dīvidit**: the verb is sing. because the rivers make one boundary (§ 68).

11 7 **Hōrum**: part. gen. with *fortissimī* (§ 76). — **proptereā quod**: 'because' (lit. 'because of this, that').

11 8 **cultū**: 'civilization,' as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — **hūmānitāte**: 'refinement,' of mind or feeling. — **prōvinciae**: *Ulterior Prōvincia*, the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul. See map and Introd. II. 1. This territory was organized as a province, and was under the influence of Roman civilization.

11 9 **mercātōrēs**: traders, or peddlers. They traveled with mules, pack horses, and wagons.

11 10 **effēminandōs**: gerundive (§ 224. *b*). Distinguish carefully from the gerund.

11 11 **Germānīs**: dative with an adjective of nearness (§ 90). — **Rhēnum**: this natural boundary has always been patriotically guarded by the Germans and has inspired their well-known song "Die Wacht am Rhein."

11 12 **Quā dē causā**: 'and for this reason'; for the translation of a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

11 14 **cum**: 'while.' — **suīs** and **ipsī**: both refer to the Helvetii, *eōs* and *eōrum* to the Germans. For the reflexive *suīs* see § 132.

12 1 **quam . . . dictum est**: 'which it has been said (above) the Gauls occupy.' For the indir. disc. see § 204. The dir. disc. would be *Gallī obtinent*. Do not transl. *obtinēre* 'obtain.'

12 3 **ab Sēquanīs**: 'on the side of' etc.

12 4 **vergit** etc.: 'slopes to the north'; the highlands are along the southern boundary, and most of the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.

12 5 **Galliae**: Central (or Celtic) Gaul, the country just described, not *Gallia omnis*.

12 6 **spectant in**: 'face,' or 'lie toward.'

12 9 **inter occāsum** etc.: 'toward the northwest,' i.e. from the Province, the quarter from which this direction and that mentioned in l. 6 are considered.

12 11 CHAP. 2. **M(ārcō) Messālā et M(ārcō) Pīsōne cōnsulibus**: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. *b*). Transl., 'in the consulship of Marcus Messala' etc. In reading the Latin and in translating always give the names in full. Two consuls were elected annually, and the Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls in office (§ 228). The two named above were consuls in 61 B.C., three years before Cæsar went to Gaul.

12 12 **coniūrātiōnem**: 'a conspiracy.' The Helvetii had been governed by kings, but were now ruled by chiefs from among the nobles (*nōbilēs*). Orgetorix, by making himself leader of the emigration, hoped to gain royal power over the Helvetii, and through them to extend his sway over the whole of Gaul. — **cīvitātī**: dative after *persuāsit* (§ 83).

12 13 **ut . . . exīrent**: subst. clause used as the obj. of *persuāsit* (§ 183).

12 14 **perfacile esse** etc.: indir. disc. after a verb of saying implied in *persuāsit*. The dir. words of persuasion used were *perfacile est* etc., *potīrī* being the subj. and *perfacile* in the pred. of *est*. 'He persuaded them . . ., (saying) that it was very easy.' — **cum . . . praestārent**: causal clause (§ 189). — **omnibus**: dative with a compound verb (§ 84).

12 15 **imperiō**: see § 107. *a*.

12 16 **Id**: dir. obj. of *persuāsit*. See Composition, Lesson XXVIII. note 1. — **hōc**: abl. of cause (§ 109).

12 17 **ūnā ex parte**: 'on one side.'

12 22 **Hīs rēbus fīēbat**: 'from these causes it came about' (§ 109). — **ut . . . vagārentur**: 'that they roamed about less widely' etc.; but transl. more freely and naturally, 'from these causes it came about that they were becoming less free to wander.' The clauses *ut . . . vagārentur . . . possent* are the subjs. of *fīēbat* (§ 187. II).

12 23 **fīnitimīs**: see § 84. — **quā ex parte**: 'and for this reason'; for this translation of *quā* see § 143 and cf. p. 11, l. 12. — **hominēs**: 'being men,' in apposition with the subj. of *adficiēbantur*.

12 24 **bellandī**: gerund (§ 223. *a*).

12 26 **mīlia passuum**: 'miles.' The *passus* was the stretch from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five

Roman feet. A Roman mile (1000 paces) was about 400 feet less than ours.— **mīlia**: accusative of extent (§ 96).

12 27 passuum: part. gen. (§ 76).—**CCXL**: *ducenta quadrāgintā*; always give the Latin words for numerals when reading the text.—**patēbant**: keep in mind the difference in meaning between the past descr. and the perf. (§§ 154. *b*., 156).

13 1 CHAP. 3. **Hīs rēbus**: 'by these considerations' (§ 109).

13 2 quae . . . pertinērent: dependent clause in indir. disc. (§ 203. *a*). There is, to be sure, no verb here that expressly means 'say' or 'think,' but from the main verb *cōnstituērunt* one can see that the clause expresses the thought of the Helvetii, not of Cæsar, and for this reason the subord. verb is in the subjv.

13 3 quam maximum: 'as great as possible.'

13 6 cōnficiendās: 'completing'; gerundive, denoting purpose (§ 225. *a*).

13 7 in tertium annum . . . cōnfīrmant: 'fix . . . for the third year.' For the tense of *cōnfīrmant* see § 153. *a*.

13 9 Casticō: see § 83.

13 10 fīliō, Sēquanō: in apposition with *Casticō* (§ 58).

13 12 ut . . . occupāret: subst. clause, obj. of *persuādet* (§ 183). For the past tense see the rule for sequence of tenses (§§ 162, 164).

13 13 quod: rel. pronoun with *rēgnum* for antecedent (§ 137).—**Dumnorīgī**: indir. obj. of *persuādet* (l. 15). Dumnorix was a younger brother of Diviciacus (l. 14), a strong representative of the old aristocratic clan-spirit among the Hædui. He was ambitious for power, a vigorous leader of the anti-Roman faction among his people, and caused Cæsar much trouble for many years.

13 14 Dīviciācī: this Hæduan chief had been in Rome, knew Cicero and other prominent Romans, and was the constant friend and ally of Cæsar in his campaigns. He represented the popular element that was opposed to the old clannish aristocracy, of which such men as Orgetorix and Dumnorix were the leaders.

13 15 ut idem cōnārētur: 'to make the same attempt.'

13 17 Perfacile: pred. with *esse* of the sentence of which *cōnāta perficere* is the subj. (§ 48. I. *b*); n. gender because the subj. is an inf. *Cōnāta* is n. plur. accusative, obj. of *perficere*.—**factū**: see § 226. *b*.—**illīs probat**: 'undertook to show them'; historical present (§ 153. *a*).

13 19 esse: indir. disc. with a verb of saying understood; '(he told them) there was no doubt that' etc. (§ 203. *a*).—**quin . . . possent**: see § 186.—**Galliae**: see § 76.

13 20 sē . . . conciliātūrum (esse): the indir. disc. continues; '(he told them) that he would win over' etc. The dir. form was *conciliābō*. Remember

that the reflexives *sē* and *suus* in their various forms refer, as a rule, to the subj. of their clause, and in indir. disc. to the subj. of the verb of saying (§ 133).

13 21 ōrātiōne: do not transl., 'oration'; the meaning is rather a 'plea,' or 'argument.' For the case see § 109.—**fidem et iūs iūrandum**: transl. freely, 'an assurance confirmed by oath.'

13 22 rēgnō occupātō: abl. abs. expressing time (§ 117. *b*). Such a construction can generally be expanded in translation into a clause denoting time, cause, condition, or concession, introduced by 'when,' 'since,' 'if,' or 'though,' according to the context.—**per trēs . . . populōs**: i.e. the Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani.

13 23 Galliae: see § 81. *d*.—**posse**: equivalent to a fut. inf.; indir. disc. with *sēsē* as subj. (§ 204).

13 24 Chap. 4. **Mōribus**: see § 111.

13 25 ex vinculīs: lit. 'out of chains'; i.e. '(standing) in chains.' We should say simply 'in chains.'—**causam dīcere**: 'to plead his cause.'—**Damnātum**: a past participle expressing condition (§ 220. *c*) and modifying *eum* understood, which would be the obj. of *sequī*; the subj. of *sequī* is *poenam*, which is explained by the subst. appositive clause *ut . . . cremārētur* (§ 183, third example). The whole expression *damnātum poenam sequī . . . ut ignī cremārētur* is the subj. of *oportēbat*. The following diagram will show the relation of these words:

{ { *poenam* (ut [is] cremārētur ignī)
{ { *sequī* ([eum] damnātum)
{ *oportēbat*

Transl. freely, 'he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned with fire.'

14 1 Diē: see § 119.—**causae dictiōnis**: 'for the trial' (lit. 'of the pleading of the case'). *Dictiōnis* depends on *diē*, and *causae* is the obj. gen. after *dictiōnis* (§ 75. *b*).

14 2 familiam: 'clansmen.' See the vocabulary for the various meanings of this word.—**ad**: 'about'; adv. modifying the numeral adjective *decem*.

14 3 clientēs: 'retainers'; volunteer or adopted followers, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul.

14 4 nē . . . dīceret: neg. clause of purpose (§ 174).

14 6 Cum . . . cōnārētur: descriptive clause of time (§ 194. *b*).—**iūs**: the 'right' of the state to punish traitors.

14 9 quīn . . . cōnscīverit (from **cōnscīscō**): 'that he committed suicide' (§ 186). The construction is analogous to that following *nōn est dubium*.

14 10 Chap. 5. **nihilō**: 'none the less'; lit. 'less by nothing' (§ 114).

14 11 ut . . . exeant: subst. clause in apposition with *id* (§ 183).

14 13 numerō: see § 115; *ad* as above in l. 2. — **vīcōs**: 'villages,' i.e. unfortified groups of houses; *oppida*, on the other hand, are fortified (walled) towns capable of defense.

14 14 incendunt: 'set on fire.'

14 15 combūrunt: 'burn up.' — **domum**: see § 97. The verbal idea of 'returning' in the noun *reditiōnis* allows this construction, which is usual only with verbs. — **spē sublātā**: equivalent to a temporal clause (§ 117. *b*). *Sublātā* is from *tollō*.

14 16 ad . . . subeunda: see § 225. *a*.

14 18 utī . . . proficīscantur: subst. clause, dir. obj. of *persuādent* (§ 183). In this clause *ūsī* agrees with the omitted subj. of *proficīscantur*.

14 19 cōnsiliō: abl. with *ūsī* (§ 107. *a*). — **vīcīs exūstīs**: abl. abs.

14 22 receptōs . . . adscīscunt: transl., 'they receive the Boii into their own number (*ad sē*) and unite them to themselves as allies.'

14 23 Chap. 6. **Erant** etc.: 'there were in all (only) two ways' etc.

14 24 possent: the subjv. in a clause of description or characteristic (§ 177. *a*).

14 25 inter . . . Rhodanum: about nineteen Roman miles from Geneva. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman Province. — **vix quā . . . dūcerentur**: 'where carts could scarcely be drawn in single file.' *Dūcerentur* is a subjv. of description, like *possent* in l. 24.

15 1 possent: a subjv. of result (§ 179).

15 2 multō: see § 114. While this route was easier, it required them to crush the Roman force at Geneva before they could use it.

15 3 pācātī erant: 'had been subjugated,' three years before. The Roman idea of 'pacifying' a people was to subdue them.

15 4 locīs: see § 120. *b*. — **vadō**: 'by ford(ing)' (§ 106).

15 7 persuāsūrōs (esse): indir. disc. Observe that *esse* is frequently omitted. The dir. expression was *persuādēbimus* (§ 204).

15 8 bonō animō: 'well disposed' (§ 116. *b*). — **vidērentur**: subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208).

15 9 paterentur: see § 183; *suōs* and the subj. of *paterentur* (understood) refer to the Allobroges; *eōs* refers to the Helvetii.

15 11 conveniant: see § 175. — **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: = *ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs*; transl. as if it were *quīntō diē ante Kalendās Aprīlēs*, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April,' i.e. March 28 (§ 227. *h, i*).

16 1 Chap. 7. **Caesarī**: almost any word in a Latin sentence may be made emphatic by being placed first. Cæsar here makes his first appearance. His dramatic entrance at the critical moment, after the stage has been carefully set by describing how difficult the situation was, is characteristic of his style and of the man. Observe how carefully he has set forth (1) the geography of the

country, chap. 1; (2) the situation and plans of the Helvetii, chaps. 2–6; and then (3) how he centers attention on himself, the main figure, as he enters on the scene. Observe that he regularly writes of himself in the third person.

16 2 ab urbe: Cæsar was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship preparatory to setting out for his province. See Introd. I. 7. The word *urbs* in Latin writers regularly means Rome, THE CITY. — **quam maximīs potest itineribus**: 'by the longest possible marches' (§ 124).

16 3 ulteriōrem: i.e. beyond the Alps, *Ulterior Prōvincia.*

16 5 imperat: here used in the sense 'to make requisition on.' *Prōvinciae* is the indir. obj., and *numerum* the dir. obj.

16 6 legiō: this was the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous.

16 7 certiōrēs factī sunt: 'were informed' (lit. 'made more certain').

16 9 quī dīcerent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); not 'who said,' but 'who should say,' or, in better English, 'to say.' The construction after *dīcerent* is indir. disc. The direct words of the ambassadors were *nōbīs est in animō . . . quod aliud iter habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbīs facere liceat.*

16 10 sibi: dative of possession (§ 88).

16 12 ut . . . liceat: subst. clause, obj. of *rogāre* (§ 183).

16 13 memoriā tenēbat: 'remembered' (lit. 'held by memory'); equivalent to a verb of knowing and so followed by indir. disc.

16 14 sub iugum: the *iugum* was made by sticking two spears into the ground and laying another across them above. Conquered soldiers were made to pass under this as a sign of *sub-jugation*; this act was equivalent to the modern 'laying down arms.'

16 15 concēdendum (esse): impers., depending on *putābat*. — **hominēs**: subj. of *temperātūrōs* (*esse*) depending on *exīstimābat*. — **inimīcō animō**: abl. of description (§ 116).

16 16 datā facultāte: abl. abs. expressing condition (§ 117. *a*).

16 18 dum . . . convenīrent: 'until the men should' etc. (§ 198. III. *b*).

16 19 diem: the meaning here is 'time,' not 'day.'

16 20 ad Īd. Apr.: 'April 13' (§ 227, *d*). — **reverterentur**: 'they should return' (§ 205).

16 21 CHAP. 8. **legiōne**: abl. of means (§ 106).

17 1 mīlia: accusative of extent (§ 96). Cæsar's *diem ad dēlīberandum* was used in fortifying the south bank of the river. The whole distance was, as Cæsar says, about nineteen miles, but the banks were so steep that only about three miles in all actually needed defense. Where this was necessary, the bank was cut down so as to be vertical. Then a trench was made a short distance back from the bank and running parallel to it. The earth from the trench was thrown in front of it to increase the height of the river bank. The *pedum sēdecim* is the distance from the top of the wall of earth to the bottom of the ditch.

17 2 **pedum:** gen. of description (§ 77).

17 3 **quō facilius . . . posset:** why is *quō* used instead of *ut*? See § 176.

17 4 **sē invītō:** abl. abs.; 'against his will' (§ 117. *e*). — **cōnārentur . . . posset:** note that these verbs are in secondary sequence after the historical presents *dispōnit* and *commūnit* (§ 164).

17 6 **negat sē . . . posse:** 'says he cannot' etc. Do not transl. *negat* 'deny.'

17 8 **cōnentur:** subjv. because it is in a subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208). — **prohibitūrum (esse):** supply *sē* for subj. and *eōs* for obj.

17 10 **nōn numquam:** 'sometimes'; the two negatives equal an affirmative.

17 11 **sī . . . possent:** indir. question depending on *cōnātī*; 'having tried (to see) whether' etc. (§ 201).

17 12 **cōnātū:** see § 101.

17 14 CHAP. 9. **ūna . . . via:** 'only the one way.'

17 16 **possent:** subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).

17 17 **ut . . . impetrārent:** a purpose clause (§ 174). — **eō dēprecātōre:** 'by his intercession' (lit. 'he being intercessor').

17 18 **grātiā:** 'personal influence'; abl. of cause (§ 109).

17 20 **novīs rēbus:** 'revolution'; dative (§ 83).

17 22 **obstrictās:** used as a pred. adjective.

17 23 **patiantur . . . dent:** subjv. in subst. clauses of result (§ 187. I). — **obsidēs:** these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact was broken, the hostages were held responsible and punished.

17 24 **Sēquanī . . . Helvētiī:** sc. *obsidēs dent*; *dent* is followed by the purpose clauses *nē . . . prohibeant* and *ut . . . trānseant* (§ 174).

18 4 CHAP. 10. **fieret:** subjv. in a subord. clause in indir. disc. after *intellegēbat* (§ 208).

18 5 **futūrum (esse) ut . . . habēret:** 'it would be to the great peril of the Province to have' etc.; *ut . . . habēret* is a subst. clause of result, subj. of *futūrum* (*esse*) (§ 187. II).

18 6 **locīs:** abl. of place where (§ 120. *b*).

18 7 **fīnitimōs:** pred., 'have as neighbors' etc.

18 8 **mūnītiōnī:** see § 84. — **Labiēnum:** an officer in whom Cæsar had the greatest confidence, and to whom he generously gives much credit.

18 9 **lēgātum:** see Introd. III. 6. *b*. See vocabulary for two meanings of this word. The context will always tell which is intended.

18 10 **duās:** the eleventh and twelfth legions. — **trēs:** the seventh, eighth, and ninth. These together with *eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat* (p. 16, l. 21), which was already on the field of action, made up the six legions of Cæsar's army.

18 15 **Complūribus . . . pulsīs:** *pulsīs* agrees with *hīs* (abl. abs.) (§ 117. *b*).

18 21 CHAP. 11. **angustiās**: the pass between the Jura Mountains and the Rhone, described in chap. 6.

19 1 **rogātum**: supine (§ 226. *a* and note). A word of saying is implied in *rogātum* which accounts for the following indir. disc. The dir. form was *Ita omnī tempore . . . meritī sumus ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī vāstārī, līberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint* (§ 179).

19 6 **dēpopulātīs**: pass., though from a deponent verb.

19 9 **sibi . . . nihil esse reliquī**: 'that they have nothing left' (lit. 'there was nothing of a remainder to themselves'). For *reliquī* see § 76; for *sibi*, § 88.

19 11 **exspectandum (esse)**: impers.; transl. by the active, 'he must not' etc.

19 12 **pervenīrent**: see §§ 198. III. *b*, 162.

19 13 CHAP. 12. **Flūmen est Arar**: 'there is a river (called) the Saône.'

19 14 **lēnitāte**: abl. of description (§ 116).

19 15 **in . . . fluat**: indir. question (§ 201). The clause is the subj. of *possit*.

19 16 **trānsībant**: note the continuative force of the past descr. (§ 154. *a*).

19 17 **partēs**: obj. of *-dūxisse*; *flūmen* is accusative, depending on *trāns-* in *trādūxisse* (§ 95).

19 18 **citrā**: 'on this side of' (as viewed from Rome).

19 19 **dē tertiā vigiliā**: 'in the third watch,' i.e. between midnight and 3 A.M. See vocabulary.

19 23 **mandārunt**: contracted from *mandāvērunt*.

20 4 **quae pars . . . intulerat, ea . . . persolvit**: the normal order would be *ea pars quae* etc.; the antecedent of *quae* is *pars*, which is drawn into the rel. clause and made a part of it (§ 140).

20 5 **prīnceps poenās persolvit**: 'paid the penalty first'; *prīnceps*, though an adjective, is used with the force of an adverb (§ 126).

20 7 **eius socerī**: 'his father-in-law,' L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of chap. 6).

20 11 CHAP. 13. **pontem . . . faciendum cūrat**: 'had a bridge made' (§ 224. *d*).

20 13 **cum . . . intellegerent**: see § 195.—**diēbus vīgintī**: 'in the course of twenty days' (§ 119).

20 14 **ut . . . trānsīrent**: a result clause in apposition with *id* (§ 187. I).

20 17 **Sī . . . faciet . . . ībunt . . . erunt**: a future more probable condition (§ 199. II. *a*).

20 20 **incommodī**: for gen. see § 81. *a*.

20 22 **Quod**: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. *a*).

20 23 **suīs**: see §§ 82, 132. *Suīs* is used as a subst. (§ 127).

21 1 **ut . . . contendāmus . . . nītāmur**: see § 179.

21 6 CHAP. 14. **dubitātiōnis**: part. gen. (§ 76. *a*).

21 8 **eō . . . quō**: abls. of measure of difference (§ 114); 'I am the more incensed, the less' etc.

21 9 **sī . . . fuisset**: a past condition contrary to fact (§ 199. III. *b*). Transl. *quī sī* 'if it.' The subj. of *fuisset* is *quī*, which refers to the Roman people. Note the accent of *alicu'ius*.

21 11 **quā rē timēret**: *quā rē* is equivalent to *propter quod* with *quicquam* understood for the antecedent; 'the Roman people did not know that anything had been done by them to cause them to fear' (lit. 'on account of which they' etc.). *Timēret* is thus a subjv. of description (§ 177); observe that the collective noun *populus Rōmānus* takes a singular verb (§ 65. *a*).

21 12 **Quod sī**: 'but if' etc.

21 13 **contumēliae**: see § 81. *a*. — **volō**: see § 199. I. *a*.

21 14 **quod . . . temptāstis . . . vexāstis**: 'the fact that' etc. These clauses are in apposition with *iniūriārum* (§ 182).

21 17 **Quod . . . glōriāminī . . . admīrāminī**: 'the fact that' etc. These *quod* clauses are the subjects of *pertinet* (§ 182); for the singular verb see § 67.

21 19 **Cōnsuērunt**: emphatic position (see note on p. 11, l. 3); 'it is the custom of the gods to grant' etc. (lit. 'the gods are wont'). — **quō gravius . . . doleant**: see § 176. Cf. also p. 17, l. 3.

21 20 **quōs**: the antecedent of this rel. is *hīs* (§ 139).

21 23 **Cum . . . sint**: a concessive clause (§ 192. note). *Cum* with the subjv. may mean 'when,' 'since,' or 'although'; the presence of the word *tamen*, 'nevertheless,' in the main clause is generally a sure indication of the last meaning. — **sī . . . dabuntur**: see § 199. II. *a*.

21 24 **ut . . . intellegam**: see § 174. — **Haeduīs**: see § 84. *a*.

21 25 **ipsīs sociīsque**: see § 84.

21 26 **Allobrogibus**: cf. *Haeduīs*, l. 24.

21 28 **utī . . . cōnsuērint**: a result clause with the antecedent word *ita* (§ 179 and note). — **cōnsuērint**: contracted from *cōnsuēverint*.

21 29 **Hōc respōnsō datō**: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. *b*).

22 2 CHAP. 15. **equitātum**: see Introd. III. 2. — **quem . . . coāctum habēbat**: 'which he had, collected'; more strictly 'held (had in hand) after being collected' (§ 156. *b*. note).

22 4 **videant**: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); transl. 'to see' (lit. 'who should see'). It is followed by the indir. question *quās . . . faciant* as object.

22 5 **cupidius**: 'too eagerly' (§ 145). — **aliēnō locō**: 'on unfavorable ground' (lit. 'on another's ground'); see § 120. *b*.

22 10 **novissimō agmine**: 'at their rear'; abl. of place where. When an abl. of place is qualified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted; regularly so before certain words (§ 120. *b*).

22 12 **rapīnīs**: see § 101.

22 15 **quīnīs aut sēnīs**: distributives; 'five or six miles each day.'—**mīlibus**: see § 105.

22 16 CHAP. 16. **Haeduōs frūmentum . . . flāgitāre**: 'demanded grain of the Hædui' (§ 93).

22 17 **essent . . . polliciti**: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc.; 'which (as he said) they had promised' (§ 208. *b*). If Cæsar had given this as a fact on his own authority, he would have written *erant* . . . *polliciti*.—**flāgitāre**: historical inf. Transl. as if past descr. ind. (§ 218).

22 18 **frūmenta**: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (*pābulī*) was scarce because Cæsar was following in the path of the Helvetii, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country almost bare.—**nē . . . quidem**: 'not . . . even of green fodder.' A word standing between *nē* and *quidem* is made emphatic.

22 19 **frūmentō**: abl. with *ūtī* (§ 107. *a*).

22 20 **flūmine Ararī**: see § 120. *b*. note 1.

22 22 **Diem**: see § 96.—**dūcere**: historical inf. (§ 218); also *dīcere*, l. 23; cf. *flāgitāre*, l. 17.—**cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse**: the subj. is *frūmentum*. Note the climax, 'they said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.'

22 24 **diūtius**: 'too long'; cf. *cupidius*, l. 5.—**quō diē**: abl. of time (§ 119). Do not transl. *diē*.

23 1 **summō magistrātuī praeerat**: 'held the chief office.' For the case of *magistrātuī* see § 84.

23 2 **vergobretum**: see § 94.

23 4 **posset**: the subj. is *frūmentum* understood. For the mood see § 214.

23 5 **propinquīs hostibus**: 'with the enemy so near'; abl. abs.

23 6 **sublevētur**: Cæsar is telling why he blamed the Hædui; but, looking back to that time as he writes, he speaks of himself as some other person upon whose authority the reason is given; 'he blamed them because (as he said)' etc. (§ 188. *b*).

23 7 **quod sit dēstitūtus**: subjv. on the same principle as *sublevētur*; 'because (as he said) he had been left in the lurch.'

23 9 CHAP. 17. **quod**: rel. pronoun, obj. of *tacuerat*. The antecedent is *id* understood, obj. of *prōpōnit*.

23 11 **valeat**: subjv. of description (§ 177. *a*).

23 12 **improbā ōrātiōne**: 'shameless talk.'

23 13 **nē frūmentum cōnferant**: see § 185.

23 14 **Praestāre**: 'that it is better.'—**sī . . . possint**: see § 199. II. *b*.

23 16 **quīn . . . sint ēreptūrī**: see § 186. The verb is an active periphrastic form (§ 222. I).

23 17 **Haeduīs**: dative of separation (§ 86).

23 19 **quod . . . ēnūntiāvī**: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. *a*); cf. p. 20, l. 22 and note.

23 20 **quantō . . . fēcerim**: indir. question (§ 201).

23 23 CHAP. 18. **plūribus praesentibus**: 'in the presence of many' (§ 117. *e*).

23 24 **dīmittit**: historical present (§ 153. *a*). A number of others follow.

24 1 **esse vēra**: 'that the facts are as follows'; explained by the quotation following. — **Ipse est Dumnorīx**: 'Dumnorix is the very man.'

24 2 **summā audāciā**: 'of the utmost boldness' (§ 116).

24 5 **pretiō**: abl. of value (§ 108). — **redēmpta habet**: see § 156. *b*. note; cf. p. 22, l. 3. — **illō licente**: 'when he bid'; the verb is from *liceor*, not *licet*.

24 6 **rēbus**: see § 106.

24 7 **ad largiendum**: 'for bribery' (to buy political support); see § 223. *c*.

24 8 **sūmptū**: see § 106.

24 9 **domī**: see § 120. *a*.

24 10 **causā**: 'for the sake' etc. This is the regular meaning of the word when following the gen. For the case see § 109 and note.

24 12 **sorōrem ex mātre**: 'sister on the mother's side,' 'half sister.'

24 13 **nūptum**: supine (§ 226. *a*). See vocabulary under *conlocō*.

24 15 **suō nōmine**: 'on his own account' (§ 109).

24 17 **Sī quid accidit**: see § 199. I. *a*.

24 19 **imperiō**: 'under the rule' (§ 112).

24 21 **quod**: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. *a*).

24 22 **diēbus**: see § 114; there is a comparative idea in *ante* (lit. 'before by a few days').

24 24 **auxiliō Caesarī**: 'as an aid to Cæsar' (§ 89).

25 2 CHAP. 19. **accēderent**: see § 189; the following *quod* clauses are in apposition with *rēs* ('facts'). The verbs are in the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*); cf. p. 22, l. 17 and note.

25 3 **dandōs**: see § 224. *d*; cf. p. 20, l. 11.

25 4 **iniussū suō** etc.: 'without his authority or that of the state.'

25 5 **ipsīs**: i.e. himself and the Hædui. For the case see § 117. *e*.

25 6 **causae**: part. gen. depending on *satis*, which is used as a noun (§ 76. *a*). — **quā rē . . . animadverteret**: 'should proceed against (or 'punish') him'; subjv. of description (§ 177).

25 8 **quod . . . cognōverat**: 'the fact that he knew,' the clause is in apposition with *ūnum*, 'only one thing, namely' (§§ 181, 182, second example); for the meaning of *cognōscō* in the perf. tenses see vocabulary.

25 9 **studium**: 'attachment,' as a partisan.

25 10 **voluntātem**: 'good will,' as a friend.

25 11 **nē**: 'that' (§ 184).—**eius**: i.e. of Dumnorix.

25 13 **prius quam . . . cōnārētur**: 'before he should attempt' (§ 197. *b*).

25 16 **summam . . . fidem**: 'full confidence.'—**eō**: refers to Diviciacus, as does *ipsō* (l. 17); while *apud sē* (l. 19), 'in his presence,' refers to Cæsar.

25 20 **ipse**: i.e. Cæsar (§ 136). The gist of the request is in *sine eius offēnsiōne animī*, referring to the displeasure of Diviciacus, whose friendship he desires to retain. Cæsar's diplomacy is constantly apparent.

25 22 CHAP. 20. **complexus**: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees, falling at his feet.

25 23 **nē quid gravius**: 'that not any too severe measures' (§ 122); *gravius* is an adjective modifying *quid*.

25 24 **ex eō**: 'from that fact,' referring to *haec esse vēra*.

25 25 **grātiā**: 'on account of my influence' (§ 109).—**domī**: loc. (§ 120. *a*).

26 4 **cum . . . teneō**: 'while I hold.'

26 6 **voluntāte**: see § 111.

26 10 **tantī**: 'of so great account,' gen. of value (§ 78).—**utī . . . eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet**: 'that in deference to his wish and prayers he would overlook' etc. The clause is one of result (§ 179).

26 13 **reprehendat**: indir. question (§ 201). Two more instances follow.

26 15 **Dīviciācō frātrī**: 'for the sake of his brother, Diviciacus' (§ 85).

26 19 CHAP. 21. **mīlia**: see § 96.

26 20 **cognōscerent**: the subj. is *quī*, whose antecedent is *quōsdam*, or some such word, to be supplied as the obj. of *misit* (§ 142). For the mood of the verb see § 175.

26 21 **facilem (ascēnsum) esse**: subj. of *renūntiātum est*.—**Dē tertiā vigiliā**: cf. p. 19, l. 19 and note.

26 22 **prō praetōre**: the prætor had the power to command an army; a *lēgātus* might be given such power temporarily, and he was then called *lēgātus prō praetōre*.

26 24 **cōnsilī**: pred. gen. after *quid sit*, 'what his plan is' (§ 77. *a*).—**dē quārtā vigiliā**: the third watch always began at midnight; but the length of the watches varied according to the season, being shorter in the short nights of summer. This was in June, and the fourth watch began about 2.30 A.M.

26 26 **reī**: see § 80.

26 28 **in**: sc. *exercitū*.

27 2 CHAP. 22. **ipse**: '(and) he himself,' i.e. Cæsar.

27 3 **passibus**: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114), or of comparison after *longius* (§ 105. note 2).

27 4 **Labiēnī**: sc. *adventus*. — **equō admissō**: 'at full speed.'

27 6 **armīs**: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans, as may be seen by a comparison of the illustrations, pp. 31, 45, 52, 69.

27 7 **īnsignibus**: i.e. devices on shields, helmets, etc. — stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.

27 8 **Caesar . . . īnstruit**: the inference from the report would be that Labienus and his men had been overwhelmed. Cæsar in consequence falls back.

27 9 **ut**: 'since,' 'inasmuch as.' — **erat . . . praeceptum**: impers.; this verb cannot take a personal pass. construction (§ 83. *a*). The grammatical subj. is the clause *nē . . . committeret*, a negative subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

27 13 **Multō . . . diē**: abl. of time; 'late in the day' (§ 119).

27 15 **quod nōn vīdisset**: 'what he had not seen'; *id* understood, the obj. of *renūntiāsse*, is the antecedent; *prō vīsō*, 'as if seen' (lit. 'for a thing seen').

27 16 **intervāllō**: sc. *eōdem*, 'at the same interval as usual'; for the case see § 112.

27 21 Chap. 23. **mīlibus**: for the construction cf. note on l. 3.

27 22 **prōspiciendum (esse)**: impers.; sc. *sibi*, dative of apparent agent (§ 87); 'he thought he ought to look out for the supply of grain.'

27 23 **āvertit**: toward the north; the Helvetii were traveling westward; see campaign map, facing p. 12.

27 24 **fugitīvōs**: 'runaway slaves.'

27 25 **quod . . . exīstimārent . . . cōnfīderent**: subjv. because the reason is not given as surely the right one, but merely as the supposed one (§ 188. *b*).

27 26 **eō magis**: 'all the more' (lit. 'more by this'); see § 114.

27 28 **rē**: abl. of separation (§ 101). — **interclūdī**: complementary inf. (§ 217. *c*) after *posse*, the subj. of which is *eōs* (*Rōmānōs*) understood.

28 1 **itinere conversō**: 'facing about' (lit. 'altering their course completely'); i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, they returned and gave Cæsar the chance he was waiting for.

28 3 Chap. 24. **id**: governed by *animum advertit*, as a compound verb.

28 4 **quī sustinēret**: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

28 5 **in colle mediō**: 'halfway up the hill' (§ 125). — **triplicem aciem**: see Introd. III. 12.

28 6 **legiōnum**: gen. of material (§ 79). The four veteran legions (VII–X) stood side by side, each in three lines. Legions XI and XII, which he had last raised (*proximē cōnscrīpserat*), were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle and so were set to guard the camp. See battle plan.

28 8 **sarcinās**: see ill., p. 69, and Introd. III. 9. *d*.

28 10 **cum omnibus suīs carrīs**: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the custom of migrating peoples to go to battle with their families and carts; the former for encouragement, the latter for defense.

28 12 **phalange**: great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx.

28 14 CHAP. 25. **suō (equō remōtō)** etc.: i.e. his own and those of his officers. Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." Officers and men, sharing danger on equal terms, would be equally brave. Cæsar understood human nature thoroughly.

28 17 **pīlīs**: see Introd. III. 9. *c*, with the ill., p. xxiv.

28 18 **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō**: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

28 19 **plūribus**: 'several.'

28 20 **ferrum**: i.e. the long iron shank of the *pīlum*.

28 21 **īnflexisset**: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).—**sinistrā impeditā**: abl. abs. denoting cause (§ 117. *c*); transl. 'since the left hand (which carried the shield) was hampered.'

28 22 **multī ut**: transl. as if it were *ut multī*; *multī* is made emphatic by its position. *Ut* here introduces a clause of result.

28 23 **nūdō**: 'unprotected.'—**corpore**: abl. of manner (§ 110).

29 1 **agmen . . . claudēbant**: 'brought up their rear.' The Boii and Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had formed the van of the Helvetian line of march, and consequently became the rear when the line faced about (p. 28, l. 1) to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (*latere apertō*) as they came on the field from the road (hence *ex itinere*). The right side is said to be *exposed* since the protecting shield is carried on the left arm.

29 2 **novissimīs praesidiō**: see § 89, and cf. *Gallīs . . . impedīmentō*, p. 28, l. 18.

29 3 **adgressī**: 'having attacked.'—**circumvenīre**: sc. *coepērunt* from l. 5.

29 5 **conversa signa . . . intulērunt**: 'faced about (lit. 'bore reversed standards') and charged in two divisions' (*bipartītō*). See battle plan.

29 6 **victīs . . . submōtīs**: i.e. the Helvetii (§ 83); *venientēs* refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

29 7 **resisteret . . . sustinēret**: see § 174.

30 1 CHAP. 26. **pugnātum est**: see § 66; transl. 'the fight was carried on' (lit. 'it was fought').

30 3 **alterī . . . alterī**: the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi respectively (§ 144. *d*).—**ut**: *as*.

30 5 **cum**: concessive (§ 192).—**hōrā septimā**: the day from sunrise to

sunset was divided into twelve equal parts (*hōrae*). The length of the hours varied, therefore, according to the length of the day. As sunset at this time was about eight o'clock, the daylight hours were equal to about an hour and a quarter of our time. This would make *ab hōrā septimā* a little past 1 P.M.

30 6 **āversum**: 'in retreat,' 'fleeing' (lit. 'turned away'). — **Ad multam noctem**: 'till late at night.'

30 9 **coniciēbant . . . subiciēbant**: 'hurled' (from above), 'thrust' (from below). For the use of the past descr. see § 154. *a*.

30 11 **impedīmentīs castrīsque**: see § 107. *a*.

30 12 **captus est**: agrees with the nearer subject (§ 67).

30 14 **tōtā nocte**: see § 119. note.

30 16 **cum . . . potuissent**: a causal subjv. (§ 189).

30 18 **nē . . . iuvārent**: '(telling them) that they should not' etc. The subjv. stands for *nōlīte iuvāre* of dir. disc. (§§ 206, 203. *a*).

30 19 **sī iūvissent**: the dir. disc. would be *sī iūveritis*, 'if you shall have aided.' — **locō**: 'estimation.'

30 22 Chap. 27. **Quī cum**: 'when they' etc. (§ 143).

30 26 **quī . . . perfūgissent**: a subord. clause in implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*; cf. p. 22, l. 16; p. 25, l. 2). Cæsar's words might have been, "Trādite obsidēs . . . quī ad vōs perfūgērunt."

32 1 **Dum . . . conquīruntur et cōnferuntur**: transl. as past (§ 198. I).

32 3 **perterritī**: although *mīlia* is n., the participle agreeing with it is m., the construction being according to sense instead of form. — **nē . . . adficerentur**: depending on the verbal idea in *timōre*, the subjv. being used as with verbs of fearing (§ 184).

32 4 **quod . . . existimārent**: the subjv. is used because the reason is not given by the author as his own, but as the supposed reason of the Helvetii (§ 188. *b*).

32 5 **occultārī**: 'be hid' from Cæsar. — **ignōrārī**: 'be unknown' to anybody.

32 8 Chap. 28. **Quod ubi**: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here *quod ubi* = *ubi hoc* (§ 143). Cf. *Quī cum*, p. 30, l. 22. — **quōrum**: the antecedent is *hīs*, indir. obj. of *imperāvit*, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause *utī . . . redūcerent*.

32 9 **sī . . . vellent**: this subord. clause is part of what Cæsar said, and depending on the clause *utī . . . redūcerent* is also subjv. (§ 214). Cæsar's words probably were, "Conquīrite et redūcite, sī mihi pūrgātī esse vultis" (or "volētis"). — **sibi**: 'in his sight' or 'estimation'; dative of reference (§ 85).

32 10 **in hostium numerō habuit**: 'he treated as enemies' (lit. 'he held in the number of enemies'); i.e. he put them all to death, as a necessity of war and a warning to others.

32 15 **quō**: abl. of means (§ 106). — **tolerārent**: see § 177.

32 16 **ipsōs**: the Helvetii and their allies, as opposed to the others who were to provide food. — **quōs**: the rel. agrees with the nearer of the antecedents.

32 22 **petentibus Haeduīs**: 'to the Hædui at their request' etc.; dative after *concessit*, of which the dir. obj. is *ut Bōiōs conlocārent*. The Boii would be valuable allies to the Hædui.

32 24 **parem . . . atque ipsī erant**: 'equal with their own' (lit. 'as they themselves were').

33 1 CHAP. 29. **tabulae**: 'tablets,' of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called *stilus*. See illustration, p. 56. — **litterīs Graecīs**: this refers merely to the letters. There was a Greek colony at Marseilles, from which they had adopted the Greek alphabet, but not the language. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, and probably written language was not used to any extent.

33 3 **ratiō**: 'an account.' — **quī . . . exīsset**: an indir. question.

33 4 **possent**: subjv. of description (§ 177). The antecedent of *quī* is *eōrum*.

33 8 **ad mīlia XCII**: 'about 92,000.' — **Summa**: 'the sum'; *fuērunt* agrees with the plur. pred. If we deduct the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other noncombatants. Probably more escaped than the record shows.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans, under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had seized a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed a decree promising favor and friendship to the Helvetii. At the same time they sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (chap. 35), recognizing his claim on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This occurred the year before, during Cæsar's consulship. However, now that the fear of the Helvetii was past, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

33 13 CHAP. 30. **grātulātum**: see § 226. *a*.

33 15 **populī Rōmānī**: an obj. gen. (§ 75. *b*).

33 16 **eam rem . . . accidisse**: 'nevertheless that event has happened not less advantageously (*ex ūsū*) to the land of Gaul than to the Roman people.'

33 17 eō cōnsiliō: abl. of cause (§ 109), and explained by the appositive clauses of purpose *utī . . . habērent* (§ 183, third example). — **flōrentissimīs rēbus**: abl. abs. equivalent to a concessive clause (§ 117. *d*); 'although they were in prosperous circumstances.'

33 19 imperiō: see § 107. *a*. — **domiciliō**: dative of purpose (§ 89).

33 24 voluntāte: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

34 1 iūre iūrandō . . . sānxērunt: 'ordained by oath that no one, except (those) to whom it should have been intrusted by common consent, should make known (their meeting).'

34 4 CHAP. 31. **īdem**: nominative plur. — **ante**: adv.

34 6 dē suā omniumque salūte: 'concerning their own safety and (that) of all.'

34 7 Caesarī ad pedēs: dative of reference (§ 85); transl., 'at Cæsar's feet.'

34 9 nē . . . ēnūntientur . . . utī . . . impetrēmus: subst. clauses in apposition with *id*, the obj. of *contendimus* and *labōrāmus* (§ 183, third example; cf. p. 33, l. 17).

34 12 Galliae tōtīus: this does not include all of the *Gallia* defined in chap. 1, but only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

34 13 alterīus . . . alterīus: 'the one . . . the other' (§ 144. *d*); gens. after *prīncipātum*.

34 15 utī . . . arcesserentur: a clause of result, subj. of *factum est*, 'it came to pass' (§ 187. II).

34 16 mercēde: 'for pay' (§ 108).

34 24 quī: the antecedent is *eī* understood, subj. of *coāctī sunt* (§ 142).

35 3 sēsē . . . repetītūrōs (esse) . . . recūsātūrōs (esse): indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in *cīvitātem obstringere* (§ 203. *a*). The words of their oath were 'we will neither demand back hostages . . . nor refuse' etc.

35 4 quō minus . . . essent: a clause following a verb of refusing (§ 185). Transl. by an inf., 'refuse to be under their dominion' etc., i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

35 6 Ūnus . . . sum: 'I am the only one.'

35 7 potuerim: see § 177. *a*. — **ut iūrārem**: 'to take an oath.'

35 8 Rōmam ad senātum: note that the preposition is used only with *senātum*; why not with *Rōmam*? See § 97.

35 9 postulātum: supine (§ 226. *a*).

35 11 peius: n. adjective used as a noun; 'a worse fate.'

35 14 dē alterā parte tertiā: 'from a second third.'

35 15 paucīs mēnsibus ante: 'a few months before' (lit. 'before by a few months'). *Ante* is an adv. followed by an abl. of measure of difference (§ 114).

35 17 Paucīs annīs: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

35 19 **neque . . . agrō**: 'neither can the Gallic land be compared with that of the Germans.'

35 20 **haec**: 'this of ours.'—**illā**: 'that of the Germans.' The Gauls regarded the Germans as savages.

35 22 **ut semel**: 'as soon as.'

35 24 **nōbilissimī cuiusque**: 'of all the noblest'; the sing. form of *quisque* when used with superlatives has the meaning of 'every,' 'all.'

35 25 **omnia exempla cruciātūsque**: lit. 'all examples and tortures'; the meaning is that he employed every kind of torture.

35 27 **barbarus, īrācundus, temerārius**: 'savage, passionate, hasty'

36 1 **auxilī**: part. gen. depending on the indef. pronoun *quid*, 'anything,' 'something' (§ 76. *a*).

36 2 **Gallīs**: dative of agent (§ 87) with *est faciendum*, the subj. of which is *idem*, which in turn is explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . experiantur*.

36 4 **Haec**: emphasized by position, as if he said, 'Why! if this very conversation should be reported' etc. (cf. note on p. 11, l. 3).

36 5 **quīn . . . sūmat**: see § 186.

36 7 **exercitūs**: gen.; 'that of the army.'

36 8 **nē . . . trādūcātur**: see § 185.

36 9 **Rhēnum**: depending on *trāns* in *trā(ns)dūcātur* (§ 95. note).

36 15 CHAP. 32. **quae . . . esset**: indir. question (§ 201).

36 16 **respondēre**: historical inf. (§ 218). Observe that the subj. is nominative. Cf. *flāgitāre*, p. 22, l. 17.

36 20 **Hōc**: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); freely translated, 'on this account.' It is explained by the appositive clause *quod . . . audent* (§ 182).

36 21 **nē . . . quidem**: 'not even in secret.' Cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

36 22 **absentis**: predicate; 'even when absent' (§ 220. *a*).

36 23 **velut . . . adsit**: see § 200.

36 24 **tamen**: 'after all' (whatever they might have to suffer).—**Sēquanīs**: dative of apparent agent (§ 87).

37 2 CHAP. 33. **sibi . . . cūrae** etc.: 'that he would see to it' (lit. 'it would be for a care to him'); see § 89.

37 3 **et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte**: construe after *adductum*, 'induced by both his favors and his influence'; *beneficiō* refers to services that would inspire gratitude, *auctōritāte* to the prestige that would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

37 6 **secundum ea**: 'besides these considerations'; *secundum* is here used as a preposition.—**quā rē . . . putāret**: 'on account of which he thought'; a descriptive clause (§ 177).

37 8 **quod . . . vidēbat . . . intellegēbat**: 'the fact that he saw . . . that he knew' etc. The clauses are in apposition with *multae rēs* in l. 6.

37 11 **quod:** rel. pronoun; the antecedent is the preceding indir. **disc.** *Haeduōs . . . tenērī, . . . obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs*, describing the plight of the Hædui and Sequani. — **in tantō . . . Rōmānī:** 'in view of the great power of the Roman people.'

37 15 **perīculōsum:** 'he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine' etc. *Germānōs* is the subj. of *cōnsuēscere*, and *multitūdinem* is subj. of *venīre*. These two clauses are the subjs. of *perīculōsum* (*esse*). The whole clause is the obj. of *vidēbat* (§§ 217. *b*, 203). — **sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quīn . . . exīrent:** 'would refrain (check themselves) from going forth.' For *sibi* see § 83; for *exīrent*, see § 185.

37 17 **ut . . . fēcissent:** 'as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before.' The form in the dir. disc. would be *fēcērunt* (§ 208).

37 19 **quibus rēbus:** see §§ 143, 84. — **occurrendum (esse):** impers. Were the agent expressed, it would be *sibi*. Transl. freely, 'possibilities which he thought must be met at once.' Observe again that a verb which governs the dative (like *occurrendum*) cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subj.

37 22 Chap. 34. **ut . . . mitteret:** a clause of purpose, subj. of *placuit* (§ 183, fourth example).

37 23 **quī . . . postulārent:** rel. clause of purpose (§ 175). — **medium utriusque:** 'between the two.'

37 24 **conloquiō:** 'for a conference.' — **velle:** depends on the verb of saying implied in *postulārent*. — **rē pūblicā:** here 'matters of public interest' rather than 'the state.'

37 26 **Sī . . . esset:** a condition contrary to fact (§ 199. I. *b*).

38 1 **sī quid ille mē volt:** *volt* takes here two objs. like verbs in § 93. Transl., 'if he wants anything of me.'

38 7 **negōtī:** part. gen. with *quid*. — **sit:** indir. question.

38 9 Chap. 35. **mandātīs:** denoting a stern command. Cæsar now lays aside the language of diplomacy and presents his ultimatum.

38 10 **adfectus:** a participle denoting concession (§ 220. *d*).

38 12 **ut . . . gravētur . . . putet:** a result clause explaining *hanc grātiam* (§ 187. I).

38 15 **nē quam:** 'that not any.'

38 17 **quōs:** the antecedent is *eōs* understood, the obj. of *reddere* (§ 142). The subjvs. in this sentence (except *liceat*) are introduced by *nē*, or *ut* implied, and are subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *haec*. — **illī . . . illīs:** the Sequani.

38 23 **quod . . . posset:** 'so far as he could do it to the advantage of the republic.' — **commodō:** abl. of accordance (§ 111).

38 26 Chap. 36. **ut . . . imperent:** a subst. clause in apposition with *iūs*.

The antecedent of *quī* is *eī* understood, the subj. of *imperent*. The dative *eīs* is governed by *imperent* (§ 83).

38 27 **vīcerint:** see § 214.—**quem ad modum:** 'in what manner.'

38 28 **victīs:** dative with *imperāre* (§ 83); the participle is used as a noun. —**ad:** 'according to.'

39 4 **mihi:** see § 90.

39 6 **quī . . . faciat:** a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190).

40 1 **sī . . . manēbunt:** 'if they will abide by the condition.'

40 3 **longē . . . aberit:** i.e. the fact that the Roman people call them brothers will do them little good (lit. 'will be far from them').

40 4 **Quod:** 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. *a*).

40 6 **congrediātur:** subjv. in a command (§ 172. *b*).—**quid . . . possint:** 'what they can do.'

40 10 CHAP. 37. **questum:** supine denoting purpose (§ 226. *a*).

40 11 **quod . . . populārentur:** a reason given on another's authority, which takes the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; 'because (as they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields' (§§ 188. *b*, 208. *b*).

40 12 **nē obsidibus quidem:** cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

40 13 **Trēverī:** sc. *questum veniēbant.*

40 16 **commōtus:** a participle denoting cause (§ 220. *b*).

40 17 **mātūrandum sibi (esse):** impers. with dative of apparent agent; transl., 'that he should have to hasten' (§ 222. II. note).

40 19 **resistī:** impers.; transl., 'resistance could not be so easily made' (§ 83. *a*).—**celerrimē:** for the form see comparison of *ācriter* (§ 17).

40 20 **contendit:** the general direction is north. Just where Ariovistus was is uncertain.

40 21 CHAP. 38. **trīduī:** gen. of measure (§ 77. *b*).—**viam:** accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).

40 22 **occupandum:** gerundive agreeing with *Vesontiōnem*. Distinguish from the gerund (§§ 224. *b*, 225. *a*).

40 23 **quod:** the antecedent is *Vesontiōnem*, but the agreement is with *oppidum* (§ 138).

40 24 **Id:** refers to *ad occupandum Vesontiōnem.*

40 25 **praecavendum (esse):** impers.; the subj. is *nē accideret*, a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183, fourth example).

40 26 **ūsuī:** dative of purpose or end (§ 89). Another dative might be looked for with this one. See § 85.

40 27 **idemque:** sc. *oppidum.*—**ut . . . facultātem:** 'that it afforded a great opportunity for protracting a war'; a clause of result.

42 2 **ut:** 'as if.'

42 4 **pedum:** pred. gen. after *est* (§ 77. *a* and *b*). For the construction

with *amplius* see § 105. note 2. The present site corresponds almost exactly to Cæsar's description. See illustration, p. 41. — **quā**: 'where.'

42 5 **altitūdine**: abl. of description (§ 116). — **rādīcēs**: obj., and *rīpae* subj., of *contingant*.

42 6 **Hunc (montem) . . . efficit**: 'this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.'

42 7 **nocturnīs . . . itineribus**: transl., 'marches by night and by day.'

42 11 CHAP. 39. **morātur**: see § 198. I. Cf. p. 32, l. 1.

42 12 **vōcibus**: 'reports' or 'talk.' — **magnitūdine . . . virtūte . . . exercitātiōne**: abls. of description (§ 116); cf. *altitūdine*, l. 5.

42 15 **congressōs**: 'having met them.'

42 17 **nōn mediocriter**: 'in no slight degree,' 'greatly.'

42 19 **Hic**: i.e. *timor*. — **ortus est ā**: 'began with' (lit. 'rose from'). — **reliquīs**: young Romans of noble families often accompanied commanders in their campaigns for the sake of military experience. Cæsar probably alludes to these. See Introd. III. 6. *d*.

42 20 **urbe**: i.e. Rome. — **nōn magnum**: 'very little.'

42 21 **alius aliā causā inlātā**: 'on various pretexts' (lit. 'another, another pretext having been alleged'). Notice that in Latin this double statement is condensed, only the second half being fully expressed. This is the regular idiom when *alius* is repeated in another case, and should be remembered (§ 144. *d*. 1).

42 22 **quam . . . dīceret**: see § 177.

42 25 **voltum fingere**: freely, 'to put on a brave face.'

42 28 **testāmenta obsignābantur**: the seal was necessary to the validity of the will. The making of the wills shows that they had given up hope of ever returning home.

43 1 **magnum . . . ūsum**: 'long experience in the service.'

43 3 **Quī**: the antecedent is *eī* understood, the subj. of *dīcēbant*.

43 6 **rem frūmentāriam**: lit. the obj. of *timēre*, 'they feared the supply of grain, that it might not' etc.; transl. it as if it were the subj. of *posset*, 'they feared that the supply of grain might not' etc. This figure of speech, which consists in placing a word *before* the clause in which a statement is made regarding it, is called "prolepsis." Compare

> "Who knows the ways of the world,
> How God will bring them about."

Observe the force of *ut* in *ut . . . posset* depending on *timēre* (§ 184).

43 8 **castra movērī ac signa ferrī**: 'to break camp and advance.' These are the regular military expressions. Note the idiom *signa ferrī*, 'advance.'

43 9 audientēs: used in the sense of 'obey' (i.e. 'hearken to'), and so followed by the dative (§ 83).

43 11 CHAP. 40. **adhibitīs centuriōnibus:** the centurions were not ordinarily invited into the councils of war; hence this special assertion. In addition to all the other grave dangers and difficulties of the war with the powerful German king, Cæsar now suddenly finds himself face to face with a peril still more serious: that of a possible mutiny of his own army. The campaign was a hazardous undertaking, even with his men eager and willing to fight. With his men reluctant, and some of them even rebellious, Cæsar stands for the moment alone, and his indomitable courage is nowhere better shown. He meets the emergency with the same decision and energy that he displays on the battle field, and manifests, in addition to supreme courage, marvelous diplomacy and knowledge of human nature. This speech, one of the most remarkable of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. Skillfully glossing over the difficulties of the undertaking, masterfully meeting every one of the alleged causes for hesitation, now by reason, now by appeal, he contrives to inspire his men with the invincible spirit of Rome that conquered the world.

43 12 quod . . . putārent: a reason given on another's authority (§ 188. *b*). Here Cæsar the writer gives the reason of Cæsar the soldier, as if he were another person.

43 13 quaerendum . . . cōgitandum: sc. *esse*; an impers. construction (§§ 224. *a*, 66).

43 15 Cūr . . . quisquam . . . iūdicet: a rhetorical question; 'why should any one consider?' The question implies the answer that no one should consider (§ 172. *d*. note).

43 16 Mihi . . . persuādētur: 'I am convinced' (§ 83. *a*).

43 20 quid . . . vereāminī: cf. note on l. 15.

43 22 periculum: from the root of the verb *ex-perior*, 'try'; the word which came to mean 'danger' originally meant 'trial,' and this is the meaning here. — **Cimbrīs et Teutonīs:** these were a great horde of barbarians that about forty years before had crossed the Rhine, swept through Gaul, and were about to invade Italy. Their seemingly irresistible march was checked by the Romans under Marius, and they were practically destroyed.

43 24 meritus (esse) vidēbātur: 'was seen to have deserved.'

43 25 servīlī tumultū: 'in the uprising of the slaves,' i.e. the insurrection of slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, 73–71 B.C. These consisted, at least in part, of Germans captured by Marius. The abl. denotes time. — **quōs:** this refers to *servōs* as antecedent implied in the adjective *servīlī*. — **aliquid:** adverbial accusative (§ 99); transl., 'somewhat.'

43 27 bonī: see § 76. *a*.

44 2 **suīs**: 'their own' (of the Helvetii). — **illōrum**: 'of the Germans.'

44 4 **Sī quōs**: 'if any.' — **adversum proelium**: the defeat at Magetobriga; see p. 35, l. 23.

44 6 **Ariovistum**: subj. of *vīcisse* in indir. disc.

44 7 **neque suī potestātem fēcisset**: 'and had given them no chance at him.'

44 9 **ratiōne . . . cōnsiliō . . . virtūte**: see § 106.

44 10 **Cui ratiōnī . . . hāc**: this expression is equivalent to *hāc ratiōnī cui*; the antecedent is attracted into the rel. clause (§ 140); 'by this stratagem, for which there was opportunity against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hopes that our army can be caught.'

44 12 **Quī**: the antecedent is *eī* understood, the subj. of *faciunt*.

44 15 **mihi . . . cūrae**: 'I will take care of these things' (§ 89); cf. p. 37, l. 2.

44 18 **Quod** etc.: 'as to its being said that the soldiers will not obey the commands or advance' (§ 182. *a*).

44 19 **quibuscumque** etc.: lit. 'to whomsoever the army has not listened to the word, to these fortune has been lacking' etc.; *dictō* depends upon *audiēns*, and the two words combined, *dictō audiēns*, are treated as a single expression equivalent to a verb of obeying, governing the dative *quibuscumque*, whose antecedent is *eīs* understood, governed by *dēfuisse*.

44 22 **innocentia**: this disproves *avāritiam* as *fēlīcitās* does *male rē gestā*. Observe the reversed order (chiasmus) of the words, a figure common in verse and oratory:

male rē gestā ╲╱ *avāritiam*
innocentia ╱╲ *fēlīcitās*

Compare in English:

"So like they were, no mortal
Might one from other know;
White as snow their *armor was*,
Their steeds were *white as snow*."

vītā: see § 119. note.

44 24 **quod . . . conlātūrus fuī**: sc. *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the obj. of *repraesentābō*.

45 1 **decimā legiōne**: the legion especially distinguished for discipline and courage. Cf. note on p. 16, l. 6.

45 2 **praetōria cohors**: 'bodyguard,' made up of the bravest men.

45 7 CHAP. 41. **innāta est**: sing. verb agreeing with the nearest subj. (§ 67).

45 8 **optimum iūdicium fēcisset**: 'had expressed the very highest opinion'; a reason stated on another's authority (§ 188. *b*).

45 10 **cum tribūnīs . . . ēgērunt** etc.: 'arranged with the tribunes to apologize' (*satisfacerent*).

45 12 neque dē summā bellī etc.: 'nor supposed that the judgment concerning the policy of the campaign was theirs (*suum*), but their general's.'

45 13 suum . . . imperātōris: preds. after *esse* (§ 73. *a*).

46 1 itinere exquīsītō . . . ut . . . dūceret: lit. 'a route having been sought out that led' etc.; lit. 'such that it led,' rather an unusual result clause. The route lay in a northeasterly direction, and entered the valley of the Rhine near the southern part of the Vosges Mountains. See the campaign map, p. 39.

46 2 eī: 'in him'; dative after *fidem habēbat*, which is equivalent to a verb of trusting (§ 83).

46 3 mīlium: (sc. *passuum*) gen. of measure modifying *circuitū* (§ 77. *b*). Transl., 'by a circuit of more than fifty miles through an open country.'

46 5 cum . . . intermitteret: a causal clause (§ 189).

46 9 Chap. 42. **Quod**: a rel. preceding its antecedent, *id*.—**per sē**: 'so far as he was concerned.'

46 10 accessisset: the subj. is Cæsar.

46 12 ad sānitātem revertī: 'was beginning to return to his senses.'

46 13 petentī: 'when he (i.e. Cæsar) asked it.'—**ultrō pollicērētur**: 'he now promised of his own accord.'—**magnamque in spem veniēbat**: 'he began to have great hopes.'

46 15 fore: the lack of a fut. participle of the verb *dēsistere* is supplied by the periphrasis *fore utī . . . dēsisteret*, lit. 'that it would be that' etc.

46 16 conloquiō: see § 89.

46 18 nē . . . addūceret: a subst. clause used as obj. (§ 183). It would be a prohibition in dir. disc. (§ 172. *c*).

46 20 uterque . . . venīret: in the dir. disc. *veniat* (§ 172. *b*).—**aliā ratiōne**: 'on any other terms' (§ 111).

46 23 Gallōrum equitātuī: he had no other; see Introd. III. 2. They numbered about 4000.

46 24 commodissimum: pred. adjective after *esse*, whose subj. is the inf. clause *eō . . . impōnere* (§ 216).—**omnibus equīs . . . dētrāctīs**: see § 117. *b*.—**Gallīs equitibus**: dative of separation (§ 86).

46 25 eō: adv.; 'on them,' i.e. the horses.

47 2 sī quid etc.: 'if there should be any need of active service'; *quid* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).—**factō**: see § 107. *c*.

47 3 nōn inrīdiculē: 'not without wit.'—**ex mīlitibus**: instead of *mīlitum* (§ 76, exception).

47 4 pollicitum: sc. *esse*.

47 6 ad equum rescrībere: 'he was making knights of them.' The wit (cf. *nōn inrīdiculē*) in this expression consists in the fact that it has two meanings: (1) 'to enroll in the cavalry,' and (2) 'to enroll among the *equitēs*

(knights),' a privileged and wealthy class in Roman society. In other words, it is a pun. It is not often that Cæsar deviates from his straightforward narrative for an anecdote of any kind, and the fact that he does so here shows his keen sense of humor.

47 8 CHAP. 43. **spatiō**: see § 114.

47 10 **equīs**: 'on horseback'; abl. of means.

47 13 **praeter sē dēnōs**: 'besides themselves ten each'; *dēnōs* is a distributive numeral.

47 17 **amīcus**: sc. *appellātus esset* (§ 94. note). — **mūnera . . . missa (essent)**: the gifts are not mentioned but they may have included embroidered robes and jewelry.

47 18 **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.'

47 22 **Docēbat**: 'he showed'; followed by a series of indir. questions (§ 201) introduced by *quam*, 'how'; *quamque*, 'and how' (l. 22); *quotiēns quamque*, 'how often and how'; *ut*, 'how' (l. 24).

47 23 **ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent**: 'existed between the Romans (*ipsīs*) and the Haedui' (lit. 'to themselves with the Haedui').

47 26 **prius . . . quam . . . adpetīssent**: see §§ 197. *a*, 208.

47 27 **ut . . . vellet**: a result clause explaining *hanc cōnsuētūdinem* (§ 187, third example).

47 28 **suī nihil**: 'nothing of their own' (dignity etc.); *suī* is used substantively and is a part. gen. (§ 76. *a*).

47 29 **quod**: 'what they had brought to the alliance,' the rel. preceding its antecedent, *id* (§ 139).

47 30 **quis . . . posset**: the dir. form of this rhetorical question (§ 171) was *quis . . . possit?* For the mood see § 172. *d* and note. Transl., 'who could suffer this to be taken from them?' The thought is that the Romans would allow no one to deprive their allies of the prestige they had enjoyed before they became Rome's allies. Note that *eīs* is a dative (§ 86).

48 2 **nē . . . īnferret . . . redderet . . . nē . . . paterētur**: these clauses are in apposition with *eadem*.

48 5 CHAP. 44. **pauca**: in contrast with *multa* in the next line.

48 8 **magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs**: transl. as if it were *magnā spē magnōrum praemiōrum*.

48 12 **ad mē oppugnandum**: a gerundive expressing purpose (§ 225. *a*).

48 16 **pāce**: see § 107. *a*.

48 19 **oportet**: impers.; the grammatical subj. is *amīcitiam . . . esse* (§ 216. *b*).

48 23 **Quod . . . trādūcō**: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. *a*).

48 24 **Galliae impugnandae**: see § 225. *b*. For *meī mūniendī* see § 224. *c*.

48 25 **nisi rogātus**: 'except upon invitation' (lit. 'having been asked').

48 28 **finibus**: see § 101.

48 29 **Quid tibi vīs**: lit. 'what do you wish for yourself?' i.e. 'what do you mean?' (§ 85).

48 30 **haec . . . Gallia**: 'this part of Gaul.'—**Ut . . . sīc**: 'as . . . so.' *Oportet* is impers. Freely, 'as I ought not to be given a free hand if . . . so.'

49 4 **rērum**: see § 80.

49 5 **bellō . . . proximō**: four years before.

49 7 **habuērunt**: for indic. see § 208. *a*. So *habēs*, l. 10.

49 9 **Dēbeō suspicārī** etc.: 'I have grounds for suspecting that the army which you, under the pretense of friendship, have in Gaul, you are keeping for the purpose of crushing me.'

49 10 **meī opprimendī**: see § 224. *c*, and cf. p. 48, l. 24.

49 12 **Quod**: 'but'; so in l. 15.—**nōbilibus . . . grātum**: Cæsar, as the head of the popular party at Rome, was especially obnoxious to the senate and the aristocracy. Many would have rejoiced to hear that disaster had befallen him, and it is quite possible that suggestions of this sort had come to Ariovistus from Rome.

49 14 **compertum habeō**: almost the same in force as *comperī* (§ 156. *b*. note); cf. p. 24, l. 5.

49 15 **tuā morte**: see § 106.

49 18 **sine ūllō tuō labōre**: 'without any toil on your part.'

49 19 CHAP. 45. **in eam sententiam . . . quā rē**: 'to this effect (to show) why.'—**quā rē . . . posset**: an indir. question. Transl. freely, 'why he could not recede from his position.'

49 24 **quibus**: with *ignōvit* (from *ignōscō*); see § 83.

49 26 **antīquissimum quodque tempus**: see note on p. 35, l. 24.

49 29 **suīs**: 'its own,' referring to Gaul.—**voluerit**: subjv. in a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190). Transl., 'which, though conquered in war, the senate has permitted to enjoy its own laws.'

50 1 CHAP. 46. **geruntur**: see § 198. I.

50 2 **tumulum**: governed by *propius*, which sometimes has the force of a preposition.

50 5 **nē . . . reicerent**: dir. obj. of *imperāvit*; the indir. obj. is *suīs*.

50 7 **committendum nōn putābat ut . . . dīcī posset**: 'he thought that no ground should be given for saying'; the subj. of *committendum* is the *ut* clause (§ 187. I).

50 8 **per fidem**: 'under pretense of (through) good faith.'

50 10 **omnī Galliā**: abl. of separation with *interdīxisset*. *Rōmānīs* is the indir. obj.

50 11 **interdīxisset**: subjv. in an indir. question together with *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset*: 'when it was reported what insolence Ariovistus had displayed (lit.

'having employed what insolence'), how he had ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, how his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that fact had put an end to the interview.' The indir. questions are subjs. of *ēlātum est*.

50 13 pugnandī: gerund; obj. gen. (§ 75. *b*).

50 15 Chap. 47. **coeptae**: this verb is regularly pass. in form when used with a pass. inf.

50 16 utī . . . cōnstitueret: following *velle*, the idea of asking being implied (§ 183); *mitteret* is in the same construction.

50 17 suīs: refers to Cæsar, *sē* (l. 18) to Ariovistus.

50 18 causa vīsa nōn est: 'there did not seem to be a good reason.'

50 19 et eō magis, quod: 'and all the more on this account, that' etc.; cf. p. 12, l. 16 and note.—**retinērī . . . quīn**: 'be kept from' (§ 185).

50 21 missūrum . . . obiectūrum: sc. *esse*.

50 23 Commodissimum: pred. adjective with *mittere* (p. 51, l. 2) as subj. (§ 216. *a*).

50 24 virtūte et hūmānitāte: not 'virtue and humanity'; it is rarely safe to transl. a Latin word by the English word derived from it. Transl., 'worth and culture.'

50 25 cīvitāte: abl. of means.

50 26 quā multā . . . ūtēbātur: 'which Ariovistus spoke freely' (§ 107. *a*).

51 1 quod in eō: 'because in his case.'

51 2 peccandī . . . causa: 'grounds for committing an offense.'

51 3 ūtēbātur: 'enjoyed.' Cf. *ūtēbātur* in l. 1. Observe how the verb *ūtor* demands different translations according to the context. In every instance, however, the idea of 'use' remains fundamental.

51 7 Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit: 'as they were trying to speak he shut them off.'

51 13 Chap. 48. **supportārētur**: subjv. by attraction (§ 214). So also *vellet* (l. 16).

51 15 īnstrūctam habuit: 'kept his line drawn up'; cf. *compertum habeō*, p. 49, l. 14.

51 18 castrīs: the "place where" may be expressed without a preposition when the idea of means is prominent.

51 19 hoc: explained by the following description.

51 21 singulī (equitēs) singulōs (peditēs): i.e. one apiece.

51 23 sī quid erat dūrius: 'if there was unusual trouble' (lit. 'if there was anything too hard'); see § 122.

51 25 sī quō . . . prōdeundum: 'if there was need of advancing to any place.'

51 26 ut . . . adaequārent: 'that by holding on to (lit. 'supported by') the horses' manes they kept up with them in speed.'—**iubīs**: abl. of means.

52 3 CHAP. 49. **castris**: dative with an adjective (§ 90). By this move Cæsar has two camps, the first and larger one about two miles east of the Germans, and the second, a smaller one, rather more than half a mile to the south of them. See map, p. 56.

52 4 **aciē triplicī**: see Introd. III. 12.

52 8 **expedīta**: agreeing with *mīlia* in form, but with *hominum* in sense.

52 9 **terrērent**: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

53 1 CHAP. 50. **īnstitūtō suō**: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

53 13 **sortibus**: 'lots,' of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance. — **vāticinātiōnibus**: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly prophecies arising from inner emotions. — **utrum . . . necne**: see § 170. *b*. 2.

53 14 **eās**: i.e. *mātrēs familiae*. — **Nōn esse fās**: 'it was not fated.'

53 15 **novam lūnam**: a common superstition of many people.

53 18 CHAP. 51. **quod satis esse vīsum est**: sc *id*, obj. of *relīquit* and antecedent of *quod*. — **ālāriōs**: the auxiliaries, as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, *ālāriī*, from *āla*, 'wing.'

53 19 **prō**: 'in front of.' Cf. this meaning with the one in l. 20.

53 20 **prō hostium numerō**: 'in comparison with the number of the enemy'

53 21 **ad speciem**: 'for a show,' i.e. as if the two legions (p. 52, l. 12) were still there.

53 22 **necessāriō**: the Germans had to come out and fight because their camp was not fortified strongly enough to withstand Cæsar's assault.

53 24 **intervāllīs**: see § 112.

53 27 **Eō**: 'thereon,' i.e. on the carts and wagons.

53 28 **proficīscentēs**: '(the men) as they advanced' (§ 167); obj. of *implōrābant*.

54 1 CHAP. 52. **singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs**: 'a *lēgātus* in command of each legion'; however, having at this time only five *lēgātī* he appointed his quartermaster (*quaestōrem*) over one of the six legions. Read the description of a battle in the Introd. III. 12, and look at the illustration on p. 31 and the one facing p. 86.

54 3 **eam partem**: of course, the left wing of the enemy.

54 6 **pīla . . . coniciendī**: the gerund with dir. obj. (§ 223. note). The gerundive construction might have been used (§ 224. *b*).

54 9 **impetūs**: accusative plur., fourth declension.

54 10 **īnsilīrent . . . revellerent . . . volnerārent**: subjvs. in clauses of description. The meaning is that they leaped upon the roof formed by the shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (*dēsuper*).

54 11 **Cum**: 'although.'

54 16 **tertiam aciem:** this line had been kept as a reserve for just such emergencies.

54 18 CHAP. 53. **prius . . . quam . . . pervēnērunt:** see § 197. *a*.

54 22 **eā:** abl. of means. It refers to *nāviculam*, obj. of *nactus* (from *nanciscor*).

54 23 **reliquōs omnēs:** said to have been 80,000 in number.

54 24 **Duae . . . uxōrēs:** among the Germans only chiefs had more than one wife, and this was for the sake of honor and alliances. — **nātiōne:** see § 115.

54 25 **dūxerat:** 'had brought.' In the next line *dūxerat* means 'had married.'

55 1 **Procillus:** see p. 50, l. 23. — **trīnīs:** used instead of *tribus*. *Catēnae* is usually found in the plur., and with such nouns distributive numeral adjectives are generally used instead of cardinals.

55 3 **Quae . . . rēs:** i.e. the rescue of Procillus. Cæsar's joy in the safety of his young friend offers a pleasing contrast to his usual sternness. For the rel. see § 143.

56 4 **neque . . . dēminuerat:** 'nor had fortune by his loss detracted aught from an occasion of such joy and congratulation.'

56 5 **ter:** it was the regular custom of the Germans to consult the lots three times.

56 6 **cōnsultum (esse):** impers.

56 11 CHAP. 54. **Rhēnum:** *prope*, *propior*, and *proximus* sometimes govern the accusative. Cf. p. 50, l. 2 and note.

56 13 **mātūrius:** 'earlier.' This was in September.

56 16 **conventūs:** the governor of a province not only commanded the army, but administered justice as well.

BOOK II

Cæsar by his first campaign (58 B.C.) had made himself master of central Gaul, and had made his conquest sure by establishing the winter quarters of his legions among the Sequani. During the winter, while he was in Cisalpine Gaul, the Belgian Gauls, fearing that they should be the next victims of Roman aggression, united in a conspiracy to resist any further advance of Roman arms. This was reported to Cæsar, who, with characteristic energy, set out for the country of the Belgæ as early in the spring (57 B.C.) as there was pasture enough to support his baggage animals.

The Belgian tribes, inhabiting what is now northeastern France, Belgium, and part of the Netherlands, were remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Romans. They lived amidst forests and swamps hard to penetrate, and had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence. In his campaign

against these tribes, especially the Nervii, Cæsar met the most formidable and desperate resistance yet encountered.

57 1 CHAP. 1. **Cum esset** etc.: for the subjv. see § 194. *b.*; *esset* is emphatic by its position. The clause is closely connected with the last sentence of the first book: *in citeriōrem Galliam . . . profectus est. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā* etc. The effect may be brought out in translation by the use of a noun: 'during Cæsar's *stay* in Cisalpine Gaul.'

57 2 **dēmōnstrāvimus . . . dīxerāmus**: In referring to himself as the writer Cæsar, like many modern writers, regularly uses the plur.—**adferēbantur**: the past descr. shows repeated action; 'kept coming in.' The force of the tense is aided by *crēbrī*.

57 4 **quam**: agrees with *partem*, though its real antecedent is *Belgās* (§ 38). It is the subj. of *esse*.

57 5 **inter sē**: 'to one another.'

ās esse causās: 'that the following were the reasons'; explained *d* clauses.—**quod verērentur . . . sollicitārentur**: subord. clauses in (§ 208).—**nē . . . addūcerētur**: subst. clause, obj. of *verērentur* (§ 184).

nnī pācātā Galliā: 'after the subjugation of all Gaul'; abl. abs. *Galliā* refers to central (or Celtic) Gaul.

nūllīs Gallīs: abl. of agent (§ 104).

ta: 'just as . . . so,' correlatives.—**Germānōs . . . versārī**:

. inveterāscere: these infs. with their subj. *exercitum* are e idea of thought in *molestē ferēbant*, 'they took it hard.'

57 1 : abl. of cause (§ 109).

57 12 **periīs studēbant**: 'were eager for a change of government' (lit. 'new ruling powers'); for the dative see § 83.—**ab nōn nūllīs . . . quod**: 'by some also (sc. *sollicitābantur*) they were incited because.'

57 13 **ad . . . facultātēs**: 'the means for hiring soldiers.'—**condūcendōs**: see § 225. *a*.

57 15 **rem**: i.e. royal power.—**imperiō nostrō**: 'under our dominion'; abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).—**cōnsequī**: complementary inf. (§ 217. *c*). In the passage above, beginning with *Coniūrandī*, note that the subord. verbs in indir. disc., that is, those that are a part of the report of Labienus, are in the subjv. mood (§ 208). Those, on the other hand, that are in the ind. (*nōluerant, ferēbant, studēbant, habēbant, occupābantur, poterant*) are not quoted from the report of Labienus, but state facts on Cæsar's authority (§ 208. *a*).

57 16 CHAP. 2. **nūntiīs**: abl. of cause.—**duās legiōnēs**: he had already six legions, numbered VII–XII, so that the addition of these two new ones, numbered XIII and XIV, made eight legions (about 30,000 men) for the Belgic campaign.

57 17 **initā aestāte**: abl. abs. expressing time when (§ 117. *b*).

57 18 **quī dēdūceret**: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

58 1 **cum prīmum**: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry horses and baggage animals could subsist.

58 2 **Dat negōtium Senonibus**: 'he enjoins on the Senones' (lit. 'he gives business to the Senones').

58 3 **utī . . . cognōscant . . . faciant**: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *negōtium* (§ 183, third example). — **gerantur**: subjv. by attraction, depending on *cognōscant* (§ 214).

58 4 **sē**: an indir. reflex., referring to Cæsar (§ 133). — **cōnstanter**: 'consistently,' i.e. without variation.

58 5 **manūs**: accusative plur.; 'small bands,' or 'companies.'

58 6 **dubitandum (esse)**: impers. inf. in indir. disc. after *exīstimāvit*; 'he thought that he ought not to hesitate.' — **quīn . . . proficīscerētur**: 'to set out' (§ 186); *quīn* can follow only a verb with a negative.

58 7 **diēbus**: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

58 9 CHAP. 3. **Eō**: adv. — **omnium opīniōne**: 'than any one expected' (lit. 'than the opinion of all'); *opīniōne* is used after the comparative without *quam* (§ 105).

58 10 **Rēmī**: these were friendly to the Romans. — **Galliae**: dative (§ 90). — **ex Belgīs**: 'of the Belgæ'; used instead of the part. gen.

58 11 **lēgātōs**: 'as ambassadors.' What other meaning does *lēgātus* have?

58 12 **quī dīcerent**: see § 175. — **Nōs . . . in fidem . . . permittimus**: 'put ourselves under the protection (good faith)' etc.

58 15 **parātī**: a participle used as an adjective. Depending on it are the complementary infinitives *dare*, *facere*, *recipere*, and *iuvāre* (§ 217. *c*).

58 16 **oppidīs**: properly an abl. of means, but to be translated as if it were abl. of place, 'in our towns.'

58 18 **cis Rhēnum**: i.e. the west (or Gallic) side.

58 19 **tantus . . . ut . . . potuerimus**: 'so great is the frenzy of them all that we have not been able to restrain even the Suessiones' etc.; a clause of result with the antecedent word *tantus* (§ 179. note).

58 22 **quīn . . . cōnsentīrent**: 'from leaguing with'; subjv. clause after a *negatived* word of hindering (§ 185). Note that the perfect subjv. (*potuerimus*) is followed by a secondary tense.

58 24 CHAP. 4. **quae . . . quantaeque . . . essent**: indir. question (§ 201).

58 25 **quid . . . possent**: 'what strength they had in war'; *quid* is an adverbial accusative (§§ 98 and 99).

58 26 **Plērīque**: 'the most of.' — **ā Germānīs**: abl. of origin with a preposition (§ 102). — **Rhēnum**: depending on *trāns* in *trā(ns)ductī* (§ 95. note).

58 28 **sōlīque**: 'and . . . the only ones.'

59 1 quī . . . prohibuerint: a clause of description (§ 177. *a*).—**memoriā**: abl. of time within which (§ 119).

59 3 quā ex rē fit utī . . . sūmant: 'from this fact it comes about that they assume' etc. The result clause *utī . . . sūmant* is the subj. of *fit* (§ 187. II).—**memoriā**: abl. of cause (§ 109).

59 5 omnia habēmus explōrāta: 'have found out and possess all (the facts) about' (*dē*) etc. The expression *habēmus explōrāta* differs only slightly from *explōrāvimus* (§ 156. *b*. note, and cf. *compertum habeō*, p. 49, l. 14).

59 6 propinquitātibus: 'ties of blood.'—**adfīnitātibus**: 'alliances by marriage.'

59 9 virtūte: abl. of respect (§ 115).

59 10 armāta mīlia centum: equivalent to *armātōrum hominum mīlia centum*; grammatically, *armāta* agrees with *mīlia*. Likewise *ēlēcta* in the next line agrees grammatically with *mīlia*, but is translated 'picked men.'

59 11 sibi: dative of reference (§ 85).

59 14 cum . . . tum: 'not only . . . but.'

59 17 summa: 'the chief command.'—**voluntāte**: see § 111.

59 18 numerō: see § 115.

59 19 ferī: pred. adjective after *habentur*, which is a copulative verb (§§ 48. II. *b*, 94. note). Transl. 'who are regarded as particularly savage.'—**inter ipsōs**: 'among them,' i.e. the Belgæ.

59 23 Condrūsōs etc.: subjs. of *posse*, which depends on *arbitrāmur*.

59 24 Germānī: for the case cf. *ferī*, l. 19.

59 26 CHAP. 5. **cohortātus . . . prōsecūtus**: 'after he had encouraged . . . and addressed them' etc.

59 27 līberōs obsidēs: 'their children as hostages'; *obsidēs* is an appositive. If faith was broken, the hostages were punished; often they were sold into slavery.

59 28 Quae omnia: 'and all this' etc.; for a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

60 1 quantō opere . . . intersit: 'how greatly it concerned'; indir. question. The subj. of *intersit* is the inf. clause, *manūs . . . distinērī*.—**reī pūblicae . . . salūtis**: gens. with *intersit* (§ 81. *c*).

60 2 nē . . . cōnflīgendum sit: gerundive in a neg. clause of purpose. The verb is impers.; transl. 'that it might not be necessary to contend' etc.

60 3 Id fierī posse: 'this (he said) could be done.'

60 4 intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint: in a fut. condition. In the dir. disc. these verbs would be in the fut. perf. ind.

60 6 Postquam . . . posuit: 'as soon as he was aware that all the forces of the Belgæ had been gathered into one place and were advancing against him, and had learned from the scouts whom he had sent forward, as well as

from the Remi, that they were not now far away, he hastily led his army across the river Aisne, which is on the outer boundaries of the Remi, and there pitched his camp.' For ind. with *postquam* see § 193. — **coāctās**: equivalent to a clause (§ 220. *e*).

60 8 flūmen: depends on *trāns* in *trā(ns)dūcere* (§ 95); cf. *Rhēnum*, p. 58, l. 26, and note.

60 9 exercitum: obj. of the transitive verb *trādūcere*. — **trādūcere**: complementary inf. with *mātūrāvit*; 'hastened to lead.'

60 10 castra: this camp was about twelve miles northwest of Rheims. Traces of it were discovered in 1862. — **Quae rēs**: 'this movement,' i.e. his having crossed the river and pitched his camp where he did. For *Quae* see § 143. — **et latus . . . mūniēbat et post eum . . . reddēbat, et . . . efficiēbat**: the three *et*'s are translated 'both . . . and . . . and.'

60 11 post eum quae erant tūta . . . reddēbat: 'made safe the country in the rear of his position' ('what things were behind him'); *tūta* is a pred. adj.

60 13 ut . . . possent: a subst. clause of result, obj. of *efficiēbat* (§ 187. I). The subj. of *possent* is *commeātūs*, l. 12.

60 14 efficiēbat: the subj. is still *Quae rēs*.

60 15 in alterā parte: 'on the other side,' i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, toward the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones. See campaign map, facing p. 57, and battle plan, p. 63.

60 16 pedum duodecim: gen. of measure with *altitūdinem* (§ 77. *b*).

60 17 duodēvīgintī pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width.

60 18 CHAP. 6. **nōmine**: abl. of respect (§ 115).

60 19 mīlia passuum octō: 'eight miles'; *mīlia* is accusative of extent (§ 96). — **passuum**: part. gen. — **ex itinere**: 'on the march,' i.e. turning aside 'from' their course to attack the town.

60 20 Aegrē . . . sustentātum est: 'it was with difficulty that they held out'; the verb is a pass. intransitive and hence impers. (§ 83. *a*). In English such verbs should be given a personal subject.

60 21 Gallōrum . . . est haec: 'the (mode of) attack, (which is) the same for the Gauls and the Belgæ, is as follows' (*haec*).

60 22 circumiectā multitūdine: abl. abs. — **moenibus**: dative (§ 84).

60 23 iacī: complementary inf. with *coeptī sunt*. When are the forms of *coepī* pass.? Cf. p. 50, l. 15 and note. — **dēfēnsōribus**: abl. of separation.

60 24 testūdine factā: 'having made a *testūdō*'; see Introd. III. 13.

60 25 Quod: 'this,' i.e. the actions just described. — **multitūdō**: a sing. collective noun may have a plur. verb, as often in English (§ 65. *a*).

60 26 cōnsistendī: gen. of the gerund with *potestās* (§ 223. *a*).

60 27 nūllī: dative of possession (§ 88).

60 28 **summā nōbilitāte et grātiā**: '(a man) of the highest' etc. (§ 116).

61 1 **oppidō**: dative with *praeerat* (§ 84).—**ūnus ex eīs**: 'one of those'; a construction used in place of the part. gen. (§ 76, exception).

61 2 **Nisi . . . posse**: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting contained in *nūntium mittit*. Transl. 'unless reënforcements (he said)' etc.—**sibi**: i.e. Iccius.

61 4 Chap. 7. **Eō**: 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax.—**īsdem ducibus ūsus**: 'employing the same men (as) guides'; for the abl. see § 107. *a*; *ducibus* is an appositive (§ 58)

61 5 **Numidās et Crētas**: these peoples (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. *Crētas* is a Greek form.

61 6 **Baleārēs**: the inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, east of Spain, were famous slingers.—**subsidiō oppidānis**: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

61 11 **hostibus**: 'from the enemy'; dative (§ 86).

61 12 **potiundī**: gerundive. Note the less regular spelling *potiundī* instead of *potiendī*.

61 15 **morātī . . . dēpopulātī . . . vīcīs . . . incēnsīs**: the first two past participles are in the nominative case agreeing with the subj., because, being from deponent verbs, they are active in meaning; *incēnsī*, however, could not be used in a similar way, because, coming from a regular verb, it is pass. and means 'having been burned.' To employ this pass. meaning the abl. abs. had to be used.

61 18 **quō**: adv.; 'to which.'

61 20 **omnibus cōpiīs**: for the omission of *cum* see § 113. note.—**ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus**: 'less than two miles off'; *ā* is used adverbially; *mīlibus* is abl. of measure of difference (§ 114). *Minus* does not affect the construction (§ 105. note 2). In the next line *mīlibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*. Thus we have here both of the allowable constructions.

61 24 Chap. 8. **prīmō**: 'at first.'

61 25 **eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis**: 'their high reputation for valor'; *virtūtis* is an obj. gen. (see note on p. xlvi, l. 1).—**proeliō**: abl. (§ 101).

61 26 **quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . audērent**: indir. questions; lit. 'what they were able, what they dared.' The thought may be rendered 'the prowess of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers.'—**virtūte**: see § 115.

62 1 **locō . . . opportūnō . . . idōneō**: abl. abs. (§ 117. *c*).

62 4 **tantum**: correlative with *quantum* 'as much . . . as.' The rel. adjective *quantus* is used as a subst. in the same way as the rel. pronoun *quī*. In this sentence the antecedent *tantum* is accusative of extent; the rel. *quantum* is the dir. obj. of *occupāre*.—**adversus**: 'in front.'—**locī**: part. gen. with *quantum*, but more conveniently translated with *tantum*, 'over as much ground.'

62 5 ex utrāque parte: 'on each side.'

62 6 dēiectūs: accusative plur. modified by *lateris*; 'lateral slopes' (lit. 'slopes of the side'). — **in fronte** etc.: 'falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain.' See battle plan, p. 63.

62 7 trānsversam fossam: 'an intrenchment at right angles,' i.e. to the slope of the hill.

62 8 passuum quadringentōrum: gen. of measure (§ 77. *b*).

62 9 extrēmās: 'the ends of' (§ 125). — **tormenta:** see Introd. III. 4, with the accompanying illustrations and those on pp. 104 and 120.

62 10 quod . . . poterant: a parenthetical clause of explanation and hence not attracted to the subjv. Transl. 'because they were so strong in numbers.'

62 14 esset: 'if they were needed anywhere'; a fut. more probable condition (§ 199. II. *a*) attracted into the subjv. by the influence of *ut . . . possent* (§ 214).

62 16 cōpiās . . . ēductās īnstrūxērunt: transl. 'led out and drew up.'

62 17 Chap. 9. **Palūs erat:** 'there was a swamp'; i.e. in the low valley of the Miette brook. See battle plan, p. 63.

62 18 Hanc (paludem) sī nostrī trānsīrent: '(to see) whether our men would cross this' (§ 201). Note the difference in translation between *sī*, 'if,' introducing a condition, and *sī*, 'whether,' introducing an indir. question.

62 19 ut . . . adgrederentur: a purpose clause depending upon *parātī* etc.

62 21 contendēbātur: impers. Transl. 'a cavalry engagement was going on.'

62 22 nostrīs: dative (§ 90).

62 27 eō cōnsiliō: 'with this intent.' — **ut . . . expugnārent . . . interscinderent . . . populārentur . . . prohibērent:** subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō* (§ 183, third example). — **sī possent . . . sī . . . potuissent:** represent respectively the fut. and fut. perf. ind. of the dir. form. For the change to the subjv. see § 208. *b*.

63 2 ad bellum gerendum: is this gerund or gerundive? why? See § 223. *c* and note, and § 224. *b*.

63 5 Chap. 10. **levis armātūrae:** see § 77, and the ill., p. 65.

63 6 trādūcit: with two accusatives (§ 95).

63 9 cōnantēs: with *reliquōs*.

63 10 equitātū: considered as means, and therefore no preposition. — **circumventōs interfēcērunt:** 'surrounded and killed' (§ 220. *e*).

63 13 spem . . . fefellisse: 'that their expectations had failed' (lit. 'that hope had cheated them').

63 14 pugnandī causā: a gerund construction expressing purpose (§ 225. *b*).

64 1 ipsōs: i.e. the Belgæ.

64 2 cōnstituērunt etc.: 'they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home, and that they should assemble from all sides to

defend those into whose territory the Romans should first lead their army.' The two objects of *cōnstituērunt* are (1) the inf. clause *optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī* (of which *revertī* is the subj. and *optimum esse* the pred.), and (2) the subst. purpose clause (*ut*) . . . *convenīrent*. The omission of *ut* is a reversion to an earlier form of expression. For the case of *domum* see § 97.

64 4 intrōdūxissent: past perf. subjv., attracted from the fut. perf. ind. by being made part of the purpose clause (*ut*) . . . *convenīrent* (§ 214).

64 10 quod . . . cognōverant: ind. because Cæsar gives the reason on his own authority (§ 188. *a*). The clause is in apposition with *haec ratiō*.

64 13 Hīs persuādērī . . . nōn poterat: 'these could not be persuaded' (lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dative in the active are impers. in the pass., the dative being retained (§ 83. *a*).—**ut . . . morārentur neque . . . ferrent**: subst. clauses of purpose, grammatical subjs. of *poterat* (§ 183). Cæsar has manifestly succeeded in his plan of separating the forces of the Belgæ.

64 16 CHAP. 11. **secundā vigiliā**: approximately from 9 to 12 P.M.

64 17 strepitū . . . tumultū: abls. of manner (§ 110).

64 19 ōrdine . . . imperiō: abls. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

64 20 cum . . . peteret . . . properāret: descriptive temporal clauses expressing cause (§ 195).

64 22 ut . . . vidērētur: subst. clause of result, obj. of *fēcērunt* (§ 187. I, first example); 'they made their departure seem like a rout.'

64 23 per: see § 104. note.—**speculātōrēs**: 'spies.' They obtained information by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the 'scouts,' *explōrātōrēs*, were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

64 24 veritus: 'fearing.'—**discēderent**: indir. question (§ 201).

64 25 castrīs: 'in camp'; lit. 'by camp,' the Romans regarding the relation as means rather than as place (§ 106).

64 26 ab explōrātōribus: abl. of agent (§ 104). Compare this construction with *per speculātōrēs*, l. 23, where Cæsar gave the *speculātōrēs* directions, and used them as a "means to an end," hence the preposition *per* (§ 104. note); here the *explōrātōrēs* are "voluntary agents," hence *ab* with the abl.—**quī . . . morārētur**: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

64 27 Hīs: dative with *praefēcit* (§ 84).

65 1 multa mīlia: see § 96.

65 2 cum: cf. note on p. 64, l. 20.

65 3 ab extrēmō agmine: 'in the rear.'—**quōs**: the antecedent is *eī* understood, subj. of *cōnsisterent* and *sustinērent*.

65 4 priōrēs: sc. *et*, 'and those that were in the van.'—**quod . . . vidērentur . . . continērentur**: the verbs are in the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

65 8 sibi: dative of reference (§ 85).

65 10 tantam . . . quantum fuit diēī spatium: 'killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed' (lit. 'as great a number as the space of the day was'). Cf. p. 62, l. 4 and note.

65 15 Chap. 12. **priusquam . . . reciperent:** 'before the enemy should recover themselves' (§ 197. *b*).

65 17 in fīnēs Suessiōnum . . . dūxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other. "Divide and conquer" was a famous Roman proverb.

65 19 magnō itinere: see Introd. III. 11, and the ill., p. 45.

65 20 ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, without waiting to construct the usual works preliminary to storming.

65 22 esse: supply *id* (*oppidum*) for subject.

65 23 paucīs dēfendentibus: abl. abs. denoting concession (§ 117. *d*); 'though there were few defenders.'—**expugnāre:** 'to take' (by storm); cf. *oppugnāre* (l. 20), 'to attack.'

65 24 vīneās: see Introd. III. 13.—**quaeque:** the antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *comparāre*.

65 27 aggere . . . turribus: see Introd. III. 13.

66 1 magnitūdine . . . celeritāte: abls. of cause (§ 109), modifiers of *permōtī*.

66 4 ut cōnservārentur: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of *petentibus* (§ 183).

66 5 Chap. 13. **obsidibus:** in apposition with *prīmīs* and *fīliīs*.

66 8 Quī cum: 'and when they'; cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.

66 10 maiōrēs nātū: 'the older men' (lit. 'greater in respect to birth'); *nātū* is abl. of respect (§ 115).

66 11 vōce significāre: 'show by the tones of their voices'; of course they could not speak Latin.

66 12 in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre: 'placed themselves under his protection and submitted to his commands' (lit. 'came into his faith and power').

66 13 cum . . . accessisset . . . pōneret: 'when he had approached and was pitching his camp.' Mark the difference in tenses; the clauses denote time and circumstance (§ 194. *b*).

66 15 passīs manibus: 'with hands outstretched' (in supplication); *passīs* is from *pandō*.—**suō mōre:** 'according to their custom' (§ 111).

66 22 Chap. 14. **Quī:** '(those) who,' subj. of *fuerant*; *prīncipēs*, pred. noun.

66 23 quantam . . . intulissent: indir. question.

66 25 ut . . . ūtāris: a subst. clause, obj. of *petunt* (§ 183).

66 26 Quod: a connecting rel., referring to the idea in the preceding sentence; cf. *Quī*, l. 8.

66 28 qua: indef. pronoun with *bella*. For the form see § 28, footnote 1.

67 1 CHAP. 15. **honōris Dīviciācī . . . causā**: 'out of respect for Diviciacus' (lit. 'for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus').

67 2 **receptūrum**: sc. *esse*. The omission of *esse* is very common.

67 3 **auctōritāte**: abl. of description (§ 116).

67 4 **multitūdine**: abl. of respect (§ 115).

67 10 **mercātōribus**: dative (§ 88).—**vīnī**: part. gen. with *nihil*.

67 13 **virtūtis**: see § 77.

67 14 **quī . . . dēdiderint . . . prōiēcerint**: 'for having surrendered' etc.; a descriptive causal clause giving the reason for *increpitant* and *incūsant* (§ 190).

67 17 CHAP. 16. **eōrum**: i.e. of the Nervii.—**trīduum**: '(marched) for three days'; accusative of duration of time (§ 96).

67 18 **nōn amplius mīlia**: *mīlia* is accusative of extent of space and is not affected by *amplius*; cf. p. 61, l. 20, and see § 105. note 2.

67 22 **utī . . . experīrentur**: a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

67 24 **quīque**: equals *quī* plus *que*, 'and those who.' The antecedent of *quī* is *eōs* understood, the obj. of *coniēcisse*.

67 25 **quō**: rel. adv., equivalent to *in quem* referring to *locum*.

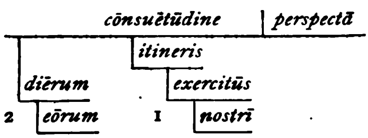
67 26 **esset**: this would be in the subjv. also in the dir. disc., being a descriptive rel. clause (§ 177).

68 2 CHAP. 17. **quī . . . dēligant**: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175). Cf. p. 57, l. 18.

68 3 **ūnā**: an adv. 'along (with him).'

68 4 **quīdam ex hīs**: for abl. with *ex* instead of part. gen. see § 76, exception.

68 5 **eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine . . . perspectā**: the following diagram shows the relation of the words:



Cōnsuētūdine is modified by group 1 and the whole phrase is modified by group 2; lit. 'the custom of the march of our army of those days having been observed,' freely 'after they had observed the usual order of march of our army during those days.'

68 6 **inter singulās legiōnēs**: 'between the several legions.' For the usual order of the line of march see Introd. III. 11.

68 8 **negōtī**: part. gen. depending on *quicquam*. Cf. p. 67, l. 10.—**cum . . . vēnisset . . . abessent**: subjvs. in indir. disc., representing the fut. perf. and fut. ind. respectively of the dir.

68 10 hanc . . . quā: both refer to *prīma legiō*. — **sarcinīs:** see Introd. III. 9. *d*, and the illustrations, pp. 45 and 69.

68 11 ut . . . nōn audērent: subst. clause of result, subj. of *futūrum* (*esse*) (§ 187. II); lit. 'it would come to pass that they would not dare.'

68 12 Adiuvābat: the subj. is the subst. clause of fact *quod Nerviī . . . effēcerant* (§ 182, first example), and the obj. is *cōnsilium*.

68 13 Nerviī etc.: this sentence is a good example of the Latin "periodic structure," in which, by holding the leading verb in abeyance, the thought is kept in suspense until the period is completed. *Nerviī*, the subject in the nominative case, indicates that those people are the *doers* of an act that remains unexpressed until the reader has been informed of the circumstances attending the act. Holding the subj. *Nerviī* in mind, he finds first *when* the act was performed (*antīquitus*); then *why* it was done (*cum . . . possent*); next *for what purpose* (*quō facilius . . . impedīrent*); then *by what means* (*tenerīs arboribus . . . interiectīs*); lastly, all is locked together into a completed whole by the *act itself* (*effēcerant ut . . . praebērent*). — **nihil possent:** 'had no strength'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).

68 14 quicquid possunt etc.: cf. *nihil* (l. 13), and transl. 'all the strength they have is in infantry.'

68 15 quō facilius . . . impedīrent: a clause of purpose with a comparative (§ 176).

68 16 vēnissent: attracted into the subjv. from the fut. perf. ind. because of its position in the purpose clause (§ 214).

68 17 in lātitūdinem: i.e., when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang out on all sides and made a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briers and thorns. Traces of such hedges still exist.

68 18 ut . . . praebērent: an obj. clause of result depending on *effēcerant* (§ 187. I). — **īnstar:** an indeclinable noun, regularly followed by the genitive. Transl. 'like a wall' (lit. 'the image of a wall').

68 19 quō: 'into which'; a rel. adv. followed by *posset* in a clause of description (§ 177). Cf. *quō*, p. 67, l. 25.

68 20 cum: 'since' (§ 189).

68 21 omittendum (esse): a pass. periphrastic denoting obligation, followed by *sibi*, a dative of agent (§ 87).

68 24 CHAP. 18. **aequāliter dēclīvis:** 'with even downward slope.'

68 26 parī acclīvitāte: see § 116. The description proceeds from the high ground northwest of the Sambre *downward* (*dēclīvis*) to the stream; then across the river up the *ascent* (*acclīvitāte*) on the other side. — **adversus huic et contrārius:** 'opposite this and facing it.' See map, p. 71.

69 1 passūs . . . apertus: 'open at the base for about two hundred paces'; for *passūs* see § 96. — **īnfimus:** see § 125. — **ab superiōre parte:** 'along the upper portion.'

69 2 silvestris: an adjective modifying *collis.*—**ut nōn . . . posset**: a neg. clause of result. What would *nē posset* express?

69 3 in apertō locō: the open space of two hundred paces mentioned above.

69 4 secundum: a preposition governing *flūmen.*

69 5 pedum . . . trium: see § 77. *b.*

69 6 Chap. 19. **cōpiīs**: see § 113. note.

69 7 aliter . . . dētulerant: 'was different from what the Belgæ had reported' (lit. 'held itself otherwise than' etc.).

70 1 cōnsuētūdine suā: 'according to his custom' (§ 111).—**legiōnēs expedītās**: see Introd. III. 11.

70 2 conlocārat: contracted from *conlocāverat.*

70 3 proximē cōnscrīptae: 'most recently levied.' These were legions XIII and XIV (see p. 57, l. 16 and note), which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.

70 7 reciperent . . . facerent: 'kept retiring' etc.; the continuous action, indicated by the past tense, is emphasized by *identidem.*

70 8 neque . . . audērent: 'and our men dared not follow them further than to the line to which the open space extended.'—**quem ad fīnem**: translated as if it were *ad fīnem ad quem.*

70 9 cēdentēs: agrees with *eōs*, the obj. understood of *īnsequī.* The omission of the pronoun in cases like this is the rule.

70 10 opere dīmēnsō: see Introd. III. 10, and the ill., p. 52.

70 13 quod tempus . . . convēnerat: 'the time that had been agreed upon' (lit. 'which time had' etc.). *Tempus* is in apposition with the clause *ubi . . . vīsa sunt.* An antecedent in apposition with something preceding is always placed in the rel. clause.

70 15 atque (ita ut) ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant: 'and just as they had determined to do.'

70 20 adversō colle: 'straight up the opposite hill'; abl. of the way by which (§ 120. note 1).

70 22 Chap. 20. **Caesarī**: see § 87.—**vēxillum**: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to show that a battle was impending; see Introd. III. 7.

70 23 prōpōnendum: sc. *erat*; so with the several periphrastics that follow, the proper form of *sum* must be supplied.

70 24 tubā: the signal to take their places in the ranks; see Introd. III. 8.—**ab opere**: i.e. the work of fortification.

70 25 quī: the antecedent (*eī*) is the subj. understood of *arcessendī* (*erant*).—**aggeris**: 'material for a mound.'

70 26 signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action (§ 224. *a*).

72 1 difficultātibus . . . subsidiō: see § 89, and cf. p. 61, ll. 6 and 7.—**scientia . . . ūsus**: 'theoretical knowledge and experience.' The words are

in part apposition with *duae rēs*, and name only the first of the two helpful circumstances; the second is stated in the clause *quod . . . vetuerat* below.

72 2 quid . . . oportēret: indir. question, obj. of *praescrībere*.

72 4 quod . . . vetuerat: 'the fact that he had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.'

72 7 nihil iam: 'no longer'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§ 99).—**per sē**: 'on their own responsibility.'—**quae vidēbantur**: 'what seemed best.' The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *administrābant*.

The battle with the Nervii, one of the most critical episodes in Cæsar's career, is referred to by Longfellow, in "The Courtship of Miles Standish," in the following lines:

> Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
> When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
> And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
> There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
> Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
> Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
> Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
> So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.

72 10 CHAP. 21. **quam in partem**: equivalent to *in eam partem in quam* (§ 140).

72 11 decimam: this was Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. p. 45, ll. 1 ff.

72 12 utī . . . retinērent . . . perturbārentur . . . sustinērent: obj. clauses of purpose, expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (*ōrātiōne cohortātus*).

72 14 quam quō: introducing a rel. clause of description; transl. 'than the distance to which' (lit. 'than whither').

72 16 pugnantibus: sc. *suīs* or *mīlitibus*, dative with *occurrit* (§ 84).

72 18 ut . . . tempus dēfuerit: a clause of result. Observe that in such clauses there is usually some antecedent word meaning 'so,' 'such,' 'so great,' 'to such a degree,' etc., on which the result clause depends; the words here are *tanta* and *tam* (§ 179. note).—**ad insignia accommodanda**: see § 225. *a*; 'for fitting on the decorations' (of the helmets etc.). See Introd III. 9. *b*., and the ill., p. 74.

72 19 scūtīs: dative (§ 86). See Introd. III. 9. *b*.

72 20 Quam . . . cōnstitit: 'into whatever place chance took him, and whatever standards he saw first, there each took his stand.' So well were the soldiers drilled that each could fight well even among troops not his own.

72 23 CHAP. 22. **magis ut . . . quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat**: 'rather as . . . demanded than as the theory and practice of warfare did.'

72 25 cum . . . resisterent . . . impedīrētur: see § 189.—**aliae aliā in parte**: see note on p. 42, l. 21.

73 3 neque quid . . . prōvidērī (poterat): 'neither could the necessities (lit. 'what was necessary') in each part be foreseen.'—**quid . . . esset**: see § 201.

73 6 ēventūs varii: subj. of *sequēbantur*; modified by *fortūnae*.

73 7 CHAP. 23. In this chapter three sets of encounters, occurring at practically the same time, are described in order, (1) that of the Atrebates with the ninth and tenth legions, (2) that of the Viromandui with the eighth and eleventh, and (3) that of the Nervii with the seventh and twelfth. Study carefully the lower battle plan, p. 71.—**ut . . . cōnstiterant**: 'from their position' etc. (lit. 'as they had taken their position').

73 8 aciē: a genitive form.—**pīlīs ēmissīs**: see Introd. III. 9 and 12.

73 9 hīs: i.e. the Atrebates; dative with *obvēnerat* (§ 84).

73 11 cōnantēs: sc. *eōs* (§ 167), obj. of *insecūtī*; 'while they were trying to cross.'

73 12 Ipsī: 'they themselves.'

73 13 prōgressī: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill from which the enemy had rushed to the attack.

73 18 nūdātīs: 'being exposed.' The only legions left near the camp were the seventh and twelfth on the right wing.—**cum . . . cōnstitisset**: see § 189.

74 1 intervāllō: abl. (§ 114).

74 2 duce Boduōgnātō: abl. abs.; 'under the leadership of Boduognatus.'

74 4 apertō latere: 'on the exposed flank'; i.e. on the right, not protected by shields.

74 6 CHAP. 24. **levisque armātūrae**: gen. (§ 77). See Introd. III. 3.

74 7 ūnā: adv.

74 8 pulsōs: sc. *esse*; subj. *quos*.—**dīxeram**: 'have said,' p. 70, l. 17. When this is read, the writing is past; hence the past perf. for an earlier page.

74 10 decumānā portā: see Introd. III. 10 and the ill., p. xxxv.

74 13 praecipitēs: adjective agreeing with *cālōnēs*, but with the force of an adv., 'pell-mell,' 'in utter confusion' (§ 126). Concerning *cālōnēs* see Introd. III. 5.

74 14 quī etc.: this refers to the baggage train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as rear guard; see p. 70, ll. 1–4.—**clāmor**: the shouts of the men; *fremitus*, the confused noise of the train.

74 15 oriēbātur: sing. because of the single idea conveyed by *clāmor fremitusque* (§ 68).

74 16 quōrum . . . virtūtis opiniō: 'whose reputation for valor' (lit. 'opinion of valor'; obj. gen., § 75. *b*).

75 1 complērī . . . premī . . . tenērī . . . fugere: indir. disc. after *vīdissent*. These present tenses represent what they saw going on.

75 4 **pulsōs superātōsque . . . potītōs:** sc. *esse.*

75 7 CHAP. 25. **Caesar:** subj. of *prōcessit* (l. 27). This is another instance of the periodic sentence; see note on p. 68, l. 13. In translating such long sentences it is desirable to make several short ones, each complete in itself. This example illustrates well how much more freely the absolute construction is used in Latin than in English. As a rule, it is well to avoid transferring it literally into English, as, 'the standard bearer having been killed' etc. However, a sparing use is permissible.

75 9 **ubi:** construe with *vīdit* (§ 193).— **signīs:** see the illustrations, pp. 73 and 75.

75 11 **sibi . . . impedīmentō:** 'hindered one another in fighting' (§ 89).

75 17 **prīmipīlō:** in partial apposition with *centuriōnibus.* For the office see Introd. III. 6. *e.* Baculus was one of Cæsar's best centurions.

75 22 **ab novissimīs:** 'in the rear.'— **dēsertō locō:** 'deserting their post.'

75 25 **in angustō:** 'in a difficult situation,' or 'at a crisis.'— **vīdit:** repeated from l. 12, on account of the length of the sentence.

75 26 **posset:** see § 177. The rear guard had not yet arrived.— **scūtō . . . mīlitī dētrāctō:** 'snatching a shield from a soldier.' For the dative *mīlitī* cf. *hostibus,* p. 61, l. 11, and see § 86. For a description of the *scūtum* see Introd. III. 9. *b.*

75 29 **possent:** a purpose clause introduced by *quō* with a comparative (§ 176).

76 2 **etiam . . . rēbus:** 'even in his own extreme peril.'

76 5 CHAP. 26. **cōnstiterat:** from *cōnsistō*; 'had taken its position.'

76 6 **monuit:** with two accusatives, *tribūnōs* and the subst. clause *ut . . . coniungerent . . . īnferrent* (§§ 93, 183), which represents one accusative.

76 7 **conversa** etc.: 'should face about and charge the enemy (in opposite directions') (lit. 'bear turned standards against').

76 8 **alius aliī** etc.: 'one was helping another'; see § 144. *d.* 1.

76 11 **legiōnum duārum:** i.e. XIII and XIV. See battle plan.

76 13 **colle:** i.e. the site of the Roman camp.

76 14 **Labiēnus:** he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see the first lines of chapter 23 and the battle plan.

76 16 **Quī:** i.e. the soldiers of legion X. How should *Quī cum* be translated?

76 17 **quō . . . esset quantōque . . . versārētur:** indir. questions after *cognōvissent*; 'in what condition matters stood' etc.

76 19 **nihil . . . fēcērunt:** 'left nothing undone in the way of speed' (lit. 'made nothing of remainder'); *reliquī* is a part. gen. (§ 76. *a*).

76 21 CHAP. 27. **quī:** the antecedent is *eī* understood, in partial apposition with *nostrī.*— **prōcubuissent:** see § 177.

76 22 redintegrārent: result, depending on *tanta* (§ 179. note), as are also *occurrerent* (l. 23) and *praeferrent* (l. 25).

77 2 ut . . . īnsisterent . . . pugnārent . . . conicerent . . . remitterent: result clauses dependent on the antecedent word *tantam*. Cf. p. 76, l. 20.— **iacentibus īnsisterent**: 'stood on the fallen.'

77 3 hīs: refers to *proximī*; transl. 'these too.'

77 4 quī: the antecedent is *eī* understood, subj. of *conicerent* and *remitterent*.— **ut ex tumulō**: 'as if from a mound.'

77 5 pīla . . . remitterent: i.e. they picked up and hurled back the Roman javelins.

77 6 ut . . . dēbēret: 'so that we may consider that not without good hope of success did men' etc. (lit. 'so that it ought to be judged that not in vain did men' etc.). The subj. of *dēbēret* is the inf. clause *hominēs . . . ausōs esse* (§ 216. *b*). The *ut* clause expresses the result of the entire preceding description.

77 8 quae: the antecedents are the infs. *trānsīre*, *ascendere*, and *subīre*; transl. *quae* 'deeds which.' *Facilia* is pred. adjective.—The battle with the Nervii was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Only the steadiness of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence at the critical moment saved the day.

77 12 Chap. 28. **dīxerāmus**: see p. 67, ll. 24–26. Cf. note to p. 74, l. 8.

77 13 cum . . . arbitrārentur: a causal clause (§ 189).—**impedītum (esse)** etc.: 'there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing impassable to') the conquerors.'

77 14 victīs: dative (§ 85).

77 18 quī . . . possent: this is a descriptive clause and would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.

77 21 fīnitimīs: dative (§ 83).—**ut . . . prohibērent**: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of *imperāvit* (§ 183).

77 23 Chap. 29. **suprā**: in p. 67, l. 23, the Aduatuci were said to be on the way to reënforce the Nervii.—**dīximus**: tense as in English; contrast *dīxerāmus*, l. 12.—**cum . . . venīrent**: 'while they were on their way.'

77 27 Quod: transl. as a demonstrative pronoun, and cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.—**cum . . . habēret**: a concessive clause (§ 192).

78 2 pedum: gen. (§ 77. *b*). For the case used after *amplius* see § 105. note 2.

78 4 conlocābant: the past descr. tense often denotes an action in progress (§ 154. *a*).

78 6 impedīmentīs: refers to cattle as well as to portable baggage.

78 8 custōdiam: 'a guard' for booty etc.—**praesidium**: 'a garrison' to hold the place.

78 9 ūnā: adv.; 'with it.' — **Hī**: i.e. the six thousand. — **eōrum**: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons. — **obitum**: 'destruction.' The Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquæ Sextiæ, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ.

78 10 cum aliās . . . aliās . . . dēfenderent: 'while sometimes they were waging war (aggressively) and sometimes were defending themselves when attacked' (lit. 'were warding off war brought against them').

78 14 CHAP. 30. **parvulīsque proeliīs**: 'skirmishes' (lit. 'small battles').

78 16 oppidō: abl. of means, hence the omission of *in*; but transl. 'in the town.'

78 17 vīneīs . . . aggere . . . turrim: see Introd. III. 13.

78 18 inrīdēre . . . increpitāre: historical infinitives (§ 218). — **quod . . . īnstituerētur**: subjv. in a causal clause stating a reason on another's authority; 'because (as they said)' etc.; see § 188. *b*.

78 19 Quibusnam . . . cōnfīdunt: *-nam* thus used with an interrogative word denotes extreme inquisitiveness. The early writers agree that the Gauls and Germans were tall and large as compared with the Romans. The Aduatuci, unused to Roman methods of warfare, supposed that their assailants, who in their eyes seemed puny, intended to *lift* on their wall the tower that they were building; hence their jeering question: "Pray, by what strength of hand do you — especially being such puny little fellows — expect to set a tower of such weight on our wall?"

79 1 CHAP. 31. **quī . . . possītis**: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

79 8 trāditīs armīs: abl. abs. (§ 117. *a*). — **sī . . . dēdūcāmur**: a future less probable condition (§ 199. II. *b*).

79 9 quamvīs: from the pronoun *quīvīs*.

80 1 CHAP. 32. **cōnsuētūdine . . . meritō**: see § 111.

80 3 ariēs: see Introd. III. 13. *b* and accompanying illustrations.

80 4 nisi armīs trāditīs: 'except on the condition of the surrender of your arms' (lit. 'except your arms having been surrendered'). — **in**: 'in the case of.'

80 5 nē . . . īnferant: a subst. clause, obj. of *imperābō*. The indir. obj. is *fīnitimīs* (§ 83). — **quam**: an indef. adjective pronoun modifying *iniūriam*.

80 7 facere: sc. *sē* as subj. We should expect *factūrōs* (*esse*).

80 8 ut prope . . . adaequārent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep chasm between the wall and the end of the *agger* almost to the top. The clause is one of result.

80 12 eō diē pāce sunt ūsī: 'for that day they enjoyed peace.' For the case of *pāce* see § 107. *a*.

80 14 CHAP. 33. **quam**: cf. l. 5.

80 15 ante initō . . . cōnsiliō: abl. (§ 111); *ante* is an adv. modifying *initō*.

80 20 **quā**: 'where.'

80 23 **ignibus**: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watchtower.

80 24 **concursum est, pugnātum . . . est**: impers. use of the pass.

80 25 **ita ācriter . . . ut**: correlatives; 'as bravely as.'

80 26 **quī . . . iacerent**: see § 177.

80 27 **pugnārī dēbuit**: impers.; transl. as if *virīs* (l. 25) were the subj., 'as brave men ought to fight.' — **in ūnā virtūte**: 'in valor alone.'

81 1 **ad**: adv.; 'about.'

81 3 **sectiōnem . . . ūniversam**: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions were sold as slaves.

81 5 **mīlium**: pred. gen. after *esse* understood (§ 77. *a*; see also § 116. *a*. 1).

82 CHAP. 35. The student is urged to try to read the Latin manuscript of this chapter as it appears on page 81.

82 3 **incolerent**: subjv. by attraction (§ 214).

82 4 **quī . . . pollicērentur**: a rel. clause of purpose. — **datūrās**: takes the f. gender from *nātiōnibus*.

82 5 **in Italiam Īllyricumque**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, which formed part of Cæsar's province. He went there, however, only during the winter.

82 6 **in Carnutēs**: to be taken with *dēductīs*, l. 9.

82 10 **supplicātiō**: 'a public thanksgiving.' Ten days was the longest time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. — **quod**: the antecedent is the whole idea in the preceding clause.

BOOK III

The events recorded in Book III belong chiefly to the campaign of the year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, described in the opening chapters, occurred in the latter part of 57 B.C., beginning upon Cæsar's return to Italy after the subjugation of the Belgæ.

83 1 CHAP. 1. **Cum in Italiam proficīscerētur**: connected in thought with *in Italiam profectus est*, p. 82, l. 9. — **Galbam**: this officer later became one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general.

83 6 **portōriīs**: these Alpine tribes subsisted largely by mining, grazing, and the levying of tolls on the goods of travelers.

83 8 **arbitrārētur**: subjv. of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*). — **utī . . . conlocāret**: a subst. clause, obj. of *permīsit*.

83 10 **secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs** etc.: expand this series of abls. abs. into clauses; cf. § 117, second paragraph.

83 16 **hic**: refers to *vīcus*.

83 18 **vacuam**: pred. adjective after *relictam*. — **ab hīs**: 'by these,' i.e. the Gauls.

84 6 Chap. 2. **ut . . . caperent**: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with *id*, 'it.'

84 8 **neque eam plēnissimam**: 'and that not entirely full.' This legion (the twelfth) had suffered severe losses in the battle with the Nervii (Book II, chap. 25), and was below normal strength before these detachments were sent off.

84 11 **cum ipsī . . . dēcurrerent**: 'when they should charge down from the hills into the valley.'

85 1 **Accēdēbat quod**: 'and besides' (lit. 'it was added that'). The subj. of *accēdēbat* is the clause *quod . . . dolēbant* (§ 182). A subst. clause with *ut* and the subjv. might have been used (§ 187. II).

85 2 **abstrāctōs**: sc. *esse*.

85 3 **Rōmānōs . . . adiungere**: indir. disc. after *sibi persuāsum habēbant*, 'they were convinced' (lit. 'they had it persuaded to themselves'). With *persūasum habēbant* cf. *coāctum habēbat*, p. 22, l. 3; *compertum habeō*, p. 49, l. 14; *habēmus explōrāta*, p. 59, l. 5; and notes.

85 7 Chap. 3. **perfectae**: agrees with the nearer subj., *mūnītiōnēs*, but belongs to *opus* as well.

85 8 **esset prōvīsum**: impers., 'arrangements had been made.'

85 9 **timendum (esse)**: a pass. periphrastic (§§ 38. II, 224. *a*). Transl. 'that there need be no fear of war.'

85 14 **venīrī**: depends on *posset*, understood from *possent*, l. 15. *Posset* is used impersonally, lit. 'neither could it be come for aid'; freely, 'and since no one could come to help them.'

85 15 **nōn nūllae . . . sententiae**: 'several opinions' (or 'votes'), given by the officers in council.

85 16 **ut . . . contenderent**: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *eius modī*.

85 18 **Maiōrī . . . placuit**: 'the majority decided' (lit. 'it pleased the majority'). — **tamen**: 'nevertheless'; i.e. in spite of other *sententiae*.

85 20 Chap. 4. **ut . . . darētur**: a result clause.

85 22 **dēcurrere, conicere, prōpugnāre, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superārī**: historical infinitives (§ 218); as usual, describing the situation.

85 23 **gaesaque**: Gallic javelins of unknown form.

85 26 **eō**: adv.

85 27 **quod . . . excēdēbant . . . succēdēbant**: subst. clauses explaining *hōc* (§ 182).

86 1 **nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem**: 'not only not, but not even,' etc.

We should expect another negative after *modo*, but the Latin regularly omits it in this expression where both parts have the same predicate.

86 3 **suī recipiendī**: 'of recovering himself' (§ 224. *c*).

86 4 CHAP. 5. **Cum . . . pugnārētur**: 'when the fight had been going on.'

86 8 **Baculus**: see p. 75, ll. 17–18 and note.

86 11 **virtūtis**: gen. of description.

86 12 **ūnam esse spem salūtis**: 'that there was only one hope of safety' etc. — **sī . . . experīrentur**: a conditional clause in apposition with *spem*. Note that *docent*, a historical present ind. (§ 153. *a*), allows secondary sequence, *experīrentur* (§ 164). — **extrēmum auxilium**: 'the last resource.'

86 14 **intermitterent, exciperent, reficerent, ērumperent, pōnerent**: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205), following *certiōrēs facit* in the sense of 'instructs.'

86 15 **tēla missa exciperent**: 'should (merely) catch (on their shields) the weapons that were hurled'; i.e. they should throw none back.

86 16 **post**: adv.

86 18 CHAP. 6. **Quod iussī sunt faciunt**: 'they did as (what) they were ordered.' *Faciunt* and the other presents that follow are historical.

86 19 **suī conligendī**: see § 224. *c*; 'of collecting their wits' (lit. 'of collecting themselves'); cf. l. 3.

86 21 **undique circumventōs interficiunt**: 'they surrounded on all sides and killed.'

86 24 **tertiā parte interfectā**: abl. abs.; *plūs* does not affect the case (§ 105. note 2).

86 26 **armīs**: abl. of separation. — **exūtīs**: belongs with *cōpiīs*. The enemy threw down their arms as they fled.

87 2 **aliō . . . meminerat, aliīs . . . vīderat**: 'remembered that he had come with one plan (i.e. to open a way into Italy) . . . but saw that he had encountered other conditions.'

The episode of the uprising of the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni is concluded with chapter 6. With the following chapter begins the account of the main campaign of 56 B.C. against the hardy coast tribes, particularly the Veneti. Cæsar's courage and resourcefulness are nowhere more strikingly shown.

87 12 CHAP. 7. **Crassus**: see p. 81, ll. 7 ff.

87 13 **mare**: accusative after *proximus*; cf. p. 56, l. 11.

87 15 **complūrēs**: modifies *cīvitātēs*.

87 17 **Coriosolitas**: accusative plur. of *Coriosolitēs*.

87 19 CHAP. 8. **Huius . . . cīvitātis**: i.e. of the Veneti.

87 21 **in Britanniam . . . cōnsuērunt**: i.e. for the purposes of trade. — **cōnsuērunt**: contracted from *cōnsuēvērunt*, 'are accustomed.' The present would mean 'grow accustomed.'

87 22 scientiā . . . ūsū: abls. of respect (§ 115).

88 1 vectīgālēs: adjunct accusative with *omnēs* (§ 94).

88 2 se: subj. of *recuperātūrōs* (*esse*); *suōs* agrees with *obsidēs*.

88 5 subita . . . repentina: 'sudden . . . unexpected.'

88 10 quam . . . perferre: 'than to endure,' *quam* following the comparative idea in *mālint*.

88 13 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in *lēgātiōnem . . . mittunt*. The dir. disc. would be *sī vīs tuōs recipere, obsidēs nōbīs remitte* (§ 205).

88 14 Chap. 9. **Caesar:** observe again how Cæsar has stated the difficulties and set the stage for action, and then personally appears as the chief actor.

88 15 aberat longius: 'was too far off'; i.e. to take immediate command in person.— **nāvēs . . . longās:** 'war galleys'; see Introd. III. 14. *a*, and the illustrations, pp. 92, 94, 117. The Gallic ships used sails alone and had no oars.— It will be remembered that Cæsar, at the close of the previous year (57 B.C.), had set out for Illyricum and Italy (p. 82, ll. 5–9). In April, 56 B.C., before his return to Gaul, he had a conference with the other triumvirs, Pompey and Crassus, and arrangements were made whereby the latter were to be consuls for the year 55 B.C., and Cæsar's term as governor of Gaul was to be extended for five years after the expiration of his first term (54 B.C.). Plans were also made to increase Cæsar's legions from eight to ten, and to provide pay for them from the public treasury. Cæsar seems thus to have been planning for future military support when he should finally return to Rome.

88 21 quantum . . . admīsissent: transl. freely, 'how great a crime they had committed' (lit. 'how great a crime they had brought upon themselves').

88 22 lēgātōs . . . retentōs: explanatory of *facinus*.— **quod nōmen:** transl. as if the order were *nōmen quod*, with *nōmen* in apposition with *lēgātōs*, and cf. p. 70, l. 13 and note.

88 25 hōc maiōre spē: 'their hope being greater on this account.'

89 2 īnscientiam: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance.

89 4 diūtius: 'very long' (lit. 'longer,' i.e. than they desired); see § 145.

89 5 ut . . . acciderent: 'although everything should turn out contrary to their expectations' (§ 192).

89 6 posse and the following infinitives depend on *perspiciēbant* (l. 10).

89 7 gestūrī essent: an active periphrastic (§ 222. I) and a subjv. in indir. disc.

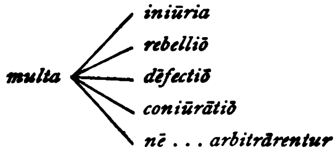
89 8 longē aliam . . . atque: 'very different . . . from.'

89 9 conclūsō: i.e. like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were familiar.

89 12 ubi . . . cōnstābat: 'where it was evident that Cæsar would first wage war.'

89 13 **Sociōs:** pred. accusative with *Osismōs* etc.

89 18 CHAP. 10. **multa:** in part. apposition with this word are the nouns *iniūria*, *rebelliō*, *dēfectiō*, *coniūrātiō*, and the neg. purpose clause *nē . . . arbitrārentur*. This relation may be represented as follows:



89 21 **neglēctā:** i.e. left unpunished.

89 22 **sibi idem licēre:** 'that the same opportunity was open to them' (lit. 'the same thing was permitted to them').

89 25 **ōdisse:** 'hate'; perf. in form, but present in meaning (§ 46).—**priusquam . . . cōnspīrārent:** see § 197. *b*.

90 3 CHAP. 11. **adeat . . . contineat . . . prohibeat:** commands in indir. disc. (§ 205).

90 4 **arcessītī (esse):** depends upon *dūcēbantur* and agrees with its subj. in case; 'were said to have been invited.'

90 10 **distinendam cūret:** cf. *pontem faciendum cūrat*, p. 20, l. 11 and note; *cūret* is subjv. in a rel. clause of purpose.

90 16 CHAP. 12. **eius modī . . . ut . . . habērent:** 'of such a sort that they had' etc. (§ 179).

90 17 **lingulīs:** some of these narrow tongues of land are several miles long.

90 18 **cum . . . incitāvisset:** 'when the tide had risen.'

90 20 **minuente:** 'at the ebb'; intransitive.

90 21 **utrāque rē:** 'in either case' (lit. 'by each circumstance'), i.e. by land or by sea.

90 23 **hīs . . . adaequātīs:** 'when these (i.e. *aggere ac mōlibus*) were brought level with the walls of the town.' The towns, being at the ends of the tongues of land, were inaccessible by land during high tide. The Romans, by extending dikes along the sides of the promontories, shut off the water and were thus enabled to extend the *agger* in each case up to the walls of the town. (For the *agger* see Introd. III. 13. *b*.) As soon as the Romans were in a position to take a town, the inhabitants escaped in ships to the next town.

91 1 **cuius reī:** i.e. *nāvēs* taken collectively.

91 3 **Haec . . . faciēbant:** 'this they continued to do'; past descr. of repeated action (§ 154. *c*). There is the same force in *dēportābant* and *recipiēbant* above.

91 4 **partem:** accusative of duration of time (§ 96).

91 5 summa: with *difficultās*. — **vāstō . . . marī etc.**: abl. abs. In each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

91 8 CHAP. 13. **Namque**: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti; '(but the Veneti had less trouble) for.' — **ipsōrum**: 'their own.'

91 9 aliquantō: abl. of measure of difference. — **quam nostrārum nāvium**: 'than (those) of our ships.'

91 10 quō facilius . . . possent: purpose with a comparative word (§ 176).

91 13 quamvīs: from *quīvīs*.

91 14 trānstra etc.: 'the cross beams of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man's) thumb.'

91 15 crassitūdine: abl. of description. — **prō**: 'instead of.'

91 16 pellēs: the Romans used sails made of flax; the Veneti of skins, untanned (*pellēs*) or tanned (*alūtae*).

91 20 tanta onera nāvium: 'ships of so great weight.'

91 22 nostrae classī: dative of possession (§ 88), but transl. 'the encounter of our fleet with' etc.

91 23 ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum: 'only in swiftness and the power of the oars'; abl. of respect. — **reliqua**: '(but) everything else.'

91 25 nostrae: sc. *nāvēs*. — **rōstrō**: abl. of means; for a description of the *rōstrum* see Introd. III. 14. *a*.

91 27 cōpulīs: 'grappling hooks.'

91 28 Accēdēbat ut: 'there was this additional advantage, that,' followed by the subst. result clauses *ut . . . ferrent . . . cōnsisterent . . . timērent*. — **sē ventō dedissent**: 'ran before the wind.'

92 1 cōnsisterent: 'rode at anchor.'

92 2 nihil: see § 99.

92 3 nāvibus: see § 87.

92 6 CHAP. 14. **neque eīs nocērī posse**: 'nor could they be harmed'; only the impers. construction can be used with the pass. of verbs of this sort; see § 83. *a*, and note on p. 64, l. 13.

92 7 prīmum . . . vīsa est: 'as soon as it was seen.'

92 10 neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnstābat quid agerent: 'and it was not clear to Brutus . . . what they should do.'

92 14 turribus autem excitātīs: the word *tamen* following shows that this abl. abs. has adversative force (§ 192. note); 'though towers had been erected (on the Roman ships), nevertheless' etc.

93 1 ex barbarīs nāvibus: 'of (lit. 'from') the barbarians' ships.'

93 4 magnō ūsuī: 'of great service'; dative of the end (§ 89); in fact, it turned threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint of possible defeat. — **falcēs**: in apposition with *rēs*.

93 6 mūrālium falcium: 'wall hooks,' long poles with sickle-shaped hooks, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Introd. III. 13. *b*). The gen. limits *fōrmae* understood, dative after *absimilī* (§ 90); 'of a shape not unlike (the shape) of wall hooks.' *Fōrmā* is abl. of description.—**Hīs . . . praerumpēbantur**: 'whenever the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts had been seized and drawn tight by these, the ship was driven forward by the oars and (in consequence) the ropes were torn off.'

93 7 adductī erant . . . praerumpēbantur: note the distinction in tenses and see § 196.

93 9 Gallicīs nāvibus: dative of reference (§ 85).

93 13 in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs: they had an audience that was calculated to inspire their best efforts. Cæsar does not forget the dramatic setting of his narrative.

93 14 paulō fortius: 'a little braver (than usual).'

93 17 CHAP. 15. **cum . . . circumsteterant . . . contendēbant**: the same use of tenses as in ll. 7–8, to express repeated action in past time.—**bīnae ac ternae**: distributives; 'when two or three ships (of the Romans) had surrounded each ship (of the Veneti).'

93 24 Quae . . . rēs: i.e. the sudden calm.—**ad negōtium cōnficiendum**: 'for finishing the business.'

93 27 ad terram pervēnerint: 'came to land.' For the exception to the rule of sequence see § 163. *c*.—**cum . . . pugnārētur**: 'although the battle had been going on.'

93 28 hōrā ferē quārtā: about 10 A.M.

94 2 CHAP. 16. **cum . . . tum**: 'not only . . . but also.'

94 4 nāvium quod: 'all the ships' (lit. 'what of ships'); part. gen.

94 5 neque quō sē reciperent . . . dēfenderent habēbant: 'had no place to which they could flee (for refuge) nor any way to defend their towns.' The subjunctive clauses are descriptive (§ 177). Cf. *quō . . . tolerārent*, p. 32, l. 15.

94 8 eō gravius . . . quō: abls. of measure of difference. Transl. 'the more severely . . . that.'—**vindicandum (esse)**: impers., but transl. 'punishment should be inflicted.'

94 10 sub corōnā vēndidit: 'sold at public auction' (lit. 'under the wreath'); captives in war, when being sold for slaves, wore wreaths. The custom arose from the crowning of animals intended for sacrifice. The selling of captives by their conquerors was common in antiquity, and Cæsar's act must not be judged by modern standards.

95 1 CHAP. 17. **Q. Titūrius Sabīnus . . . in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit**: see p. 90, ll. 8–11.

95 7 nōlēbant: i.e. the senate. Plur., referring to *senātū*, a collective noun (§ 65. *a*).

95 9 **perditōrum**: 'desperate.'

95 12 **idōneō . . . locō**: 'in a place suitable in all respects.'

95 13 **cum . . . cōnsēdisset**: concessive.

95 15 **hostibus** etc.: equivalent to *in contemptiōnem . . . hostium*; dative of reference.

95 19 **eō absente**: i.e. Cæsar.

95 21 **lēgātō**: dative of agent with *dīmicandum* (*esse*).

95 25 CHAP. 18. **quid fierī velit ēdocet**: 'he tells him what he wants done.'

96 1 **prō perfugā**: 'in the character of a deserter.'

96 3 **neque longius abesse quīn proximā nocte**: an expression amounting to 'and that not later than the following night.'

96 7 **īrī**: impers., depending on *oportēre*.

96 8 **superiōrum diērum**: depends on *Sabīnī cunctātiō* taken together. In apposition with *rēs* are *cunctātiō*, *cōnfīrmātiō*, *inopia*, *spēs*, and the clause *quod . . . crēdunt*.

96 12 **nōn prius . . . quam**: 'not . . . until.'

96 13 **sit concessum**: see § 197. *b*.

96 15 **ut explōrātā victōriā**: 'as if victory were already assured.' — **quibus . . . compleant**: a rel. clause of purpose.

96 18 CHAP. 19. **passūs mīlle**: accusative of extent of space. *Mīlle* is here an indeclinable adjective.

96 19 **quam minimum spatī**: 'as little time as possible'; subj. of *darētur*.

96 20 **exanimātīque pervēnērunt**: 'and they arrived all tired out.'

96 26 **Quōs**: a connecting rel. equivalent to *eōs* and obj. of *cōnsecūtī* (§ 143).

97 2 **equitēs**: nominative. — **paucōs**: 'only a few,' the regular meaning of this word. — **quī . . . ēvāserant**: 'who had escaped from the fleeing crowd.'

97 6 **ut**: correlative with *sīc*. — **ad bella suscipienda** etc.: they were eager and ready for undertaking war, but lacked grit in enduring reverses.

97 9 CHAP. 20. The third campaign of the year 56 B.C., that against the Aquitani, begins at this point. It seems to have been quite unnecessary, as well as difficult and dangerous. — **P. Crassus**: see p. 90, ll. 5–8.

97 12 **Praecōnīnus . . . Mānlius**: these defeats were twenty-two years before (78 B.C.), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for ten years against Rome (82–72 B.C.).

97 17 **Galliae prōvinciae**: 'of the province of Gaul.'

97 18 **hīs regiōnibus**: dative after *fīnitimae*, which agrees with *cīvitātēs*. — **nōminātim ēvocātīs**: 'having been called to the colors' or 'having been drafted.'

98 1 CHAP. 21. **superiōribus victōriīs**: see § 107. *b*.

98 3 **quid . . . possent**: indir. question, subj. of *perspicī*. — **sine imperātōre . . . adulēscentulō duce**: an *imperātor* is the commander in chief of an army; *dux* refers to any person holding a command.

98 8 vīneās turrēsque ēgit: see Introd. III. 13. *b*, and the ill., pp. xxxviii, xl.

98 9 cunīculīs: 'mines' (lit. 'rabbits'), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. These were intended to run under the Roman *agger*. The roof was propped up with wooden posts, and when these were set on fire and burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

98 11 dīligentiā: abl. of cause. The Romans doubtless destroyed the enemy's mines by countermines.

98 14 faciunt: 'they do (so).'

98 18 Chap. 22. **commodīs**: with *fruantur* (§ 107. *a*). The clause is in apposition with *condiciō*.

98 19 quōrum . . . amīcitiae: 'to whose friendship.'

98 20 sibi mortem cōnscīscant: 'commit suicide.' Cf. p. 14, l. 9.

98 22 quī . . . recūsāret: a rel. clause of description.

98 23 cum hīs: repeated from *cum . . . dēvōtīs* on account of the long parenthesis; 'with these (I say).'

99 3 Chap. 23. **paucīs diēbus . . . erat**: 'within only a few days after he had arrived there' (lit. 'within which it had been come there').

99 5 quōquōversus: 'in every direction.'

99 7 citeriōris Hispāniae: pred. gen. This was northern Spain.—**fīnitimae Aquītāniae**: 'bordering on Aquitania'; *fīnitimae* is a pred. adjective after *quae sunt*.

99 11 Q. Sertōriō: see note on p. 97, l. 12.

99 12 cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī: because of their service under Sertorius they were familiar with Roman methods of warfare.

99 15 Quod: explained by the four appositive clauses *suās cōpiās . . . augērī*.

99 19 nōn . . . dēcertāret: 'he thought a battle should not be delayed.' What is the literal translation?

99 23 Chap. 24. **duplicī**: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three divisions (*triplex aciēs*).

99 24 in mediam aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by the legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.—**quid . . . cōnsilī**: 'what plan' (lit. 'what of plan'); part. gen.

100 1 victōriā: abl. with *potīrī* (§ 107. *a*).

100 2 sēsē recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

100 3 īnfirmiōrēs animō: 'dispirited'; for the case of *animō* see § 115.

100 5 prōductīs cōpiīs: concessive; 'although' etc. (§ 117. *d*).

100 6 opīniōne timōris: 'the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.'

100 8 exspectārī . . . quīn . . . īrētur: freely, 'that they should go to the camp without further delay.'

100 10 **ad hostium castra**: this is the only instance in the "Commentaries" of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a carefully chosen level stretch between the hostile camps.

100 13 CHAP. 25. **quibus**: abl. with *cōnfīdēbat* (§ 107. *b*). — **lapidibus . . . comportandīs**: 'by supplying (the regular soldiers) with stones and javelins and fetching turf for (building) an *agger*.' The gerundives express means.

100 15 **opīniōnem pugnantium**: i.e. they gave the impression of being actually engaged in fighting (§ 221).

100 17 **ex locō** etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

100 19 **ab decumānā portā**: i.e. 'in the rear,' where this gate was situated; see Introd. III. 10 and the illustration on p. xxxv. The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps. Cf. note on p. 99, l. 12.

100 26 CHAP. 26. **omnium oculīs . . . intentīs**: 'while the eyes and minds of all were bent on the battle.'

100 28 **prius . . . cōnstitērunt . . . quam . . . posset**: equivalent to *cōnstitērunt priusquam posset* (§ 197. *b*).

101 2 **quod plērumque . . . cōnsuēvit**: '(a thing) which usually happens.' The antecedent of *quod* is the idea contained in *redintegrātīs vīribus*. For the tense cf. note on p. 87, l. 21.

101 4 **per**: 'over.'

101 6 **quae**: accusative plur., subj. of *convēnisse*. It takes its gender from the antecedent *mīlium*.

101 13 CHAP. 27. **tempore**: cf. *quibus*, p. 100, l. 13, and see § 107. *b*.

101 17 CHAP. 28. **quī . . . essent . . . mīsissent**: subjv. clauses of description.

101 18 **arbitrātus**: 'thinking'; the past participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a present. Cf. *veritus*, p. 64, l. 24.

101 19 **aliā . . . ac**: 'other . . . than' or 'different . . . from.'

101 22 **continentēs**: 'continuous': i.e. far-stretching.

101 23 **eō**: 'thither'; i.e. to the *silvās* and *palūdēs*.

102 6 CHAP. 29. **deinceps**: i.e. in the days next following.

102 9 **conversam**: 'fronting'; i.e. with the boughs turned toward the enemy. — **prō vāllō**: 'as a palisade.'

102 11 **cōnfectō**: 'cleared' (of timber); lit. 'finished.'

102 12 **tenērentur**: 'were being seized.'

102 13 **eius modī . . . utī . . . intermitterētur**: 'such that the work was necessarily interrupted.'

102 14 **sub pellibus**: the tents were of leather.

BOOK IV

In Book IV the scene shifts to the German frontier. In the winter of 56–55 B.C. two of the lesser German tribes, the Tencteri and Usipetes, crowded by the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine into Gaul. At the earliest moment Cæsar concentrated his forces in this quarter for the defense of Gaul, drove the Germans back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territory, and thus assured the supremacy of the Roman arms.

103 1 CHAP. 1. **Pompēiō . . . Crassō**: i.e. the year 55 B.C. The year was defined by naming the consuls in office (§ 228). The Triumvirate had decided that Cæsar should hold the government of Gaul while the other two members kept control of affairs at Rome.

103 4 **quō**: adv., equivalent to *in quod.*

103 11 **Hī . . . illī**: 'the latter . . . the former' (§ 134. *a*).—**annō post**: 'the following year.' For the case of *annō* see § 114.

103 12 **ratiō**: 'theory' (theoretical knowledge); *ūsus*, 'practice' (knowledge derived from experience).

103 13 **prīvātī**: there was no private ownership, but all lands were held as common property. Further, no community remained in one place longer than a year, probably that they might not become too much attached to one place.

103 15 **frūmentō**: abl. of means.—**maximam partem**: see § 99. Transl. 'for the most part.'

103 17 **quae rēs**: i.e. the mode of living just described. *Rēs* is subj. of *alit* and *efficit.*

103 18 **nūllō officiō . . . adsuēfactī**: 'accustomed to no service' (lit. 'trained by no service'; see § 106). The clause *quod . . . faciunt* is parenthetical.

104 2 **locīs frīgidissimīs**: 'even in their extreme climate' (§ 117. *d*).—**neque**: correlative with *et*, l. 4.

104 3 **vestītūs**: part. gen. with *quicquam.*

104 6 CHAP. 2. **eō ut . . . habeant**: 'on this account, that they may have (persons) to whom' etc.

104 8 **quam quō . . . dēsīderent**: 'than because they want' etc. A reason given as supposable but not real is expressed by the subjv. (§ 188. *b*).

104 15 **impēnsō . . . pretiō**: 'at high cost.'

104 17 **importātīs nōn ūtuntur**: 'do not import for use.'

104 22 **labōris**: pred. gen. of description (§ 77. *a*).

104 27 **mōribus**: abl. of accordance.

104 29 **quamvīs paucī**: 'however few.'

105 1 **Vīnum omnīnō . . . importārī nōn patiuntur**: 'wine they do not allow to be brought into their country at all.'

105 4 CHAP. 3. **Pūblicē**: 'as a community.'

105 7 **ūnā . . . Suēbīs**: 'extending from (the territory of) the Suebi in one direction.'

105 9 **ut est captus Germānōrum**: 'according to the standard of the Germans.'

105 10 **paulō . . . hūmāniōrēs**: 'somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race' (i. e. Germans).

105 13 **cum**: concessive, as shown by the following *tamen* (§ 192. note).

105 15 **vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt**: 'have rendered them tributary to themselves.'

105 23 CHAP. 4. **trāns flūmen**: i. e. on the east side; *cis Rhēnum* (l. 24), the west side.

106 1 **Illī**: i. e. the *Germānī*.

106 4 **viam**: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).

106 5 **cōnfectō**: with *itinere*.

106 11 **partem**: accusative of duration of time.

106 14 CHAP. 5. **veritus**: transl. as if present, 'fearing.' Cf. p. 64, l. 24.

106 15 **nihil . . . committendum (esse)**: 'no confidence should be placed in them.'

106 16 **Est . . . cōnsuētūdinis**: 'for it is a Gallic custom' (lit. 'for there is this (point) of Gallic custom'); the following subjv. clauses are in apposition with *hoc*.

106 17 **etiam invītōs**: 'even though they are unwilling.'

106 21 **rēbus atque audītiōnibus**: 'facts and rumors.'

106 22 **quōrum eōs . . . paenitēre**: see § 81. *b*. — **in vēstīgiō**: 'on the spot.'

106 23 **plērīque**: i. e. the *viātōrēs* and *mercātōrēs*. — **ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant**: 'give answers fashioned according to the wish of their questioners' (*eōrum*).

106 25 CHAP. 6. **graviōrī bellō**: 'too serious a war' (§ 122).

106 26 **cōnsuērat**: contracted from *cōnsuēverat*. — **ad exercitum**: in winter quarters among the Aulerci and Lexovii; see p. 102, l. 17.

106 27 **ea . . . facta (esse)**: *ea* is explained by the inf. clauses *missās (esse) lēgātiōnēs* and *invītātōsque (esse) eōs*.

107 2 **omnia . . . fore parāta**: used for the fut. pass. inf. depending on some word of promising implied in *invītātōs*; '(with the promise that) all things would be made ready.'

107 8 **equitātū imperātō**: 'cavalry being levied'; observe the meaning of *imperō* here.

107 10 CHAP. 7. **equitibus dēlēctis**: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

107 16 **quicumque**: the antecedent is *eīs* understood as indir. obj. of *resistere*.

107 17 **Haec tamen dīcere**: 'that this, however, they did say'; supply *sē* as the subj. of *dīcere* and the following infs.

107 19 **eīs**: i.e. to the Romans.—**attribuant**: subjv. for the impv. of dir. disc. (§ 205).

107 20 **eōs**: i.e. *agrōs*.

107 21 **concēdere**: 'yield,' as inferior.

107 22 **reliquum** etc.: 'there was no one *else* on earth' etc. Observe the emphatic position of *reliquum*; cf. p. 21, l. 19; p. 36, l. 4; and notes.

107 23 **possint**: subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177).

107 24 Chap. 8. **quae vīsum est**: 'what it seemed proper (to answer).' Cæsar gives us only the last part of his speech, but we may imagine that it was after the fashion of his words to Ariovistus (Book I, chap. 43).

107 26 **quī . . . potuerint**: the verb in this clause of description would be subjv. in the dir. disc. also; likewise *quī . . . possint*, l. 28.

108 2 **quōrum sint** etc.: 'whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him and complaining.'

108 6 Chap. 9. **post diem tertium**: i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually included in the Roman reckoning (§ 227. *g*).

108 7 **propius sē**: 'nearer them,' *sē* being an indir. reflex. For the case see note on p. 56, l. 11.

108 10 **trāns**: i.e. westward.

108 13 Chap. 10. **Vosegō**: 'the Vosges.' Cæsar is wrong here; the Meuse really rises a considerable distance west of the Vosges Mountains.

108 14 **parte . . . receptā**: the Rhine branches in these regions; one branch, the Vacalus, unites with the Meuse about eighty miles from its mouth. See the map.

108 20 **multīs . . . effectīs**: transl. actively, 'making many' etc.

108 26 Chap. 11. **ut erat cōnstitūtum**: 'as had been arranged.'

109 2 **praemitteret**: used without an obj.; transl. 'send word.'

109 3 **sibique ut potestātem faceret**: 'give them an opportunity.'

109 4 **quōrum sī . . . fēcisset**: 'and if their leading men and senate should give them an oath-bound pledge'; *fēcisset* represents a fut. perf. ind. in the dir. disc. (§§ 208, 209. note). The verb is singular because it agrees with the nearest subject (§ 67) or because the two subjects form a single idea (§ 68).

109 5 **condiciōne**: abl. with *ūsūrōs* (*esse*); see § 107. *a*.

109 7 **daret**: subjv. in an indir. command or request (§ 205).

109 8 **eōdem illō pertinēre**: 'tended the same way'; *eōdem* and *illō* are advs.—**ut . . . reverterentur**: a purpose clause explaining *eōdem illō*.

109 14 **quī nūntiārent**: a rel. clause of purpose. The antecedent of *quī*

is the omitted obj. of *mittit.* — **nē . . . lacesserent . . . sustinērent:** commands in indir. disc. (§§ 205, 206).

109 16 **accessisset:** see § 198. III. *b.*

109 18 Chap. 12. **amplius:** as usual, this word has no effect on the construction (§ 105. note 2).

109 22 **indūtiīs:** dative of purpose.

109 23 **resistentibus:** sc. *nostrīs*, *hīs* being the indir. obj.

109 24 **subfossīs** etc.: 'after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men.'

109 26 **ut . . . vēnissent:** note that *dēsisterent* is subjv. of result with *ut*, and that *vēnissent* depends on it (§ 214); otherwise the clause with *prius . . . quam* would be in the ind. (§ 197. *a*).

110 3 **genere:** see § 102.

110 6 **quoad:** see § 198. II; compare this use of *quoad* with that on p. 109, l. 15.

110 11 Chap. 13. **ab eīs quī . . . intulissent:** 'from men who' etc.; a clause of description.

110 13 **dum . . . augērentur:** see § 198. III. *b.*

110 14 **dēmentiae:** descriptive gen. in the pred. after *esse* (§ 77. *a*); the subj. is *exspectāre.* Transl. 'he thought it was the height of madness to wait.'

110 15 **quantum . . . auctōritātis:** 'how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle'; for *auctōritātis* see § 76. *a.*

110 17 **quibus:** i.e. the enemy; a connecting rel., indir. obj. of *dandum* (*esse*).

110 19 **nē quem . . . praetermitteret:** a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *cōnsiliō.* *Quem* is an indef. pronominal adjective, 'any.'

110 20 **quod . . . vēnērunt:** explanatory of *rēs.*

110 23 **simul . . . simul:** 'partly . . . partly.' — **pūrgandī suī causā:** 'for the purpose of excusing themselves' (§§ 224. *c*, 225. *b*). — **quod . . . commīsissent:** see § 188. *b.*

110 25 **ut . . . impetrārent:** 'that they might obtain through treachery whatever they could in the way of truce.'

110 26 **Quōs . . . oblātōs (esse) gāvīsus:** 'delighted that they were put in his power'; *gāvīsus* is from *gaudeō.*

111 3 Chap. 14. **Aciē triplicī:** see Introd. III. 12.

111 6 **et . . . et:** correlative; *celeritāte* and *discessū* explain *omnibus rēbus.*

111 7 **perturbantur, cōpiāsne . . . an . . . an . . . praestāret:** 'they were confused as to whether it was better' etc. (§§ 201, 170. *b.* 1).

111 9 **Quōrum timor cum:** equivalent to *cum timor eōrum* (§ 143).

111 11 **quī:** the antecedent is the subj. understood of *restitērunt.*

111 16 **ad quōs cōnsectandōs:** 'to hunt them down.' This action of Cæsar's seems cruel. When thanksgivings were proposed in the senate for

Cæsar's victory, Cato, Cæsar's inveterate enemy, moved that he should be surrendered to the barbarians for this butchery. Such justification as can be found for the act rests on Cæsar's conviction that to secure the Roman power the Germans on the west side of the Rhine must be destroyed and that river kept as the boundary of the Roman possessions.

111 17 CHAP. 15. **Germānī** etc.: i.e. the Germans who were fighting heard the cries of those who were being massacred.

111 23 **ad ūnum**: 'to a man.'

111 24 **CCCCXXX mīlium**: pred. gen.; cf. p. 109, l. 18.

111 27 **veritī**: see p. 106, l. 14 and note.

111 28 **lībertātem**: '(this) privilege.'

112 3 CHAP. 16. **iūstissima**: 'the most important.'

112 7 **Accessit . . . quod . . . recēperat . . . coniūnxerat**: the *quod* clause is the subj. of *accessit*. Transl. 'a further reason was' etc. (lit. 'it was added that'). A subst. clause with *ut* often follows *accēdō*.

112 8 **quam . . . trānsīsse**: see p. 108, ll. 8 ff.

112 13 **dēderent**: a subst. clause without *ut* after *postulārent*.

112 15 **suī . . . imperī**: pred. gen. after *esse*; 'under his power' (§ 73. *a*).

112 17 **Ubiī autem**: 'moreover the Ubii' etc. This introduces the third of Cæsar's reasons (*multīs dē causīs*, l. 1) for crossing the Rhine. The first is introduced by *illa fuit iūstissima* (l. 2), the second by *Accessit etiam quod* (l. 7).

112 20 **premerentur**: see § 188. *b*.

112 21 **id sibi . . . satis futūrum (esse)**: '(saying that) that would be enough for them.'

113 3 CHAP. 17. **neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis** etc.: 'and he decided that it was in keeping neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people'; for *dignitātis* see § 77. *a*.

114 3 **Ratiōnem**: 'plan.' A good idea of the structure of this bridge can be gained by a careful comparison of the text with the diagram on p. 113. Any pupil handy with tools will find it interesting and helpful to make a wooden model of a section of this bridge. The site of the bridge was probably near Bonn, where there is to-day a magnificent structure, bearing a Latin inscription stating that Cæsar built a bridge there in the year 55 B.C.—**bīna**: 'in pairs.'

114 4 **dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem**: 'measured (and cut) according to the depth of the river.'

114 5 **pedum duōrum**: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.

114 7 **nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum**: 'not perpendicularly, like a pile' (lit. 'in the fashion of a pile').

114 8 **ut . . . prōcumberent**: 'so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.'

114 10 **ab īnferiōre parte**: 'downstream.' — **contrā . . . conversa**: 'slanting against'; *conversa* agrees with *duo* (*tigna*).

114 11 **Haec utraque . . . distinēbantur**: 'these two sets were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (*quantum . . . distābat*), with a pair of clamps at each end.'

114 12 **bipedālibus trabibus**: compare with *pedum duōrum*, l. 5. The timbers were just wide enough to fit in between the piles forming each pair.

114 14 **quibus (tignīs) . . . revīnctīs**: 'after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions,' i.e. by the horizontal beams.

114 15 **rērum**: 'structure.'

114 16 **quō maior . . . hōc artius**: 'the greater . . . the more closely'; abls. of measure of difference. A model constructed according to this description will readily illustrate how the whole structure is the more tightly locked together the greater the pressure exerted against the sloping *tigna* from above or below.

114 17 **Haec . . . contexēbantur**: 'these (the framework of timber) were covered with beams placed lengthwise.'

114 19 **sublicae . . . agēbantur**: 'piles were driven also on the lower side in a slanting direction' (so as to stay the bridge against the current).

114 20 **prō ariete subiectae**: 'serving as a buttress.'

114 21 **aliae item**: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. These were probably independent of the bridge.

114 24 **neu . . . nocērent**: 'and that they (*truncī* etc.) might not harm the bridge.'

114 25 CHAP. 18. **Diēbus**: see § 119. — **coepta erat**: pass.; cf. p. 60, l. 23; also p. 115, l. 3.

115 4 **hortantibus eīs quōs**: 'at the instigation of those whom.'

115 10 CHAP. 19. **premerentur**: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*).

115 13 **utī . . . dēmigrārent . . . dēpōnerent . . . convenīrent**: obj. clauses of purpose following the verbal phrase *nūntiōs . . . dīmīsisse*, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice.

115 15 **hunc** etc.: 'this had been selected about the middle.'

115 19 **ut . . . iniceret . . . ulcīscerētur . . . līberāret**: substantive clauses of purpose in apposition with *rēbus* (§ 183, third example).

115 22 **satis . . . prōfectum (esse)**: 'enough had been done.'

115 23 **arbitrātus**: transl. as present, 'thinking'; cf. p. 106, l. 14 and note.

116 1 CHAP. 20. Cæsar's brief expedition to Britain described in the following chapters marks the beginning of the national history of England. Cæsar was the first Roman who entered Britain, and the first author who wrote about it from personal knowledge.

116 2 ad septentriōnēs: 'toward the north'; cf. p. 12, l. 4 and l. 9.

116 4 bellīs: abl. of time (§ 119). — **inde**: i.e. from Britain.

116 6 sī . . . cognōvisset: a fut. condition in indir. disc. changed from the fut. perf. ind. (§§ 208, 209. note, 210). The clauses are subjs. of *fore*.

116 9 illō: adv.

116 12 quanta . . . poterat: the indir. questions are objs. of *reperīre*.

116 15 quī: with *portūs*, 'what harbors.'

116 18 Chap. 21. **nāvī longā**: see the illustrations, pp. 92, 117.

116 23 quam . . . classem: lit. 'what fleet he had built'; transl. as if the order were *classem quam fēcerat*. For the attraction of the antecedent into the rel. clause see § 140.

116 27 quī polliceantur: a rel. clause of purpose, but transl. by the pres. participle.

117 6 magnī: gen. of indef. value (§ 78).

117 7 adeat: a subst. clause without *ut*, obj. of *imperat*.

117 9 quantum: sc. *tantum* as the antecedent word; 'so far as opportunity could be given to him' etc.

117 10 quī . . . audēret: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

117 14 Chap. 22. **superiōris temporis**: 'of the season before'; see Book III, chap. 28.

118 1 cōnsuētūdinis: see § 80.

118 2 fēcissent: the reason is given on the authority of the *lēgātī*, hence the verb is in the subjv.

118 6 hās . . . antepōnendās: 'that occupation about these trifling matters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.'

118 8 imperat: 'demands,' with accusative of dir. and dative of indir. obj.

118 9 Nāvibus . . . onerāriīs: see Introd. III. 14. *b*, and the ill., p. 117. — **quot**: sc. *tot* as the antecedent; '(as many) as he thought' etc.

118 10 quod: the antecedent is *id* understood, the obj. of *distribuit*; 'what galleys he had besides' (lit. 'what of galleys,' part. gen.).

118 13 ā: adv., 'away,' 'off.' — **tenēbantur quō minus**: 'were detained from'; the usual construction after verbs of hindering (§ 185).

118 16 in Menapiōs . . . in eōs pāgōs: with *dūcendum*, which agrees with *exercitum*, obj. of *dedit*. The gerundive here expresses purpose (§ 224. *d*).

118 20 Chap 23. **nactus**: from *nancīscor*.

118 21 tempestātem: 'weather.' — **tertiā vigiliā**: probably soon after midnight. — **solvit**: 'cast off' the ropes; i.e. weighed anchor. — **ulteriōrem portum**: the port eight miles away (l. 13). See the map.

118 23 hōrā . . . quārtā: about 10 A.M. The distance across is about thirty miles. He sailed from a port at or near Boulogne, and his approach to Britain was near Dover. There he lay at anchor till half past three.

118 26 montibus angustē etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore. See the ill., p. 119.

119 2 dum . . . convenīrent: when is *dum*, 'until,' followed by the ind.? See § 198. III. *a*.

119 5 Volusēnō: cf. p. 116, l. 18, and p. 117, l. 8. — **monuitque . . . administrārentur**: 'and enjoined upon them that everything should be done promptly (lit. 'at the nod and at the time') as military science and particularly control of ships demand, since the latter have a swift and unsteady motion' (lit. 'as things which have' etc.). The obj. of *monuit* is the subst. clause (*ut*) . . . *administrārentur*.

119 6 postulārent: see § 214.

119 7 habērent: see § 190.

119 9 His dīmissīs etc.: the first *et* connects *dīmissīs* and *nactus*, the second *ventum* and *aestum*. Why are *dīmissīs* and *nactus* not in the same construction? See note on p. 61, l. 15.

119 11 prōgressus: toward the north.

120 2 CHAP. 24. **essedāriīs**: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war chariot. — **quō . . . genere**: 'a kind (of fighting) which'; refers to the fighting both on horseback and with the chariots. *Genere* is attracted into the rel. clause.

120 3 ēgredī: the inf. is common after *prohibeō* instead of the subjv. with *nē*, *quīn*, or *quō minus* (§ 185. *a*).

120 5 cōnstituī: 'to ride,' 'to be anchored.'

120 6 mīlitibus: dative of agent with the impers. pass. periphrastics *dēsiliendum . . . cōnsistendum . . . pugnandum erat*; *pressīs* modifies *mīlitibus*, 'weighted as they were.'

120 9 cum illī etc.: 'while they' (the Britons) etc.; a *cum* clause of description.

121 1 generis: see § 80.

121 2 pedestribus: 'on land,' where the main strength lay in infantry.

121 4 CHAP. 25. **nāvēs longās**: subj. of *removērī*, *incitārī*, and *cōnstituī*; the whole clause is the obj. of *iussit* (§ 183. note).

121 5 barbarīs inūsitātior: 'more unfamiliar to the barbarians,' i.e. than ordinary ships.

121 8 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by shields; cf. p. 74, l. 4.

121 9 inde: i.e. from the ships.

121 10 tormentīs: see Introd. III. 4.

121 19 quī: the antecedent is the subj. understood of *inquit*. For other conspicuous actions of the tenth legion cf. p. 45, l. 2; p. 76, l. 15. — **aquilam**: see Introd. III. 7.

121 20 obtestātus etc.: 'appealing to the gods that the action might result favorably to the legion.'

121 28 **ego certē**: 'I, at any rate.' The nominative of personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis. See colored plate, facing p. 120.

121 26 **inter sē**: 'one another.'—**nē . . . admitterētur**: a subst. clause, obj. of *cohortātī*.

121 29 **adpropinquāvērunt**: the subj. is *mīlitēs* implied.

122 1 CHAP. 26. **tamen**: 'nevertheless,' i.e., in spite of the fact that they fought fiercely.

122 3 **alius aliā ex nāvī**: see § 144. *d.* 1. Transl. 'men from different ships rallied about whatever standards they happened on.'

122 4 **signīs**: dative, depending on *occurrerat* (§ 84).

122 5 **ubi . . . cōnspexerant**: 'whenever they saw'; cf. similar clauses introduced by *cum* meaning 'whenever,' p. 93, ll. 6 and 17 (§ 196).

122 6 **singulārēs**: 'scattered soldiers.'

122 8 **latere apertō**: see p. 121, l. 8.

122 10 **speculātōria nāvigia**: swift, light boats for reconnoissance.—**quōs**: the antecedent is *hīs*, 'whomsoever he saw hard pressed, to these' etc.

122 11 **simul (atque)**: 'as soon as' (§ 193).

122 13 **longius**: 'very far.'

122 14 **equitēs**: concerning these see chap. 23, first sentence.

122 15 **fortūnam**: Cæsar's belief in *fortūna* was real. Cf. p. 44, ll. 18–23.

122 20 CHAP. 27. **Commius**: cf. p. 117, l. 3.

122 22 **ōrātōris modō**: 'in the character of an envoy.'

122 24 **remīsērunt**: sc. *eum*, i.e. *Commium*.

122 26 **ignōscerētur**: impers. (§ 83. *a*).

122 27 **cum . . . petīssent**: concessive.

123 6 CHAP. 28. **post diem quārtum**: 'three days after,' according to our reckoning (§ 227. *g*).—**quam**: after the comparative idea implied in *post*.

123 11 **aliae . . . aliae**: 'some . . . others.'

123 13 **propius**: adv. with the force of a preposition. Cf. p. 50, l. 2, and p. 56, l. 11.

123 14 **tamen**: i.e. though Britain was so near.—**ancorīs iactīs**: concessive; 'since they, though the anchors had been cast, began to fill.'

123 15 **adversā nocte**: 'in the face of the darkness.'—**in altum prōvectae**: 'putting out to sea' (lit. 'into the deep').

123 17 CHAP. 29. **ut esset**: a result clause, subj. of *accidit* (§ 187. II).—**quī diēs**: why does *diēs* stand in the rel. clause?

123 18 **aestūs maximōs**: 'very high tides'; the ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were strange to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

123 20 **nāvēs**: obj. of *complēbat*.

123 25 **id quod**: *id* is in apposition with the clause *magna . . . facta est*.

123 27 **quibus . . . possent**: a result clause; *quibus = ut eīs.*

124 1 **quod . . . cōnstābat**: see § 188. *a*; 'because it was clear to all.' The subj. of *oportēre* is *hiemārī*, and the whole clause is subj. of *cōnstābat.*

124 7 CHAP. 30. **paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent**: 'inferred the fewness of soldiers from the small size of the camp.'

124 8 **hōc**: 'on this account'; correlative with *quod.*

124 10 **factū**: see § 226. *b.* — **dūxērunt**: 'they considered.' What does *dūcō* usually mean?

124 11 **prohibēre . . . prōdūcere**: subjs. of *esse.* — **his . . . interclūsīs**: 'if these should be overcome or cut off from return'; abl. abs. expressing condition.

124 15 **dēdūcere**: i.e. from their farms; cf. p. 123, ll. 3–4.

124 16 CHAP. 31. **At**: regularly introduces a new scene or a new speaker.

124 17 **ex ēventū nāvium**: 'from what had befallen the ships.' — **quod . . . intermīserant**: the clause explains *eō.*

124 18 **fore . . . suspicābātur**: 'began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.' For this use of the past descr. tense see § 154. *c.*

124 20 **quae . . . nāvēs, eārum**: transl. as if *eārum nāvium quae.*

124 21 **aere**: the Romans used the word *aes* for both copper and bronze. These metals were more commonly used than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust.

124 22 **quae**: the antecedent of *quae* is *ea*, the subj. understood of *comportārī.*

124 24 **reliquīs . . . effēcit**: 'he managed so that they could sail tolerably well with the rest' (lit. 'it could be sailed').

125 1 CHAP. 32. **Dum . . . geruntur**: see § 198. I. — **frūmentātum**: supine (§ 226. *a*).

125 5 **statiōne**: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

125 6 **quam cōnsuētūdō ferret**: 'than usual.'

125 8 **aliquid . . . initum (esse)**: inf. clause in apposition with *id.*

125 9 **cōnsilī**: part. gen.

125 11 **armārī**: 'to arm themselves.'

125 15 **ūna**: 'only one.' — **suspicātī**: as present; 'supposing.' Cf. *arbitrātus*, p. 101, l. 18 and note.

125 17 **dispersōs . . . occupātōs**: agreeing with *nostrōs* understood, the obj. of *adortī.*

125 20 CHAP. 33. **ex essedīs**: these chariots held several men each besides the driver.

125 21 **equōrum**: obj. gen.; 'the very terror that the horses cause.'

125 28 **expeditum . . . receptum**: 'a ready retreat.'

126 3 **incitātōs equōs sustinēre**: 'to check their horses in full-gallop.'

126 5 **iugō**: 'the yoke,' resting on the necks of the horses and supporting the end of the pole or tongue (*tēmō*).

126 7 CHAP. 34. **Quibus rēbus**: 'by means of these tactics.'—**perturbātīs nostrīs**: dative of indir. obj. after *tulit*.

126 13 **quī**: i.e. the Britons; the antecedent is the subj. understood of *discessērunt*.

126 16 **continērent . . . prohibērent**: subjvs. of description.

126 19 **suī līberandī**: 'of setting themselves free' (§ 224. *c*).

126 23 CHAP. 35. **idem . . . fore**: 'that the same thing would happen'; explained by the result clause *ut . . . effugerent*.

126 25 **Commius**: cf. p. 117, l. 3, and p. 122, l. 20.

127 1 **tantō spatiō . . . quantum**: 'over as much ground as'; *spatiō* is abl. (§ 106. *a*).

127 10 CHAP. 36. **propinquā diē aequinoctī**: 'since the time of the equinox (in September, usually a stormy season) was near.'

127 11 **īnfirmīs . . . subiciendam**: 'that unseaworthy ships should be exposed to storms' (lit. 'that with unseaworthy ships the voyage should be exposed to storms'). *Nāvibus* is the abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

127 19 **quōs reliquae**: obj. and subj. respectively of *capere potuērunt* understood.

127 21 CHAP. 37. **Quibus ex nāvibus**: the *onerāriae duae* mentioned in l. 18.

127 22 **in castra**: i.e. of which Sulpicius Rufus had command (p. 118, ll. 17 ff.).

127 24 **prīmō**: adv.

127 25 **sī . . . nōllent**: attracted into the subjv. from the present ind. (§ 214).

128 1 **orbe factō**: 'forming a circle.' The arrangement was somewhat like that of the modern hollow square.

129 3 CHAP. 38. **siccitātēs**: the plur. is used because many swamps are referred to.

129 4 **quō sē reciperent**: a rel. clause of description (§ 177).—**quō perfugiō**: i.e. *palūdum*.—**superiōre annō**: cf. p. 101, ll. 22–23.

129 13 **supplicātiō**: cf. p. 82, ll. 9 ff., where the *supplicātiō* of fifteen days was said to exceed in time any ever granted before.

BOOK V

131 2 Chap. 40. **pertulissent:** for the fut. perf. (§ 199. II. *a*); it is subjv. to imply indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*).

131 12 **praeūstae sudēs:** heavy stakes of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the *tormenta*.

131 14 **contabulantur:** 'are built up with a series of floors.' — **attexuntur:** 'are attached' (to the towers).

131 15 **cum:** see § 192.

131 16 **ut:** 'so that.' — **ultrō . . . vōcibus:** 'when the soldiers ran to him voluntarily and pleaded with him.'

131 17 **sibi parcere:** see § 83.

131 19 Chap. 41. **sermōnis aditum:** 'right to claim an interview.' — **causamque amīcitiae:** 'ground for friendship.'

131 25 **Errāre . . . spērent:** see §§ 199. I. *a*, 210. — **eōs:** Cicero and his men. — **quicquam . . . praesidī:** see § 76. *a*. — **ab eīs . . . quī . . . diffīdant:** *eīs* refers to the Romans in the other camps.

131 26 **hōc . . . animō:** see § 116.

131 27 **ut . . . recūsent:** they are willing to be friends, but not subjects; they merely refuse to admit a standing military force.

131 28 **cōnsuētūdinem:** the custom of having winter quarters in Gaul.

132 1 **incolumibus:** agreeing with *illīs*.

132 5 **sē adiūtōre ūtantur:** 'they may use him as an advocate.' His direct words were *mē adiūtōre ūtiminī* (§ 205).

132 6 **spērāre sē prō eius iūstitiā:** 'that he (Cicero) hopes that in accordance with his (Cæsar's) sense of justice.'

132 7 Chap. 42. **spē:** of betraying Cicero.

132 10 **nūllā . . . cōpiā:** 'having no supply' (lit. 'there being no supply').

132 11 **quae essent:** see § 177.

132 12 **exhaurīre:** 'to dig out (with their hands) and carry away (in their cloaks).' The one verb does the work of two. An example of what is called "zeugma," a yoking.

132 14 **XV:** probably an error; the distance seems incredible.

132 18 Chap. 43. **ferventēs . . . glandēs:** 'red-hot, soft balls of clay.'

132 20 **casās:** the thatched huts of the encampment.

132 26 **ut . . . dēcēderet . . . respiceret . . . pugnārent:** see § 179. — **cum:** see § 192.

133 5 **hunc . . . ut:** 'had this result, that.'

133 6 **ut:** 'inasmuch as.'

133 7 **prīmīs:** 'to those in front' (next to the wall). — **ultimī:** 'those in the rear.'

133 11 **hostēs . . . coepērunt**: 'they began to invite the enemy (to come in) if they wanted to come in.'—**vellent**: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. *b*); their direct words were *sī vultis, introīte* (§ 205).

133 15 CHAP. 44. **quī . . . prīmīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent**: see § 177. *a*. The men would soon be centurions of the first rank.

133 18 **dē locō**: 'for rank,' 'for promotion.'

133 21 **locum**: 'opportunity.'

133 26 **Mediocrī spatiō relictō**: i.e. between him and the enemy.

133 30 **Pullōnī**: see § 85.—**Āvertit . . . vāgīnam**: 'this mishap turned the scabbard aside.'

134 1 **cōnantī**: *eī cōnantī* (§ 85).

134 7 **in locum . . . concidit**: 'plunging (lit. 'plunged') into a hollow, he fell.'

134 14 CHAP. 48. **eius**: Labienus's.—**opīniōne . . . dēiectus**: 'cut off from the expectation' (§ 101).

134 15 **reciderat**: 'he had been reduced.'

135 12 **bīduō**: 'for two days' (§ 119. note).

135 13 **Ille perlēctam . . . recitat**: 'Cicero, having perused it, reads it aloud.'

135 19 CHAP. 49. **Gallum . . . repetit**: 'asks for the Gaul'; Vertico's slave, who carried Cicero's letter to Cæsar (chap. 45).

135 20 **quī . . . dēferat**: see § 175.

135 21 **admonet . . . faciat**: see § 183. In such cases the subjv. is often used without *ut*.

135 23 **eum**: Cæsar.

135 25 **animō**: see § 115.

136 1 **aequō animō . . . existimābat**: 'he thought that he might with composure slacken his speed.'

136 3 **haec**: referring to *castra*, and obj. of *contrahit*.—**erant . . . hominum**: see § 77. *a*.

136 5 **angustiīs viārum**: 'by narrowing the streets (of the camp)'; *angustiīs* is an abl. of means (§ 106).

136 6 **hostibus**: see § 85.

136 10 CHAP. 52. **neque . . . locum relinquī**: 'that no opportunity was left.'—**dētrīmentō illōrum**: 'to do them harm' (§§ 89, 75).

136 14 **decimum quemque**: 'one man in ten.'

136 17 **meritō**: in the face of overwhelming odds Cīcero had acted with great ability and courage.

136 19 **cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae**: these lieutenants of Cæsar had been slain.

137 2 **rem gestam** (*esse*): the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.

137 3 **quod dētrīmentum**: *dētrīmentum quod* (§ 140).—**lēgātī**: Sabinus.

137 4 **hōc . . . quod**: 'for this reason, that'; *hōc* is abl. (§ 114).

137 5 **beneficiō . . . virtūte eōrum**: see § 106; *eōrum* refers to Cæsar's soldiers. — **expiātō incommodō**: see § 117.

BOOK VI

139 4 CHAP. 9. **Ambiorīx**: the treacherous chief of the Eburones, whom Cæsar had vowed to destroy.

139 6 **Nōtā . . . ratiōne**: 'on the plan already tried and approved'; cf. Book IV, chap. 17.

140 1 **pūrgandī suī causā**: 'for the sake of clearing themselves.'

140 6 **Cognitā**: 'having inquired into:'

140 9 CHAP. 10. **paucīs post diēbus**: see § 114.

140 18 **quaeque**: *quae* is the subj. of *gerantur*; *-que* connects *mittant* and *cognōscant*.

140 20 **Suēbōs omnēs . . . cōnstituisse**: indir. disc. after *referunt*.

140 24 **prō nātīvō mūrō**: 'as a natural wall.'

140 26 **prohibēre**: 'protects.'

141 1 CHAP. 11. **ad hunc locum**: 'to this point' (of the narrative).

141 2 **quō**: adv., 'how.'

141 7 **eōrum iūdiciō**: 'according to their (the Gauls') judgment' (§ 111). — **exīstimantur**: merely explanatory, and hence the ind. (§ 178).

141 8 **quōrum**: the antecedent is *prīncipēs*.

141 9 **redeat**: 'is referred' (§ 177). — **īnstitūtum**: sc. *esse*.

141 10 **nē quis . . . egēret**: subst. clause in apposition with *eius reī*.

141 13 **Haec . . . Galliae**: 'this same state of affairs exists in general throughout Gaul.'

141 15 CHAP. 12. **Cum . . . vēnit**: see § 194. *a*.

141 16 **Hī**: 'the latter' (§ 134. *a*).

141 19 **iactūrīs**: 'sacrifices.'

141 24 **iūrāre**: i.e. the Hædui. — **nihil . . . cōnsilī**: 'no plan' (§ 76).

142 3 **īnfectā rē**: 'without having accomplished his purpose.'

142 5 **novīs**: sc. *clientēlīs*.

142 6 **eī**: subj. of *vidēbant*.

142 8 **reliquīs rēbus**: see § 115.

142 10 **quōs . . . intellegēbātur**: 'because it was perceived that these (the Remi) were equal (to the Hædui) in the favor of Cæsar.'

142 11 **grātiā**: see § 115.

142 13 **dicābant**: 'gave up'; distinguish from *dīcēbant*.

142 21 **cum**: 'whenever,' 'as often as' (§ 196).

142 23 **quibus . . . in servōs**: 'who possess over them all the same rights that masters have over slaves'; for *quibus* and *dominīs* see § 88.

142 24 **hīs . . . generibus**: i.e. the *genera duo* in l. 19.

143 1 **intersunt**: 'participate in,' 'occupy themselves with.'

143 3 **hī**: i.e. the druids.

143 4 **eōs**: i.e. the Gauls.

143 5 **quod . . . facinus**: 'any crime.'

143 7 **idem**: 'they also.'

143 8 **quī . . . prīvātus . . . populus**: *quī* is the indef. adjective, 'any.'— **eōrum . . . stetit**: 'has not abided by their decision.'

143 9 **sacrificiīs** (*eōs*) **interdīcunt**: abl. of separation (§ 101).

143 11 **hīs**: dative after *dēcēdunt* (§ 84).

143 12 **quid . . . incommodī**: see § 76. *a*.

143 16 **sī quī**: 'whoever.'

143 22 **Disciplīna**: 'system of training.'

143 25 **illō**: adv., 'there.'

144 5 CHAP. 14. **ea**: neuter plur. referring to *numerum versuum*.— **cum . . . ūtantur**: concessive (§ 192).

144 6 **ratiōnibus**: 'transactions.'

144 8 **neque . . . studēre**: 'nor do they wish that those who are learning should, through dependence on written words, give less attention to the memory.'

144 10 **praesidiō litterārum**: 'because of the reliance on written form.'

144 12 **animās . . . trānsīre ad aliōs**: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions.

144 14 **metū mortis neglēctō**: 'by disregarding the fear of death' (§ 117).

144 18 CHAP. 15. **Alterum genus**: cf. *alterum equitum*, p. 142, l. 25.— **ūsus**: a noun.

144 22 **ut . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs**: 'the more powerful . . . the greater number.'

145 5 CHAP. 16. **habent īnstitūta**: this differs from *īnstituērunt* in denoting that the custom, established in the past, still continues; cf. p. 49, l. 14.

145 6 **simulācra**: wooden figures resembling human beings.

145 11 **dēscendunt**: 'resort to' (lit. 'descend to').

145 12 CHAP. 17. **Mercurium**: 'a Mercury.' Cæsar does not mean that these gods had actually the same names as those of the Romans; he discovers rather a similarity in their attributes and functions.

145 13 **ferunt**: 'they call.'

145 21 **cum**: cf. p. 142, l. 21.

145 22 **cēperint**: subjv. of implied indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the dir.; *dēvovent* looks to the future.

145 25 **neglēctā . . . religiōne**: 'in violation of his vow' (§ 117).

145 26 **aut capta . . . aut . . . audēret**: 'has dared either to conceal booty at his house or to carry it away when consecrated' (lit. 'laid down').

146 3 CHAP. 18. **spatia . . . finiunt**: as emblematical of the darkness of the underworld, the home of Dis, or Pluto. This use is common to many primitive peoples. The English word "fortnight" is a relic of it. The custom apparently arose from keeping time by the changes of the moon.

146 5 **diēs subsequātur**: i.e. they count from the first night instead of from the first day.

146 7 **cum adolēvērunt**: cf. p. 145, l. 21; p. 142, l. 21.

146 9 **filiumque . . . dūcunt**: 'they consider it disgraceful' etc.

146 11 CHAP. 19. **Virī . . . commūnicant**: i.e. they set aside from their own resources a sum equal to the dower brought by the wife, and the total amount is maintained as a common fund.

146 14 **frūctūsque**: 'revenues,' 'profits.' — **vītā**: see § 115.

146 19 **sī . . . vēnit**: i.e. if there are suspicious circumstances. — **in servilem modum**: among the Romans slaves were tortured to extort confession of crime.

146 20 **compertum est**: i.e. that there has been foul play.

146 22 **prō cultū**: 'considering the degree of civilization.'

146 23 **cordī**: 'dear'; dative of *cor*, 'heart.'

146 24 **suprā hanc memoriam**: 'before our time.'

146 25 **iūstīs**: 'regular.'

147 1 CHAP. 20. **Quae cīvitātēs**: equivalent to *eae cīvitātēs quae*.

147 2 **habent . . . sānctum**: 'have it established by law.'

147 4 **nēve**: 'and that . . . not.' — **quō**: indef.

147 7 **quae vīsa sunt**: 'what seems best' (to conceal).

147 13 CHAP. 21. **Deōrum . . . Lūnam**: Tacitus, on the contrary, speaks of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules also. But Cæsar's knowledge of the religion of the Germans may have been incomplete, or some new deities may have been introduced in the century and a half between Cæsar and Tacitus. In other particulars there is a striking agreement in the accounts.

147 17 **ā parvīs**: 'from childhood.'

147 20 CHAP. 22. **fīnēs . . . propriōs**: 'private lands.'

147 21 **in annōs singulōs**: 'each year.'

147 22 **quantum . . . agrī**: see § 76.

147 23 **aliō**: adv.

147 24 **nē . . . commūtent**: this and the following clauses are in apposition with *causās*.

148 1 **agrī cultūrā**: 'for agriculture'; abl. of price (§ 108).

148 5 **ut . . . contineant**: 'that they may keep the common people in a contented frame of mind.'

148 9 CHAP. 23. **proprium virtūtis**: 'significant of their valor' (§ 73. *a*).

148 16 **iūs dīcunt**: 'administer justice.'

148 19 **ea**: refers to *latrōcinia*.

148 21 **quī . . . profiteantur**: 'that those who are willing to follow are to give in their names.' *Profiteantur* represents an impv. (§ 205).

148 25 **omniumque . . . dērogātur**: 'and thereafter confidence is withdrawn from them in everything.'

BOOK VII

150 3 CHAP. 1. **P. Clōdī**: Publius Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party. He was a bitter enemy of Cicero (the orator), whom he had succeeded in driving into exile. Clodius was killed in a street brawl on the twentieth of January of this year, by Milo, a ruffian of the aristocratic party. For a while all orderly government was at an end, and the Gallic leaders hoped that a new uprising might be successful.

150 7 **quod . . . vidēbātur**: the antecedent of *quod* is *retinērī . . . posse*. It naturally seemed to the Gauls impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis.

150 9 **quī . . . dolērent**: 'being indignant' (§ 177); the characteristic subjv. often approaches a relation of cause. — **ante**: adv., modifying *dolērent*.

150 11 **prīncipēs Galliae**: subj. of *queruntur*.

150 12 **locīs**: see § 120. *b*.

150 13 **Accōnis**: the leader of the recent rebellion among the Senones; Cæsar had him put to death.

150 15 **quī . . . faciant . . . vindicent**: purpose (§ 175); sc. *eōs*, the antecedent of *quī*.

150 16 **suī capitis perīculō**: 'at the risk of their lives' (§ 108).

150 18 **ut . . . interclūdātur**: depends on *ratiōnem esse habendam*.

151 5 CHAP. 2. **prīncipēs . . . factūrōs**: 'that they will be the first of all to make war.'

151 7 **obsidibus**: see § 106. — **cavēre inter sē**: 'take security from each other.' — **nē rēs efferātur**: the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

151 8 **conlātīs . . . signīs**: by placing their standards together they pledged themselves to support each other.

151 15 CHAP. 3. **negōtiandī**: their business was money lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were controlled by Roman citizens.

151 16 **cōnstiterant**: 'had settled.'

151 19 **quae**: 'any.' — **maior atque inlūstrior**: i.e. than usual.

151 20 **clāmōre**: by this means news was carried with great rapidity.

151 22 **quae . . . gesta essent**: see § 177. — **Cēnabī**: see § 120. *a*.

152 1 CHAP. 4. **tōtīus Galliae**: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

152 3 **incendit**: sc. *eōs*.

152 6 **Prohibētur**: 'an attempt is made to prevent him.'

153 1 **quodque ante tempus**: 'and before what time'; *quod* is interrogative (§ 201).

153 4 **dubitantēs**: 'those who hesitated.'

153 15 CHAP. 5. **dē cōnsiliō**: 'on the advice.'

153 17 **Quī**: meaning the *cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque.*

153 20 **quibus . . . cognōverint**: 'who they knew had this plan' (§ 88).

153 22 **ipsī**: the Bituriges.—**Id eāne dē causā quam . . . fēcerint**: 'whether they did this for the reason which.'

153 23 **quod . . . cōnstat**: 'because it is not at all clear to us.'

154 1 **nōn . . . pōnendum**: Cæsar refuses as a historian to make a positive statement of what he does not know.

154 4 CHAP. 6. **virtūte . . . Pompēī**: 'by the energy of Pompey.' Pompey had been made dictator.

154 6 **quā . . . posset**: indir. question (§ 201) depending on the idea of doubt in *difficultāte.*

154 8 **sē absente**: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army.—**dīmicātūrās** (*esse*): sc. *eās*, i. e. the legions.

154 9 **sī ipse . . . vidēbat**: the most submissive Gauls were not at such a time to be depended on, if they had the slightest chance to capture him.

154 10 **eīs**: indir. obj. of *committī*, the subj. of which is *salūtem.*

154 12 CHAP. 7. **Lucterius**: an officer of Vercingetorix; see p. 153, l. 9.

154 16 **cōnsiliīs antevertendum** (*esse*): see § 84; the subj. of *antevertendum* is *ut . . . proficīscerētur.*

154 18 **Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus**: a part of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.

154 24 CHAP. 8. **quod . . . putābat**: 'because he (Lucterius) thought.'—**perīculōsum**: sc. *esse.*

154 25 **proficīscitur**: 'he (Cæsar) sets out.'

155 1 **dūrissimō tempore annī**: Pompey was put in authority on February 25 (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the true time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cévennes about the middle of January.

155 5 **nē singulārī quidem . . . hominī**: 'not even to a solitary wayfarer,' to say nothing of an army.

155 14 **fortūnīs cōnsulat**: see § 85.

155 19 CHAP. 9. **ūsū . . . praecēperat**: 'he had suspected would come to pass.'—**per causam**: 'on the pretext'; his real motive was to join his main force.

155 21 **Brūtum**: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterwards one of Cæsar's assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti (p. 90, l. 12).

155 22 **datūrum . . . absit**: this was a mere pretense; his real design was to reach his army, but he fears to let his own men know his plans.

155 25 **recentem**: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

155 28 **ubi . . . hiemābant**: his route would lie due north up the Saône, along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was not far from three hundred miles. — **quid . . . cōnsilī**: see § 76. *a*.

155 29 **dē suā salūte**: 'affecting his own safety'; opposed to any design on his forces.

156 1 **reliquās legiōnēs**: two legions were somewhere near the Treveri, and six at Agedincum, about one hundred and forty miles apart.

156 2 **priusque . . . quam . . . posset**: see § 197. *b*.

156 6 **Haeduīsque attribuerat**: see p. 32, ll. 22–25.

156 8 Chap. 10. **difficultātem**: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, *sī . . . continēret, nē . . . dēficeret*, and *sī . . . ēdūceret, nē . . . labōrāret*.

156 10 **stīpendiāriīs**: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

156 11 **quod . . . vidēret**: 'since it (Gaul) would see that friends found no protection in him (Cæsar).'

156 13 **ab rē frūmentāriā**: 'in respect to his supply of corn.'

156 14 **tantā . . . acceptā**: 'by such reproach' (§ 117).

156 16 **praemittit . . . quī . . . doceant**: see § 175.

158 2 Chap. 63. **circummittuntur**: i.e. by the Hædui.

158 4 **suppliciō**: 'by threats of punishment'; cf. p. 153, ll. 4–8.

158 6 **ratiōnēsque . . . commūnicet**: not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.

158 12 **illī**: i.e. the Remi (see Book II, chap. 5) and the Lingones.

158 17 **requīrunt**: 'recall with regret.'

158 18 **summae speī**: 'of high ambition.'

158 21 Chap. 64 **Ipse**: i e. Vercingetorix. — **eī reī**: i.e. for bringing the hostages.

158 22 **Hūc**: at Bibracte, the capital of the Hædui.

158 23 **peditātū . . . contentum**: *contentus* takes the abl.

158 25 **perfacile . . . factū**: see § 226. *b*.

159 1 **aequō . . . animō**: 'without complaint.' — **modo . . . corrumpant**: 'only let them destroy'; for *corrumpāmus* ('let us destroy'), a hortatory subjv. (§ 172. *a*) in indir. disc.

159 2 **quā . . . iactūrā . . . videant**: 'since they see (§ 190) that by this loss.'

159 5 **hūc**: 'to these.'

159 7 **Alterā ex parte**: i.e. from the west.

159 11 **superiōre bellō**: the war eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued (p. 15, ll. 3, 4).

159 14 CHAP. 65. **cohortium**: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.

159 15 **L. Caesare**: a cousin of Julius, consul in 64 B.C.

159 16 **ad omnēs . . . oppōnēbantur**: 'were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.'

159 19 **mūrōsque**: 'strongholds'; not simply the walls of the *oppida*.

159 22 **interclūsīs . . . poterat**: from this we see how much Cæsar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingetorix employed.

159 25 **equitēsque**: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic.

159 26 **quī . . . cōnsuērant**: see p. 51, ll. 19–27.

159 27 **minus idōneīs equīs**: these are described in Book IV, chap. 2.

160 2 CHAP. 66. **equitēsque quī . . . imperātī**: see p. 158, ll. 22, 23.

160 4 **per . . . fīnēs**: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, chap. 62) toward the east, and thus leaving the hostile Hædui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see the map facing p. 150).

160 9 **Id**: i.e. the flight of the Romans.

160 11 **parum prōficī**: 'that little advantage was gained.' — **reversūrōs** (*esse*): i.e. *Rōmānōs*.

160 13 **adoriantur**: for *adoriāmur* ('let us charge on them'; § 172. *a*), in indir. disc. — **Sī peditēs . . . nōn posse**: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry. Vercingetorix knew Cæsar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reënforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (*suīs*), the march would be delayed.

160 14 **magis futūrum**: 'is more likely.'

160 16 **dignitāte** etc.: by the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage. — **spoliātum īrī**: fut. inf. pass. — **Nam dē equitibus hostium**: i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.

160 17 **quīn . . . audeat, nē ipsōs . . . dubitāre**: 'even they themselves ought not to doubt that' etc.

160 18 **Id quō . . . animō**: 'that they (i.e. the Gauls) may do so (i.e. attack the Romans) with greater courage' (§ 176).

160 19 **prō castrīs**: 'in front of the camp,' by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.

160 21 **cōnfirmārī oportēre**: 'that they ought to bind themselves.'

160 26 CHAP. 67. **ā primō agmine**: 'at the front of the (Roman) line of march.'

162 5 **aciemque convertī**: by a change of front, turning the line of march into a line of battle.

162 14 **proximīs comitiīs**: i.e. of the Hædui, for chief magistrate.

162 19 CHAP. 68. **Alesiam**: "Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Vercingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible."— Froude's "Cæsar."

162 23 **quantum**: 'as far as.'

164 2 CHAP. 69. **locō**: in apposition with *colle* (§ 54. note).

164 6 **parī altitūdinis fastīgiō**: 'of equal height.'

164 7 **quae pars . . . hunc omnem locum**: 'all that part of the hill which.' *Pars*, the antecedent of *quae*, is put in the rel. clause (§ 140); *hunc omnem locum* takes the place of *hanc omnem* (*partem*); cf. p. 68, l. 23, where the antecedent noun appears in both clauses (*Locī . . . quem locum*).

164 10 **mūnītiōnis**: Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation, that is, a series of works surrounding the town, to resist a sortie.

164 11 **tenēbat**: 'extended.'

164 13 **statiōnēs**: in the daytime a mere picket guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (*excubitōribus*) on their walls.

164 17 CHAP. 70. **intermissam collibus**: 'lying between (lit. 'broken by') hills.'

164 20 **castrīs**: 'camps,' plur.; on the high ground south of the city.

164 23 **angustiōribus**: 'too narrow,' either from unskillful construction or more easily to prevent the entrance of the enemy.

164 24 **ācrius**: 'with all the more vigor.'

165 1 **venīrī . . . existimantēs**: 'thinking that an immediate attack is to be made on them'; for *venīrī* see § 66.

165 4 **portās**: the gates of the town; these were closed to prevent those who manned the exterior defenses from rushing into the town in a panic.

165 11 CHAP. 71. **suae . . . sē**: referring to Vercingetorix (§ 133).—**neu**: 'and not,' the regular way of continuing a neg. purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of *neu*.

165 14 **Ratiōne initā**: 'having made a calculation.'

165 17 **nostrum opus** (*erat*) **intermissum**: i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.

165 21 **cōpiās omnēs**: not those holding the fortification east of the town (p. 164, ll. 7–10), but all the outlying pickets elsewhere.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Before beginning an analysis of the passages in indirect discourse study carefully §§ 202–213 in the Grammar.

NOTES ON THE PASSAGES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

In general, in analyzing constructions in indirect discourse, first be sure to get the meaning of the passage; next consider what the direct quotation would be; and then determine the reasons for the changes in mood and tense.

In the analysis of the following passages it will be well for the pupil to compare carefully the passages in indirect discourse with the corresponding passages of the direct as given in the first two books of this text.

BOOK I

199 1 Chap. 13. **Sī . . . voluisset**: in the dir. disc. of this statement (p. 20, l. 17), the subj. of the main clause is *Helvētiī* and the preds. are *ībunt* and *erunt*. These verbs become fut. inf. (§ 204), while *Helvētiī* becomes accusative, *Helvētiōs* (§ 92), with which the fut. participles in the inf. (*itūrōs, futūrōs*) agree.

The first subord. verb, *faciet*, becomes subjv. (§ 208); and the tense is past (§ 209 and note), because the main verb on which the whole passage depends is the perf. *ēgit*, a secondary tense (§§ 161, 162). On the same principle the other subord. verbs, *cōnstitueris* and *volueris*, are changed to the subjv. mood (§ 208) and the past perfect tense (§ 209 and note).

199 4 **sīn bellō . . . Helvētiōrum**: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 20), the main verb is the impv. *reminīscere*, which becomes subjv. (§ 205), and takes the past by the rules of sequence.

199 6 **Quod . . . dēspiceret**: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 22), the main verb is *nōlī*, with the infs. *tribuere* and *dēspicere*. These expressions are changed to past subjvs., *tribueret* and *dēspiceret*, with *nē* (§§ 162, 206). The subord. verbs *adortus es* and *trānsierant* are changed regularly to the past perfect subjv.; *possent*, being already subjv. (§ 194. *b*), remains in the same form.

199 9 **ipsōs . . . sē:** both these pronouns were *nōs* in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24); for their equivalence to each other see § 136. *a*. *Ipsōs* is essentially emphatic, *sē* not especially so; hence *ipsōs* is appropriate to the emphatic contrast with *suae*; moreover, *sē* referring to the Helvetii could not without confusion have been used in the same sentence with *suae* referring to Cæsar. — **sē . . . nīterentur:** in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24), the main verb is *didicimus*, which is changed regularly to the inf. *didicisse*. The subord. verbs, *contendāmus* and *nītāmur*, are already subjvs. (§ 179) and remain in the same mood, but are changed from the present to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 11 **Quā rē . . . prōderet:** in the dir. disc. (p. 21, l. 2), the main verb is *nōlī*, which with *committere* is changed to *nē committeret* (cf. note on l. 6). The subord. verb *cōnstitimus* becomes past perfect subjv. regularly; while *capiat* and *prōdat*, being already in the subjv. (§ 187. I), remain in the same mood, but are changed to the past by the rule of sequence.

199 18 CHAP. 14. **fuisse:** this represents the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in past time, and stands for *fuit* in the dir. disc. If the dir. form had been *fuisset*, as we might have expected (§ 199. III. *b*), we should have had *futūrum fuisse* in the indir. (§ 213. *a*). — **dēceptum:** sc. *esse*.

199 19 **commissum:** sc. *esse*. This depends on *intellegeret*, a verb of thinking, and is thus in indir. disc. within indir. disc.

199 24 **posse:** a main verb in a rhetorical question (§ 207. II. *a*).

200 4 **doleant:** we might have expected *dolērent*; see § 162 and § 163. *a*. The same principle applies to *velint*, which might have been *vellent*; it applies also to the remaining subord. verbs in the chapter.

200 14 CHAP. 17. Note that most of the subord. verbs in this chapter would be in the subjv. in the dir. disc. All these, of course, simply remain in the subjv., subject to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

201 12 CHAP. 18. **Sī quid accidat:** a less probable fut. condition (§ 199. II. *b*) in indir. disc. In indir. disc. the more probable and the less probable fut. condition have the same form and cannot be distinguished (§§ 210, 211).

201 23 CHAP. 20. **Quod sī . . . accidisset:** do not mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. form was *acciderit*, 'if anything shall have happened' (§ 199. II. *a*).

201 25 **futūrum (esse) utī . . . āverterentur:** see § 212.

202 6 CHAP. 31. **Nōn minus** etc.: the verb of saying is easily understood (§ 203. *a*).

203 7 **Futūrum esse . . . utī . . . pellerentur:** see § 212.

203 32 CHAP. 32. **velut sī cōram adesset:** be careful not to mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. disc. was *velut sī . . . adsit* (§ 200 and note).

204 5 CHAP. 34. **ipsī:** for *mihi* of the dir. disc. For this use of the intensive pronoun for the reflexive see note on p. 199, l. 9, and § 136. *a*.

204 6 **ventūrum fuisse:** the regular form for the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in indir. disc. (§ 213. *a*).

204 14 CHAP. 35. Throughout this chapter Cæsar is speaking *to the ambassadors*. The references to Ariovistus, therefore, are in the third person.

204 25 **Sī . . . fēcisset:** a more probable fut. condition representing the fut. perf. ind. in dir. disc.

205 9 CHAP. 36. **quī . . . faceret:** note that this would be *faciat* in the dir. disc. (§ 190).

205 26 CHAP. 40. **iūdicāret:** a deliberative question in the dir. disc. (§ 172. *d* and note); *verērentur* and *dēspērārent* following are in the same construction; for the change to indir. disc. see § 207. II. *b*.

206 12 **Sī . . . commovēret:** a non-committal condition in indir. disc. (§§ 199. I. *a*, 210).

BOOK II

210 28 CHAP. 14. **inciderint:** in dir. disc. this would be *incidērunt* in a past non-committal condition (§ 199. III. *a*).

211 8 CHAP. 15. **dēdidissent:** this would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.; so also *prōiēcissent* (§ 190).



From the painting by Sir Edward Poynter

THE IDES OF MARCH

(See page 8)

ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION — **Ā-stems**, Gen. Sing. **-ae**

SECOND DECLENSION — **O-stems**, Gen. Sing. **-ī**

THIRD DECLENSION — Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. **-is**

FOURTH DECLENSION — **U-stems**, Gen. Sing. **-ūs**

FIFTH DECLENSION — **Ē-stems**, Gen. Sing. **-ĕī**

a. The *base* of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The *stem* is formed from the base by adding to it the distinguishing vowel of the declension. Observe below the *base* and *stem* of **domina.**

2. FIRST DECLENSION. *Ā*-STEMS

domina, *lady* STEM **dominā-** BASE **domin-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	domina	**-a**	dominae	**-ae**
Gen.	dominae	**-ae**	dominārum	**-ārum**
Dat.	dominae	**-ae**	dominīs	**-īs**
Acc.	dominam	**-am**	dominās	**-ās**
Abl.	dominā	**-ā**	dominīs	**-īs**

a. **Dea** and **fīlia** have the termination **-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural.

3. SECOND DECLENSION. *O*-STEMS

a. Masculines in -us

dominus, *master* Stem **domino-** Base **domin-**

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
Nom.	dominus	-us	dominī	-ī
Gen.	dominī	-ī	dominōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	dominō	-ō	dominīs	-īs
Acc.	dominum	-um	dominōs	-ōs
Abl.	dominō	-ō	dominīs	-īs

1. Nouns in **-us** of the second declension have the termination **-e** in the vocative singular, as **domine**.

2. Proper names in **-ius**, and **filius**, end in **-ī** in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as **Vergi´lī, fīlī**.

b. Neuters in -um

pīlum, *spear* Stem **pīlo-** Base **pīl-**

	Singular	Terminations	Plural	Terminations
Nom.	pīlum	-um	pīla	-a
Gen.	pīlī	-ī	pīlōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	pīlō	-ō	pīlīs	-īs
Acc.	pīlum	-um	pīla	-a
Abl.	pīlō	-ō	pīlīs	-īs

1. Masculines in **-ius** and neuters in **-ium** end in **-ī** in the genitive singular, *not* in **-iī**, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. Masculines in -er and -ir

	puer, *boy*	**ager**, *field*	**vir**, *man*
Stems	**puero-**	**agro-**	**viro-**
Bases	**puer-**	**agr-**	**vir-**

Singular

				Terminations
Nom.	puer	ager	vir	——
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō	-ō

PLURAL

				TERMINATIONS
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī	-ī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	-ōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	-ōs
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	-īs

4. **THIRD DECLENSION**

CLASSIFICATION	I. CONSONANT STEMS	1. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only. 2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: *a.* masculines and feminines; *b.* neuters.
	II. *I*-STEMS	Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

5. I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only*

	prīnceps, m., *chief*	**mīles**, m., *soldier*	**lapis**, m., *stone*	
BASES OR STEMS	**princip-**	**mīlit-**	**lapid-**	

SINGULAR

				TERMINATIONS
Nom.	prīnceps	mīles[1]	lapis[1]	-s
Gen.	prīncipis	mīlitis	lapidis	-is
Dat.	prīncipī	mīlitī	lapidī	-ī
Acc.	prīncipem	mīlitem	lapidem	-em
Abl.	prīncipe	mīlite	lapide	-e

PLURAL

Nom.	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
Gen.	prīncipum	mīlitum	lapidum	-um
Dat.	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	-ibus
Acc.	prīncipēs	mīlitēs	lapidēs	-ēs
Abl.	prīncipibus	mīlitibus	lapidibus	-ibus

[1] In the nominative a final -t or -d of the stem is dropped before -s.

	rēx, m., *king*	iūdex, m., *judge*	virtūs, f., *virtue*	
Bases or Stems	rēg-	iūdic-	virtūt-	
		Singular		Terminations
Nom.	rēx[1]	iūdex[1]	virtūs[1]	-s
Gen.	rēgis	iūdicis	virtūtis	-is
Dat.	rēgī	iūdicī	virtūtī	-ī
Acc.	rēgem	iūdicem	virtūtem	-em
Abl.	rēge	iūdice	virtūte	-e
		Plural		
Nom.	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtūtēs	-ēs
Gen.	rēgum	iūdicum	virtūtum	-um
Dat.	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtūtibus	-ibus
Acc.	rēgēs	iūdicēs	virtūtēs	-ēs
Abl.	rēgibus	iūdicibus	virtūtibus	-ibus

2. *Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular*

a. Masculines and Feminines

	cōnsul, m., *consul*	legiō, f., *legion*	ōrdō, m., *row*	pater, m., *father*	
Bases or Stems	cōnsul-	legiōn-	ōrdin-	patr-	
			Singular		Terminations
Nom.	cōnsul	legiō[2]	ōrdō[2]	pater	——
Gen.	cōnsulis	legiōnis	ōrdinis	patris	-is
Dat.	cōnsulī	legiōnī	ōrdinī	patrī	-ī
Acc.	cōnsulem	legiōnem	ōrdinem	patrem	-em
Abl.	cōnsule	legiōne	ōrdine	patre	-e
			Plural		
Nom.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
Gen.	cōnsulum	legiōnum	ōrdinum	patrum	-um
Dat.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus
Acc.	cōnsulēs	legiōnēs	ōrdinēs	patrēs	-ēs
Abl.	cōnsulibus	legiōnibus	ōrdinibus	patribus	-ibus

[1] In the nominative a final -c or -g of the stem unites with -s and forms -x; and a final -t or -d is dropped.

[2] Stems in -in and -ōn drop -n and end in -ō in the nominative.

b. Neuters

	flūmen, n., *river*	**tempus**, n., *time*	**opus**, n., *work*	**caput**, n., *head*	
Bases or Stems	**flūmin-**	**tempor-**	**oper-**	**capit-**	
			Singular		Terminations
Nom.	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	——
Gen.	flūminis	temporis	operis	capitis	-is
Dat.	flūminī	temporī	operī	capitī	-ī
Acc.	flūmen	tempus	opus	caput	——
Abl.	flūmine	tempore	opere	capite	-e
			Plural		
Nom.	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
Gen.	flūminum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
Dat.	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
Acc.	flūmina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
Abl.	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus

Note. Most stems in -er and -or have -us in the nominative singular.

6.

II. *I*-STEMS

a. Masculines and Feminines

	caedēs, f., *slaughter*	**hostis**, m., *enemy*	**urbs**, f., *city*	**cliēns**, m., *retainer*	
Stems	**caedi-**	**hosti-**	**urbi-**	**clienti-**	
Bases	**caed-**	**host-**	**urb-**	**client-**	
			Singular		Terminations
Nom.	caedēs	hostis	urbs	cliēns	-s, -is, *or* -ēs
Gen.	caedis	hostis	urbis	clientis	-is
Dat.	caedī	hostī	urbī	clientī	-ī
Acc.	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem	-em (-im)
Abl.	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente	-e (-ī)
			Plural		
Nom.	caedēs	hostēs	urbēs	clientēs	-ēs
Gen.	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
Dat.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
Acc.	caedīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs	clientīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
Abl.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

1. **Avis, cīvis, fīnis, ignis, nāvis,** have the abl. sing. in -ī or -e.
2. **Turris** has accusative **turrim** and ablative **turrī** or **turre.**

b. Neuters

	īnsigne, n., *decoration*	**animal**, n., *animal*	**calcar**, n., *spur*	
Stems	**īnsigni-**	**animāli-**	**calcāri-**	
Bases	**īnsign-**	**animāl-**	**calcār-**	
		Singular		Terminations
Nom.	īnsigne	animal	calcar	-e *or* —
Gen.	īnsignis	animālis	calcāris	-is
Dat.	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
Acc.	īnsigne	animal	calcar	-e *or* —
Abl.	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	-ī
		Plural		
Nom.	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Gen.	īnsignium	animālium	calcārium	-ium
Dat.	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus
Acc.	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	-ia
Abl.	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	-ibus

7. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. *U*-STEMS

adventus, m., *arrival* — Stem **adventu-** Base **advent-**

cornū, n., *horn* — Stem **cornu-** Base **corn-**

			Terminations	
		Singular	Masc.	Neut.
Nom.	adventus	cornū	-us	-ū
Gen.	adventūs	cornūs	-ūs	-ūs
Dat.	adventuī (ū)	cornū	-uī (ū)	-ū
Acc.	adventum	cornū	-um	-ū
Abl.	adventū	cornū	-ū	-ū
		Plural		
Nom.	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Gen.	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	adventūs	cornua	-ūs	-ua
Abl.	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

8. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *Ē*-STEMS

	diēs, m., *day*		**rēs**, f., *thing*	
STEM **diē-**	BASE **di-**	STEM **rē-**	BASE **r-**	

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Gen.	diēī	reī	-ĕī
Dat.	diēī	reī	-ĕī
Acc.	diem	rem	-em
Abl.	diē	rē	-ē
		PLURAL	
Nom.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Gen.	diērum	rērum	-ērum
Dat.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
Acc.	diēs	rēs	-ēs
Abl.	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

9. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

	deus, m., *god*	**domus**, f., *house*	**vīs**, f., *strength*	**iter**, n., *way*
STEMS	deo-	domu-	vi- and vīri-	iter- and itiner-
BASES	de-	dom-	v- and vīr-	iter- and itiner-
		SINGULAR		
Nom.	deus	domus	vīs	iter
Gen.	deī	domūs	vīs (rare)	itineris
Dat.	deō	domuī, -ō	vī (rare)	itinerī
Acc.	deum	domum	vim	iter
Abl.	deō	domō, -ū	vī	itinere
		PLURAL		
Nom.	deī, dī	domūs	vīrēs	itinera
Gen.	deōrum, deum	domuum, -ōrum	vīrium	itinerum
Dat.	deīs, dīs	domibus	vīribus	itineribus
Acc.	deōs	domōs, -ūs	vīrīs, -ēs	itinera
Abl.	deīs, dīs	domibus	vīribus	itineribus

a. The vocative singular of **deus** is like the nominative.
b. The locative of **domus** is **domī**.

ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. *O*-STEMS AND *Ā*-STEMS

a. Adjectives in -us

bonus, *good* Stems **bono-** m. and n., **bonā-** f. Base **bon-**

Singular

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō

Plural

Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

b. Adjectives in -er

līber, *free* Stems **lībero-** m. and n., **līberā-** f. Base **līber-**

Singular

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō

Plural

Nom.	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

pulcher, *pretty* STEMS **pulchro-** m. and n., **pulchrā-** f. BASE **pulchr-**

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

11. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, *another* STEMS **alio-** m. and n., **aliā-** f. BASE **ali-**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	alīus	alīus	alīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

ūnus, *one, only* STEMS **ūno-** m. and n., **ūnā-** f. BASE **ūn-**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

a. So also **ūllus, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, alter (altera, alterum), uter (utra, utrum), neuter (neutra, neutrum).**

12. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. *I*-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

ācer, ācris, ācre, *keen, eager* Stem **ācri-** Base **ācr-**

	Singular			Plural		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

II. TWO ENDINGS

omnis, omne, *every, all* Stem **omni-** Base **omn-**

	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
Gen.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
Acc.	omnem	omne	omnīs, -ēs	omnia
Abl.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

III. ONE ENDING

pār, *equal* Stem **pari-** Base **par-**

	Singular		Plural	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	pār	pār	parēs	paria
Gen.	paris	paris	parium	parium
Dat.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
Acc.	parem	pār	parīs, -ēs	paria
Abl.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -ī in the ablative singular.

13. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

amāns, *loving* STEM **amanti-** BASE **amant-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amāns	amantīs, -ēs	amantia
Abl.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus

iēns, *going* STEM **ienti-, eunti-** BASE **ient-, eunt-**

Nom.	iēns	iēns	euntēs	euntia
Gen.	euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat.	euntī	euntī	euntibus	euntibus
Acc.	euntem	iēns	euntīs, -ēs	euntia
Abl.	eunte, -ī	eunte, -ī	euntibus	euntibus

14. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE		
MASC.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
altus (alto-)	altior	altius	altissimus	-a	-um
līber (lībero-)	līberior	līberius	līberrimus	-a	-um
pulcher (pulchro-)	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulcherrimus	-a	-um
audāx (audāci-)	audācior	audācius	audācissimus	-a	-um
brevis (brevi-)	brevior	brevius	brevissimus	-a	-um
ācer (ācri-)	ācrior	ācrius	ācerrimus	-a	-um

15. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, *higher*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

plūs, *more*

Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrīs (-ēs)	plūra
Abl.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

16. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um, *good*	melior, melius, *better*	optimus, -a, -um, *best*
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	peior, peius, *worse*	pessimus, -a, -um, *worst*
magnus, -a, -um, *great*	maior, maius, *greater*	maximus, -a, -um, *greatest*
multus, -a, -um, *much*	——, plūs, *more*	plūrimus, -a, -um, *most*
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	minor, minus, *smaller*	minimus, -a, -um, *smallest*
senex, senis, *old*	senior	maximus nātū
iuvenis, -e, *young*	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, veteris, *old*	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, *easy*	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, *difficult*	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e, *similar*	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, *dissimilar*	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, *low*	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, *slender*	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um
exterus, *outward*	exterior, *outer, exterior*	extrēmus, extimus } *outermost, last*
īnferus, *below*	īnferior, *lower*	īnfimus, īmus } *lowest*
posterus, *following*	posterior, *later*	postrēmus, postumus } *last*
superus, *above*	superior, *higher*	suprēmus, summus } *highest*
[cis, citrā, *on this side*]	citerior, *hither*	citimus, *hithermost*
[in, intrā, *in, within*]	interior, *inner*	intimus, *inmost*
[prae, prō, *before*]	prior, *former*	prīmus, *first*
[prope, *near*]	propior, *nearer*	proximus, *next*
[ultrā, *beyond*]	ulterior, *further*	ultimus, *furthest*

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
cārē (**cārus**), *dearly*	**cārius**	**cārissimē**
miserē (**miser**), *wretchedly*	**miserius**	**miserrimē**
ācriter (**ācer**), *sharply*	**ācrius**	**ācerrimē**
facile (**facilis**), *easily*	**facilius**	**facillimē**

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
diū, *long, a long time*	**diūtius**	**diūtissimē**
bene (**bonus**), *well*	**melius**, *better*	**optimē**, *best*
male (**malus**), *ill*	**peius**, *worse*	**pessimē**, *worst*
magnopere, *greatly*	**magis**, *more*	**maximē**, *most*
multum (**multus**), *much*	**plūs**, *more*	**plūrimum**, *most*
parum, *little*	**minus**, *less*	**minimē**, *least*
saepe, *often*	**saepius**	**saepissimē**

19. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting **ūnus, duo, trēs**, the hundreds above one hundred, and **mīlle** used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like **bonus, -a, -um**.

Cardinals (*How many*)		Ordinals (*In what order*)	
1, ūnus, -a, -um	*one*	prīmus, -a, -um	*first*
2, duo, duae, duo	*two*	secundus (*or* alter)	*second*
3, trēs, tria	*three,*	tertius	*third,*
4, quattuor	etc.	quārtus	etc.
5, quīnque		quīntus	
6, sex		sextus	
7, septem		septimus	
8, octō		octāvus	
9, novem		nōnus	
10, decem		decimus	
11, ūndecim		ūndecimus	
12, duodecim		duodecimus	
13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)		tertius decimus	
14, quattuordecim		quārtus decimus	

Cardinals	Ordinals
15, quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16, sēdecim	sextus decimus
17, septendecim	septimus decimus
18, duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēnsimus
19, ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēnsimus
20, vīgintī	vīcēnsimus
21, {vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī, etc.	{vīcēnsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēnsimus, etc.
30, trīgintā	trīcēnsimus
40, quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus
50, quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus
60, sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus
70, septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus
80, octōgintā	octōgēnsimus
90, nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus
100, centum	centēnsimus
101, centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus (et) prīmus, etc.
120, centum (et) vīgintī	centēnsimus vīcēnsimus
121, centum (et) vīgintī ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus (et) vīcēnsimus prīmus
200, ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus
300, trecentī	trecentēnsimus
400, quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus
500, quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus
600, sexcentī	sexcentēnsimus
700, septingentī	septingentēnsimus
800, octingentī	octingentēnsimus
900, nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus
1000, mīlle	mīllēnsimus

20. Declension of **duo**, *two*, **trēs**, *three*, and **mīlle**, *a thousand*.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.	Sing.	Plur.
N.	duo	**duae**	duo	**trēs**	**tria**	**mīlle**	**mīlia**
G.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**trium**	**trium**	**mīlle**	**mīlium**
D.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**	**mīlle**	**mīlibus**
A.	**duōs** *or* duo	**duās**	duo	**trīs** *or* **trēs**	**tria**	**mīlle**	**mīlia**
A.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**	**mīlle**	**mīlibus**

NOTE. **Mīlle** is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of **ūnus** cf. § 11.

PRONOUNS

21. PERSONAL

First Person			Second Person	
SING. **ego**, *I*; PLUR. **nōs**, *we*			SING. **tū**, *thou*, *you*; PLUR. **vōs**, *you*	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

a. The demonstrative pronoun **is, ea, id** is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

22. REFLEXIVE

	First Person		Second Person		Third Person
	SING. *me*, *myself*; PLUR. *us*, *ourselves*		SING. *thee*, *you*, *yourself*; PLUR. *you*, *yourselves*		SING. *him* (*her*, *it*) *self*; PLUR. *themselves*
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING. AND PLUR.
Gen.	meī	nostrum, -trī	tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

NOTE. Reflexive pronouns have no nominative.

23. POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

The possessive pronominal adjectives *my*, *mine*, *your*, *yours*, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

SINGULAR

1st Pers.	**meus, mea, meum**	*my*, *mine*
2d Pers.	**tuus, tua, tuum**	*your*, *yours*
3d Pers.	**suus, sua, suum**	*his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*)

PLURAL

1st Pers.	**noster, nostra, nostrum**	*our*, *ours*
2d Pers.	**vester, vestra, vestrum**	*your*, *yours*
3d Pers.	**suus, sua, suum**	*their* (*own*), *theirs*

NOTE. **Meus** has the irregular vocative singular masculine **mī**; as, **mī fīlī**, *O my son.*

24. **Suus** is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject; as, **puer patrem suum videt,** *the boy sees his* (own) *father*; **agricolae agrōs suōs amant,** *the farmers love their* (own) *fields.*

When not reflexive, *his*, *her*, and *its* are usually expressed by **eius,** the genitive singular of **is, ea, id**; and *their* by **eōrum** (masculine and neuter) and **eārum** (feminine), the genitive plural of **is, ea, id.** Thus:

> **puer patrem eius videt,** *the boy sees his* (not his own) *father*
> **agricolae agrōs eōrum amant,** *the farmers love their* (not their own) *fields*

25. INTENSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE

These pronouns belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings **-ĭus** and **-ī** in the genitive and dative singular.

ipse, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

hic, *this* (here), *he*

Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

iste, *this, that* (of yours), *he*

Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istī'us	istī'us	istī'us	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

ille, ***that*** (yonder), ***he***

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illī′us	illī′us	illī′us	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, ***this***, ***that***, ***he***

Nom.	is	ea	id	iī, eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

īdem, ***the same***

Nom.	īdem	e′adem	idem	iī′dem / eī′dem	eae′dem	e′adem
Gen.	eius′dem	eius′dem	eius′dem	eōrun′dem	eārun′dem	eōrun′dem
Dat.	eī′dem	eī′dem	eī′dem	iīs′dem / eīs′dem	iīs′dem / eīs′dem	iīs′dem / eīs′dem
Acc.	eun′dem	ean′dem	idem	eōs′dem	eās′dem	e′adem
Abl.	eō′dem	eā′dem	eō′dem	iīs′dem / eīs′dem	iīs′dem / eīs′dem	iīs′dem / eīs′dem

NOTE. In the plural the two i's in **iīdem** and **iīsdem** are pronounced as one, and the forms are sometimes written **īdem** and **īsdem**.

26. RELATIVE

quī, ***who***, ***which***, ***that***

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

27. **INTERROGATIVE**

quis, substantive, *who*, *what*

	Singular		Plural		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quis	quid	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod,** is declined like the relative.

28. **INDEFINITES**

quis and **quī,** as declined above,[1] are used also as indefinites (*some*, *any*). The other indefinites are compounds of **quis** and **quī.**

quisque, *each*

	Substantive		Adjective		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
Gen.	cuius′que	cuius′que	cuius′que	cuius′que	cuius′que
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
Acc.	quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
Abl.	quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

29. **quīdam,** *a certain one*, *a certain*

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has **quoddam** and the substantive **quiddam.**

	Singular		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam quiddam (*subst.*)
Gen.	cuius′dam	cuius′dam	cuius′dam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam quiddam (*subst.*)
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

[1] **qua** is generally used instead of **quae** in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

PLURAL

Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrun′dam	quārun′dam	quōrun′dam
Dat.	quibus′dam	quibus′dam	quibus′dam
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibus′dam	quibus′dam	quibus′dam

30. **quisquam**, substantive, *any one* (at all)

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Gen.	cuius′quam	cuius′quam
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam

31. **aliquis**, substantive, *some one.* **aliquī**, adjective, *some*

SINGULAR

	SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
Gen.	alicu′ius	alicu′ius	alicu′ius	alicu′ius	alicu′ius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquō′rum	aliquā′rum	aliquō′rum
Dat.	ali′quibus	ali′quibus	ali′quibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	ali′quibus	ali′quibus	ali′quibus

a. **quis** (**quī**), *any one*, *any*, is the least definite of these. **aliquis** (**aliquī**), *some one*, *some*, is more definite than **quis**. **quisquam**, *any one* (at all), and its adjective **ūllus**, *any*, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.

REGULAR VERBS

32. FIRST CONJUGATION. Ā-VERBS. *AMŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

PRES. STEM **amā-** PERF. STEM **amāv-** PART. STEM **amāt-**

ACTIVE — PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I love, am loving, do love, etc.		*I am loved,* etc.	
amō	**amāmus**	**amor**	**amāmur**
amās	**amātis**	**amāris, -re**	**amāminī**
amat	**amant**	**amātur**	**amantur**

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.		*I was loved,* etc.	
amābam	**amābāmus**	**amābar**	**amābāmur**
amābās	**amābātis**	**amābāris, -re**	**amābāminī**
amābat	**amābant**	**amābātur**	**amābantur**

FUTURE

I shall love, etc.		*I shall be loved,* etc.	
amābō	**amābimus**	**amābor**	**amābimur**
amābis	**amābitis**	**amāberis, -re**	**amābiminī**
amābit	**amābunt**	**amābitur**	**amābuntur**

PERFECT

I have loved, loved, did love, etc.		*I have been (was) loved,* etc.	
amāvī	**amāvimus**	**amātus, -a, -um** { **sum**	**amātī, -ae, -a** { **sumus**
amāvistī	**amāvistis**	**es**	**estis**
amāvit	**amāvērunt, -re**	**est**	**sunt**

PAST PERFECT

I had loved, etc.		*I had been loved,* etc.	
amāveram	**amāverāmus**	**amātus, -a, -um** { **eram**	**amātī, -ae, -a** { **erāmus**
amāverās	**amāverātis**	**erās**	**erātis**
amāverat	**amāverant**	**erat**	**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved, etc.		*I shall have been loved,* etc.	
amāverō	**amāverimus**	**amātus, -a, -um** { **erō**	**amātī, -ae, -a** { **erimus**
amāveris	**amāveritis**	**eris**	**eritis**
amāverit	**amāverint**	**erit**	**erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem	**amēmus**	**amer**	**amēmur**
amēs	**amētis**	**amēris, -re**	**amēminī**
amet	**ament**	**amētur**	**amentur**

PAST

amārem	**amārēmus**	**amārer**	**amārēmur**
amārēs	**amārētis**	**amārēris, -re**	**amārēminī**
amāret	**amārent**	**amārētur**	**amārentur**

PERFECT

amāverim	**amāverīmus**	**amātus, -a, -um** sim	**amātī, -ae, -a** sīmus
amāverīs	**amāverītis**	sīs	sītis
amāverit	**amāverint**	sit	sint

PAST PERFECT

amāvissem	**amāvissēmus**	**amātus, -a, -um** essem	**amātī, -ae, -a** essēmus
amāvissēs	**amāvissētis**	essēs	essētis
amāvisset	**amāvissent**	esset	essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, *love thou*	**amāre**, *be thou loved*
amāte, *love ye*	**amāminī**, *be ye loved*

FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*	**amātor**, *thou shalt be loved*
amātō, *he shall love*	**amātor**, *he shall be loved*
amātōte, *you shall love*	———
amantō, *they shall love*	**amantor**, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**amāre**, *to love*	**amārī**, *to be loved*
Perf.	**amāvisse**, *to have loved*	**amātus, -a, -um esse**, *to have been loved*
Fut.	**amātūrus, -a, -um esse**, *to be about to love*	**amātum īrī**, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**amāns, -antis**, *loving*	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	**amātūrus, -a, -um**, *about to love*	*Gerundive*[1]	**amandus, -a, -um**, *to be loved*
Past	———	*Past*	**amātus, -a, -um**, *having been loved, loved*

GERUND

Nom.	———
Gen.	**amandī**, *of loving*
Dat.	**amandō**, *for loving*
Acc.	**amandum**, *loving*
Abl.	**amandō**, *by loving*

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc.	**amātum**, *to love*
Abl.	**amātū**, *to love, in the loving*

[1] Sometimes called the future passive participle.

33. SECOND CONJUGATION. *Ē*-VERBS. *MONEŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus**

PRES. STEM **monē-** PERF. STEM **monu-** PART. STEM **monit-**

ACTIVE — PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I advise, etc.		*I am advised*, etc.	
moneō	monēmus	moneor	monēmur
monēs	monētis	monēris, -re	monēminī
monet	monent	monētur	monentur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I was advising, etc.		*I was advised*, etc.	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris, -re	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

FUTURE

I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised*, etc.	
monēbō	monēbimus	monēbor	monēbimur
monēbis	monēbitis	monēberis, -re	monēbimini
monēbit	monēbunt	monēbitur	monēbuntur

PERFECT

I have advised, *I advised*, etc.		*I have been (was) advised*, etc.			
monuī	monuimus	monitus, -a, -um	sum	monitī, -ae, -a	sumus
monuistī	monuistis		es		estis
monuit	monuērunt, -re		est		sunt

PAST PERFECT

I had advised, etc.		*I had been advised*, etc.			
monueram	monuerāmus	monitus, -a, -um	eram	monitī, -ae, -a	erāmus
monuerās	monuerātis		erās		erātis
monuerat	monuerant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have advised, etc.		*I shall have been advised*, etc.			
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus, -a, -um	erō	monitī, -ae, -a	erimus
monueris	monueritis		eris		eritis
monuerit	monuerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

moneam	**moneāmus**	**monear**	**moneāmur**
moneās	**moneātis**	**moneāris, -re**	**moneāminī**
moneat	**moneant**	**moneātur**	**moneantur**

PAST

monērem	**monērēmus**	**monērer**	**monērēmur**
monērēs	**monērētis**	**monērēris, -re**	**monērēminī**
monēret	**monērent**	**monērētur**	**monērentur**

PERFECT

monuerim	**monuerĭmus**	**monitus, -a, -um** { **sim**	**monitī, -ae, -a** { **sīmus**
monuerĭs	**monuerĭtis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
monuerit	**monuerint**	**sit**	**sint**

PAST PERFECT

monuissem	**monuissēmus**	**monitus, -a, -um** { **essem**	**monitī, -ae, -a** { **essēmus**
monuissēs	**monuissētis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
monuisset	**monuissent**	**esset**	**essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē, *advise thou*	**monēre**, *be thou advised*
monēte, *advise ye*	**monēminī**, *be ye advised*

FUTURE

monētō, *thou shalt advise*	**monētor**, *thou shalt be advised*
monētō, *he shall advise*	**monētor**, *he shall be advised*
monētōte, *you shall advise*	———
monentō, *they shall advise*	**monentor**, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**monēre**, *to advise*	**monērī**, *to be advised*
Perf.	**monuisse**, *to have advised*	**monitus, -a, -um esse**, *to have been advised*
Fut.	**monitūrus, -a, -um esse**, *to be about to advise*	**monitum īrī**, *to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**monēns, -entis**, *advising*	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	**monitūrus, -a, -um**, *about to advise*	*Ger.*	**monendus, -a, -um**, *to be advised*
Past	———	*Past*	**monitus, -a, -um**, *having been advised, advised*

GERUND

Nom.	———
Gen.	**monendī**, *of advising*
Dat.	**monendō**, *for advising*
Acc.	**monendum**, *advising*
Abl.	**monendō**, *by advising*

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc.	**monitum**, *to advise*
Abl.	**monitū**, *to advise, in the advising*

34. THIRD CONJUGATION. Ĕ-VERBS. *REGŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

PRES. STEM **rege-** PERF. STEM **rēx-** PART. STEM **rēct-**

ACTIVE — PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I rule, etc.		*I am ruled*, etc.	
regō	regimus	re´gor	re´gimur
regis	regitis	re´geris, -re	regi´minī
regit	regunt	re´gitur	regun´tur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled*, etc.	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regē´bar	regēbā´mur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbā´ris, -re	regēbā´minī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbā´tur	regēban´tur

FUTURE

I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled*, etc.	
regam	regēmus	re´gar	regē´mur
regēs	regētis	regē´ris, -re	regē´minī
reget	regent	regē´tur	regen´tur

PERFECT

I have ruled, etc.		*I have been ruled*, etc.	
rēxī	rēximus	rēctus, -a, -um { sum	rēctī, -ae, -a { sumus
rēxistī	rēxistis	es	estis
rēxit	rēxērunt, -re	est	sunt

PAST PERFECT

I had ruled, etc.		*I had been ruled*, etc.	
rēxeram	rēxerāmus	rēctus, -a, -um { eram	rēctī, -ae, -a { erāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis	erās	erātis
rēxerat	rēxerant	erat	erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled, etc.		*I shall have been ruled*, etc.	
rēxerō	rēxerimus	rēctus, -a, -um { erō	rēctī, -ae, -a { erimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis	eris	eritis
rēxerit	rēxerint	erit	erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam	**regāmus**	**regar**	**regāmur**
regās	**regātis**	**regāris, -re**	**regāminī**
regat	**regant**	**regātur**	**regantur**

PAST

regerem	**regerēmus**	**regerer**	**regerēmur**
regerēs	**regerētis**	**regerēris, -re**	**regerēminī**
regeret	**regerent**	**regerētur**	**regerentur**

PERFECT

rēxerim	**rēxerimus**	**rēctus, -a, -um** { **sim**	**rēctī, -ae, -a** { **sīmus**
rēxerīs	**rēxeritis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
rēxerit	**rēxerint**	**sit**	**sint**

PAST PERFECT

rēxissem	**rēxissēmus**	**rēctus, -a, -um** { **essem**	**rēctī, -ae, -a** { **essēmus**
rēxissēs	**rēxissētis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
rēxisset	**rēxissent**	**esset**	**essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

rege, *rule thou*[1]	**regere**, *be thou ruled*
regite, *rule ye*	**regiminī**, *be ye ruled*

FUTURE

regitō, *thou shalt rule*	**regitor**, *thou shalt be ruled*
regitō, *he shall rule*	**regitor**, *he shall be ruled*
regitōte, *ye shall rule*	———
reguntō, *they shall rule*	**reguntor**, *they shall be ruled*

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**regere**, *to rule*	**regī**, *to be ruled*
Perf.	**rēxisse**, *to have ruled*	**rēctus, -a, -um esse**, *to have been ruled*
Fut.	**rēctūrus, -a, -um esse**, *to be about to rule*	**rēctum īrī**, *to be about to be ruled*

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**regēns, -entis**, *ruling*	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	**rēctūrus, -a, -um**, *about to rule*	*Ger.*	**regendus, -a, -um**, *to be ruled*
Past	———	*Past*	**rēctus, -a, -um**, *having been ruled, ruled*

GERUND

Nom.	———
Gen.	**regendī**, *of ruling*
Dat.	**regendō**, *for ruling*
Acc.	**regendum**, *ruling*
Abl.	**regendō**, *by ruling*

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc.	**rēctum**, *to rule*
Abl.	**rēctū**, *to rule, in the ruling*

[1] The corresponding imperative forms for the four verbs **dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** and **ferō** are **dīc, dūc, fac,** and **fer.**

35. FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS. *AUDIŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

PRES. STEM **audī-** PERF. STEM **audīv-** PART. STEM **audīt-**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	**audīmus**	**au′dior**	**audī′mur**
audīs	**audītis**	**audī′ris, -re**	**audī′minī**
audit	**audiunt**	**audī′tur**	**audiun′tur**

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam	**audiēbāmus**	**audiē′bar**	**audiēbā′mur**
audiēbās	**audiēbātis**	**audiēbā′ris, -re**	**audiēbā′minī**
audiēbat	**audiēbant**	**audiēbā′tur**	**audiēban′tur**

FUTURE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I shall hear, etc.		*I shall be heard*, etc.	
audiam	**audiēmus**	**au′diar**	**audiē′mur**
audiēs	**audiētis**	**audiē′ris, -re**	**audiē′minī**
audiet	**audient**	**audiē′tur**	**audien′tur**

PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I have heard, etc.		*I have been heard*, etc.	
audīvī	**audīvimus**	**audītus, -a, -um** { **sum**	**audītī, -ae, -a** { **sumus**
audīvistī	**audīvistis**	**es**	**estis**
audīvit	**audīvērunt, -re**	**est**	**sunt**

PAST PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.	
audīveram	**audīverāmus**	**audītus, -a, -um** { **eram**	**audītī, -ae, -a** { **erāmus**
audīverās	**audīverātis**	**erās**	**erātis**
audīverat	**audīverant**	**erat**	**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.	
audīverō	**audīverimus**	**audītus, -a, -um** { **erō**	**audītī, -ae, -a** { **erimus**
audīveris	**audīveritis**	**eris**	**eritis**
audīverit	**audīverint**	**erit**	**erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	**audiāmus**	**audiar**	**audiāmur**
audiās	**audiātis**	**audiāris, -re**	**audiāminī**
audiat	**audiant**	**audiātur**	**audiantur**

PAST

audīrem	**audīrēmus**	**audīrer**	**audīrēmur**
audīrēs	**audīrētis**	**audīrēris, -re**	**audīrēminī**
audīret	**audīrent**	**audīrētur**	**audīrentur**

PERFECT

audīverim	**audīverimus**	**audītus, -a, -um** { **sim**	**audītī, -ae, -a** { **sīmus**
audīveris	**audīveritis**	**sīs**	**sītis**
audīverit	**audīverint**	**sit**	**sint**

PAST PERFECT

audīvissem	**audīvissēmus**	**audītus, -a, -um** { **essem**	**audītī, -ae, -a** { **essēmus**
audīvissēs	**audīvissētis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
audīvisset	**audīvissent**	**esset**	**essent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, ***hear thou***	audīre, ***be thou heard***
audīte, ***hear ye***	audīminī, ***be ye heard***

FUTURE

audītō, ***thou shalt hear***	**audītor**, ***thou shalt be heard***
audītō, ***he shall hear***	**audītor**, ***he shall be heard***
audītōte, ***ye shall hear***	———
audiuntō, ***they shall hear***	**audiuntor**, ***they shall be heard***

INFINITIVE

Pres.	**audīre**, ***to hear***	**audīrī**, ***to be heard***
Perf.	**audīvisse**, ***to have heard***	**audītus, -a, -um esse**, ***to have been heard***
Fut.	**audītūrus, -a, -um esse**, ***to be about to hear***	**audītum īrī**, ***to be about to be heard***

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	**audiēns, -entis**, ***hearing***	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	**audītūrus, -a, -um**, ***about to hear***	*Ger.*	**audiendus, -a, -um**, ***to be heard***
Past	———	*Past*	**audītus, -a, -um**, ***having been heard, heard***

GERUND

Nom.	———
Gen.	**audiendī**, ***of hearing***
Dat.	**audiendō**, ***for hearing***
Acc.	**audiendum**, ***hearing***
Abl.	**audiendō**, ***by hearing***

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc.	**audītum**, ***to hear***
Abl.	**audītū**, ***to hear, in the hearing***

36. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN *-IŌ*. *CAPIŌ*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

PRES. STEM **cape-** PERF. STEM **cēp-** PART. STEM **capt-**

ACTIVE — PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

capiō	capimus	ca'pior	ca'pimur
capis	capitis	ca'peris, -re	capi'minī
capit	capiunt	ca'pitur	capiun'tur

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

capiēbam	capiēbāmus	capiē'bar	capiēbā'mur
capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbā'ris, -re	capiēbā'minī
capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbā'tur	capiēban'tur

FUTURE

capiam	capiēmus	ca'piar	capiē'mur
capiēs	capiētis	capiē'ris, -re	capiē'minī
capiet	capient	capiē'tur	capien'tur

PERFECT

cēpī, cēpistī, cēpit, etc. — captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.

PAST PERFECT

cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc. — captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc. — captus, -a, -um erō, eris, erit, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam, capiās, capiat, etc. — capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.

PAST

caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc. — caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.

PERFECT

cēperim, cēperis, cēperit, etc. — captus, -a, -um sim, sīs, sit, etc.

PAST PERFECT

cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc. — captus, -a, -um essem, essēs, esset, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. cape — capite — capere — capiminī

FUTURE

2d Pers.	capitō	capitōte	capitor	———
3d Pers.	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	capere	capī
Perf.	cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	capiēns, -ientis	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	capiendus, -a, -um
Past	———	*Past*	captus, -a, -um

GERUND		SUPINE (Active Voice)	
Gen.	capiendī	*Acc.*	captum
	etc.	*Abl.*	captū

37. DEPONENT VERBS

PRINCIPAL PARTS
- I. **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum,** *urge*
- II. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** *fear*
- III. **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,** *follow*
- IV. **partior, partīrī, partītus sum,** *share, divide*

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -iō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capiō.

INDICATIVE

Pres.	hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
	hortāris, -re	verēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	partītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	partīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
P.D.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
Fut.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	partiar
Perf.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
P.P.	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
F.P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	horter	verear	sequar	partiar
Past	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	partīrer
Perf.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	partītus sim
P.P.	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	partītus essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	hortāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
Fut.	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
Perf.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
Fut.	***hortātūrus esse**	***veritūrus esse**	***secūtūrus esse**	***partītūrus esse**

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	***hortāns**	***verēns**	***sequēns**	***partiēns**
Fut.	***hortātūrus**	***veritūrus**	***secūtūrus**	***partītūrus**
Past	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
Ger.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

GERUND

***hortandī**, etc.	***verendī**, etc.	***sequendī**, etc.	***partiendī**, etc.

SUPINE

***hortātum, -tū**	***veritum, -tū**	***secūtum, -tū**	***partītum, -tū**

38. I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation:

INDICATIVE

Pres.	amātūrus sum, *I am about to love*
Past Descr.	amātūrus eram, *I was about to love*
Fut.	amātūrus erō, *I shall be about to love*
Perf.	amātūrus fuī, *I have been, was, about to love*
Past Perf.	amātūrus fueram, *I had been about to love*
Fut. Perf.	amātūrus fuerō, *I shall have been about to love*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	amātūrus sim
Past	amātūrus essem
Perf.	amātūrus fuerim
Past Perf.	amātūrus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amātūrus esse, *to be about to love*
Perf.	amātūrus fuisse, *to have been about to love*

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

INDICATIVE

Pres.	amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved*
Past Descr.	amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
Fut.	amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*
Perf.	amandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*
Past Perf.	amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved*
Fut. Perf.	amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	amandus sim
Past	amandus essem
Perf.	amandus fuerim
Past Perf.	amandus fuissem

INFINITIVE

Pres.	amandus esse, *to have to be loved*
Perf.	amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

IRREGULAR VERBS

39. **sum**, *am*, *be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

PRES. STEM **es-** PERF. STEM **fu-** PART. STEM **fut-**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sum, *I am*	**sumus**, *we are*
es, *thou art*	estis, *you are*
est, *he (she, it) is*	sunt, *they are*

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

eram, *I was*	**erāmus**, *we were*
erās, *thou wast*	**erātis**, *you were*
erat, *he was*	**erant**, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*	**erimus**, *we shall be*
eris, *thou wilt be*	**eritis**, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*	**erunt**, *they will be*

PERFECT

fuī, *I have been, was*	**fuimus**, *we have been, were*
fuistī, *thou hast been, wast*	**fuistis**, *you have been, were*
fuit, *he has been, was*	**fuērunt**, **fuēre**, } *they have been, were*

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been*
fuerās, *thou hadst been*	**fuerātis**, *you had been*
fuerat, *he had been*	**fuerant**, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been*	**fuerimus**, *we shall have been*
fueris, *thou wilt have been*	**fueritis**, *you will have been*
fuerit, *he will have been*	**fuerint**, *they will have been*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		PAST	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	**sīmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
sit	**sint**	**esset**	**essent**
PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
fuerim	**fuerĭmus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fuerĭs	**fuerĭtis**	**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2d Pers. Sing. **es**, *be thou*
2d Pers. Plur. **este**, *be ye*

FUTURE

2d Pers. Sing. **estō**, *thou shalt be*
3d Pers. Sing. **estō**, *he shall be*
2d Pers. Plur. **estōte**, *ye shall be*
3d Pers. Plur. **suntō**, *they shall be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. **esse**, *to be*
Perf. **fuisse**, *to have been*
Fut. **futūrus, -a, -um esse** or **fore**, *to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE

futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

40. **possum**, *be able, can*

Principal Parts **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	Indicative Singular	Indicative Plural	Subjunctive Singular	Subjunctive Plural
Pres.	possum	pos′sumus	possim	possī′mus
	potes	potes′tis	possīs	possī′tis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
Past	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possē′mus
Fut.	poterō	poterimus	——	——
Perf.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerǐmus
P.P.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F.P.	potuerō	potuerimus	——	——

Infinitive

Pres. posse *Perf.* potuisse

Participle

Pres. potēns, *gen.* -entis, (adjective) *powerful*

41. **prōsum**, *benefit*

Principal Parts **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus**

Pres. Stem **prōdes-** Perf. Stem **prōfu-** Part. Stem **prōfut-**

	Indicative Singular	Indicative Plural	Subjunctive Singular	Subjunctive Plural
Pres.	prōsum	prō′sumus	prōsim	prōsī′mus
	prōdes	prōdes′tis	prōsīs	prōsī′tis
	prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint
Past	prōderam	prōderāmus	prōdessem	prodessē′mus
Fut.	prōderō	prōderimus	——	——
Perf.	prōfuī	prōfuimus	prōfuerim	prōfuerǐmus
P.P.	prōfueram	prōfuerāmus	prōfuissem	prōfuissēmus
F.P.	prōfuerō	prōfuerimus	——	——

Imperative

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste *Fut. 2d Pers.* prōdestō, prōdestōte

Infinitive

Pres. prōdesse *Perf.* prōfuisse *Fut.* prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse

Future Participle prōfutūrus, -a, -um

42. PRINCIPAL PARTS
- **volō, velle, voluī,** ——, *be willing, will, wish*
- **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,** ——, *be unwilling, will not*
- **mālō, mālle, māluī,** ——, *be more willing, prefer*

Nōlō and **mālō** are compounds of **volō**. **Nōlō** is for **ne** (*not*) + **volō**, and **mālō** for **mā** (from **magis**, *more*) + **volō**. The second person **vīs** is from a different root.

INDICATIVE

		SINGULAR	
Pres.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	volt	nōn volt	māvolt
		PLURAL	
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvul'tis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
P.D.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Fut.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
Perf.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
P.P.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

		SINGULAR	
Pres.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
		PLURAL	
	velī'mus	nōlī'mus	mālī'mus
	velī'tis	nōlī'tis	mālī'tis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
Past	vellem	nōllem	māllem
Perf.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
P.P.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	———	nōlī	———
		nōlīte	
Fut.	———	nōlītō, etc.	———

INFINITIVE

Pres.	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perf.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	volēns, -entis	nōlēns, -entis	———

43. ferō, *bear, carry, endure*

PRINCIPAL PARTS **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

PRES. STEM **fer-** PERF. STEM **tul-** PART. STEM **lāt-**

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
P.D.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
Fut.	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
Perf.	tulī		lātus, -a, -um sum	
P.P.	tuleram		lātus, -a, -um eram	
F. P.	tulerō		lātus, -a, -um erō	

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	feram, ferās, etc.	ferar, ferāris, etc.
Past	ferrem	ferrer
Perf.	tulerim	lātus, -a, -um sim
P.P.	tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Fut. 2d Pers.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
3d Pers.	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	ferre	ferrī
Perf.	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse
Fut.	lātūrus, -a, -um esse	——

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	ferēns, -entis	*Pres.*	———
Fut.	lātūrus, -a, -um	*Ger.*	ferendus, -a, -um
Past	———	*Past*	lātus, -a, -um

Gerund				Supine (Active Voice)	
Gen.	ferendī	*Acc.*	ferendum	*Acc.*	lātum
Dat.	ferendō	*Abl.*	ferendō	*Abl.*	lātū

44. **eō**, *go*

Principal Parts **eō, īre, iī (īvī), itum** (n. perf. part.)
Pres. Stem **ī-** Perf. stem **ī-** or **īv-** Part. Stem **it-**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	Imperative	Sing.	Plur.
Pres.	eō	īmus	eam	*2d Pers.*	ī	īte
	īs	ītis				
	it	eunt				
Past	ībam		īrem			
Fut.	ībō		——	*2d Pers.*	ītō	ītōte
				3d Pers.	ītō	euntō
Perf.	iī (īvī)		ierim (īverim)			
P.P.	ieram (īveram)		īssem (īvissem)			
F.P.	ierō (īverō)					

Infinitive		Participles	
Pres.	īre	*Pres.*	iēns, *gen.* euntis
Perf.	īsse (īvisse)	*Fut.*	itūrus, -a, -um
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um esse	*Ger.*	eundum

Gerund				Supine	
Gen.	eundī	*Acc.*	eundum	*Acc.*	itum
Dat.	eundō	*Abl.*	eundō	*Abl.*	itū

a. The verb **eō** is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as **ītur, itum est,** *etc.*

b. In the perfect system the forms with **v** are very rare.

45. **fīō**, passive of **faciō**; *be made, become, happen*

Principal Parts **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	Imperative		
Pres.	fīō	——	fīam	*2d Pers.*	fī	fīte
	fīs	——				
	fit	fīunt				
Past	fīēbam		fierem			
Fut.	fīam, fīēs, *etc.*		——			

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Perf.	factus, -a, -um	sum	factus, -a, -um	sim
P.P.	factus, -a, -um	eram	factus, -a, -um	essem
F.P.	factus, -a, -um	erō		

	Infinitive			Participles
Pres.	fierī		*Past*	factus, -a, -um
Perf.	factus, -a, -um	esse	*Ger.*	faciendus, -a, -um
Fut.	factum īrī			

46. I. DEFECTIVE VERBS

Indicative

Perf.	coepī, *began*	meminī, *remember*	ōdī, *hate*
P.P.	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
F.P.	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

Subjunctive

Perf.	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
P.P.	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

Imperative

singular	plural
mementō	mementōte

Infinitive

Perf.	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
Fut.	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

Participle

Past	coeptus		ōsus
Fut.	coeptūrus		ōsūrus

II. IMPERSONAL VERBS

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Pres.	licet, *is permitted*	liceat
Past	licēbat	licēret
Fut.	licēbit	
Perf.	licuit (licitum est)	licuerit (licitum sit)
P.P.	licuerat (licitum erat)	licuisset (licitum esset)
F.P.	licuerit (licitum erit)	

Infinitive

licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse

B. SYNTAX

SENTENCES

47. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought.

Kinds of Sentences. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, or imperative:

a. A declarative sentence is one that makes a statement:

Caesar venit, *Cæsar is coming*

b. An interrogative sentence is one that asks a question:

venitne Caesar? *is Cæsar coming?*

c. An imperative sentence is one that expresses a command:

***venī*, Caesar,** *come, Cæsar*

48. Parts of Sentences. Every sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate:

I. *Subject.* The subject of a sentence is a noun, or some expression used as a noun, about which something is said:

***Caesar* respondit,** *Cæsar made answer*; **responditne *Caesar*?** *did Cæsar make answer?*

In both of these sentences **Caesar** is the subject.

a. In Latin the subject is often not expressed by a separate word, but is contained in the termination of the verb:

scrībit, *he writes*; **scrībunt,** *they write*; **scrībimus,** *we write*

b. The subject may be some word or group of words used as a noun:

***haec perficere* est facile,** *to accomplish these things is easy*; **accidit *ut plēna lūna esset*,** *it happened that the moon was full*

II. *Predicate.* The predicate is that part of the sentence which says something about the subject:

lūna ***est plēna,*** ***the moon is full***

a. The predicate may be a verb, or it may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective combined with some form of the verb **sum** or its equivalent, and describing or defining the subject:

Pīsō ***erat cōnsul,*** *Piso was consul*; **tū** ***es ille,*** *you are he*; **oppidum** ***erat magnum,*** ***the town was large***

b. The verb **sum,** combined with a noun, pronoun, or adjective as above, is called the *copula,* that is, the connective. When an intransitive or passive verb is used in the same way, it is called a copulative verb:

Dīviciācus ***appellātur*** **amīcus,** *Diviciacus is called friend*

49. Transitive Verb. A transitive verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātōrem ***videō,*** *I see the general*

50. Intransitive Verb. An intransitive verb does not admit of a direct object to complete its sense:

imperātor ***venit,*** ***the general is coming***

51. Phrase. A phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A phrase is often used as an adjective or an adverb:

vir erat ***magnae virtūtis,*** ***he was a man of great courage***; ***omnibus precibus*** **ōrābant,** ***they implored with all*** (manner of) ***entreaties***

In these sentences **magnae virtūtis** and **omnibus precibus** are respectively adjective and adverbial phrases.

52. Direct Object. The person or thing directly affected by the action of a verb is called the direct object:

Caesar ***eum*** **incūsat,** *Cæsar upbraids him*
Helvētiī ***aciem*** **īnstrūxērunt,** ***the Helvetii drew up a line of battle***

53. Indirect Object. The person toward whom or the thing toward which an action or feeling is directed, is called the indirect object:

agrōs Haeduīs dat, *he gives fields to the Hædui*

54. Appositive. A noun or pronoun used to describe or explain another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, without the use of a verb, is called an appositive:

Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, vēnit, *Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, came*

NOTE. A noun or pronoun used as above is said to be in apposition with the word it describes or explains, and agrees with it in case.

55. Forms of Sentences. In their form sentences are simple, compound, or complex:

a. A *simple* sentence is a sentence containing but one subject and one predicate:

Caesar venit, *Cæsar comes*

b. A *compound* sentence consists of two or more independent sentences:

Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgērunt, *Cæsar came, and the enemy fled*

c. A *complex* sentence consists of at least one independent sentence and one or more dependent sentences:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgērunt, *when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled*

56. Clause. A clause is a group of words that forms part of a sentence and that contains a subject and a predicate.

In the last two Latin sentences above, each group of words, **Caesar vēnit, hostēs fūgērunt, cum Caesar vēnisset,** is a clause.

a. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be subordinate, and the clause modified is called the main clause:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgērunt, *when Cæsar had come, the enemy fled*; here **cum Caesar vēnisset** is the subordinate clause and **hostēs fūgērunt** is the main clause

b. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be coördinate. They are usually connected by a coördinating conjunction (§ 151. *a*):

> **Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgērunt,** *Cæsar came and the enemy fled*; here both clauses are coördinate

57. Modifiers. A subject or a predicate may be modified by a word, a phrase, or a clause:

> **mīles** ***fortis ācriter*** **pugnat,** *the brave soldier fights fiercely*; the words **fortis** and **ācriter** modify the subject and predicate respectively
>
> **imperātor** ***bonō animō in urbem*** **vēnit,** *a general of great courage has come into the city*; the phrases **bonō animō** and **in urbem** modify the subject and predicate respectively
>
> **imperātor** ***quem nōmināvī*** **pontem aedificāvit** ***ut flūmen trānsīret,*** *the general whom I have named built a bridge that he might cross the river*; the clauses **quem nōmināvī** and **ut flūmen trānsīret** modify the subject and predicate respectively

AGREEMENT

NOUNS

58. Predicate or Appositive. A noun used as predicate or appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains or describes:

> **Ariovistus erat** ***rēx,*** *Ariovistus was king*
>
> **Labiēnum,** ***lēgātum,*** **mīsit,** *he sent Labienus, the lieutenant*

ADJECTIVES

59. General Rule. Adjectives and words used as adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

> **iter est** ***longum,*** *the journey is long*
>
> **mōns** ***altissimus*** **impendēbat,** *a very high mountain overhung*
>
> **Gallia est** ***dīvīsa,*** *Gaul is divided*

60. Predicate Adjective. When an adjective forms a part of the predicate with the verb **sum** or its equivalent (§ 48. II. *a*), it is called a *predicate* adjective:

> **Suēbōrum gēns est longē *maxima* et *bellicōsissima* Germānōrum omnium,** *the tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans*

61. Attributive Adjective. When an adjective immediately describes a noun without the use of a copulative verb, it is called an *attributive* adjective:

> ***prīma* legiō in castra vēnit,** *the first legion came into camp*

Agreement with Two or More Nouns

62. Number. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns connected by **et, -que,** or **atque (ac),** a *predicate* adjective is in the plural number, and an *attributive* adjective agrees in number with the nearest noun:

> **dominus et servus sunt *dissimilēs*,** *master and slave are unlike*
> ***bonus* rēx et rēgīna,** *the good king and queen*

63. Gender. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, a *predicate* adjective is usually masculine if the nouns denote living beings, neuter if they denote things without life; and an *attributive* adjective agrees with the nearest noun:

> **pater et māter sunt *cārī*,** *father and mother are dear*
> **gladius et scūtum sunt *magna*,** *the sword and shield are large*
> ***cārus* pater et māter** } *the dear father and mother*
> **pater et māter *cāra*** }

NOTE. If the nouns denote both persons and things, a predicate adjective is usually neuter plural, but may follow the gender of the persons and be either masculine or feminine:

> **rēx et lībera cīvitās sunt *inimīca*,** *a king and a free state are incompatible*
> **rēx et classis sunt *tūtī*,** *the king and the fleet are safe*

PRONOUNS

64. Pronouns used as nouns (substantively) have the construction of nouns; used as adjectives they agree with their nouns in the same way as adjectives (§ 59):

> ***hī*** **sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmī,** *these are the first beyond the province*
> ***hoc*** **proelium factum est,** *this battle was fought*

a. Note, however, that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it is used:

> **lēgātī** ***quī*** **convocātī erant convēnērunt,** *the envoys who had been summoned assembled*
> **lēgātī** ***quōs*** **convocāverat convēnērunt,** *the envoys whom he had summoned assembled*

NOTE. When the relative clause contains a predicate noun, the relative pronoun agrees with this noun rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number:

> **Rhēnus,** ***quod*** **est flūmen Gallicum,** *the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream*

VERBS

65. General Rule. Finite verbs agree with their subjects in person and number:

> **Orgetorix** ***dēligitur,*** *Orgetorix is chosen*
> **Helvētiī oppida** ***incendunt,*** *the Helvetii burn their towns*

NOTE. A finite verb is one having person and number.

a. A verb is usually singular if it has for its subject a collective noun, — that is, a noun singular in form but referring to more than one person or thing, — but it may be plural if individuals are thought of:

> **senātus haec** ***intellegit,*** *the senate knows this*
> **magna multitūdō** ***vēnērunt,*** *a great multitude came*

66. Impersonal Verbs. When a verb is used impersonally, that is, without a personal subject, it is put in the third person singular, and a perfect participle or gerundive ends in **-um**:

> **pugnātur,** *fighting is carried on*; **pugnātum est,** *fighting was carried on*

67. Agreement with Two or More Subjects. With two or more subjects connected by **et, -que,** or **atque (ac)** the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural:

> **summa alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī** *innāta est, very great eagerness and desire for waging war were inspired*
>
> **oppidum et vīcus** *incenduntur, the town and village are burned*

68. With two or more subjects forming a single idea the verb may be singular:

> **Matrona et Sēquana** *dīvidit* etc., *the Marne and Seine divide* etc., B. G. I. 1

69. With two or more singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor* the verb is in the singular number:

> **neque imperātor neque lēgātus** *erat* **timidus,** *neither the general nor the lieutenant was afraid*

CASES OF NOUNS

NOMINATIVE

70. The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb or as the predicate after a copulative verb:

> *Caesar* **respondit,** *Cæsar replies*
>
> **Labiēnus erat** *lēgātus Labienus was a lieutenant*

71. The nominative case is used as the subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218):

> **cotīdiē** *Caesar* **frūmentum** *flāgitāre, Cæsar daily demanded grain,* B. G. I. 16

GENITIVE

Genitive with Nouns

72. General Rule. The genitive is used to limit or define another noun not meaning the same person or thing.

This general rule includes all the varieties of the genitive with nouns mentioned below.

73. Possessive Genitive. A noun may be modified by a genitive denoting the possessor or owner:

inter fīnēs *Helvētiōrum* et *Allobrogum*, *between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges*, B. G. I. 6

a. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate:

duae fuērunt *Ariovistī* uxōrēs, *Ariovistus had two wives*, B. G. I. 53

74. Possessive pronominal adjectives are used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns:

nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* (instead of **meī**) **iūre impedīrī,** *it is not proper that I should be hindered in my rights by the Roman people*, B. G. I. 36

75. Subjective and Objective Genitive. A noun that suggests action or feeling may be modified by a genitive. The context will generally tell whether the genitive is the *subject* or the *object* of the action or feeling denoted by the noun:

a. **timor *mīlitum* tantus erat ut fugerent,** *the fear of the soldiers was so great that they fled*

Here the phrase **timor mīlitum** means that the soldiers fear; hence **mīlitum,** as the subject of the feeling expressed by **timor,** is a subjective genitive.

Cf. ***patrum* nostrōrum memoriā,** *within the memory of our fathers*, B. G. II. 4

b. **timor *mīlitum* hostēs dēterruit,** *the* (their) *fear of the soldiers kept the enemy back*

Here the phrase **timor mīlitum** means that the soldiers are feared; hence **mīlitum,** as the object of the feeling expressed by **timor,** is an objective genitive.

Cf. **prō veteribus *Helvētiōrum* iniūriīs *populī Rōmānī*,** *for the ancient wrongs of* (inflicted by) *the Helvetii upon the Roman people*, B. G. I. 30

In this sentence **Helvētiōrum** is a subjective genitive, **populī Rōmānī** is an objective genitive.

76. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part of an object or group are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or group:

> **trēs partēs** ***cōpiārum*** **trādūxērunt,** *they led across three quarters* (parts) *of their forces*

a. The partitive genitive may be used not only with nouns, but also with neuter singular adjectives and pronouns used substantively (§§ 127, 128):

> ***quantum*** **habeat in sē** ***bonī*** **cōnstantia,** *how much advantage* (of good) *firmness has*, B. G. I. 40
> **nisi** ***quid*** **erit** ***auxiliī,*** *unless there shall be some* (of) *aid*, B. G. I. 31
> **satis esse** ***causae*** **arbitrābātur,** *he thought there was sufficient reason* (enough of reason), B. G. I. 19

Exception. Cardinal numerals (except **mīlia**) and the indefinite pronoun **quīdam** usually take the ablative with **ē (ex)** instead of the partitive genitive:

> **ūnus** ***ex eīs,*** *one of those*; **quīdam** ***ex mīlitibus,*** *one of the soldiers*

77. Genitive of Description or Quality. The genitive of a noun is used to denote quality or kind. Such a genitive is regularly accompanied by an adjective (cf. Ablative of Description, § 116. *a*):

> **vir et** ***cōnsiliī*** **magnī et** ***virtūtis,*** *a man of* (both) *great discretion and courage*, B. G. III. 5

a. **Genitive of Description as Predicate.** The descriptive genitive is often used as the predicate of a sentence:

> **est enim hoc Gallicae** ***cōnsuētūdinis,*** *for this is a Gallic custom*, B. G. IV. 5
> **flūminis erat altitūdō** ***pedum*** **circiter trium,** *the depth of the river was about three feet*, B. G. II. 18

b. The descriptive genitive is often used with numerals to denote measure (Genitive of Measure):

> **fossam obdūxit circiter** ***passuum*** **quadringentōrum,** *he extended a ditch of about four hundred paces*, B. G. II. 8

78. Genitive of Value. The adjectives **tanti, quanti, plūris,** and **minōris** are used substantively in the predicate to denote indefinite value:

> ***tantī*** **eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit,** *he pointed out that his good will was of so great value in his sight* (**apud sē**), B. G. I. 20

79. Genitive of Material. The genitive may denote the substance, or material, of which anything consists:

> **aciem īnstrūxit *legiōnum* quattuor,** *he drew up a line of battle of four legions*, B. G. I. 24

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

80. Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt*, and their opposites, also participles in **-ns** used as adjectives, are followed by the genitive:

> **hominēs barbarī et nostrae *cōnsuētūdinis* imperītī,** *men uncivilized and unacquainted with our customs*, B. G. IV. 22
>
> ***reī* mīlitāris perītissimus,** *thoroughly skilled in military practice*, B. G. I. 21
>
> **vir amāns *reī pūblicae*,** *a man fond of the republic*

GENITIVE WITH VERBS

81. The genitive is used with the following verbs:

a. **Verbs of Memory.** With **reminīscor,** *remember*, and **oblīvīscor,** *forget*:

> **quod sī veteris *contumēliae* oblīvīscī velim,** *but if I should be willing to forget the old affront*, B. G. I. 14
>
> **reminīscere veteris *incommodī* populī Rōmānī,** *remember the former misfortune of the Roman people*, B. G. I. 13

b. **Verbs of Feeling.** With **paenitet,** *repent*, and some others. These take the accusative of the person with the genitive of the thing:

> ***cōnsiliōrum* eōs paenitet,** *they repent of their plans* (lit. *it repents them of their plans*), cf. B. G. IV. 5

c. With the verb **interest**, *it concerns*:

> **docet quantō opere *reī pūblicae* interest**, *he shows how greatly it concerns the common welfare*, B. G. II. 5

d. Sometimes with the verb **potior**, *get possession of*, which, however, commonly takes the ablative (§ 107. *a*):

> **tōtius *Galliae* potīrī**, *to get possession of the whole of Gaul*, B. G. I. 3

DATIVE

82. Dative of Indirect Object. The dative is the case of the indirect object, and denotes that *to which* or *for which* anything is or is done.

It is used not only with intransitive verbs, but also with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object:

> ***eī* fīliam suam dat**, *he gives* (to) *him his daughter*, B. G. I. 3

83. Dative with Special Verbs. The dative of the indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs meaning *to favor*, *please*, *help*, *trust*, and their contraries; also *to believe*, *persuade*, *threaten*, *injure*, *envy*, *command*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *pardon*, and *spare*; also with **temperō** meaning *to refrain*:

> ***cīvitātī* persuāsit**, *he persuaded the state*, B. G. I. 2
>
> **prīma aciēs *victīs* resistit**, *the first line resists the vanquished*, cf. B. G. I. 25

NOTE. Most of these verbs are transitive in English, take a direct object in the objective case, and are usually translated as if transitive. But in Latin the real idea is *to give a command to*, *to grant pardon to*, *to be obedient to*, etc., and the dative of the indirect object follows as a natural consequence.

a. In the passive voice these verbs are used impersonally (§ 66), and the dative follows as with the active voice:

> ***mihi* quidem *persuādētur***, *I am indeed persuaded* (lit. *it is persuaded to me*), B. G. I. 40

84. Dative with Compounds. The dative of the indirect object is found after many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super**, and sometimes **circum**:

Iccius, quī tum *oppidō* praeerat, *Iccius, who was then in command of the town*, B.G. II. 6

NOTE. Some of these verbs are transitive and some intransitive, the former taking both a direct and an indirect object:

pars cīvitātis calamitātem *populō* intulerat, *part of the state had brought disaster on the people*, B.G. I. 12

a. The dative of the indirect object is used also with several compounds of **bene** and **satis**:

sī *Allobrogibus* satisfaciētis, *if you will make amends to the Allobroges*, B.G. I. 14

85. Dative of Reference. The dative is used to denote the person or thing for whose benefit, or to whose injury, the action is performed:

omnēs in fugā *sibi* praesidium pōnēbant, *all sought safety for themselves in flight*, cf. B.G. II. 11

tōtīus bellī imperium *sibi* postulant, *they demand for themselves the command of the entire war*, B.G. II. 4

86. Dative of Separation. Some verbs signifying *to take away from*, particularly compounds of **ab, dē,** and **ex,** take the dative:

scūtō *mīlitī* dētractō, *the shield being snatched from a soldier*, B.G. II. 25

Rōmānī *Haeduīs* lībertātem ēripient, *the Romans will take away liberty from the Hædui*, cf. B.G. I. 17

NOTE. This dative differs from the ablative of separation (§ 101) in the fact that there is almost always an idea of *advantage* or *disadvantage* to the person concerned. It is thus closely connected with the dative of reference.

87. Dative of Apparent Agent. The dative is sometimes used to denote *agency*; regularly with the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II):

***Sēquanīs* omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī,** *all tortures must be endured by the Sequani*, B.G. I. 32

omnibus *Gallīs* idem est faciendum, *the same thing must be done by all the Gauls*, B.G. I. 31

88. Dative of Possession. The dative is used as a predicate with the verb **sum** to denote *possession*:

> **in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat *nūllī*,** *no one was able to keep his footing on the wall* (lit. *the possibility was to no one*), B.G. II. 6
>
> **nūllus aditus est ad eōs *mercātōribus*,** *traders have no access to them* (lit. *no access to them is to the traders*), B.G. II. 15

Notice that the idea of motion (*to them*) is expressed by the accusative with **ad**, while the idea of possession (*to the traders*) is expressed by the dative.

89. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote *purpose* or *end*, often with another dative denoting the person benefited or injured (§ 85):

> **pollicitus est *sibi* eam rem *cūrae* futūram,** *he promised that he would look out for that matter* (lit. *that matter should be for a care to himself*), B.G. I. 33
>
> ***novissimīs praesidiō* erant,** *they were* (for) *a protection to the rear*, B.G. I. 25

90. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives or adverbs denoting *nearness*, *likeness*, *fitness*, *service*, and their opposites:

> **fīnitimī *Belgīs* erant,** *they were adjacent to the Belgæ*, B.G. II. 2
>
> ***castrīs* idōneum locum dēlēgit,** *he chose a place suitable for the camp*, B.G. I. 49
>
> **proximī *Galliae* sunt,** *they are nearest to Gaul*, cf. B.G. II. 3

ACCUSATIVE

91. Direct Object. The *direct object* of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

> ***lēgātōs* dē pāce mīsērunt,** *they sent envoys in regard to peace*, B.G. IV. 27

92. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative:

> ***nostrōs* nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit,** *he found that our men were not inferior*, B.G. II. 8

NOTE. The subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly in the nominative (§ 71).

93. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object. Some verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, and *teaching* may be followed by two accusatives — one (the direct object) of the person and the other (the secondary object) of the thing:

> **Caesar *Haeduōs frūmentum* flāgitāre,** *Cæsar demanded grain of the Hædui*, B. G. I. 16

NOTE. This construction is found with **ōrō, poscō, rogō, flāgitō, doceō,** and a few other verbs.

a. With the passive of **rogō** and of verbs of *teaching* and a few others the accusative of the *person* becomes the subject, and the accusative of the *thing* is retained:

> ACTIVE: ***agrōs Gallōs* rogāvit,** *he asked the Gauls for territory*
> PASSIVE: ***Gallī agrōs* rogātī sunt,** *the Gauls were asked for territory*

94. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *calling*, *regarding*, *showing*, etc. often take a second accusative referring to the same person or thing as the direct object. This second object is called the *adjunct accusative*:

> ***eum vergobretum* appellant Haeduī,** *the Hædui call him* ***vergobretus,*** cf. B. G. I. 16
> ***Ariovistum amīcum* appellant,** *they call Ariovistus friend*

NOTE. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the adjunct accusative becomes the predicate nominative:

> ***Ariovistus amīcus* appellātur,** *Ariovistus is called friend*

95. Accusative with Compounds. Transitive verbs compounded with **trāns** may take, in addition to the direct object, a secondary object depending on the preposition:

> **trēs *partēs* cōpiārum Helvētiī id *flūmen* trādūxerant,** *the Helvetii had led three fourths of their forces across that river*, cf. B. G. I. 12

NOTE. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object:

> **Belgae *Rhēnum* trāductī sunt,** *the Belgæ were led across the Rhine,* cf. B. G. II. 4

96. Accusative of Duration and Extent. The accusative denotes *duration of time* and *extent of space*:

haec magnam *partem* aestātis faciēbant, *they continued to do this during a great part of the summer*, B. G. III. 12
fīnēs in longitūdinem *mīlia* passuum CCXL patēbant, *the territories extended in length two hundred and forty miles*, cf. B. G. I. 2

97. Accusative of Place Whither. Place *whither* is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**; but with names of towns and the word **domus**, *home*, the preposition is omitted:

***in Italiam* profectus est,** *he set out for Italy*, B. G. II. 35
***Rōmam ad senātum* vēnī,** *I came to Rome to the senate*
***Bibracte* īre contendit,** *he hastened* (to go) *to Bibracte*, B. G. I. 23
***domum* suam quisque revertitur,** *each returns to his home*, cf. B.G. II. 10

NOTE. **Ad** is used with names of towns after verbs of motion when the meaning is *to the neighborhood of* instead of *to*:

***ad Genāvam* pervēnit,** *he came to* (the vicinity of) *Geneva*, B. G. I. 7

98. Accusative of Kindred Meaning. An intransitive verb may be used with the accusative of a noun, or of a neuter pronoun or adjective of indefinite meaning, which has or suggests the same meaning as the verb:

***id* eīs persuāsit,** *he persuaded them to this course* (lit. *he persuaded this* (course) *to them*), B. G. I. 2

In this sentence **id**, the object of **persuāsit**, represents the persuasion itself, and so repeats the idea of the verb.

99. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is often used with the force of an adverb:

***nihil* saxa timēbant,** *they did not fear the rocks at all*, cf. B. G. III. 13
maximam *partem* lacte vīvunt, *they live for the most part on milk*, B. G. IV. 1

In these sentences **nihil** and **partem** are used adverbially.

VOCATIVE

100. The word denoting the person called or addressed is put in the vocative case. This has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns in **-us** of the second declension, which have the vocative in **-e**:

ibi erunt Helvētiī ubi eōs tū, *Caesar*, esse volueris, *the Helvetii will be* (in the place) *where you, Cæsar, shall have wished them to be,* B.G. I. 13

et tū quoque, *Brūte*! *and thou too, Brutus!*

ABLATIVE

101. Ablative of Separation. The ablative, with or without **ab, dē,** or **ex,** is used to denote *separation*:

hostem *ā pugnā* prohibēbant, *they kept the enemy from battle,* cf. B.G. IV. 34

***proeliō* supersedēre statuit,** *he decided to hold aloof from battle,* B.G. II. 8

a. When the *place from which* is the name of a town or the word **domus,** *home,* the ablative is used without a preposition:

erant itinera duo quibus itineribus *domō* exīre possent, *there were two routes by which they could go out from home,* B.G. I. 6

NOTE. When the idea is not directly *out of* or *from* a town, but *from the neighborhood of* it, the preposition **ab** is used:

***ab Ocelō* in fīnēs Vocontiōrum pervēnit,** *he came from* (the vicinity of) *Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontii,* B.G. I. 10

102. Ablative of Origin. The ablative is used, with or without **ab** or **ex,** to denote the *origin* from which anything is derived:

initium ortum est *ab Ambiorīge*, *the beginning was made by* (lit. *arose from*) *Ambiorix,* B.G. V. 25

Pīsō amplissimō *genere* nātus est, *Piso was born of most distinguished family,* cf. B.G. IV. 12

103. Ablative of Material. The ablative is used with **ex** or **dē** to denote the *material* of which anything consists:

> **nāvēs factae sunt** ***ex rōbore***, *the ships were made of oak*, cf. B. G. III. 13

104. Ablative of Agent. The *agent* or *doer* of an act is expressed after passive verbs by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**:

> ***ab*** **nōn nūllīs** ***Gallīs*** **sollicitābantur,** *they were incited by some* (of the) *Gauls*, cf. B. G. II. 1

NOTE. When the agent is considered as a *means to an end*, the accusative with **per** is used:

> ***per*** **trēs potentēs** ***populōs*** **Galliae potīrī posse spērant,** *through three powerful nations they hope to be able to get possession of Gaul*, cf. B. G. I. 3

105. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree without **quam** is regularly followed by the ablative:

> **celerius omnium** ***opīniōne*** **vēnit,** *he came more quickly than any one had expected* (lit. *than the expectation of all*), cf. B. G. II. 3

NOTE 1. The comparative may, however, be followed by **quam**, and the two things compared are then put in the same case:

> ***iūstitia*** **est melior** ***quam laus***, *justice is better than praise*

NOTE 2. After the comparatives **plūs, minus, amplius,** and **longius,** without **quam**, a word of measure or number is often used in the case it would have if there were no comparative:

> **aditus in lātitūdinem nōn** ***amplius pedum*** **CC relinquēbātur,** *an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left* (lit. *an approach of two hundred feet — not more*), B. G. II. 29

In this sentence **pedum** is the genitive of measure (§ 77. *b*), the construction it would have if **amplius** were not used.

106. Ablative of Means. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action:

> **equitātum suō** ***sūmptū*** **alit,** *he maintains the cavalry at* (by means of) *his own expense*, cf. B. G. I. 18

a. The ablative of means is used to denote the *way by which*:

> **eōdem** ***itinere*** **contendit,** *he hastened by the same route*, B. G. I. 21

107. Ablative with Special Words. The ablative is used:

a. With the verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor,** and their compounds:

> **Caesar īsdem** ***ducibus*** **ūsus est,** *Cæsar employed the same guides,* cf. B.G. II. 7
> ***castrīs*** **nostrī potītī sunt,** *our men got possession of the camp,* B.G. I. 26
> ***commodīs*** **fruuntur,** *they enjoy advantages,* cf. B.G. III. 22

NOTE. **Potior** may take the genitive (§ 81. *d*).

b. With the verbs **fīdō, cōnfīdō, nītor,** and the verbal adjective **frētus:**

> ***eīs*** **Crassus nōn multum cōnfīdēbat,** *Crassus placed little reliance in these,* cf. B.G. III. 25
> **Sōtiātēs superiōribus** ***victōriīs*** **frētī sunt,** *the Sotiates relied on their former victories,* cf. B.G. III. 21

c. With **opus est** and **ūsus est,** *there is need:*

> **opus** ***factō*** **est,** *there is need of action,* cf. B.G. I. 42

NOTE. **Opus** may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative:

> **sī quid mihi** ***opus*** **est,** *if I need anything*

108. Ablative of Value or Price. With verbs of *buying* and *selling* the *price* is expressed by the ablative:

> **parvō pretiō redēmpta,** *bought in at a low price,* B.G. I. 18

NOTE. For the genitive of value see § 78.

109. Ablative of Cause. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express *cause:*

> **Dumnorīx** ***grātiā*** **plūrimum poterat,** *Dumnorix had great power because of his influence,* B.G. I. 9

NOTE. The ablatives **causā** and **grātiā,** *for the sake,* regularly *follow* a noun in the genitive:

> **huius potentiae** ***causā,*** *for the sake of this power,* B.G. I. 18

110. Ablative of Manner. The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative, either with an adjective modifier or with **cum,** sometimes with both:

***nūdō corpore* pugnant,** *they fight with body unprotected*, cf. B.G. I. 25
***magnō cum strepitū* ēgressī sunt,** *they went forth with great din*, cf. B.G. II. 11

111. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative may express that *in accordance with* which anything is, or is done, often with **ex** or **dē**:

***īnstitūtō* suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit,** *Cæsar led out his forces according to his custom*, B.G. I. 50

112. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The *circumstance* or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative:

eam rem *imperiō* nostrō cōnsequī nōn poterant, *they could not accomplish that under our sway*, cf. B.G. II. 1

113. Ablative of Accompaniment. The ablative is used to denote *accompaniment*, regularly with **cum**:

intellegō quantō id *cum perīculō* fēcerim, *I know with how great danger I did that*, B.G. I. 17
cum puerīs mulieribusque, *with children and women*, B.G. II. 28

NOTE. With some military expressions **cum** may be omitted; the noun is then regularly modified by an adjective:

Caesar subsequēbātur *omnibus cōpiīs*, *Cæsar followed with all his forces*, B.G. II. 19

a. Verbs of *contention* and the like require **cum**:

***cum Germānīs* contendunt,** *they fight with the Germans*, B.G. I. 1

114. Ablative of Measure of Difference. With words that express or imply comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*:

alterum iter erat *multō* facilius, *the other route was much easier* (lit. *easier by much*), cf. B.G. I. 6
ā *mīlibus* passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, *about two miles away they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans* (lit. *off* (**ā**) *by two miles*), B.G. V. 32. The preposition **ā** is here used as an adverb

115. Ablative of Respect. The ablative denotes *in what respect* something is true:

> **linguā inter sē differunt,** *they differ from one another in language,* B.G. I. 1
>
> **īnfirmiōrēs** ***animō,*** *dispirited* (lit. *weaker in respect to courage*), B.G. III. 24

116. Ablative of Description or Quality. The ablative with an adjective modifier is used to denote quality or kind:

> **hominēs** ***inimīcō animō,*** *men of unfriendly disposition,* B.G. I. 7

a. Either the genitive (§ 77) or ablative may be used in description, but in general:

1. Statements of *measure, number, time,* and *space* are in the genitive.

2. Physical qualities are in the ablative.

> **mūrum** ***pedum*** **sēdecim perdūcit,** *he extended a wall* (of) *sixteen feet,* B.G. I. 8
>
> **Germānī ingentī** ***magnitūdine*** **corporum sunt,** *the Germans are of great size of body,* cf. B.G. I. 39

b. The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, may be used as the predicate of a sentence; cf. **magnitūdine** in the last example.

117. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle expressed or understood in agreement may be used absolutely, that is, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

While grammatically independent, the ablative absolute has a logical relation to the rest of the sentence. This relation is best expressed in translation by changing the ablative absolute into a clause introduced by *if, when, since, though,* etc.

The ablative absolute may express the following relations:

a. Condition:

> **ā quibus nōs dēfendere,** ***trāditīs armīs,*** **nōn poterimus,** *from these we cannot defend ourselves if we surrender our arms* (lit. *our arms having been surrendered*), B.G. II. 31

b. Time:

initā aestāte **Q. Pedium mīsit,** *in the beginning of summer* (lit. *summer having been begun*) *he sent Quintus Pedius*, B.G. II. 2

c. Cause:

Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, ***dēpopulātīs agrīs,*** **nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre,** *they inform Cæsar that, since their fields have been laid waste, they cannot easily ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns* (lit. *their fields having been laid waste*), B.G. I. 11

d. Concession:

turribus excitātīs, **tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat,** *even though towers had been erected, nevertheless the height of the sterns of the barbarian ships rose above them* (lit. *towers having been erected*), B.G. III. 14

e. Circumstance:

ea omnia, ***īnscientibus ipsīs,*** **fēcerat,** *he had done all those things without their knowledge* (lit. *they being unaware*), cf. B.G. I. 19

f. Means:

nāvibus iūnctīs, **cōnātī sunt,** *they tried by means of joining boats* (lit. *boats having been joined*), cf. B.G. I. 8

118. Special Constructions of the Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) with an adjective, or a noun (or pronoun) with a noun, may form an ablative absolute construction without an accompanying participle. This occurs when the sense demands the present participle of **sum,** which is lacking in Latin:

Sēquanīs invītīs, **īre nōn poterant,** *if the Sequani should be unwilling, they could not go* (lit. *the Sequani* (being) *unwilling*), B.G. I. 9

ea omnia, ***mē invītō,*** **fēcistī,** *you have done all those things against my will* (lit. *I* (being) *unwilling*), cf. B.G. I. 19

is, ***M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,*** **coniūrātiōnem fēcit,** *he made a conspiracy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso* (lit. *Messala and Piso* (being) *consuls*), B.G. I. 2

119. Ablative of Time. The time *at which* or *within which* is expressed by the ablative:

> ***eō tempore*** **prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat,** *at that time he held the chief position in the state*, B.G. I. 3
>
> ***paucīs annīs*** **omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellentur,** *within a few years all will be driven from the territories of Gaul*, B.G. I. 31

NOTE. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of by the accusative (§ 96):

> ***eā tōtā nocte*** **continenter iērunt,** *they marched uninterruptedly during that entire night*, B.G. I. 26

120. Ablative of Place Where. Place *where* is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in.** Names of towns omit the preposition:

> ***in*** **Germānōrum** ***fīnibus*** **bellum gerunt,** *they wage war in the territories of the Germans*, cf. B.G. I. 1
>
> **proelium** ***Philippīs*** **factum est,** *the battle was fought at Philippi*

a. The so-called *locative case* is used instead of the ablative of place in the singular of the names of towns of the first and second declensions; also **domī,** *at home*. The locative case ends in **-ae** in the first declension, and in **-ī** in the second, being just like the genitive singular:

> **conciliō Gallōrum** ***Samarobrīvae*** **perāctō,** *after a council of the Gauls had been brought to an end at Samarobriva*, B.G. V. 24
>
> **Caesar** ***Avaricī*** **complūrēs diēs commorātus,** *Cæsar after tarrying several days at Avaricum*, B.G. VII. 32
>
> ***domī*** **nihil erat,** *there was nothing at home*, B.G. I. 28

b. The preposition is regularly omitted with the ablatives **locō, locīs, parte, partibus,** when they are modified by an adjective or a genitive:

> ***aliēnō locō*** **proelium committunt,** *they join battle in an unfavorable place*, B.G. I. 15

NOTE 1. The *way by which* is put in the ablative case without a preposition:

> **frūmentum** ***flūmine Ararī*** **subvexerat,** *he had brought grain up the river Saône*, cf. B.G. I. 16

NOTE 2. For expressions denoting the *place from which* see § 101. *a.*

ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

121. Adjectives have in general the same distinctions of meaning for the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative* degrees as in English:

altus, *high*; **altior,** *higher*; **altissimus,** *highest*

122. The comparative of an adjective sometimes denotes merely a high degree of the quality:

sī quid erat ***dūrius,*** *if there was any uncommonly hard* (task), B. G. I. 48

123. The superlative of an adjective sometimes denotes simply a very high degree of the quality:

mōns ***altissimus*** **impendēbat,** *a very high mountain overhung*, B. G. I. 6

124. The superlative of an adjective with **quam** preceding denotes the highest degree possible of the quality:

quam maximum **numerum coemēbant,** *they purchased the largest number possible*, B. G. I. 3

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

125. The adjectives **medius, īmus, summus,** and **reliquus** may denote a part of the object described:

in colle ***mediō*** **aciem īnstrūxit,** *he drew up a line of battle in the middle of the hill*, B. G. I. 24

summus **mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur,** *the top of the mountain was held by Labienus*, cf. B. G. I. 22

126. An adjective in regular agreement with a noun sometimes has the meaning of an adverb:

animadvertit Caesar Sēquanōs ***trīstēs*** **terram intuērī,** *Cæsar noticed that the Sequani sadly kept their eyes upon the ground*, B.G. I. 32

127. Adjectives are often used *substantively*, that is, like nouns:

nostrī **magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt,** *our* (men) *slew a large number of them*, B. G. II. 10

PRONOUNS

128. Pronouns in general may be used either as substantives or as adjectives, and the rules for nouns and adjectives apply to them accordingly. In their substantive use they are properly called pronouns. In their adjective use they should be called pronominal adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

129. Nominative Use. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns, **ego, tū, nōs,** and **vōs,** are not used except for emphasis.

> ***ego*** **certē meum officium praestiterō,** *I, at least, will have done my duty,* B.G. IV. 25

130. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. There are no regular personal pronouns of the third person, their place being supplied by a demonstrative, generally **is** (§ 135):

> **lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque** ***eī*** **dēdidērunt,** *they sent envoys to Cæsar and surrendered to him,* B.G. II. 28

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

131. The possessive pronominal adjectives, **meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus,** agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify, not with the word denoting the possessor:

> **puella librōs** ***meōs*** **habet,** *the girl has my books*

Here the possessive, **meōs,** agrees with **librōs,** the things possessed, although this is plural masculine accusative, while the possessor, **puella,** is singular feminine nominative.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

132. Direct Reflexives. The reflexive pronoun, **suī, sibi, sē,** and its possessive adjective, **suus, -a, -um,** regularly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand:

> ***sē suaque*** **dēdidērunt,** *they surrendered themselves and their property,* B.G. II. 15

133. Indirect Reflexives. In a subordinate clause the reflexive and its possessive adjective often refer back to the subject of the main clause. They are then called *indirect* reflexives:

> **dat negōtium Gallīs utī *sē* certiōrem faciant,** *he directs the Gauls to inform him*, cf. B.G. II. 2

NOTE. The reflexive, **suī, sibi, sē,** refers to the *third person* only. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives, thus:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
laudō ***mē***, *I praise myself*	**laudāmus** ***nōs***, *we praise ourselves*
laudās ***tē***, *you praise yourself*	**laudātis** ***vōs***, *you praise yourselves*
laudat ***sē***, *he praises himself*	**laudant** ***sē***, *they praise themselves*

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

134. Hic and Ille. Hic refers to something near; **ille** to something remote. Their most common meaning is conveyed by the words *this* and *that*:

> **mea *haec* est Gallia, sīcut *illa* vestra,** *this* (part of) *Gaul is mine, just as that* (part) *is yours*, cf. B.G. I. 44

a. When **hic** and **ille** are used together, **hic** generally refers to the *latter* of two objects, and **ille** to the *former*:

> ***hī* rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, *illī* domī remanent,** *the latter* (just mentioned) *again in their turn are in arms the year after, the former* (mentioned previously) *remain at home*, B. G. IV. 1

135. Is. Is as a demonstrative pronoun may mean either *this* or *that*.

Is is often used as a personal pronoun of the third person (*he, she, it, her, him, them*):

> ***eī* fīliam dat,** *he gives* (to) *him his daughter*, B.G. I. 3

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

136. The intensive pronoun, **ipse**, standing either alone or in agreement with another word, expresses emphasis or contrast. Its use must be carefully distinguished from that of the reflexive, particularly as we use the word *self* in translating both. The following examples illustrate the difference:

> **sē laudat,** *he praises himself*; ***ipse*** **puerum laudat,** *he himself praises the boy*

a. **Ipse** is sometimes used in place of the indirect reflexive (§ 133):

> **sī quid *ipsī* ā Caesare opus esset,** (he said) *if he needed anything from Cæsar* (lit. *if any need was to himself*), B.G. I. 34

b. **Ipse** is often used in the genitive case with a possessive pronoun to strengthen the possessive idea:

> **suā *ipsōrum* linguā ūtuntur,** *they employ their own language*
> **suum *ipsīus* exercitum habet,** *he has his own army*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

137. General Rule. Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on their construction in the clause in which they are found:

> **Sabīnus, cum eīs cōpiīs *quās* ā Caesare accēperat,** *Sabinus, with those forces which he had received from Cæsar*, B.G. III. 17

138. Agreement with a Predicate Noun or Appositive. A relative pronoun regularly agrees with a predicate noun or appositive in its own clause, rather than with its antecedent:

> **Vesontiō, *quod* est *oppidum* maximum Sēquanōrum,** *Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani*, B.G. I. 38

139. Relative Clause preceding. A relative clause when emphatic precedes the clause containing the antecedent:

> ***quōrum* per fīnēs ierant, hīs imperāvit,** *he ordered these through whose territories they had gone*, B.G. I. 28

140. Antecedent in the Relative Clause. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes placed in the relative clause:

> ***quam* fēcerat *classem* iubet convenīre,** *he ordered the fleet which he had built up to assemble* (lit. *what fleet he had* etc.), B. G. IV. 21

141. Repetition of the Antecedent. The antecedent is sometimes repeated with the relative:

> **erant itinera duo, *quibus itineribus* domō exīre possent,** *there were two ways by which* (ways) *they could go out from home*, B. G. I. 6

142. Omission of the Antecedent. The antecedent may be omitted if it is a pronoun or an indefinite word:

> **quī cognōscerent mīsit,** *he sent* (men) *to reconnoiter*, B. G. I. 21

143. Relative beginning a New Sentence. A relative pronoun, referring to an antecedent in the preceding sentence, often stands at the beginning of a new sentence. In such cases the relative is best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun:

> ***quī* cum eum in itinere convēnissent** etc., *when these had met him on the way* etc., B. G. I. 27
>
> **nostrī nōn eādem alacritāte ūtēbantur. *Quod* ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās removērī iussit,** *our men did not exert themselves with the same eagerness. When Cæsar noticed this, he ordered the ships of war to be removed*, B. G. IV. 24, 25

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is meant without designating ***which one***; some of the most common and their uses are:

a. **Quis,** *some one*, *any one*, *some*, *any*, is the least exact of the indefinites, and stands generally after **sī, nisi, nē,** or **num; quīdam,** *a certain one*, *a certain*, is the most definite:

> **sī *quis* dīcit,** *if anybody says*
>
> **verētur nē *quis* veniat,** *he fears that some one may come*
>
> ***quīdam* ex mīlitibus dīxit,** *a certain one of the soldiers said*, B. G. I. 42

b. **Aliquis,** *some one, some,* is more definite than **quis:**

***aliquis* dīcat,** *some one may say*

c. **Quisquam,** *any one,* and the indefinite adjective **ūllus,** *any,* are used commonly in negative sentences, and in sentences implying a negative:

cūr *quisquam* iūdicāret? *why should any one judge?* B.G. I. 40

neque *ūllā* necessitāte continēbantur, *nor were they restrained by any necessity,* B.G. II. 11

d. **Alius,** *another,* and **alter,** *the other* (of two), when used in pairs have the following meanings:

alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*
aliī . . . aliī, *some . . . others*
alterī . . . alterī, *the one party . . . the other*

1. **Alius** used twice in different cases in the same clause expresses just half the meaning conveyed:

***alius aliā* ex nāvī sē adgregābat,** *they gathered,* (one from one ship,) *another from another ship,* B.G. IV. 26

***aliī aliam* in partem ferēbantur,** *they rushed,* (some in one direction,) *others in another direction,* B.G. II. 24

ADVERBS

145. Adverbs in the comparative degree, like adjectives (§§ 122, 123), may indicate merely a high degree of what they express without denoting real comparison. The superlative also may express a very high degree, instead of the highest:

sē *diūtius* dūcī intellēxit, *he realized that he was being put off too long,* B.G. I. 16

***plūrimum* domī poterat,** *he was very powerful at home,* cf. B.G. I. 20

NEGATIVE ADVERBS

146. The usual negative adverb is **nōn**; this is regular with the indicative mood.

a. **Nōn** combined with another negative word, as **nūllus,** makes an indefinite affirmative: **nōn nūllī,** *some*

147. **Nē** is used with the subjunctive denoting negative purpose, will, or desire; this includes commands in indirect discourse:

> **ad haec cōnstitit *nē* tempus dīmitteret,** *he took his stand by these that he might not lose time*, B.G. II. 21
>
> **quā rē *nē* committeret,** (he told him) *that he should therefore not bring it to pass*, B.G. I. 13

PREPOSITIONS

148. Prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative cases.

149. Prepositions with the Accusative. The prepositions used with the accusative are **ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, in, īnfrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, super, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus.**

NOTE. The adjectives **propior, proximus,** and the adverbs **propius, proximē,** sometimes govern the accusative like prepositions:

> ***proximī* Rhēnum,** *next to the Rhine*; ***propius* tumulum,** *nearer the mound*

150. Prepositions with the Ablative. The prepositions used with the ablative are **ā (ab, abs), cōram, cum, dē, ē (ex), in, prae, prō, sine, sub, tenus.**

a. **Cum** is attached to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, interrogative, and relative pronouns as an enclitic:

> **nēmō *mēcum* sine suā perniciē contendit,** *no one has striven with me without his destruction*, B.G. I. 36
>
> **hunc *sēcum* habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat,** *him especially he had decided to keep with him*, B.G. V. 6
>
> **proximī sunt Germānīs, *quibuscum* continenter bellum gerunt,** *they are nearest to the Germans, with whom they continually wage war*, B.G. I. 1

NOTE. **In** and **sub** govern both cases. With the accusative they denote *motion toward* a place; with the ablative *rest in* a place:

> **exercitum *sub iugum* mittit,** *he sends the army under the yoke*
>
> ***in oppidō* manet,** *he remains in the town*

CONJUNCTIONS

151. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses of the same rank, or main clauses with subordinate clauses.

a. **Coördinating Conjunctions.** Coördinating conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank) are such words as **et, atque, ac, -que, enim, sed, autem,** etc.

b. **Subordinating Conjunctions.** Subordinating conjunctions (connecting dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend) are such words as **cum, antequam, quod, sī, etsī, quamvīs,** etc.

VERBS

152. Terms. The terms transitive, intransitive, impersonal, voice (active and passive), mood, tense, etc. are used in general as in English.

TENSES AND MOODS

Tenses of the Indicative

153. Present Tense. The present tense represents an action or state as now taking place or existing:

> **hōrum omnium fortissimī *sunt* Belgae,** *the Belgæ are the bravest of all these*, B.G. I. 1

a. **Historical Present.** The present is sometimes used instead of a past tense to describe a past action more vividly:

> **ad Galbam *accurrunt* atque *docent*** etc., *they rush up to Galba and point out* etc., B.G. III. 5

Note. The historical present may be translated by either a present or a past tense.

154. Past Descriptive[1] Tense. The past descriptive tense is used:

a. To denote an action going on in past time:

> **Helvētiī agrōs *populābantur*,** *the Helvetii were devastating the fields*, B.G. I. 11

[1] The past descriptive is often called the imperfect.

b. In description:

mōns altissimus *impendēbat*, *a very high mountain overhung*, B.G. I. 6

c. To denote an action as attempted, as customary, or as begun:

nostrōs *prohibēbant*, *they tried to keep back our men*, B.G. V. 9
sē in proxima oppida *recipiēbant*, *they* (regularly) *retreated to the nearest town*, B.G. III. 12
suspicābātur, *he was beginning to suspect*, B.G. IV. 31

NOTE. In narration the forward steps of the action are in the perfect tense, descriptive passages in the past descriptive.

155. Future Tense. The future tense denotes an act or state that will take place in the future:

vōbīscum pācem *faciam*, *I will make peace with you*, B.G. I. 14

156. Perfect Tense. The perfect tense has two uses. It may represent:

a. An action as now completed (present perfect). It is then translated with the English auxiliary *have*:

utī suprā *dēmōnstrāvimus*, *as I have shown above*, B.G. II. 1

b. An action or state as a fact in past time (past absolute):

eō exercitum *dūxit*, *he led his army thither*, B.G. III. 28

NOTE. The past participle with **habeō** has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the *continued effect* of the action of the verb:

vectīgālia *redēmpta habet*, *he has bought up the revenues*, B.G. I. 18

157. Past Perfect[1] Tense. The past perfect tense represents an action as completed in past time:

Helvētiī iam suās cōpiās *trādūxerant*, *the Helvetii had already led their troops across*, B.G. I. 11

158. Future Perfect Tense. The future perfect tense represents the action as completed in the future:

ubi *cōnstitueris*, *where you shall have determined*, B.G. I. 13

[1] The past perfect is often called the pluperfect.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

In Independent Clauses

159. When the subjunctive is used independently, its tense values are as follows:

a. The present and perfect subjunctive refer to future time:

> **eāmus** (§ 172. *a*), *let us go*
> **nē dēspexeris** (§ 172. *c*), *do not despise*

NOTE. Exhortations, wishes, commands, etc., from their very nature, refer to the future. **Eāmus** and **dēspexerīs** above imply that the acts are not yet performed.

b. The past[1] subjunctive generally refers to present time, but sometimes to past time:

> **utinam** ***scrīberet*** (§ 172. *e*. 2), *O that he were writing* (now). This implies that the act is *not now going on*
> **quid** ***facerem*****?** (§ 172. *d*), *what was I to do?*
> **tum** ***vidērēs*** (§ 172. *f*), *then you might have seen*

c. The past perfect[1] subjunctive refers to past time:

> **utinam** ***scrīpsisset*** (§ 172. *e*. 3), *O that he had written* (then). This implies that the act was *not then performed*

In Dependent Clauses

160. In dependent clauses the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the tenses of the main verb, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

161. Sequence of Tenses. The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are classified as *primary* and *secondary*. The primary tenses are those referring to present or future time; the secondary tenses are those referring to past time.

[1] The past subjunctive is often called the imperfect, and the past perfect the pluperfect.

The following table represents this division, the primary tenses being marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

Indicative	Subjunctive
(1) Present	(1) Present
(2) Past descriptive	(2) Past
(1) Future	
(2) Perfect (past absolute, § 156. *b*)	(1) Perfect
(2) Past perfect	(2) Past perfect
(1) Future perfect	

I. The present and past subjunctive denote incomplete action (that is, present or future with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

	Indicative	Subjunctive	
I ask	(1) ***quaerō***	***quid dīcat***	(1) *what he says*
I asked	(2) ***quaerēbam***	***quid dīceret***	(2) *what he said*
I shall ask	(1) ***quaeram***		
I asked	(2) ***quaesīvī***		
I had asked	(2) ***quaesīveram***		
I shall have asked	(1) ***quaesīverō***		

II. The perfect and past perfect subjunctive denote completed action (that is, past with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

	Indicative	Subjunctive	
I ask	(1) ***quaerō***		
I asked	(2) ***quaerēbam***		
I shall ask	(1) ***quaeram***		
I asked	(2) ***quaesīvī***	***quid dīxerit***	(1) *what he said*
I had asked	(2) ***quaesīveram***	***quid dīxisset***	(2) *what he had said*
I shall have asked	(1) ***quaesīverō***		

From this use of tenses follows the rule:

162. ***Primary tenses in the indicative are followed by primary tenses in the subjunctive, and secondary by secondary.***

163. Exceptions. Occasional exceptions to sequence occur, especially in long passages:

a. Sometimes a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive:

> **_respondit_ sī obsidēs _dentur_ sēsē pācem esse factūrum,** *he replied that he would make peace if hostages should be given*, B.G. I. 14

b. The perfect indicative, when past absolute (§ 156. *b*), is regularly a secondary tense; but when used as a present perfect (§ 156. *a*) it may be followed by the primary sequence:

> **ita _didicimus_ ut magis virtūte _contendāmus_,** *we have been so trained that we strive more by courage*, B.G. I. 13

c. A perfect subjunctive, particularly in clauses of result (§ 179), may follow a secondary tense:

> **temporis tanta _fuit_ exiguitās ut tempus _dēfuerit_,** *so short was the time that there was no opportunity*, B.G. II. 21

164. Historical Present. The historical present (§ 153. *a*) allows either primary or secondary sequence:

> **diem _dīcunt_ quā diē _conveniant_,** *they appoint a day on which* (day) *they shall assemble*, B.G. I. 6
>
> **esse spem _docent_, sī extrēmum auxilium _experīrentur_,** *they showed that there was hope, if they should try a last resource*, B.G. III. 5

165. Historical Infinitive. The historical infinitive (§ 218) is regularly followed by a secondary tense:

> **interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod _essent pollicitī_, _flāgitāre_,** *meanwhile Cæsar demanded of the Hædui every day the grain which they had promised*, B.G. I. 16

Tenses of the Infinitive

166. *a.* **Not in Indirect Discourse.** Except in indirect discourse (§ 203) only the present and perfect infinitives are used; the present represents the action of the verb as in progress with no distinct reference to time, the perfect as completed.

> **bellum _gerere_ dēbet,** *he ought to be waging war*
>
> **pudet mē hoc _fēcisse_,** *I am ashamed to have done this*

b. **In Indirect Discourse.** In indirect discourse the tenses of the infinitive denote a time that is *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the time denoted by the verb of *saying* etc. by which the indirect discourse is introduced. Thus:

1. The present infinitive expresses *the same time* as that of the verb of *saying*:

> **dīcit *esse* spem,** *he says that there is hope*
> **dīcēbat *esse* spem,** *he said that there was hope*
> **dīcet *esse* spem,** *he will say that there is hope*

2. The perfect infinitive expresses *time before* that of the verb of *saying*:

> **dīcit *fuisse* spem,** *he says that there was hope*
> **dīcēbat *fuisse* spem,** *he said that there had been hope*
> **dīcet *fuisse* spem,** *he will say that there was hope*

3. The future infinitive expresses *time later* than that of the verb of *saying*:

> **dīcit *futūram esse* spem,** *he says that there will be hope*
> **dīcēbat *futūram esse* spem,** *he said that there would be hope*
> **dīcet *futūram esse* spem,** *he will say that there will be hope*

Tenses of the Participle

167. The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 166. *b*), express a time *present*, *past*, or *future* with reference to the verb with which it is used:

> **haec *flēns* ā Caesare petiit,** *weeping he asked this from Cæsar*, B.G. I. 20
>
> **dē hīs rēbus certior *factus*, *trānseuntēs* adgressus est,** *when he had been informed of these matters, he attacked them as they were crossing* (lit. *having been informed, he attacked* (them) *crossing*)

MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

THE INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

168. The indicative mood is used to state a real or an assumed fact or to ask a question.

169. Statement of Facts. Any form of the indicative may be used to state a real or an assumed fact:

> ***est* aliud iter,** *there is another road*
> **Ariovistus *fuit* rēx,** *Ariovistus was king*
> **Caesar *veniet*,** *Cæsar will come*

170. Questions. A question may be asked, as in English, by the use of an interrogative pronoun or adverb:

> ***quis* hoc fēcit?** *who did this?*
> ***ubi* est puer?** *where is the boy?*

a. Questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no" have no introductory interrogative in English, but in Latin are regularly introduced by the interrogative particles **-ne, nōnne,** or **num.**

1. If information only is sought, and no particular answer suggested, the enclitic **-ne** is added to the first word:

> ***scrībitne* epistulam?** *is he writing the letter?*

2. **Nōnne** expects an affirmative answer:

> ***nōnne* epistulam scrībit?** *he is writing the letter, is he not?* or, *is he not writing the letter?*

3. **Num** expects a negative answer:

> ***num* epistulam scrībit?** *he is not writing the letter, is he?*

b. A double, or alternative, question asks which of two supposed cases is true.

1. The first member of a double question is generally introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** (neither of which is to be translated); the second member by **an,** *or*:

> ***utrum* scrībet, *an* veniet?** *will he write, or come?*
> ***scrībetne*, *an* veniet?** *will he write, or come?*

NOTE. Frequently the first member has no introductory word:

scrībet, *an* veniet? *will he write, or come?*

2. If the second member means simply *or not*, **annōn** is used in direct questions, **necne** in indirect questions (§ 201):

scrībitne *annōn*? *is he writing or not?*
quaerō scrībatne *necne*, *I ask whether he is writing or not*
dēclārābant utrum ex ūsū esset *necne*, *they announced whether it was advantageous or not*, cf. B. G. I. 50

171. Rhetorical Questions. A rhetorical question is one that is asked simply for effect, and seeks no information:

tālēsne iniūriās perferre possum? *can I endure such injuries?*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

172. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express:

a. EXHORTATION, in the first person plural, present tense; the negative is **nē**:

nē hōs latrōnēs *interficiāmus*, *let us not kill these robbers*, cf. B.G. VII. 36

b. COMMAND, in the third person, present tense:

obsidēs *reddat*, *let him return the hostages*, B. G. I. 35

c. NEGATIVE COMMAND, or PROHIBITION, with the negative **nē**:

nē *dēspexeris* or **nē *dēspiciās*,** *do not despise*

NOTE 1. Negative command is generally expressed, however, by **nōlī, nōlīte,** with the present infinitive. See § 173. note.

NOTE 2. The uses under *a*, *b*, and *c* are often called volitive (from **volō,** *will*) subjunctives, since they express an act of the will.

d. DELIBERATION, in questions implying doubt, perplexity, or indignation:

quam ratiōnem pugnae *īnsistam*? *what plan of battle shall I adopt?* cf. B. G. III. 14
cūr *dēspērētis*? *why should you despair?* B. G. I. 40

NOTE. Such questions are usually rhetorical (§ 171) in character.

e. WISH (Optative Subjunctive), often with **utinam**. The negative is **nē**. The three forms of wishes and their expression in Latin are as follows:

1. A future wish regarded as possible of fulfillment; present (less frequently perfect) subjunctive, with or without **utinam**:

(utinam) ***scrībat*** }
(utinam) ***scrīpserit*** } *may he write*

2. A wish unfulfilled in present time; past subjunctive with **utinam**:

utinam ***scrīberet***, *would* (or *I wish*) *that he were writing*

3. A wish unfulfilled in past time; past perfect subjunctive with **utinam**:

utinam ***scrīpsisset***, *would* (or *I wish*) *that he had written*

f. POSSIBILITY (Potential Subjunctive), to express what may be or might be. The negative is **nōn**:

aliquis ***dīcat***, *some one may say*
tum ***vidērēs***, *then you might have seen*

NOTE. The subjunctive denoting possibility is often used as the conclusion of an expressed or implied condition:

laudētur **(sī hoc faciat)**, *he would be praised* (if he should do this)
laudārētur **(sī hoc faceret)**, *he would be praised* (if he were doing this)
laudātus esset **(sī hoc fēcisset)**, *he would have been praised* (if he had done this)

THE IMPERATIVE

173. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty:

"***dēsilīte***," **inquit**, "**commīlitōnēs**," "*leap down*, *fellow soldiers*," *he said*, B. G. IV. 25

NOTE. A negative command, or prohibition, is regularly expressed by **nōlī**, **nōlīte**, with the infinitive (§ 172. *c*. note 1):

nōlī committere, *do not bring it to pass*, cf. B. G. I. 13

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Clauses of Purpose

174. Clauses denoting the purpose of an action are usually introduced by **ut,** *that* (*in order that*), affirmative; and **nē,** *that not*, *lest*, negative; and stand in the subjunctive mood:

> **nōn nūllī** ***ut*** **timōris suspīciōnem** ***vītārent*** **remanēbant,** *some remained that they might avoid the suspicion of fear*, B.G. I. 39
>
> ***nē*** **graviōrī bellō** ***occurreret*** **ad exercitum proficīscitur,** *he set out for the army that he might not meet with too serious a war*, B.G. IV. 6

175. Relative Clauses of Purpose. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

> **lēgātōs mittunt** ***quī dīcerent,*** *they sent envoys to say* (lit. *who should say*), B.G. I. 7

176. Relative Purpose Clauses containing a Comparative. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by **quō,** which is equivalent to **ut eō:**

> **manipulōs laxāre iussit** ***quō facilius*** **gladiīs ūtī** ***possent,*** *he gave orders to open the ranks that they might be able to use their swords more easily*, B.G. II. 25

NOTE. For *substantive clauses of purpose* see (§ 183). Purpose may be expressed also by the gerund (§§ 223, 225), the gerundive (§§ 224, 225), or the supine (§ 226. *a*).

Clauses of Description or Characteristic

177. A relative clause that describes an antecedent by telling *what kind* of person or thing it is, is called a clause of *description* or *characteristic*, and takes the subjunctive:

> **domī nihil erat** ***quō*** **famem** ***tolerārent,*** *there was nothing at home whereby they could allay hunger*, B.G. I. 28

a. Relative clauses of description are especially common after such expressions as **est quī, sunt quī, ūnus est quī, sōlus est quī**:

> ***erant* omnīnō itinera duo *quibus* itineribus domō exīre *possent*,** *there were in all two ways by which they could go out from home*, B.G. I. 6
>
> ***ūnus sum quī* addūcī nōn *potuerim*,** *I am the only one who could not be influenced*, B.G. I. 31

178. A relative clause that simply tells *what* person or thing the antecedent is, instead of *what kind* it is, or one that only *adds a fact* without which the antecedent clause would still be complete, takes the indicative:

> **ubi ea diēs *quam cōnstituerat* cum lēgātīs vēnit, negat sē posse** etc., *when the day which he had decided upon with the envoys came, he said that he could not* etc., B.G. I. 8

Quam cōnstituerat tells *what* day, not *what kind* of day.

> **auxilia ex Britanniā, *quae* contrā eās regiōnēs *posita est*, arcessunt,** *they summoned reënforcements from Britain, which is situated opposite to those regions*, B.G. III. 9

The antecedent clause makes complete sense without the **quae** clause.

For relative clauses of description denoting cause see § 190.

Clauses of Result

179. Clauses that express the result of some act or state mentioned in the main clause are introduced by **ut**, *so that*, and take the subjunctive mood. The negative in clauses of result is **nōn**:

> **mōns impendēbat, *ut* facile perpaucī prohibēre *possent*,** *a mountain towered above, so that a very few* (men) *could easily keep* (them) *back*, B.G. I. 6
>
> **collis nāscēbātur silvestris, *ut nōn* facile intrōrsus perspicī *posset*,** *a hill rose, wooded, so that a view within could not easily be gained*, B.G. II. 18

NOTE. A result clause may often be recognized by the presence in the main clause of some word meaning *so*, *so great*, *such*, etc., like **ita, sīc, tantus, tālis**, etc.:

> ***ita* Helvētiī īnstitūtī sunt *utī* obsidēs accipere *cōnsuērint*,** *the Helvetii have been so trained that they are accustomed to take hostages*, B.G. I. 14

180. Relative Clauses of Result. A clause of result may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

> **nēmō est tam senex *quī* sē annum nōn *putet* posse vīvere,** *no one is so old that he does not think* (lit. *who does not think*) *that he can live for a year*

NOTE. Relative clauses of purpose or result may often be tested by noting whether **ut** with a personal or demonstrative pronoun can be substituted for the relative. In the last sentence **ut is** might have been used instead of **quī**.

For substantive clauses of result see § 187.

SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN, CLAUSES

181. A substantive clause is one that is used like a noun, that is, as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate.

182. *Quod* Clauses of Fact. Substantive clauses introduced by **quod**, *that*, take the indicative to state a fact:

> ***quod glōriāminī,* eōdem pertinet,** (the fact) *that you boast*, *amounts to the same thing*, B. G. I. 14

The **quod** clause is the subject of **pertinet**.

> **hōc est miserior fortūna, *quod* nē in occultō quidem querī *audent*,** *their lot is the more pitiful in this*, *that they do not dare to complain even in secret*, B.G. I. 32

The **quod** clause is in apposition with **hōc**.

a. **Quod** at the beginning of a sentence often has the meaning *as to the fact that*:

> ***quod* imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es** etc., *as to the fact that you attacked one canton unexpectedly* etc., B. G. I. 13

183. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Substantive clauses with **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive are used after verbs of *commanding*, *persuading*,

requesting, *urging*, *wishing*, and similar verbs whose action is directed toward the future:

hīs ***utī conquīrerent*** **imperāvit,** *he ordered these to hunt* (them) *up* (lit. *that they should hunt* (them) *up*), B. G. I. 28

persuādet Casticō ***ut*** **rēgnum** ***occupāret,*** *he persuades Casticus to seize the supreme power* (lit. *that he should seize*), B. G. I. 3

In these sentences the **ut** clause is used as object.

dat negōtium Senonibus ***ut*** **ea** ***cognōscant,*** *he employs the Senones to find this out* (lit. *he gives employment to the Senones* etc.), B.G. II. 2

Here the **ut** clause is in apposition with **negōtium.**

erat eī praeceptum ***nē*** **proelium** ***committeret,*** *it had been enjoined on him that he should not engage in battle*, B. G. I. 22

Here the **nē** clause is the subject of **erat praeceptum.**

Note. **Cōnor, iubeō, patior, volō, nōlō,** and **mālō** take the infinitive:

nāvēs longās paulum ***removērī*** **iussit,** *he ordered the ships of war to be withdrawn a little*, B. G. IV. 25

184. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. After verbs of *fearing* substantive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by **nē,** rendered *that*, *lest*, or by **ut,** rendered *that not*:

verēbantur ***nē*** **ad eōs exercitus noster** ***addūcerētur,*** *they feared that our army would be led against them*, cf. B. G. II. 1

verēbantur ***ut*** **exercitus noster ad eōs** ***addūcerētur,*** *they feared that our army would not be led against them*

185. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Hindering and Opposing. Verbs of *hindering*, *opposing*, and the like, are followed by substantive clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by **nē, quīn,** or **quō minus. Nē** is used when the main verb is affirmative, **quīn** when it is negatived, **quō minus** in either case:

dēterrēre **potes** ***nē*** **maior multitūdō** ***trādūcātur,*** *you are able to prevent a larger number from being brought over*, B. G. I. 31

Germānī ***retinērī nōn*** **poterant** ***quīn*** **tēla** ***conicerent,*** *the Germans could not be prevented from hurling their weapons*, B. G. I. 47

neque ***recūsābunt quō minus*** **sub Germānōrum imperiō** ***sint,*** *nor will they refuse to be under the sway of the Germans*, cf. B. G. I. 31

a. Some of these verbs also allow the infinitive:

> **nostrōs nāvibus *ēgredī* prohibēbant,** *they kept our men from going forth from the ships*, B.G. IV. 24

186. Substantive Clauses after *nōn dubitō*, etc. Negatived expressions of doubt (**nōn dubitō,** *I do not doubt*; **nōn dubium est,** *there is no doubt*) are followed by **quīn** (*that*) and the subjunctive:

> ***nōn dubitō quīn* supplicium *sūmat*,** *I do not doubt that he will exact punishment*, B.G. I. 31
>
> ***nōn est dubium quīn* tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī *possint*,** *there is no doubt that the Helvetii are the most powerful* (tribe) *of all Gaul*, B.G. I. 3

187. Substantive Clauses of Result. I. Substantive clauses of result with **ut** and the subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs of *accomplishing, effecting*, etc., especially **faciō, efficiō, perficiō,** etc. They may be used also as appositives:

> **obsidēs *utī* inter sē *dent perficit*,** *he brings it about that they give hostages to one another*, B.G. I. 9 (object)
>
> ***factum est utī* Germānī mercēde *arcesserentur*,** *it was brought about that the Germans were invited for pay*, B.G. I. 31 (subject)
>
> **hanc grātiam refert, *ut gravētur*,** *he makes this return*, (namely) *that he objects*, B.G. I. 35 (appositive)

II. Substantive clauses of result with **ut** and the subjunctive are used as the subject of certain impersonal verbs, such as *it happens, it remains, it is added*, etc., as **fit, accidit, accēdit,** etc.:

> ***accidit ut esset* lūna plēna,** *it happened that there was a full moon*, B.G. IV. 29

NOTE 1. Substantive clauses with **ut**, substantive clauses with **quod** (§ 182), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative (§§ 216, 217) are constructions so nearly equivalent that any one of the three may at times be used with relatively little difference in meaning.

NOTE 2. Indirect questions (§ 201), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative after verbs of *saying* etc. (§ 203), are also substantive clauses.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

188. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, etc. Causal clauses introduced by **quod, quia, quoniam,** or **quandō,** *because*, take:

a. The *indicative* when the reason given is that of the speaker or writer:

> **fortissimī sunt Belgae proptereā *quod* longissimē *absunt*,** *the Belgæ are the bravest because they are farthest away*, B.G. I. 1

Here Cæsar gives *his own reason* why the Belgæ are the bravest.

b. The *subjunctive* when the reason given is not that of the speaker or writer, but is simply *alleged* as the reason of some one else:

> **Haeduī (veniēbant) questum *quod* Harūdēs fīnēs *populārentur*,** *the Hædui came to complain because* (they said) *the Harudes were devastating their fields*, B.G. I. 37

Here Cæsar gives, not his own reason, but the reason *alleged* by the Hædui.

189. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Causal clauses introduced by **cum,** *since* or *because*, take the subjunctive:

> **hīs *cum* suā sponte persuādēre nōn *possent*, lēgātōs mittunt,** *since they could not persuade these of their own accord, they sent envoys*, B.G. I. 9
>
> **praesertim *cum* eōrum precibus adductus bellum *suscēperit* queritur,** *he complains especially because influenced by their entreaties he has undertaken the war*, B.G. I. 16

190. Relative Clauses of Cause. Cause may be denoted by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

> **magnam Caesar iniūriam facit *quī* vectīgālia dēteriōra *faciat*,** *Cæsar does a great wrong in making* (lit. *who makes*, i.e. *because he is making*) *the revenues lower*, B.G. I. 36

NOTE. In this use the relative is equivalent to **cum is** etc. It is often preceded by **ut, utpote,** or **quippe.** Cf. B.G. IV. 23, **ut quae . . . habērent.**

Concessive Clauses

191. Concessive Clauses with the Indicative. Concessive clauses with the indicative are introduced by **quamquam, etsī, tametsī,** *although*:

> ***quamquam sunt*** **eiusdem generis, sunt hūmāniōrēs,** *although they are of the same race, they are more civilized*, B.G. IV. 3
>
> **nam *etsī vidēbat*, tamen nōn putābat** etc., *for although he saw, nevertheless he did not think* etc., B.G. I. 46

NOTE. **Quamquam** often introduces a *principal* clause to mark a transition to a new subject of discussion. It is then translated *and yet.*

192. Concessive Clauses with the Subjunctive. Concessive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by **cum, ut, quamvīs,** *although*:

> ***cum*** **ea ita *sint*, tamen sī obsidēs dabuntur, pācem faciam,** *although these things are so, nevertheless, if hostages shall be given, I will make peace*, B.G. I. 14
>
> **ac iam *ut* omnia contrā opīniōnem *acciderent*, tamen perspiciēbant** etc., *and although now all things should fall out contrary to their expectation, nevertheless they were well aware* etc., B.G. III. 9

NOTE. **Cum** is used in temporal clauses (*when*, § 194) and in causal clauses (*since*, § 189) as well as in concessive clauses (*although*). When **tamen** (*nevertheless*) occurs in the main clause, the **cum** clause is concessive; if **praesertim** (*especially*) precedes, the **cum** clause is probably causal.

Temporal Clauses

193. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam, ut, ubi,* etc. Temporal clauses introduced by **postquam,** *after*, **ut, ubi,** *when*, **cum prīmum, simul, simul atque (ac),** *as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present:

> ***postquam*** **omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venīre *vīdit*, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit,** *after he saw that all the forces of the Belgæ were coming toward him, he hastened to lead his army across*, B.G. II. 5
>
> **Caesar *ubi* suōs urgērī *vīdit*, prōcessit,** *when Cæsar saw that his men were hard pressed, he advanced*, B.G. II. 25

194. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Temporal clauses introduced by **cum**, *when*, and referring to the present or future, take the indicative; but referring to the past they have two uses:

a. Definitive: to define or fix the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. The mood is indicative:

> ***cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī,** *when Cæsar came into Gaul, the Hædui were at the head of one faction*, B.G. VI. 12

b. Descriptive: to describe the situation or circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. The mood is subjunctive (past or past perfect):

> ***cum* ab hīs *quaereret*, sīc reperiēbat,** *when he made inquiries from these, he gained the following information*, B.G. II. 4
>
> ***cum* dē imprōvīsō *vēnisset*, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt,** *when he had come unexpectedly, the Remi sent envoys*, B.G. II. 3

In the sentence (§ 194. *a*) **cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī,** the time of the Hæduan supremacy is merely *dated*, or *fixed*, by the **cum** clause, and is true independently of Cæsar's coming. They were at the head of one faction whether he came or not.

In the sentence (§ 194. *b*) **cum dē imprōvīsō vēnisset, Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt,** the fact **Rēmī lēgātōs mīsērunt,** *the Remi sent envoys*, is not true independently of his coming. They sent them under the circumstances occasioned by his coming. They would not have sent them if he had not come.

NOTE. Temporal clauses of description with **cum** correspond closely with relative clauses of description (§ 177).

195. *Cum* Clauses denoting Time and Cause. Sometimes the idea of *time* is combined with that of *cause*. In such cases **cum** with the subjunctive is always used:

> **Helvētiī, *cum* id *intellegerent*, lēgātōs mīsērunt,** *the Helvetii sent envoys when* (since) *they learned that*, cf. B.G. I. 13

NOTE. This use corresponds with the relative clause of cause (§ 190).

196. *Cum* meaning *whenever*. **Cum,** *whenever*, denoting a repeated action, is generally followed by the indicative:

ad eōs sē, *cum* ūsus *est*, recipiunt, *they retreat to these whenever it is necessary*, cf. B. G. IV. 2

***cum* fūnēs *adductī erant*, praerumpēbantur,** *whenever the ropes were drawn tight, they were broken off*, B.G. III. 14

197. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*. Temporal clauses introduced by **antequam** or **priusquam,** *before*, have the following uses:

a. When they denote an *actual fact* they take the indicative:

neque *prius* fugere dēstitērunt, *quam* ad flūmen Rhēnum *pervēnērunt*, *nor did they cease to flee, before they reached the river Rhine*, B.G. I. 53

b. When they denote something *anticipated*, but not sure, they take the subjunctive:

***priusquam* quicquam *cōnārētur*, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet,** *before undertaking anything, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to him*, B.G. I. 19

198. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*. I. **Dum,** meaning *while*, takes the indicative in the historical present (§ 153. *a*), even though the time is past:

***dum* haec *geruntur*, Caesarī nūntiātum est,** *while this was going on, word was brought to Cæsar*, B.G. I. 46

II. **Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** meaning *as long as*, take the indicative:

***quoad potuit*, fortissimē restitit,** *he resisted bravely as long as he was able*, B.G. IV. 12

III. **Dum, dōnec,** and **quoad,** meaning *until*, have two uses:

a. The indicative, to denote an *actual fact*:

neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt *quoad* praecipitēs hostēs *ēgērunt*, *nor did they cease pursuing until they routed the enemy*, B.G. V. 17

b. The subjunctive, to denote something *anticipated*:

***dum* nāvēs *convenīrent* exspectāvit,** *he waited until the ships should arrive*, B.G. IV. 23

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

199. Definition. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence containing an independent clause and a subordinate clause introduced by **sī,** *if,* or **nisi, sī nōn,** *unless, if not.* The subordinate clause is called the *condition* (or *protasis*) and the main clause the *conclusion* (or *apodosis*).

Conditional clauses are divided as to time into the following three classes:

I. PRESENT CONDITIONS:

a. Non-Committal Conditions (that is, those in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the case supposed); these take the present indicative:

sī hoc facit, laudātur, *if he is doing this, he is praised*

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past (imperfect) subjunctive:

sī hoc faceret, laudārētur, *if he were doing this* (but he is not), *he would be praised* (at the present time)

II. FUTURE CONDITIONS:

a. More Probable Conditions; these take the future or future perfect indicative:

sī hoc faciet, laudābitur, *if he does* (shall do) *this, he will be praised*
sī hoc fēcerit, laudābitur, *if he shall have done this, he will be praised*

b. Less Probable Conditions; these take the present or perfect subjunctive:

sī hoc faciat (fēcerit), laudētur, *if he should do this, he would be praised*

III. PAST CONDITIONS:

a. Non-Committal Conditions; these take the past descriptive (imperfect) or perfect indicative:

sī hoc faciēbat, laudābātur, *if he was doing this, he was praised*
sī hoc fēcit, laudātus est, *if he did this, he was praised*

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive:

> ***sī hoc fēcisset, laudātus esset,*** *if he had done this* (but he did not), *he would have been praised*

NOTE. The conditional clause, not the conclusion, determines the class to which a conditional sentence belongs. Although both parts are usually in the same mood and tense, yet the conclusion may be in any form of the verb that the sense requires; for example:

> ***sī hoc facit, eum laudāte,*** *if he is doing this, praise him*

Because of the form of the conditional clause this conditional sentence must be classed as present non-committal.

200. Clauses of Comparison with *velut, velut sī.* A conditional clause of comparison introduced by **velut, velut sī,** *as if,* takes the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses (§ 162):

> **absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, *velut sī* cōram *adsit,* horrent,** *they stand in fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence* (**absentis**) *just as* (they would) *if he were* (should be) *present,* B.G. I. 32

NOTE. Such a condition has the future less probable form in the Latin, though in English it has the form of a condition contrary to fact. The sentence above, thrown back into past time, reads **velut sī adesset, horrēbant.**

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

201. Indirect questions are substantive interrogative clauses used, generally as object, after verbs of *inquiring, asking, knowing, telling,* etc. The verb in indirect questions is in the subjunctive.

> **quae in eō *reprehendat* ostendit,** *he points out what he censures in him,* B.G. I. 20
>
> **intellegō quantō id cum periculō *fēcerim,*** *I know with how great danger I did that,* B.G. I. 17

NOTE. The same interrogative words that introduce direct questions (§ 170) are used with indirect; but questions answered by "yes" or "no" are introduced without distinction by **num** or **-ne,** translated *whether.*

Indirect Discourse

202. A direct quotation is a statement made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer. Such a statement is said to be in the *direct discourse*:

> **hīs Caesar respondit, "Minus mihi dubitātiōnis datur,"** *to these Cæsar answered, "I entertain less* (of) *doubt,"* B.G. I. 14
>
> **"dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs,"** *"leap down, comrades," he said,* B.G. IV. 25

203. An indirect quotation is a reported statement, not made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer, but adapted to the form of the sentence used by the person quoting them. Such a statement is said to be in *indirect discourse*, and is used after verbs of *saying* and *thinking*:

> **hīs Caesar respondit** ***sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī,*** *to these Cæsar answered that he entertained less* (of) *doubt,* B.G. I. 14

a. Sometimes the verb of *saying* is not expressed, but is understood from the context:

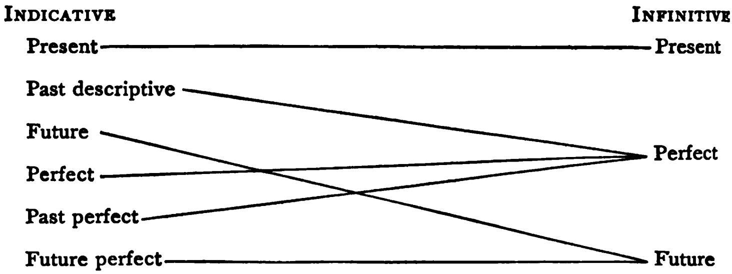
> **eōs incūsāvit: Ariovistum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam adpetīsse,** *he upbraided them* (saying) *that Ariovistus had sought to gain the friendship of the Roman people,* B.G. I. 40

b. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to *imply* that the quotation is indirect. This is called *implied indirect discourse* (§ 208 and *b*):

> **Caesar frūmentum quod** ***essent pollicitī*** **flāgitāre,** *Cæsar demanded the grain which* (as he said) *they had promised,* B.G. I. 16

Independent Sentences in Indirect Discourse

204. Declarative Sentences. In declarative sentences the six tenses of the indicative, on becoming indirect, pass into the three corresponding tenses of the infinitive with subject accusative, as shown by the following table:



a. The subject accusative (§ 92) of the infinitive is regularly expressed in indirect discourse, even if it was not used in the direct. Pronouns of the first and second person are changed to those of the third (if the verb of saying is in the third person), the reflexive forms (§ 132) being used to refer to the subject of the verb of *saying*:

DIRECT: **(ego) trānsiī nōn meā sponte,** *I did not cross of my own free will*

INDIRECT: **Ariovistus respondit trānsisse *sēsē* nōn *suā* sponte,** *Ariovistus replied that he had not crossed of his own free will*, B.G. I. 44

205. Imperative Sentences. An imperative in the direct discourse is changed in the indirect to the subjunctive; the present being used after a primary tense, the past after a secondary tense:

respondit sī quid vellent, *reverterentur*, *he answered that if they wanted anything, they should return*, B.G. I. 7

This sentence in the direct form would be

sī quid vultis, revertiminī, *if you want anything, return*

206. Prohibitions. In a prohibition having **nōlī, nōlīte,** and the infinitive in the direct discourse (§ 173. note), the infinitive is changed to the present or past subjunctive with **nē** in the indirect according to the sequence of tenses, and **nōlī** disappears:

nōlī committere, *do not bring it to pass*, B.G. I. 13

This prohibition when changed to indirect discourse becomes

nē committeret, (Divico said) *that he should not bring it to pass*

207. Questions. I. *Real Questions* (§ 170) on becoming indirect change their verbs from the indicative to the subjunctive, the tenses conforming to the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: **cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs?** *why do you come into my possessions?* B.G. I. 44

INDIRECT: **Ariovistus respondit . . . cūr in suās possessiōnēs *venīret*,** *Ariovistus answered* (asking) *why he came into his possessions*

II. *a. Rhetorical Questions* (§ 171) that have the indicative in the direct discourse, change the indicative to the infinitive in the indirect:

DIRECT: **num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum?** *can I put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs?* B.G. I. 14

INDIRECT: **Caesar respondit . . . num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere *posse*,** *Cæsar answered* (asking) *whether he could put aside the recollection* etc.

b. Rhetorical Questions that have the deliberative subjunctive (§ 172. *d*) in the direct, retain the subjunctive in the indirect; the tense follows the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: **cūr dē vestrā virtūte dēspērētis?** *why should you be diffident of your own courage?* B.G. I. 40

INDIRECT: **(quaesīvit) cūr dē suā virtūte *dēspērārent*,** (*he inquired*) *why they should be diffident of their own courage*

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

208. General Rule; Mood. Verbs in the subordinate clauses of complex sentences are changed to or remain in the subjunctive:

DIRECT: **hī sunt īdem Germānī quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuērunt,** *these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army*, B.G. I. 40

INDIRECT: **(Caesar dīcit) hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn *potuerint*,** (*Cæsar says*) *that these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army*

a. If the statement made in the subordinate clause is true independently of the words of the speaker or writer, the indicative mo may be retained:

certior factus est, ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs ***concesserat*****, omnēs noctū discessisse,** *he was informed that all had departed by night from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls*, B.G. III. 2

b. Implied Indirect Discourse. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to *imply* that the quotation is indirect. This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 203. *b*):

Caesar frūmentum quod ***essent pollicitī*** **flāgitāre,** *Cæsar demanded the grain which* (as he said) *they had promised*, B.G. I. 16

209. Tense. The tense of verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb of *saying*, according to the rule for the sequence of tenses; for example, **dīcit,** *he says*, will be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive; **dīxit,** *he said*, by the past or past perfect subjunctive:

Direct: **id quod in Nerviīs fēcī, faciam,** *I will do that which I did in* (the case of) *the Nervii*, B.G. II. 32

Indirect: **dīcit sē id quod in Nerviīs** ***fēcerit*****, factūrum esse,** *he says that he will do that which he did in* (the case of) *the Nervii*

dīxit sē id quod in Nerviīs ***fēcisset*****, factūrum esse,** *he said that he would do that which he had done in* (the case of) *the Nervii*

Direct: **verēmur angustiās itineris quae intercēdunt,** *we fear the difficulties of the way which intervene*, cf. B.G. I. 39

Indirect: **dīcunt sē verērī angustiās itineris quae** ***intercēdant*****,** *they say that they fear the difficulties of the way which intervene*

dīxērunt sē verērī angustiās itineris quae ***intercēderent*****,** *they said that they feared the difficulties of the way which intervened*

Note. As a rule the same verb stem will be used in the subjunctive as was used in the indicative; for example, a present or future indicative will become a present or past subjunctive; a perfect or future perfect indicative will become a perfect or past perfect subjunctive.

Exception: Sometimes for the sake of vividness a primary tense is used in the subjunctive after a secondary tense of a verb of *saying*:

respondit ita Helvētiōs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, ***cōnsuērint*****,** *he replied that the Helvetii had been so trained that they were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give* (them), B.G. I. 14

Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse

210. All conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative (§ 199. I. *a*, II. *a*, III. *a*) are treated in indirect discourse as ordinary complex sentences, the verb in the main clause (conclusion) being changed to the infinitive, and the verb in the subordinate clause (condition) to the subjunctive:

DIRECT: **hostēs sī bellum gerunt, vincunt,** *if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering*

INDIRECT: **dīcit hostēs, sī bellum** ***gerant, vincere,*** *he says that if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering*

211. In future less probable conditions (§ 199. II. *b*) the verb in the conclusion (which, of course, is the main verb) is changed to the *future infinitive*; the verb in the condition, being in a subordinate clause, remains in the subjunctive, though the tense may have to be changed to accord with the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: **hostēs sī bellum gerant, vincant,** *if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer*

INDIRECT: **dīcit hostēs, sī bellum** ***gerant, victūrōs esse,*** *he says that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer*

dīxit hostēs, sī bellum ***gererent, victūrōs esse,*** *he said that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer*

212. In future conditions, either more or less probable (§ 199. II. *a*, *b*), a passive verb in the conclusion of the direct discourse is expressed by **fore (futūrum esse) ut** with the present subjunctive after a primary tense, past subjunctive after a secondary tense:

DIRECT: **sī bellum gerent, vincentur,** *if they shall wage war, they will be conquered* (more probable)

sī bellum gerant, vincantur, *if they should wage war, they would be conquered* (less probable)

INDIRECT (both more probable and less probable): **dīcit sī bellum gerant** ***fore ut vincantur,*** *he says that if they shall* (*should*) *wage war, they will* (*would*) *be conquered*

dīxit sī bellum gererent ***fore ut vincerentur,*** *he said that if they should wage war, they would be conquered*

213. In conditions contrary to fact (§ 199. I. *b*, III. *b*) the verb in the *condition* (past or past perfect subjunctive) remains unchanged. The verb in the *conclusion* (past or past perfect subjunctive) undergoes the following changes:

a. If it is in the active voice, it is changed to the proper form of the future participle in **-ūrus** with **fuisse**:

DIRECT: **hostēs sī bellum gererent, vincerent,** *if the enemy were waging war* (now), *they would be conquering*

INDIRECT: **dīcit (or dīxit) hostēs, sī bellum gererent, victūrōs fuisse,** *he says* (or *said*) *that if the enemy were waging war, they would be conquering*

DIRECT: **hostēs sī bellum gessissent, vīcissent,** *if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

INDIRECT: **dīcit (or dīxit) hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, victūrōs fuisse,** *he says* (or *said*) *that if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

b. If the verb in the conclusion is in the passive voice, the form **futūrum fuisse ut** is used, followed by the past subjunctive of the verb to be changed:

DIRECT: **hostēs sī bellum gessissent, victī essent,** *if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered*

INDIRECT: **dīcit (or dīxit) futūrum fuisse ut hostēs, sī bellum gessissent, vincerentur,** *he says* (or *said*) *that if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered.*

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

214. A subordinate verb that would regularly be in the indicative is sometimes attracted to the subjunctive by another subjunctive (or equivalent infinitive), on which it depends:

monuit, ut maritimae rēs *postulārent*, omnēs rēs administrārentur, *he directed that all things should be executed as naval tactics demanded*, B. G. IV. 23

dat negōtium Senonibus utī ea quae apud eōs *gerantur* cognōscant, *he employs the Senones to find out those things which are going on among them*, B. G. II. 2

The Infinitive

215. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may be transitive or intransitive, but expresses neither person nor number. As a noun it has certain case constructions.

216. The Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as subject:

a. With **esse**:

> **perfacile est cōnāta** ***perficere,*** *it is easy to accomplish the undertakings*, B.G. I. 3

b. With impersonal verbs:

> **nōn oportet** ***mē impedīrī,*** *it is not proper that I should be hindered*, B.G. I. 36

217. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as object:

a. With subject accusative; after verbs of *wishing*, *ordering*, *permitting*, *allowing*, and the like:

> ***līberōs*** **obsidēs ad sē** ***addūcī*** **iussit,** *he ordered the children to be brought to him* (as) *hostages*, B.G. II. 5

b. With subject accusative; after verbs of *saying*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, and the like. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse (§§ 203, 204):

> **Caesar certior fīēbat omnēs** ***Belgās coniūrāre,*** *Cæsar was informed that all the Belgæ were conspiring*, B.G. II. 1

c. Without subject accusative; to complete the predicate of verbs meaning *to be able*, *be accustomed*, *decide*, *begin*, *dare*, *try*, and the like, which require another action of the same subject. Such verbs are called verbs of incomplete predication, and the accompanying infinitive is called the *complementary infinitive*:

> **cōpias** ***parāre coepērunt,*** *they began to prepare forces*, B.G. III. 23
>
> ***cōnstituērunt*** **ea** ***comparāre,*** *they decided to prepare those things*, B.G. I. 3

218. Historical Infinitive. In vivid narration the infinitive with subject *nominative* may be used for the past descriptive indicative:

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum *flāgitāre*, *Cæsar demanded grain of the Hædui*, B.G. I. 16

PARTICIPLES

219. Participles are verbal adjectives; as adjectives they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case; as verbs they have tense and voice, and may take an object. For tense distinctions see § 167.

220. The present and past participles are often used predicatively where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be employed:

a. Time:

patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā *vexātā*, *within the memory of our fathers, when all Gaul was ravaged* (lit. *all Gaul having been ravaged*), B.G. II. 4

b. Cause:

quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer *commōtus* mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, *because he was greatly disturbed by these facts, Cæsar thought that he ought to hasten*, B.G. I. 37

c. Condition:

***damnātum* poenam sequī oportēbat,** *punishment was to follow, if he was condemned* (lit. *having been condemned*), B.G. I. 4

d. Concession:

beneficiō *adfectus* hanc grātiam refert, *though he has been treated with kindness, he makes this return* (lit. *having been treated*), cf. B.G. I. 35

e. Simple Relative Clause:

***submōtīs* restitērunt,** *they resisted those who had been routed*, cf. B.G. I. 25

221. Participles used as Nouns. The present and past participles are often used as nouns:

opīniōnem *pugnantium* praebēbant, *they gave the impression of* (men) *fighting*, cf. B.G. III. 25

222. The Periphrastic Conjugations. I. The future participle in **-ūrus** is used with the verb **sum** to form what is called the *active periphrastic conjugation.* This denotes future, or intended, action:

> **praeter quod sēcum *portātūrī erant*,** *except what they were going to carry with them*, B.G. I. 5

II. The future passive participle, or gerundive in **-ndus** (§ 224), is used with the verb **sum** to form what is called the *passive periphrastic conjugation.* This is used to denote *what must be*, or *ought to be, done.*

The word representing the person upon whom the duty or obligation rests is put in the dative of apparent agent (§ 87):

> **omnēs cruciātūs *sunt perferendī*,** *all* (kinds of) *cruelties have to be endured*, cf. B.G. I. 32
>
> ***Caesarī* omnia ūnō tempore *erant agenda*,** *Cæsar had to do all things at one time* (lit. *all things had to be done by Cæsar* etc.), B.G. II. 20

NOTE. Intransitive verbs in the passive periphrastic conjugation are regularly used impersonally:

> ***concēdendum esse* nōn putābat,** *he did not think that he ought to comply* (lit. *that it ought to be complied*)

GERUND

223. The gerund is an active verbal noun with stem like that of the gerundive. It is found only in the neuter gender, and in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of the second declension. It is governed in general as a noun, and may have the modifiers of a verb:

a. Genitive:

> **hominēs *bellandī* cupidī,** *men eager for warfare* (lit. *desirous of warring*), B.G. I. 2

b. Dative; the dative of the gerund is rare except with a few adjectives.

c. Accusative; the accusative of the gerund is used only with prepositions and does not take an object:

> **Caesar respondit diem sē *ad dēlīberandum* sūmptūrum (esse),** *Cæsar answered that he would take time for deliberating*, B.G. I. 7

d. Ablative:

reperiēbat ***in quaerendō*** **Caesar,** *Cæsar found on inquiry* (lit. *in inquiring*), B.G. I. 18

NOTE. The gerund with a direct object is found as a rule only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

GERUNDIVE

224. The gerundive (ending in **-ndus**) is a passive verbal adjective, declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions. It is used as follows:

a. The gerundive as a predicate adjective in the *passive periphrastic conjugation* (§ 222. II) denotes *what must be*, or *ought to be, done.*

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant ***agenda,*** *Cæsar had to do all things at one time* (lit. *all things had to be done by Cæsar* etc.), B.G. II. 20

b. The gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund with a direct object (§ 223, note). The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have:

praedae faciendae **facultās dabātur,** *an opportunity for securing* (lit. *of securing*) *plunder was afforded*, cf. B.G. IV. 34

The equivalent gerund construction would be **praedam faciendī facultās,** with **praedam** as object of the gerund **faciendī.** The translation in both constructions is the same.

ab hīs fit initium ***retinendī Sīlī,*** *these take the initiative in detaining Silius*, B.G. III. 8

in petendā pāce **culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt,** *in seeking peace they attributed the fault to the multitude*, B.G. IV. 27

ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, *for accomplishing these measures*, B.G. I. 3

c. With the personal and reflexive forms **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī,** a form in **-ndī** is commonly used without change in gender or number:

neque ***suī conligendī*** **hostibus facultātem relinquunt,** *neither do they leave to the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves*, B.G. III. 6

As **suī** is plural, we might here expect **conligendōrum** to agree with it.

d. The gerundive may be used as an attributive adjective. In this use it often expresses purpose after verbs like **cūrō,** *to care for, see to*, etc.:

> **pontem** ***faciendum*** **cūrat,** ***he causes a bridge to be built*** (lit. ***he sees to a bridge to be built***), B.G. I. 13

Gerund and Gerundive expressing Purpose

225. Both gerund and gerundive are used to express purpose:

a. In the accusative with **ad**:

> **respondit diem sē** ***ad dēliberandum*** **sūmptūrum (esse),** ***he replied that he would take time to deliberate***, B.G. I. 7
>
> ***ad eās rēs cōnficiendās*** **Orgetorix dēligitur,** ***Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these measures***, B.G. I. 3

b. In the genitive with **causā** or **grātiā**:

> **venīsne** ***speculandī causā?*** ***do you come for the sake of spying?*** cf. B.G. I. 47
>
> **id nōn** ***Galliae oppugnandae causā*** **faciō,** ***I am not doing that for the sake of attacking Gaul***, B.G. I. 44

SUPINE

226. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative **(-um)** and ablative **(-ū)**:

a. The supine in **-um** is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

> **vēnī auxilium** ***postulātum,*** ***I came to ask aid***, B.G. I. 31

b. The supine in **-ū** is used with adjectives like an ablative of respect (§ 115):

> **optimum** ***factū*** **esse dūxērunt,** ***they considered it the best thing to do*** (lit. ***best with respect to doing***), B.G. IV. 30

NOTE. The supine in **-um** may take an object; the supine in **-ū** never does:

> **lēgātōs mittunt** ***rogātum auxilium,*** ***they send envoys to ask aid***, B.G. I. 11.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

227. Dates were reckoned by the Romans as follows:

a. By the Roman calendar, as reformed by Julius and Augustus Cæsar, the year had 365 days, divided into months as at present, February having 29 days every fourth year.

b. The names of the months, used as adjectives, were as follows:

Iānuārius, -a, -um	**Māius, -a, -um**	**September, -bris, -bre**
Februārius, -a, -um	**Iūnius, -a, -um**	**Octōber, -bris, -bre**
Mārtius, -a, -um	**Quīntīlis, -e**	**November, -bris, -bre**
Aprīlis, -e	**Sextīlis, -e**	**December, -bris, -bre**

NOTE. The seventh month (**Quīntīlis**) was later called **Iūlius** in honor of Julius Cæsar, and the eighth (**Sextīlis**), **Augustus**, in honor of that emperor.

c. The year was formerly regarded as beginning with March, which made July the *fifth* (**quīntīlis**) month, August the *sixth* (**sextīlis**), September the *seventh* (**september**), etc.

d. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month, namely, the *Calends* (**Kalendae, -ārum**), the first day of the month; the *Nones* (**Nōnae, -ārum**), the fifth day; and the *Ides* (**Īdūs, Īduum**), the thirteenth.

However, in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell on the seventh day, and the Ides on the fifteenth.

Kalendae (1) **Nōnae** (5–7) **Īdūs** (13–15) **Kalendae** (1)

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 . . . 27 28 29 30 31 1

e. An event occurring at any one of these points was said to occur *on the Calends*, *on the Nones*, *on the Ides*, and the date was expressed by the simple ablative of time. The noun denoting the date was modified by the adjective representing the month in question:

> **Kalendīs Februāriīs**, *on the first of February*
> **Nōnīs Aprīlibus**, *on the fifth of April*
> **Nōnīs Octōbribus**, *on the seventh of October*
> **Īdibus Iānuāriīs**, *on the thirteenth of January*
> **Īdibus Mārtiīs**, *on the fifteenth of March*

f. From the Calends, Nones, and Ides the dates in the month were reckoned *backwards*. The date immediately preceding any one of them was expressed by the word **prīdiē**, used as a preposition followed by the accusatives **Kalendās, Nōnās, Īdūs**, modified by the adjective form of the word denoting the month:

prīdiē Kalendās Februāriās, *the thirty-first of January*
prīdiē Nōnās Iānuāriās, *the fourth of January*
prīdiē Īdūs Mārtiās, *the fourteenth of March*
prīdiē Īdūs Septembrēs, *the twelfth of September*

g. The dates intervening between any two points were counted as so many days *before* the second point. The Romans, however, in reckoning a series, counted both extremes; for example, the eleventh day of April was counted as the *third* day before the Ides (that is, the thirteenth), the tenth of April as the *fourth* day before the Ides.

h. In expressing dates the phrase **ante diem** (translated *the day before*) was used with the accusatives **Kalendās, Nōnās, Īdūs**, the word **diem** being modified by the proper ordinal numeral:

ante diem tertium Kalendās Octōbrēs, *the third day before the Calends of October* (*September 29*)
ante diem quārtum Kalendās Octōbrēs, *the fourth day before the Calends of October* (*September 28*)
ante diem sextum Īdūs Mārtiās, *the sixth day before the Ides of March* (*March 10*)
ante diem quīntum Nōnās Māiās, *the fifth day before the Nones of May* (*May 3*)

NOTE. These expressions were generally abbreviated as follows:

(a. d.) III. Kal. Oct., (a. d.) VI. Īd. Mārt., etc.

i. To find the equivalent in English for a date given in Latin, observe the following rule:

If the given Latin date is counted from the Calends, add *two* to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given date; if from the Nones or the Ides, add *one* to the day on which they fall, and from the number thus obtained subtract the given date

j. The whole expression denoting a date was sometimes treated as a single substantive governed by a preposition; compare the following:

in a.d. V. Kal. Nov., *to the fifth day before the Calends of November (October 28)*

opus contulit in ante diem III. Īd. Oct., *he postponed the work to the 13th of October*

NOTE. Before Julius Cæsar reformed the calendar (46 B.C.), the Roman year consisted of 355 days. All the months had 29 days except March, May, July, and October, which had 31 days, and February, which had 28. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, a month of varying length (*mēnsis intercalāris*) was inserted after February 23 every other year.

228. The Roman year was designated either by the names of the consuls (as, **M. Messālā M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus,** B.G. I. 2) or by the number of the year reckoned from the founding of the city (**ab urbe conditā** abbreviated to **A. U. C.**). The founding of the city is assigned to the year 753 B.C. In order, therefore, to find the year of the Christian era corresponding to a given Roman date A.U.C., the number of the Roman year must be subtracted from 754, 1 being added to 753 to allow for the Roman custom of including both extremes when reckoning the difference between two numbers. For example, Caesar was killed in 710 A.U.C., or 44 (754–710) B.C.

LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. Order of Words. In English the words of a sentence stand in a more or less fixed order. Emphasis is indicated *when speaking* by stress of voice, and in a *written* sentence by the use of italics or by underscoring the emphatic words. In Latin, on the other hand, emphasis and the relative importance of words are shown by their position in the sentence.

2. The most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the middle.

3. As the most important word in the sentence is normally the *subject*, and the second in importance is normally the *verb*, the tendency is to place these respectively *first* and *last*. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows:

Strong *Weak* *Strong*



Subject *followed by its modifiers* *Modifiers followed by* **Verb**

4. For convenience this is called the *normal order*. Departure from the normal order is frequent, however, from the fact that in Latin, just as in English, other words or groups of words may be regarded as of more importance than the subject or the verb. This importance may be indicated:

a. By placing words to be emphasized *first*, more rarely *last*:

> ***Gallōs*** **Garumna flūmen dīvidit**, *the Gauls are separated by the Garonne river* (lit. *the Gauls the Garonne river separates*)
> ***magna*** **dīs immortālibus habenda est** ***grātia***, *great gratitude is due the immortal gods*

b. By reversing the normal order, especially of nouns with attributive adjectives (§ 61) and nouns with modifying genitives. The normal position of demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, and adjectives of quantity and place (for example, **ulterior, citerior, inferior,** etc.) is *before* the nouns they modify; the normal position of other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and genitives is *after* their nouns:

> **ille imperātor,** *that general* (normal order)
> **imperātor ille,** *that famous general* (normal order reversed)
> **mors frātris tuī,** *the death of your brother* (normal order)
> **tuī frātris mors,** *your brother's death* (normal order reversed)

c. The appositive (§ 54) normally follows its noun; when emphatic it precedes:

> **Caesar imperātor,** *Cæsar, the general*
> **imperātor Caesar,** *the general, Cæsar*

d. The subject may stand last, or the verb first, to indicate unusual emphasis:

> **dēlectat mē ōrātiō,** *the speech delights me*

e. The copula **sum** (§ 48. II. *b*) ordinarily stands last, or between the subject and predicate; but when it emphasizes *existence* (there *was*, there *is*, etc.), it stands first, or at any rate before the subject:

> **erat nūllum aliud iter,** *there was no other way*

EXERCISE

5. Translate the following sentences, so arranging the words as to show the importance of those italicized:

1. Orgetorix, who was the *richest* of the Helvetii, made a *conspiracy*. 2. *The Helvetii were hemmed in* on all sides. 3. The Helvetii excel[1]

[2] *the rest of the Gauls.* 4. There is a river, the Rhone by name,[3] which separates *our* province. 5. The territories *of the Belgæ* are farthest away. 6. They keep the Germans away from *their* territories *by almost daily battles.*[4] 7. Many of the Helvetii were *noble*, but *Orgetorix excelled*[1] the rest. 8. *A very high* mountain hems them in [5] on one side. 9. Orgetorix persuaded *certain ones*[6] of the Helvetii[7] who were desirous of power. 10. *The Sequani* are *nearest* to the province, *the Belgæ* are *farthest away.*

NOTE. A superior figure standing *after* a word (for example, so[1]) refers to that word only; placed before a word (for example, [1] so), it refers to two or more following words.

[1] Followed by the dative, § 84. [2] **reliquī**, agreeing with its noun in gender, number, and case, means *the rest of.* [3] Ablative of respect, § 115. [4] Ablative of means, § 106. [5] **ūnā ex parte.** [6] Dative, § 83. [7] Ablative with **ex**, § 76. Exc.

LESSON II

6. General Rules for Agreement.

a. Agreement of Adjectives, § 59.

b. Agreement of Relatives, § 64. *a.*

c. Agreement of Appositives, § 58.

d. Agreement of Verbs, § 65.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xli–xliii)

NOTE. From now on the Exercises are divided into two parts. The sentences in the first part are sufficiently easy to be used for oral work, if desired, and illustrate how the text may be used as a basis for similar sentences. By changing case and number, mood, tense, voice, person, and the like, the teacher may extend the practice at will. For example, " Pelias was the brother of Æson, who held the kingdom in Thessaly"; "The kingdom in Thessaly had been held by Æson, the brother of Pelias."

I. 1. Æson, the brother of Pelias, held the kingdom in Thessaly. 2. The brother whom Pelias had driven out was named Æson. 3. The friends who went to Delphi consulted the oracle. 4. Jason was the man whom the oracle pointed out. 5. The golden fleece which h-

left there was intrusted to the king. **6.** The task which he had undertaken was most difficult. **7.** The brothers do not wish to set out alone. **8.** The messengers whom the king had sent out returned the next day. **9.** The ship that he built was wider than ours. **10.** A great number of men had gathered from all the regions of Greece.

II. There was once a king in Thessaly who was called Æson. When [1] he had held the kingdom (for) a few years,[2] he was driven out by Pelias, his brother. Jason, the son of Æson, [3] would have been put to death, if he [3] had not been snatched out of danger by the friends of his father.[4] After a few years Jason was sent [5] to get possession of the fleece.

[1] **cum.** [2] § 96. [3] § 199. III. *b.* [4] **pater.** [5] Latin, *that he might get possession of*, § 174.

LESSON III

7. Predicate and Attributive Adjectives defined, §§ 60, 61.

8. Agreement of Adjectives with Two or More Nouns, §§ 62, 63 and note.

EXAMPLES

multī puerī et puellae or **puerī et puellae multae,** *many boys and girls*
bonus puer et puella, *the good boy and girl*
puerī et puellae erant bonī, *the boys and girls were good*
rēx et rēgīna captī sunt, *the king and queen were captured*
virtūs et studium mīlitum erant magna, *the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great*
nāvēs captīvīque restitūtī sunt or **nāvēs captīvīque restitūta sunt,** *the ships and the captives were restored*

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xliv, xlv)

I. **1.** Hercules and Orpheus were most famous. **2.** Jason and his ship will be famous. **3.** He was driven back to the same part of the island [1] from which he had set out. **4.** The night was dark, and the danger was great. **5.** The nymph attempted to persuade the boy. **6.** Hercules and the nymph followed the boy. **7.** The Argonauts and

the Harpies were unfriendly. 8. These birds were sent by Jupiter. 9. The birds had been named Harpies. 10. The Argonauts and Phineus rejoiced greatly.

II. [2] Of all the companions whom Jason had chosen I think that Hercules and Orpheus were the most famous. But there were many others whose names were noted. They set sail with the applause of all.

[1] **unde.** [2] Partitive genitive with *most famous*, § 76.

LESSON IV

9. Special Rules for the Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. *a.* note.

EXAMPLES

puerī et puellae quī erant bonī, *the boys and girls who were good*
rēx et rēgīna quī captī sunt, *the king and queen who were captured*
virtūs et studium mīlitum, quae erant magna, *the valor and zeal of the soldiers, which were great*
nāvēs captīvīque quae restitūta sunt, *the ships and the captives which were restored*
Corinthus, quod erat clārum oppidum, *Corinth, which was a famous city*

NOTE. When the antecedents represent both persons and things, the relative pronoun (like the predicate adjective, cf. § 63 and note) may be masculine:

nāvēs captīvīque quī restitūtī sunt

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlvi, xlvii)

I. 1. The messengers whom the king had sent came to the ship. 2. The messenger who came to the ship called Jason to the palace. 3. The rewards that he promised were great. 4. There was a huge rock that had been placed by Jupiter. 5. The rocks that had been placed there were large. 6. This is the large rock that Jupiter had placed there. 7. These are the doves that he sent forth. 8. You will come to the Phasis, which is a river in the territory of the Colchi.

II. When the Argonauts had come to the river Phasis, which is in the territory of the Colchi, Jason demanded of[1] the king [2] that he should hand over the fleece. But the king replied, "I will hand the fleece over if you accomplish[3] two most difficult tasks." Jason replied, "I am ready [4] to undergo all dangers."

[1] ab. [2] ut, § 183. [3] Latin, *shall have accomplished*, § 199. II. *a*. [4] ad with gerundive, § 224. *b*.

LESSON V

10. Agreement of Verbs, §§ 65 and *a*, 67, 68, 69.

EXAMPLES

nūntius mittitur, *a messenger is sent*
nūntiī mittuntur, *messengers are sent*
cōnsul et lēgātus veniunt, *the consul and the envoy are coming*
neque cōnsul neque lēgātus venit, *neither the consul nor the envoy is coming*
senātus haec intellegit, *the senate knows this*
senātus haec intellegunt, *the senate know this*

NOTE. When subjects are of different *persons* the verb is in the *first* person rather than in the *second* or the *third*, and in the *second* rather than in the *third*:

ego et tū scrībimus, *you and I are writing*
ego et Mārcus scrībimus, *Marcus and I are writing*
tū et Mārcus audiēbātis, *you and Marcus heard*

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages xlviii, xlix)

I. 1. Jason and his companions had betaken themselves to the appointed place. 2. Jason with his companions betakes himself to the king. 3. The bulls were inclosed in a huge stable. 4. Medea and her brother had escaped at midnight. 5. Medea will escape with her brother by night. 6. The woman and the boy went to the ship. 7. Neither the woman nor the boy will go to the king. 8. Medea and I went to the ship. 9. You and your brother will be left at the ship. 10. You and I were hurrying into the forest.

II. Jason accomplished with[1] the greatest difficulty the two tasks that had been proposed by the king. Medea, the daughter of the king, who had given aid to Jason, was now in great danger. She went to the place where the Argonauts were and [2]begged them not to forsake her.[3]

[1] **cum**, § 110. [2] **obsecrō nē**, § 183. [3] **sē**, § 133.

LESSON VI

11. Tenses of the Indicative.

a. The Present Indicative, § 153.
b. The Past Descriptive Indicative, § 154. *a*, *b*, *c*.
c. The Future Indicative, § 155.
d. The Perfect Indicative, § 156. *a*, *b*.
e. The Past Perfect Indicative, § 157.
f. The Future Perfect Indicative, § 158.

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages l, li)

I. 1. The tree was being guarded by a dragon. 2. Jason and Medea had approached the tree. 3. The dragon that had been guarding the tree was overcome by sleep. 4. The Argonauts await in vain the return of their leader. 5. A light was seen among the trees. 6. Jason and Medea are received with great joy. 7. It will not be safe to remain in this place. 8. The king of the Colchians pursues the Argonauts. 9. Jason, with the Argonauts, will soon arrive at a river. 10. Jason will return with Medea to Pelias.

II. Jason and Medea went to the tree where the dragon was guarding the golden fleece. The Argonauts, who were waiting in vain at the ship, began to despair of their safety; for[1] they did not doubt that[2] this task was (one)[3] of the greatest danger.

[1] **enim** (does not stand first in its clause). [2] **quīn**, § 186. [3] § 77. *a*.

LESSON VII

12. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and *a.*

13. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse, § 217. *b.*

EXAMPLES

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī pācem faciunt (fēcērunt, facient), *the Romans are making (made, will make) peace*
pācem faciō (fēcī, faciam), *I am making (made, shall make) peace*
occāsiō nōn omittenda est, *the opportunity ought not to be neglected*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcō Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse), *I say that the Romans are making (made, will make) peace*
dīcō mē pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrum esse), *I say that I am making (made, shall make) peace*
dīcō occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, *I say that the opportunity ought not to be neglected*
dīxit Rōmānōs pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans were making (had made, would make) peace*
dīxit sē pācem facere (fēcisse, factūrum esse), *he said that he was making (had made, should make) peace*
dīxit occāsiōnem nōn omittendam esse, *he said that the opportunity ought not to be neglected*

EXERCISE

(Ritchie, pages lii–liv)

I. 1. They handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 2. They said that they had handed over the kingdom to Pelias. 3. His last day is at hand. 4. We saw that his last day was at hand. 5. We shall do this. 6. I said that we should do this. 7. They said that he would do this. 8. He says that they will do this. 9. They see that their father is an old man. 10. We did not think that he would send Medea away. 11. They had hoped that they should receive the kingdom. 12. Medea does not think that this opportunity ought to be neglected.

II. When Jason returned to[1] Thessaly with the golden fleece, Pelias did not wish to hand over the kingdom to him. Medea, Jason's wife, who had hoped that she should be queen,[2] persuaded the daughters[3] of the king to[4] kill their father. But when the citizens had learned that Pelias had perished, they drove Jason and Medea out of the kingdom.

[1] **in**, § 97. [2] **rēgīna**. [3] Dative, § 83. [4] **ut**, § 183.

LESSON VIII

14. Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160; 161. I, II; 162.

15. Clauses of Pure Purpose,* § 174.

16. Relative Clauses of Purpose, §§ 175, 176.

EXAMPLES

explōrātōrēs praemittit ut (or **quī**) **locum dēligant,** *he sends forward scouts to choose a place*

explōrātōrēs praemīsit ut (or **quī**) **locum dēligerent,** *he sent forward scouts to choose a place*

pontem facit quō facilius trānseat, *he builds a bridge that* (by which) *he may cross the more easily*

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 1–3)

I. 1. We do not doubt that[1] the Romans are most powerful. 2. We did not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 3. He does not doubt that the Romans were most powerful. 4. I did not doubt that the Romans had been most powerful. 5. Roman envoys came to the king [2] to learn of his plans. 6. Soldiers will be sent [3] to take the city by storm. 7. Hannibal set out for Spain [2] that he might get an army together and take Saguntum by storm. 8. He set out [4] from Carthage immediately [5] that he might the earlier lead his forces across into Italy.

* The terms "*pure* purpose" and "*pure* result" are used to distinguish *adverbial* clauses of purpose or result from *relative* or *substantive* clauses of this character.

9. He sent lieutenants [3] to collect an army. 10. He built roads [6] that he might the more easily lead his army into Italy.

II. Hannibal, the most famous commander of the Carthaginians, collected an army that he might conquer the Romans; but he was weakened by the envy of his (fellow) citizens. When Hamilcar, his father, was setting out for Spain, he bade [7] his son swear that he [8] would never be [9] on terms of friendship with the Romans. Hannibal gave his father this oath and kept (it).

[1] **quīn**, § 186. [2] Express by an **ut** clause, § 174. An infinitive often expresses purpose in English, but it must not be so used in Latin. [3] Use a relative clause of purpose. [4] § 101. *a*. [5] **quō mātūrius**, lit. *by which the earlier*, § 176. [6] Cf. note 5. [7] **iubeō**, with infinitive, § 217. *a*. [8] § 217. *b*. [9] **in amīcitiā**.

LESSON IX

17. Relative Clauses of Description (Characteristic), § 177 and *a*.

18. Clauses of Pure Result, § 179 and note.

19. Relative Clauses of Result, § 180.

EXAMPLES

a. Relative Clauses of Description:

mīles quī fugiat est timidus, *a soldier who runs away is cowardly*
nēmō fuit mīlitum quīn (= quī nōn) volnerārētur, *there was not one of the soldiers who was not* (lit. *but was*) *wounded*

In these sentences the clauses **quī fugiat** and **quīn volnerārētur** *describe*, or tell *what kind* of soldier it is, and hence take the subjunctive. Compare these sentences with the following:

ille mīles, quī fugit, est timidus, *that soldier, who is running away, is cowardly*

Here the clause **quī fugit** does not describe the soldier, but simply states a *fact* about him, and the fact is expressed by the indicative (§ 178).

Notice also the following forms of descriptive clauses:

sunt quī maledīcant, *there are some who slander*
nēmō est quī hoc nōn crēdat, *there is no one who does not believe this*

b. Clauses of Pure Result:

Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are alike in form; but *negative* clauses of purpose are introduced by **nē** (§ 174), *negative* clauses of result by **ut nōn**:

iter fēcit ut oppidum caperet, *he marched to take the town* (purpose)
iter tam celeriter fēcit ut oppidum caperet, *he marched so quickly that he took the town* (result)
fūgit nē interficerētur, *he fled that he might not be killed* (negative purpose)
tam celeriter fūgit ut nōn caperētur, *he fled so swiftly that he was not captured* (negative result)

c. Relative Clauses of Result:

nēmō est tam timidus quī fugiat, *no one is so cowardly that he* (lit. *who*) *runs away*
nēmō est tam fortis quīn (= quī nōn) reī novitāte perturbētur, *no one is so brave as not to be* (lit. *but that he is*) *disturbed by the unexpected occurrence*

These sentences are equivalent to **nēmō est tam timidus ut fugiat** and **nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn perturbētur.** The word **tam** in the antecedent clause shows that the relative clause expresses result rather than description, but the two constructions are closely related. (See § 179. note.)

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 4–6)

I. 1. This disease of the eyes was so[1] severe that he did not afterwards use his right eye.[2] 2. He is so[3] afflicted by this infirmity that he is carried in a sedan. 3. This battle was fought so quickly that they immediately set out for Rome. 4. He inspires so great terror in the Romans that they do not dare to go outside the rampart. 5. So great was Hannibal that nobody desired to oppose him in line of battle. 6. The consuls who oppose him in line of battle are brave. 7. Brave is the soldier who now desires to carry on war. 8. There are many soldiers who are most brave. 9. This commander is so brave that he desires to oppose Hannibal in line of battle. 10. The resources of his country were so[4] exhausted that he desired to settle the war

II. When Hannibal had defeated[5] Scipio, he crossed the mountains that he might arrive quickly in[6] Etruria and Apulia. [7] It would be tedious to recount all his battles; but [8] so long as he was in Italy, he defeated all the commanders who opposed him in line of battle. If he had set out for Rome, he would have taken the city by storm.

[1] **adeō.** [2] Omit. [3] **sīc.** [4] **tam.** [5] **pellō.** [6] Latin, *into.* [7] **longum est ēnumerāre.** [8] **quam diū.**

LESSON X

20. Substantive Clauses, § 181.

21. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod*, *ut*, and *nē*, §§ 182, 183 and note.

EXAMPLES

accessit quod exercitum habuerat, *there was added the fact that he had had an army*

hortor ut veniat, *I urge him to come* (lit. *that he come*)

imperat nē eant, *he commands them not to go*

Gallī Rōmānōs expellere cōnātī sunt, *the Gauls tried to drive out the Romans*

NOTE 1. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose are the following:

hortor, cohortor, *urge, exhort*	**ōrō, petō, rogō,** *ask*
imperō, *order, command*	**persuādeō,** *persuade*
moneō, *advise*	**postulō,** *demand*

NOTE 2. The following verbs take the infinitive:

cōnor, *attempt*	**patior,** *allow*
iubeō, *command*	**vetō,** *forbid*

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 7–10)

I. 1. They ask that the captives be returned. 2. They commanded[1] him to return the hostages. 3. They had demanded that the hostages should be returned. 4. I advise that the money be put back in the treasury. 5. They will persuade him[2] to set out with these armies. 6. He was ordered to conduct the ships to[3] Asia. 7. He urges them

to guard this temple. 8. There was added the fact that they had attempted to carry on war. 9. He urged them not to carry on war. 10. They ordered him not to guard the temple. 11. There is added the fact that they are guarding this temple.

II. After the Carthaginian ambassadors had thanked the Romans because[4] they had made peace with them, they asked that their captives should be returned. The Romans did not send back the captives because[4] Hannibal was still[5] with[6] the army. Hannibal was called back; but when he had returned home, he was made king.

[1] iubeō. [2] Not accusative, § 83. [3] in, § 97. [4] quod, § 188. *a*, *b*. [5] etiam nunc. [6] apud.

LESSON XI

22. Substantive Clauses (*continued*), § 181.

23. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I, II.

24. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quīn* or *quō minus*, §§ 185, 186.

EXAMPLES

efficit, *he brings it about*
fit, *it happens*
accidit, *it happens*
additur, *it is added*
} **ut obsidēs (nōn) dent**, *that they give (do not give) hostages*

eōs impedīvit quō minus (nē) flūmen trānsīrent, *he hindered them from crossing the river*

eōs nōn impedīvit quīn flūmen trānsīrent, *he did not hinder them from crossing the river*

nōn dubitō quīn Helvētiī exeant, *I do not doubt that the Helvetii are going forth*

EXERCISE

(Nepos, chapters 11–13)

I. 1. Nobody doubts that he is writing something about peace. 2. We did not doubt that he would seek safety by flight. 3. It happened that the envoys were not at Rome. 4. He will bring it about that hostages will be given. 5. He hindered them from sending envoys [1]to Carthage. 6. They [2]cannot hinder us from sending our envoy

Rome. 7. I do not doubt that the Romans will surround his house with a large army. 8. Hannibal could not be hindered from taking[3] poison. 9. Nobody doubts that Hannibal was a most brave man. 10. It is added that he devoted[4] some time to literature.

II. The Romans sent ambassadors to Prusias, king of Bithynia, to ask that Hannibal should be surrendered. Prusias replied, "Seize him yourselves if you can; I do not doubt that you will easily find the place where he is." But Hannibal took poison, because he did not wish to lose[5] his life[6] at another's will.

[1] § 97. [2] **possum impedīre.** [3] **sūmō.** [4] **nōn nihil temporis,** § 76. [5] **dīmittō.** [6] **aliēnō arbitriō.**

LESSON XII

25. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō*, § 188. *a*, *b*.

26. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 189.

EXAMPLES

queritur quod dēstitūtus est } *he is complaining because he has been*
queritur quod dēstitūtus sit } *abandoned*

Observe that these two sentences are translated in exactly the same way; but the Latin makes it clear that in the first the speaker is giving his *own* reason (in a causal clause of *fact*, which takes the indicative), and that in the second he is giving the reason *alleged* by the person who is complaining.

cum mōns intercēderet, prōcēdere nōn poterant, *since a mountain intervened, they were not able to proceed*

cum hostēs fūgissent, castra mōvērunt, *since the enemy had fled, they moved the camp*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 1–3)

I. 1. The Belgians were brave because they were farthest away from the province. 2. The Helvetians were brave because (they said) they fought with the Germans. 3. They chose Orgetorix because he was the noblest of all. 4. They chose Dumnorix because (they said)

he held the leadership in the state. 5. The Helvetians had been greatly grieved because they thought their boundaries were narrow. 6. They will persuade Dumnorix because he is the brother of Diviciacus. 7. They had been influenced [1] by Orgetorix because his authority was very great.

II. The Helvetians, because they were the most powerful people of Gaul, decided to go out from [2] their territory. Many carts and beasts of burden were purchased. Orgetorix, the noblest of the Helvetians, persuaded Casticus, the Sequanian, to seize the sovereignty in his own state; [3] and he also persuaded Dumnorix, the Hæduan, to attempt [4] the same thing. There was no doubt that they hoped they should gain possession of all Gaul.

[1] Not the simple ablative, § 104. [2] **dē.** [3] **itemque.** [4] **idem.**

LESSON XIII

27. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam*, *ut*, *ubi*, etc., § 193.

28. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*.

a. The indicative in definitive clauses in past narrative, § 194. *a.*

b. The subjunctive in circumstantial clauses in past narrative, § 194. *b.*

29. Temporal Clauses introduced by *antequam* or *priusquam*, § 197. *a*, *b*.

30. Temporal Clauses introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, § 198. III. *a*, *b*.

EXAMPLES

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, *after Cæsar arrived, he demanded hostages*

multōs amīcōs habuit eō tempore cum ex urbe profectus est, *he had many friends at the time when he set out from the city*

hostēs eōs adgressī sunt cum inermēs essent, *the enemy attacked them* (at a time) *when they were defenseless*

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervēnērunt, *the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy arrived*

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervenīrent, *the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy should arrive*

The clause **priusquam . . . pervēnērunt** in the fourth sentence shows by the indicative that the enemy did in fact arrive; in the fifth sentence nothing shows certainly whether the enemy arrived or not. It is only known that the towns were burned in *anticipation* of their possible arrival.

The same difference between *fact* and *anticipation* is shown by the mood in the following sentences:

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervēnērunt, *the general remained in the city until the legions arrived*
imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenīrent, *the general remained in the city until the legions should arrive*
imperātor in urbe manēbit dum legiōnēs perveniant, *the general will remain in the city until the legions arrive*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 4–7)

I. 1. When they were attempting to collect men from the fields, Orgetorix died. 2. They burned all their towns and villages before they went out of their territory. 3. They will burn their towns and villages before they go[1] from home.[2] 4. After these things were announced to Cæsar, he hurried into Gaul. 5. He will arrive at Geneva before the envoys are sent to him. 6. He waited until the soldiers assembled. 7. They did not wait until the soldiers should assemble. 8. He will not wait until the soldiers assemble. 9. They say that he will not wait until the soldiers assemble.

II. The Helvetians, [3]in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius, were attempting to march through our province. They sent to Cæsar ambassadors, the noblest of the state, to say[4] that they had no other way, and to ask[4] that it be permitted them to do this. Cæsar did not think that [5]the request should be granted, but he said that he should take time[6] [7] to think about (it).

[1] Present subjunctive, §§ 197. *b*, 162. [2] § 101. *a*. [3] § 228. [4] Not infinitive. [5] **concēdendum esse,** § 66. [6] **diem.** [7] **ad dēlīberandum.**

LESSON XIV

31. Direct Questions, §§ 168, 170 and *a.* 1, 2, 3; *b.* 1, 2.

32. Indirect Questions, § 201 and note. For examples, see grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 8–10)

I. 1. Which legion does Cæsar have with him? 2. I ask which legion Cæsar has with him. 3. I asked which legion Cæsar had with him. 4. Does this lake flow into the river Rhone? 5. He will ask whether this lake flows into the river Rhone. 6. Will not the ambassadors return to him? 7. He was not a friend to the Helvetians, was he? 8. Did they permit the Helvetians to go through their territory or not? 9. Will he enlist the legions which are in Italy? 10. They asked whether he would enlist the legions.

II. When[1] the ambassadors returned to Cæsar, he said that he could not give them a way through the province. The Helvetians, having attempted by night to break through, were driven back by the Roman soldiers. But the Sequanians, [2]through the intercession of Dumnorix the Hæduan, permitted the Helvetians to go through their territory. When this had been announced to Cæsar, he set out immediately for[3] Italy that he might lead his legions out of winter quarters and hasten into Gaul.

[1] **ubi.** [2] Latin, *Dumnorix being intercessor*, § 118. [3] **in,** § 97.

LESSON XV

33. Conditional Sentences.

a. Present Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. I. *a*, *b*.

b. Future Conditions: More Probable (More Vivid Future) and Less Probable (Less Vivid Future), § 199. II. *a*, *b*.

c. Past Conditions: Non-Committal (Simple) and Contrary to Fact (Unfulfilled), § 199. III. *a*, *b*.

EXAMPLES

a. PRESENT
- **sī hoc facit, fortis est,** *if he is doing this, he is brave*
- **sī hoc faceret, fortis esset,** *if he were doing this, he would be brave*

b. FUTURE
- **sī hoc faciet, fortis erit,** *if he does* (shall do) *this, he will be brave*
- **sī hoc faciat (fēcerit), fortis sit,** *if he should do this, he would be brave*

c. PAST
- **sī hoc faciēbat, fortis erat,** *if he was doing this, he was brave*
- **sī hoc fēcit, fortis fuit,** *if he did this, he was brave*
- **sī hoc fēcisset, fortis fuisset,** *if he had done this, he would have been brave*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 11, 12)

I. 1. If the Hæduans cannot defend themselves, they will send ambassadors to Cæsar. 2. If they had not been able to defend themselves, they would have sent ambassadors to Cæsar. 3. If the fields should be laid waste, we could not ward off from the towns the violence of the enemy. 4. If the Gauls have boats, they are able to cross the river. 5. If he had not set out in[1] the third watch, they would have crossed the Rhone. 6. If he attacked them, they concealed themselves in[2] the neighboring forests. 7. If they had concealed themselves in the forests, would he have been able to attack them? 8. If the Helvetians should set out in the third watch, would they be able to defend themselves?

II. The Helvetians led their forces into the territory of the Hæduans. The Hæduans, who had always deserved well of[1] the Roman people, asked Cæsar to send[3] aid. They said that their fields had been laid waste and that their towns had been taken by storm. Cæsar attacked the Tigurini, who had not crossed the river Arar, and slew a large part of them.

[1] **dē.** [2] **Latin,** ***into.*** [3] **Not infinitive (see Lesson X).**

LESSON XVI

34. Concessive Clauses introduced by *quamquam*, § 191.

35. Concessive Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 192 and note.

EXAMPLES

quamquam flūmen est altum, tamen trānsīre possumus, *although* (the fact is that) *the river is deep, nevertheless we can cross*

iter nōn āvertit, cum hostēs sequerentur, *he did not turn aside, although the enemy were following*

cum urgērentur, tamen nōn fūgērunt, *although they were hard pressed, nevertheless they did not flee*

NOTE. Observe that **cum** may mean *when* (temporal), *since* (causal), and *although* (concessive). When it is *temporal*, the mood used may be indicative or subjunctive (§ 194); but when it is *causal* or *concessive*, **cum** is always followed by the subjunctive. Its concessive use is often indicated by the presence of **tamen**, *nevertheless*, in the main clause.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 23–25)

I. 1. Although it is not necessary to distribute grain to the army, he hastens to go to Bibracte. 2. Although this thing was announced to the enemy, they did not engage in battle. 3. The Helvetians began to pursue our men[1] that they might shut them off from the grain supply. 4. They pursued the Roman soldiers because they thought they were terrified. 5. [2]Although this (these things) is so, nevertheless he sends the cavalry to sustain[3] the attack of the enemy. 6. He engaged in battle although[4] he had not encouraged his men.[1] 7. Although the mountains were about a mile distant, they began to retreat thither.

II. On the next day Cæsar hastened to Bibracte, the richest town of the Hædui, which was not more than eighteen miles distant. The Helvetians, because they thought that the Romans were terrified, began to harass them from the rear. Cæsar withdrew his forces to[5] the nearest hill, and in the middle of the hill formed a line of battle.

The horses had been removed, that the danger of all might be made equal; the soldiers hurled their javelins and broke through the phalanx of the enemy.

[1] Omit. [2] **cum ea ita sint.** [3] Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). [4] **cum.** [5] **in,** § 97.

LESSON XVII

36. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and *a*.

37. Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 204.

a. Simple Sentences, § 204.
b. Complex Sentences, §§ 208, 209 and note.

38. Commands in Indirect Discourse, §§ 205, 206.

39. Interrogative Sentences (Questions) in Indirect Discourse, § 207. I.

EXAMPLES

(1) SIMPLE SENTENCES

The tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb *as it would have been used in the direct discourse, and not by the tense of the verb of saying.* The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162) does not affect the infinitive.

DIRECT: **Rōmānī fortiter pugnant,** *the Romans fight bravely*

INDIRECT { **dīcit** / **dīcēbat** / **dīcet** / **dīxit** / **dīxerat** / **dīxerit** } **Rōmānōs fortiter pugnāre,** *he says, said, will say*, etc., *that the Romans fight* (*fought*, if the verb of saying refers to past time) *bravely*

(2) COMPLEX SENTENCES

When translating complex sentences into indirect discourse, treat the main clause as a simple sentence, considering first what the form would be in the direct discourse. For the subordinate clauses, put the

verbs in the subjunctive if they are not already in that mood, observing the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162). It is the tense of the verb of *saying*, **dīcit, dīxit,** etc., which determines the sequence.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō sunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt), *the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō sint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he says that the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

dīxit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō essent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans, who were in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely*

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō fuērunt, fortiter pugnant (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt), *the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuerint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he says that the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely*

dīxit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuissent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pugnātūrōs esse), *he said that the Romans, who had been in the town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely*

DIRECT DISCOURSE

cum bellum cīvitās īnfert, magistrātūs dēliguntur, *whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit cum bellum cīvitās īnferat, magistrātūs dēligī, *he says that whenever a state makes war, magistrates are chosen*

dīxit cum bellum cīvitās īnferret, magistrātūs dēligī, *he said that whenever a state made war, magistrates were chosen*

(3) Commands

Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
hostēs vince, *conquer the enemy*	**dīcit (dīxit) hostēs vincat (vinceret),** *he directs (directed) him to conquer the enemy*

(4) Questions

Direct Discourse	Indirect Discourse
cūr nōn exit? *why does he not go forth?*	**(dīcit, dīxit) cūr nōn exeat (exīret),** *(he says, said) why does (did) he not go forth?*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 26–29)

I. 1. [1] The battle was fought sharply. 2. He said that the battle was fought so sharply that nobody could see an enemy [2] in retreat. 3. He says that they are aiding the Helvetians with grain. 4. The Helvetians say that he will send ambassadors to ask [3] for peace. 5. Send ambassadors to him to ask for peace. 6. He told [4] them to send ambassadors to ask for peace. 7. Six [5] thousand men hasten to the Rhine that they may not surrender their arms. 8. We said the hostages and arms were surrendered that we might not be regarded in the light [6] of enemies. 9. Since they cannot march through the province, they will return to their own territory. 10. He said that since they could not march through the province, they would return to their own territory. 11. Before they set out, they burned their towns. Why did they do this? 12. He said that before they had set out, they had burned their towns. Why had they done this?

II. Cæsar says that the battle was fought long and sharply; that the Romans took possession of the enemy's camp; that the daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix were captured; and that when the Helvetians had come to him to ask [3] for peace, he told [4] them to surrender the slaves who had deserted to them.

[1] Latin, *it was fought*, § 66. [2] **āversus.** [3] Not infinitive. [4] **dīcō.** [5] **Latin,** *thousands of men.* [6] **numerus.**

LESSON XVIII

(Before beginning this lesson review Lesson XV)

40. Indirect Discourse (*continued*): Conditional Sentences.

a. Conditions with the Indicative in Indirect Discourse, § 210.

b. Less Probable (Less Vivid) Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse, §§ 211, 212.

c. Conditions Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, § 213. *a*, *b*.

For all these cases, study carefully the examples in the grammar.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 50–54)

Change each of the following sentences into indirect discourse, first after **dicit**, and then after **dīxit**:

I. 1. If Cæsar should lead his forces out of camp, he would draw up a line of battle. 2. If he led his army back into camp, Ariovistus sent soldiers to storm the camp. 3. The Germans will not conquer if they fight (shall fight) before the new moon. 4. If he had wished to use the soldiers for show, he would have stationed them before the camp. 5. If he approaches (shall have approached) to the camp of the enemy, they will lead out their forces. 6. If he were (now) approaching to the camp of the enemy, their forces would be led out. 7. If the signal had been given, the enemy would have sent the third line. 8. If he had given the signal, the third line would have been sent by the enemy. 9. If he pursues (shall have pursued) the Ubii, he will slay a great number of[1] them.

II. All the enemy turned their backs and did not cease to flee until they reached the river Rhine; among these was Ariovistus, who, having found a little boat, escaped[2] by (means of) it. He[3] had two daughters; of whom one[4] was slain, the other[4] was captured.

[1] **ex.** [2] **profugiō.** [3] Dative, § 88. [4] **alter.**

LESSON XIX

41. The Infinitive as Subject, § 216. *a*, *b*.

42. The Infinitive as Object, § 217. *a*, *b*.

43. The Complementary Infinitive, § 217. *c*.

EXAMPLES

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT	**fās est,** *it is right* **turpe est,** *it is disgraceful* **necesse est,** *it is necessary* **opus est,** *it is necessary* **licet,** *it is permitted*	**īre,** *to go*, or **eum īre,** (for) *him to go*
	apertum est, *it is plain* **mīrum est,** *it is wonderful* **vērum est,** *it is true* **fāma est,** *it is rumored*	**agrōs vāstārī,** *that the fields are laid waste*
INFINITIVE AS OBJECT	**vetō eum scrībere,** *I forbid him to write* **iubeō sociōs venīre,** *I order the allies to come*	
COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE	**dēbeō,** *I ought* **possum,** *I can* (am able) **soleō,** *I am accustomed*	**īre,** *to go*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 1–4)

I. **1.** It is not necessary for all the Belgians to conspire against the Roman people. **2.** They were unwilling for the Germans to dwell longer in Gaul. **3.** Cæsar is able to enlist two new legions. **4.** Cæsar said that he was able to send Labienus to lead[1] these legions into Gaul. **5.** They said that the Remi were ready both to give hostages and to do (his) commands. **6.** We cannot prevent[2] the Suessiones from[3] [4] making common cause with them. **7.** The Belgians were able to prevent[5] the Germans from entering[6] into their territory. **8.** It is true that Galba is now king.

II. The Remi were able to send ambassadors to Cæsar to say[1] that they had neither made common cause with the other Gauls nor conspired against the Roman people, and were ready to assist with grain and other supplies[7]; that all the other Gauls were in arms; and that not even the Suessiones could be prevented from making common cause with them.

[1] Not infinitive. [2] **dēterreō.** [3] **quin.** [4] **cōnsentiō.** [5] **prohibeō.** [6] Infinitive. [7] **rēs.**

LESSON XX

44. The Participle, § 219.

a. Tenses, § 167.

b. Adjective and Predicate Uses, §§ 220. *a–e*, 221.

c. The Ablative Absolute, §§ 117, 118.

45. Certain tenses and uses of the English participle are wanting in Latin, as is seen in the following comparison:

	Active		Passive	
Pres.	**cōgēns**	*collecting*	——	*being collected*
Past	——	*having collected*	**coāctus**	*having been collected*
Fut.	**coāctūrus**	*about to collect*	——	*about to be collected*

Hence, in such a sentence as *they killed him* (as he was) *collecting the ships*, the present participle, *collecting*, since it exists also in Latin, **cōgēns,** may be translated literally, **(eum) cōgentem nāvēs occīdērunt.**

But, in the absence of the present *passive* participle, we cannot translate literally *the ships* (while) *being collected were seized*, but must express the idea in some other way, as, for example, by a clause, *while they were being collected*, **dum cōguntur.**

Similarly, we cannot translate literally, by means of a past active participle, *the Romans, having collected their ships, set sail*; but must express the idea by a clause, **cum nāvēs coēgissent,** *when they had collected their ships*, or by an ablative absolute, **nāvibus coāctis,** *their ships having been collected*, or by some other form of statement.

46. The place of the missing participles in Latin is most frequently supplied by the ablative absolute, but it is to be noted that this construction can be used only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned it* by **Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit,** where **id** and **oppidō** refer to the same thing, but rather by **Caesar oppidum captum incendit.**

But in *Cæsar, having captured the town, burned the temple,* the ablative absolute may be used; as, **Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit.**

47. In translating English sentences into Latin, clauses of *time, cause, condition, concession,* etc. are often best rendered by a participial construction; see § 220. *a–e.*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 5–8)

Before beginning the translation of the following sentences study carefully all the examples in the grammar, § 220. *a–e.* In translating use a participle wherever possible.

I. **1.** Cæsar encourages[1] the Remi, and orders that the children be brought to him as hostages. **2.** [2] When he had given these commands, he dismissed them from him. **3.** After he saw that the Belgians [3] had been collected into one place and were coming against him, he hastened to pitch camp. **4.** Having stationed a guard there, he left Sabinus with six legions. **5.** When they have thrown a multitude of men about all[4] the walls, they will approach the gates. **6.** After burning all their villages, they hastened against Cæsar's camp. **7.** When they have laid waste the fields, they will pitch camp. **8.** They [1] left two legions in camp and drew up the other legions in line of battle.

II. [2] If the place in front of the camp is suitable for drawing up a line of battle, Cæsar will establish a fort on each side of the hill, so that the enemy may not surround his (men) [1] by fighting on the flanks. If he should station the legions in line of battle in front of the camp, the enemy would [1] lead their forces out of camp and draw (them) up.

[1] Use a participle. [2] Not a clause. [3] Latin, *collected.* [4] **tōtus.**

LESSON XXI

48. The Gerundive, § 224.

49. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 224. *a.*

50. The Dative of the Apparent (Implied) Agent, § 87.

51. Intransitive Verbs in the Passive Voice, § 83. *a.*

52. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes what *must be*, or what *ought to be*, and is always passive. Therefore, if this construction is used, sentences not already passive must first be cast in the passive form; for example, to translate *Cæsar must give the signal,* we must recast the sentence to *the signal must be given by Cæsar*, **Caesarī signum dandum est.**

53. Since the passive of an intransitive verb is always impersonal (§ 66), the passive periphrastic of such a verb must be used impersonally; hence the gerundive of an intransitive is always neuter singular in form. The case that the verb governs in the active is retained in the passive; for example, *they cannot be persuaded* is rendered by **eīs persuādērī nōn potest** (lit. *it cannot be persuaded to them*); *they must be persuaded* is rendered by **eīs persuādendum est** (lit. *it must be persuaded to them*).

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. He persuades them to hasten[1] to the river. 2. They[2] could not be persuaded to hasten[1] to the river. 3. We[2] must take the fort by storm. 4. We must carry this war on sharply. 5. They understand that they must take the town by storm and cross the river. 6. They ought to be persuaded to gather from all sides. 7. If they had been persuaded to delay, they could have brought aid to their (men). 8. He ought to defend the camp and lead out his soldiers.

II. The enemy waited for a long time (to see) if Cæsar would cross the swamp; but after he led his (men) back into camp, they hastened to the river to destroy[3] the bridge. Since they could neith

take the city by storm nor cross the river, they decided that it was best not to wait longer, and hastened to return home. [4] When Cæsar had learned this (thing), he pursued them many miles and slew a great number [5] of them [6] in their flight.

[1] Not infinitive (see Lesson X). [2] Dative. [3] Not infinitive (see Lesson VIII). [4] Ablative absolute. [5] **multitūdō.** [6] Participle.

LESSON XXII

54. The Gerundive (*continued*), § 224. *b.*

55. The Gerund, § 223. *a–d* and note.

a. The Gerundive and the Gerund expressing Purpose, § 225. *a, b.*

NOTE. In the genitive and the ablative without a preposition the gerund may take a direct object, as, **cupidus epistulam scrībendī,** *desirous of writing a letter.* In other cases the gerundive construction is preferred, and may be used even here, as, **cupidus epistulae scrībendae.** The translation is exactly the same as for the gerund.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book II, chapters 13–18)

I. 1. Cæsar came for the sake of receiving hostages. 2. They said that they had come for the sake of seeking peace. 3. They say they are prepared [1] to endure [2] all indignities and insults. 4. They did not send ambassadors to accept terms of peace. 5. You have come to us for the sake of plundering. 6. They were prepared to neglect this plan. 7. They did not think they were prepared to neglect these plans.

II. If Cæsar had marched across the river, he would have attacked all the Nervii and their neighbors, whom they had persuaded to await the coming of the Romans. The Belgæ thought that there would not be [3] any trouble [4] in attacking the Romans under their packs. "If you," they say,[5] "attack (shall attack) the first legion while the others are a great distance away, the other legions will not dare to make a stand."

[1] **parātus.** [2] Gerundive. [3] **quicquam negōtī,** § 76. *a.* [4] Infinitive. [5] **inquiunt.**

LESSON XXIII

56. Relative Pronouns, § 137.

57. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 134 and *a*, 135.

a. **Hic, iste,** and **ille** point out a person or thing definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

	hic	**iste**	**ille**
Speaker →	*this* (near) →	*that* (remote) →	*that* (more remote)

The pronoun **is** is used of persons or things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (*he*, *she*, *it*).

58. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives, § 144. *a–d*.

59. Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 132, 133 and note.

a. The Intensive Pronoun **ipse,** § 136.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book III, chapters 13–16)

I. 1. He says that they made their own ships after this fashion. 2. The ships which they used were made to endure [1] any violence whatsoever. 3. They cannot [2] be harmed. 4. If he had waited for the fleet, they could have been harmed. 5. Brutus, who had been in command of the fleet, adopted this plan of battle. 6. Cæsar sent soldiers [3] to take these ships by storm. 7. [4] When this [5] war is finished,[6] the Veneti will surrender themselves and all their (possessions) to Cæsar. 8. If Cæsar had taken the town by storm, the Veneti would have surrendered themselves and all their (possessions).

II. When Cæsar had taken several towns by storm, and had not been able to harm the enemy, he determined to wait for the fleet that had been assigned to Brutus. When this assembled, at first it was not clear to Brutus what plan of battle he should adopt, for he knew

the enemy's ships were furnished with every kind of arms, and that his own soldiers excelled in valor alone.[7] But he did not doubt [8] that the Romans would take the ships by storm.

[1] **quīvīs.** [2] Impersonal passive (see Lesson XXI). [3] Relative clause of purpose. [4] Ablative absolute. [5] **quī.** [6] **cōnficiō.** [7] **ūnus.** [8] **quīn** with the subjunctive, § 186.

LESSON XXIV

60. Expressions of Time.

a. Time When or Within Which, § 119.

b. Time How Long or During Which, § 96.

c. Time Before or After an Event, § 114.

To denote the *time before* or *time after* an event the Latin uses the word **ante** or **post,** either as an adverb with the ablative of measure of difference (§ 114) or as a preposition governing the accusative:

> **decem ante diēbus** (lit. *before by ten days*) or **ante decem diēs,** *ten days before*
> **decem post diēbus** (lit. *afterward by ten days*) or **post decem diēs,** *ten days after*

NOTE. As prepositions, **ante** and **post** either precede the numeral or stand between it and its noun; as adverbs, they either precede or follow the noun.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 20–22)

I. 1. A few months after, [1] when he had subdued many tribes of Gauls, he hastened to set out for Britain. 2. A few days before, he had ordered the fleet to assemble. 3. This was the fleet which he had used in the preceding summer. 4. He waited ten days [2] for the fleet to assemble. 5. In a few days ambassadors will come to him to promise hostages. 6. On the tenth day messengers returned to Cæsar [3] to report [4] the things they had observed. 7. Cæsar will delay there a few days [2] until the ambassadors come to him. 8. After a few days the ships will come to the same port.

II. Before Cæsar set out for Britain, he sent ahead Volusenus and Commius, whom he thought to be suitable for this business. Volusenus did not trust himself to the barbarians, and returned in five days. Commius, who was faithful to Cæsar, and whose influence in these regions was great, urged the states [5] to submit to the protection of the Roman people, and said that Cæsar's legions would quickly come there.

[1] Ablative absolute. [2] **dum** with the subjunctive, § 198. III. *b*. [3] Relative clause of purpose. [4] **quae**. [5] **fidem sequor** (see Lesson X).

LESSON XXV

61. Expressions of Place.

a. Place from Which, § 101. *a*.
b. Place Whither, § 97.
c. Place toward Which, § 97. note.
d. Place at or in Which, § 120.
e. The Locative Case, § 120. *a*.

NOTE. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and **domus** omit the preposition.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 23–26)

I. 1. In the third watch the cavalry will advance to the farther port and embark. 2. When he had touched Britain and seen the forces of the enemy on all the hills, he thought that he [1] ought to wait [2] for the other ships. 3. He says that [3] when the signal had been given, they moved forward from that place about seven miles. 4. The soldiers thought that they [1] ought to leap [4] down from the ship and fight [4] with the enemy. 5. If they had advanced a little into the water, they could have thrown their javelins. 6. Cæsar says that [5] at this place the men-of-war were [6] of great service to the Romans. 7. He said that they [7] should leap down out of the ships unless they wished to betray the eagle to the enemy.

II. When Cæsar had noticed that his (soldiers) could not follow the standards, and that the enemy on [8] the exposed flank were hurling (their) weapons, he commanded that reënforcements be sent to those [9] who were hard pressed. The Romans now put the enemy to flight; and if they [10] had had cavalry, they could have pursued them farther.

[1] Dative. [2] Gerundive. [3] Ablative absolute. [4] § 66 (Lesson XXI). [5] **hōc locō**, § 120. *b*. [6] § 89. [7] § 205 (Lesson XVII). [8] **ab**. [9] Present participle. [10] Dative, § 88.

LESSON XXVI

62. The Genitive, § 72.

a. The Possessive Genitive, § 73.

b. The Genitive of Material, § 79.

c. The Genitive of Description, § 77.

d. The Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole), § 76 and *a*.

e. The Subjective Genitive, § 75. *a*.

f. The Objective Genitive, § 75. *b*.

NOTE. With cardinal numbers and **quidam** the ablative with **ē** or **ex** is used instead of the partitive genitive:

quattuor ex Helvētiīs, *four of the Helvetii*

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 27–32)

I. 1. A large part of the hostages whom Cæsar ordered they give immediately. 2. If this storm had arisen suddenly, [1] not one of the ships could have held the course. 3. He said that many ships had been [2] driven out (of their course) to the lower part of the island. 4. Cæsar ordered the ships of the cavalry to set sail from [3] the upper harbor. 5. The storm was so great that no opportunity of aiding was given to our (men). 6. The chiefs of Britain know that cavalry and ships are lacking to the Romans, and think they can cut them off from grain. 7. If the Romans should be conquered by them, nobody would afterwards cross to Britain for the sake of waging war. 8. A part of the soldiers were on guard before the gates of the camp.

II. After this battle had been fought,[4] ambassadors came to Cæsar to seek peace, and said that [5] he ought to pardon them because of (their) ignorance. Cæsar did not doubt that they had waged war without cause, but he pardoned them and ordered hostages, all of whom [6] they gave in a few days.

[1] nūllus. [2] dēiciō. [3] Latin, *out of.* [4] faciō. [5] Latin, *it ought to be pardoned to them* (Lesson XXI). [6] Not a partitive genitive.

LESSON XXVII

63. The Dative.

a. The Dative as Indirect Object, § 82.

b. The Dative with Special Verbs, § 83 and note.

c. The Dative with Compounds, § 84.

NOTE 1. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative do so because they have a special meaning requiring an indirect object; for example, the exact meaning of **imperat mīlitibus** is *he gives a command to the soldiers*; of **persuādet amīcīs**, *he offers persuasion to his friends*.

These verbs often take a direct object along with the dative, usually a neuter pronoun or an object clause; for example, **amīcīs persuādet ut exeant**, *he persuades* (to) *his friends to go forth*. Here the clause **ut exeant** is the direct object and **amīcīs** the indirect object of **persuādet**.

NOTE 2. Likewise verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, etc. do not take the dative *because of the preposition*, but rather because their meaning requires an indirect object.

Many verbs compounded with these prepositions are transitive and take the accusative. Just what verbs are used with the dative must be learned by observing the usage of the best writers as recorded in the Latin dictionary. Some compound verbs take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect); for example, **Caesar Gallīs bellum infert**, *Cæsar makes war on the Gauls*.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book IV, chapters 33–38)

I. 1. Cæsar will bring aid to our (men) [1] if they are alarmed by these things. 2. The barbarians had sent messengers into all parts to declare to their (men) the small number of the Roman soldiers. 3. He points out that the opportunity is given to them of freeing themselves.

4. You see how great an opportunity [2] for taking booty is given to you. 5. He [3] demands of the barbarians a large number of hostages. 6. They persuaded Cæsar to double [4] the number of hostages that he had demanded of them. 7. They had been made subject to the power of the Roman people. 8. They think that he ought not to be made subject to the power of the Roman people.

II. The barbarians, having thought the opportunity was given to them for taking booty and for freeing themselves forever [5] from the fear of the Roman people, sent messengers in all directions to collect infantry and cavalry. Although they came to Cæsar's camp with a great multitude of men, he stationed the legions in line in front of the camp; for he did not doubt that the enemy would not be able to endure the attack of the Roman soldiers.

[1] Participle. [2] Latin, *of making* (gerundive). [3] Latin, *orders to*. [4] Not infinitive (Lesson X). [5] Ablative, § 101.

LESSON XXVIII

64. The Dative (*continued*).

a. The Dative of Possession (Possessor), § 88.

b. The Dative of Purpose or End ("Double Dative"), § 89.

c. The Dative of Reference, § 85.

d. The Dative with Adjectives, § 90.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 40–43)

I. 1. [1] Cicero had in mind to send a letter to Cæsar. 2. The towers will be a great defense [2] for the camp.[2] 3. They thought that the camp would be a great defense for themselves. 4. The towers were next to the camp. 5. The Nervii [2] had no ground for [3] friendship with Cicero. 6. The Nervii say that they have ground for friendship with Cæsar. 7. He says that the Germans [4] who are next to the Rhine have in mind to cross this river. 8. If they hope for [5] any safety for themselves [2] from the Nervii, they are mistaken. 9. These

days were the most severe for the Roman soldiers. 10. He does not doubt that these days were severe for all the soldiers.

II. If all Gaul had been in arms, the Germans would not have crossed the Rhine to storm the winter quarters of Cæsar and the others. The Nervii, who said that they were well-disposed[6] to[7] Cicero and the Romans, [8]urged them to depart from winter quarters and set out into whatsoever parts they wished. But when Cicero had replied that he could not accept terms from an enemy [9]in arms, and had advised them to send ambassadors to Cæsar, they began to encircle the winter quarters with a rampart and a ditch.

[1] Cf. **mihi in animō est**, *I have in mind*, § 88. [2] Dative. [3] Latin, *of*. [4] § 208. [5] **quicquam praesidi.** [6] **bonō animō**, § 116. [7] **in.** [8] See Lesson X. [9] Latin, *armed*.

LESSON XXIX

65. The Accusative.

a. The Accusative as Direct Object, § 91.

b. The Accusative of Duration and Extent, § 96.

c. The Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive, §§ 92, 217. *a*, *b*.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book V, chapters 44, 48, 49, 52)

I. 1. When Cæsar had learned in how great danger Cicero was, he persuaded one[1] of the Gauls to carry a letter to him. 2. If this letter had been intercepted by the Gauls, they would have been able to learn Cæsar's plans. 3. Did Cicero ask for a Gaul [2]to take a letter to Cæsar? 4. If Cæsar knows that Cicero has been freed [3]from the siege, he will send scouts to learn[4] by what route he can cross the river most advantageously. 5. Does he think that he[5] ought to relax [6]his speed? 6. [7]From all these things he is able to judge with what[8] valor Cicero defended himself from the enemy. 7. Will he praise Cicero and the legion or not? 8. Does he think that the legions of Cicero should be praised by him[5]?

II. In this legion there were two soldiers [9]who were very brave, one of whom was called Pullo, the other Vorenus. While [10]a sh

fight is going on at the fortifications, Pullo says, "Vorenus, what opportunity[11] do you wait for [12]to prove your valor?" and immediately advances outside the fortifications and with a javelin pierces one of the enemy [13]who runs forward. When the enemy had hurled their weapons on[14] him [15]and given (him) no opportunity of advancing, Vorenus [16]ran to aid him.

[1] quidam. [2] Relative clause of purpose. [3] Ablative, § 101. [4] explōrō. [5] Dative (see Lesson XXI). [6] dē celeritāte. [7] ex. [8] quantus. [9] § 177. *a.* [10] ācriter pugnātur, § 66. [11] locus. [12] Latin, *of proving.* [13] Participle. [14] in. [15] neque. [16] illī succurrō.

LESSON XXX

66. The Ablative.

a. The Ablative of Separation, § 101.

b. The Ablative of Origin, § 102.

c. The Ablative of Cause, § 109.

d. The Ablative of Accordance, § 111.

NOTE. The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 9–12)

I. 1. Cæsar[1] ought to cross the Rhine for[2] two reasons. 2. If reënforcements had been sent out of the state, the Ubii would not have sent ambassadors to him for the sake [3]of clearing themselves. 3. He urged them [4]to collect all their (possessions) from the fields into the towns, that the innocent might not [5]pay the penalty for the guilty. 4. We do not doubt that this forest protects them from the wrongdoings and incursions of the enemy. 5. If they had not been driven (to it) by necessity, they would not have gone to Rome for the sake of seeking aid. 6. By the coming of Cæsar a change (in the state) of affairs [6] [7]was made, and the hostages were given back to the Hæduans. 7. Did the Sequani lose the leadership by the coming of the Romans? 8. Did the Remi do this for the sake of obtaining the second place of dignity?

II. In Gaul there were two factions, the chiefs of which had the highest authority. When Cæsar came into Gaul, he learned that the Hædui were the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other. The latter had attached the Germans and Ariovistus to themselves, and [7] having killed all the nobility of the Hædui, had compelled them to swear publicly that they would enter into [8] no plan against the Sequani. But Cæsar compelled the Sequani to give back the hostages to the Hædui, and made other great changes of affairs.

[1] Dative, § 87. [2] **dē.** [3] § 224. *c.* [4] See Lesson X. [5] **poenās pendō.** [6] **rēs.** [7] Ablative absolute. [8] **nihil cōnsilī,** § 76.

LESSON XXXI

67. The Ablative (*continued*).

a. The Ablative of Manner, § 110.
b. The Ablative of Agent, § 104.
c. The Ablative of Means, § 106.
d. The Ablative with **ūtor, fruor,** etc., § 107. *a.*
e. The Ablative with **opus est,** § 107. *c.*

NOTE 1. The ablative of means is used without a preposition, while the ablative of agent requires **ā** or **ab**:

> **Gallī virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur,** *the Gauls were overcome by the valor of the Romans*
> **Gallī ā Rōmānīs superābantur,** *the Gauls were overcome by the Romans*

NOTE 2. The ablative of manner is rare without **cum** or an attributive adjective.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 13–17)

I. 1. There are those [1] who are oppressed by debt, tributes, (and) the wrongdoing of the more powerful. 2. Some went to the Druids of their own accord; others were sent by their parents and relatives. 3. If they had thought it was right to intrust these things to letters, they would not have wished to use Greek letters. 4. They think th those [2] who trust in letters [3] pay less attention to memory. 5.

life of man must be paid[4] for the life of man. 6. They sacrifice men [5] because (they say) they think that for the life of man the life of man must be paid. 7. Images of a huge size are filled with living men and set on fire. 8. We do not doubt that these images were filled with living men and set on fire.

II. In all Gaul the Druids were the most powerful. They were accustomed to attend[6] to [7] matters of religion, and [8] were exempt from war. Cæsar says that they [9] decided all controversies, and that if anybody[10] did not abide by their decree, they [11] prohibited (him) from (taking part in) the sacrifices. Over all these Druids one presided, who had the greatest authority among them.

[1] § 177. [2] § 208. [3] **minus studeō.** [4] **reddō.** [5] § 188. [6] **intersum,** § 84. [7] **rēs dīvīnae.** [8] **absum ab.** [9] **cōnstituō dē.** [10] **quis.** [11] **interdīcō** with ablative.

LESSON XXXII

68. The Ablative (*continued*).

a. The Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113.

b. The Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference, § 114.

c. The Ablative of Respect (Specification), § 115.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VI, chapters 18–23)

I. 1. These states differ [1] from one another in language, customs, (and) laws. 2. In this (respect) the Gauls differ from[2] the others. 3. They will establish[3] peace and friendship with (their) neighbors. 4. If anybody has heard anything from the neighbors, he informs[4] the magistrates. 5. After a year the magistrates compel the Germans to go[5] elsewhere. 6. If a state should carry on war with (its) neighbors, magistrates would be chosen to [6] take charge of this war. 7. After a few years they will build (houses) [7] to avoid the cold[8] and heat.[8] 8. Their neighbors had been driven out of the fields many years before.

II. Cæsar said that the Germans differed much from the Gauls; that they neither had Druids to take charge of [9] matters of religion,

nor did they [10] pay heed to sacrifices; that their gods were the Sun and Vulcan and the Moon, by whose resources they were visibly aided; and that their whole life consisted in hunting [8] and the pursuits of warfare.

[1] **inter sē.** [2] **ab.** [3] **cōnfirmō.** [4] Latin, *shares (it) with.* [5] **trānseō.** [6] Not infinitive. [7] Gerundive. [8] Plural. [9] **rēs dīvīnae.** [10] **studeō.**

LESSON XXXIII

69. The Roman Calendar, §§ 227. *a–i*, 228.

EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 1–5)

I. 1. He said that they would set out for Gaul on the third of October. 2. [1] When they had prepared everything, they appointed a day on which [2] to assemble at Cenabum. This day was the twenty-eighth of March. 3. If this report had been carried to all the states of Gaul, great forces would have been collected on the tenth of August. 4. They say that he demanded hostages of all these states [3] on the thirteenth of April. 5. Having collected a large army, he will set out for the Hædui on the seventeenth of April. 6. On the sixteenth of March envoys had been sent to ask for a reënforcement. 7. Even if they set out on the fourteenth of July, they will cross the river many days later. 8. After Cæsar's death [4] Augustus [5] became emperor. He was born on the twenty-third of September [6] in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.

II. The Gauls did not doubt that Cæsar would be detained in Italy and not be able to return to the army; and so they entered into plans for [7] war. They thought that it would be easy to cut Cæsar off from the army, because (they said) the legions were in winter quarters and could not go out without a commander. Vercingetorix, a young man of the greatest power, tried to persuade all the Gauls to [8] take up arms for the sake of general freedom.

[1] Ablative absolute (cf. p. 15, ll. 10–12). [2] § 175. [3] Dative. [4] **mors.** [5] **prīnceps fīō.** [6] § 228. [7] **dē.** [8] Not infinitive.

LESSON XXXIV

70. EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 6–10, 63, 64)

I. 1. Cæsar did not summon the legions into the province because (he said) they could engage in battle on the march. 2. [1] While these things were being prepared, Cæsar's forces gathered together in (into) the territory of the Helvetians. 3. Cæsar waited in these places a few days until the forces which he had ordered to assemble should come to him. 4. Brutus, whom he had put in command of these soldiers, he urged not to [2] be away long from camp. 5. When he had come into the territory of the Lingones, he wished to collect the other legions into one place before the Arverni should be informed of his coming. 6. If he had not set out for the Boii, he would have sent envoys to them to inform [2] (them) of his coming, and to urge (them) to sustain [2] with great courage the attack of the enemy. 7. When Vercingetorix had ordered hostages of the other states,[3] the cavalry urged him not to tempt [2] fortune, and persuaded him to try [2] to cut off the Romans from foragings.[4]

II. The Arverni thought that they were protected by the mountain, because at this time of year the paths had never lain open. But Cæsar crossed the mountain so quickly that he arrived at their territory before they knew he had set out for Gaul. [5] In their alarm they quickly gathered about Vercingetorix and begged him not to permit [2] them to be plundered by the Romans.

[1] § 198. I. [2] Not infinitive. [3] Dative. [4] pābulātiō. [5] Participle.

LESSON XXXV

71. EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book VII, chapters 65–71)

I. 1. The enemy were superior in infantry of light armor and in cavalry, and Cæsar knew that they were guarding their territory with great care. 2. When the forces of the enemy were gathering together,

Cæsar marched into the territory of the Sequani, [1] that he might the more easily bring aid to the province. 3. You yourselves ought [2] not to doubt that nobody will dare to advance. 4. Cæsar knew that the knights of the enemy could not be prevented [3] from advancing, and he ordered his own cavalry to go against them. 5. If he should have these soldiers in front of the camp, they would be a terror [4] to the enemy. 6. [5] When these things had been reported, Cæsar ordered the army [6] to halt, that the baggage might be taken back inside the legions. 7. Meanwhile pickets ought to be placed by Cæsar [7] in these redoubts, that no sally may suddenly be made.

II. Unless Vercingetorix had wished to march immediately to Alesia, he would not have withdrawn the forces which were stationed before the camp. Cæsar, having left two legions as a guard to the baggage, followed the enemy so quickly that on the second day he pitched [8] camp at Alesia. He set about investing [9] the town because he thought that it could not be reduced [10] except [11] by siege. The circuit of the Roman fortification measured [12] eleven miles. Vercingetorix, having received into the town all the forces which he had stationed before the town, prepared to await reënforcements.

[1] § 176. [2] **dēbeō.** [3] § 185. [4] § 89. [5] Ablative absolute. [6] **agmen.** [7] Dative. [8] **faciō.** [9] **circumvāllāre.** [10] **expugnō.** [11] **nisi.** [12] **teneō.**

LESSON XXXVI

72. MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE

(Cæsar, Book I, chapters 1–7)

Cæsar says that the Belgians inhabited one part of Gaul, the Aquitanians another, (and) the Gauls the third; that of all these the Belgians, who were farthest away from the Roman province and carried on war with the Germans, were the bravest; (and) that the Helvetians surpassed the other Gauls in valor because they either repelled the Germans from their own territory or carried on war in the territory of the Germans.[1]

The Helvetians,[2] who were fond of making war, were persuaded to go out of their territory. But since they wished to march throug

the province, Cæsar, [3] having collected a large army in Italy, hastened to set out for Gaul.

Ambassadors were sent to Cæsar by the Helvetians to ask him to permit [4] them to march through the province. But Cæsar, who was waiting until his soldiers should assemble, replied to them thus: "I shall take time [5] [6] to think about (it); if you wish anything, return on [7] the thirteenth of April.[8]"

[1] Use a pronoun, and cf. note on p. lxiv, l. 11. [2] Dative. [3] See Lesson XX. [4] See Lesson X. [5] **diem.** [6] **ad dēlīberandum.** [7] **ad.** [8] § 227.

LATIN WORD LIST

(*See page 448*)

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years are here reprinted

FIRST HALF YEAR

Verbs

1. amō
2. appellō
3. audeō
4. cognōscō
5. cōnfīrmō

6. cōnsulō
7. dēbeō
8. dēfendō
9. dīcō
10. dō
11. exīstimō
12. exspectō
13. gerō
14. iubeō
15. labōrō
16. līberō
17. nāvigō
18. nūntiō
19. occupō
20. oportet
21. pācō
22. petō
23. portō
24. properō
25. putō
26. respondeō
27. relinquō

28. spectō
29. timeō
30. agō
31. cōgō
32. redigō

33. capiō
34. accipiō
35. incipiō
36. intercipiō
37. suscipiō
38. discēdō
39. excēdō
40. prōcēdō
41. dūcō
42. abdūcō
43. addūcō
44. ēdūcō
45. indūcō
46. perdūcō
47. prōdūcō
48. redūcō
49. habeō
50. adhibeō
51. prohibeō
52. locō
53. mittō
54. āmittō
55. committō

56. dīmittō
57. intermittō

58. permittō

59. praemittō
60. remittō
61. moneō
62. admoneō
63. moveō
64. commoveō
65. permoveō
66. removeō
67. parō

68. comparō

69. pugnō
70. expugnō
71. oppugnō
72. scrībō
73. cōnscrībō
74. servō
75. cōnservō
76. sum
77. absum
78. adsum
79. possum
80. teneō
81. contineō

82. obtineō
83. pertineō

84. retineō
85. sustineō
86. videō
87. prōvideō
88. vocō
89. convocō

90. ēvocō

ENGLISH WORD LIST

(*See page 447*)

The words prescribed by the New York State Syllabus in Latin for the first two years are here reprinted

FIRST HALF YEAR

Verbs

1. love
2. name, call
3. dare, venture
4. learn, ascertain
5. strengthen, encourage, affirm
6. consult (*w. acc.*)
7. owe, ought
8. defend
9. say
10. give
11. think, consider
12. expect, wait, await
13. carry, accomplish
14. order
15. labor, suffer
16. set free
17. sail
18. announce, declare
19. seize, occupy
20. it is fitting
21. pacify
22. seek
23. carry
24. hurry
25. think
26. answer
27. leave behind, abandon
28. look at
29. fear
30. drive, do
31. drive together, collect, compel
32. drive back, reduce, render
33. take
34. accept, receive
35. begin, undertake
36. intercept, cut off
37. undertake
38. go away, depart
39. go out
40. go forward, advance
41. lead
42. lead away
43. lead to, influence
44. lead out
45. lead in, induce
46. lead through, extend
47. lead forward
48. lead back
49. have, hold
50. apply, employ
51. prohibit, prevent
52. place, put, set
53. send
54. send away, lose
55. commit, intrust (*w.* proelium, begin)
56. send away
57. interrupt, discontinue
58. permit, grant, intrust
59. send ahead
60. send back
61. advise, warn
62. remind
63. move
64. alarm, excite
65. arouse, disturb
66. move back, remove
67. get ready, prepare for
68. get together, provide
69. fight
70. capture by assault
71. attack
72. write
73. enroll
74. save, protect
75. save fully, preserve
76. be
77. be away
78. be near, be present
79. be able
80. hold, keep
81. hold together, contain, confine
82. obtain, hold, have
83. reach, extend, pertain
84. hold back, retain
85. hold up, sustain
86. see
87. foresee
88. call
89. call together, summon
90. call out

Nouns

91. aestās
92. ager
93. agricola
94. amīcitia
95. animus
96. annus
97. arma
98. auctōritās
99. auxilium
100. bellum
101. caput
102. castra
103. celeritās
104. cīvitās
105. cōnsilium
106. cōnsul
107. deus
108. dignitās
109. dīligentia
110. dux
111. eques
112. equus
113. exemplum

114. factum

115. fāma
116. fīlia
117. fīlius
118. flūmen
119. fortūna
120. frāter
121. frūmentum
122. fuga
123. hiems
124. homō
125. impedīmentum

126. iniūria
127. īnsula
128. iūdex
129. iūdicium
130. lēx
131. liber
132. lībertās
133. lingua
134. locus
135. lūx
136. māter
137. memoria
138. mīles
139. nātūra
140. negōtium
141. nōmen
142. numerus
143. officium

144. oppidum
145. pater
146. pāx
147. pecūnia
148. perīculum
149. poena
150. populus
151. porta
152. praemium
153. praesidium
154. prīnceps
155. proelium
156. puella
157. puer
158. rēgīna
159. rēgnum
160. rēx
161. salūs
162. servitūs
163. servus
164. signum

165. silva
166. socius
167. soror
168. supplicium
169. tempus
170. terra
171. via
172. victōria
173. vīlla
174. vir
175. virtūs
176. vīta
177. vōx

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

178. ā (ab)
179. ad
180. ac (atque)
181. ante

182. anteā
183. aut
184. certē
185. cum (*prep.*)
186. cūr
187. dē

188. ē (ex)
189. et
190. etiam
191. iam
192. in

193. longē
194. -ne

195. nec (neque)
196. neque . . . neque (nec . . . nec)

NOUNS

91. summer
92. field
93. farmer
94. friendship
95. spirit, life, soul
96. year
97. arms
98. influence
99. aid, help
100. war
101. head
102. camp
103. speed, swiftness
104. citizenship, state
105. advice, plan
106. consul
107. god
108. worth, position
109. painstaking, care
110. leader
111. horseman
112. horse
113. example, precedent
114. thing done, act, deed
115. reputation, report
116. daughter
117. son
118. river
119. fortune, wealth
120. brother
121. grain
122. flight
123. winter
124. man
125. hindrance; *plur.* baggage
126. wrong
127. island
128. judge, juror
129. trial, judgment
130. law
131. book
132. freedom
133. tongue, language
134. place
135. light
136. mother
137. memory
138. soldier
139. nature
140. business, trouble
141. name
142. number
143. duty, service, courtesy
144. town
145. father
146. peace
147. money
148. trial, danger
149. penalty
150. people
151. gate
152. reward
153. garrison, guard
154. leader, chief man
155. battle
156. girl
157. boy
158. queen
159. kingdom
160. king
161. safety
162. slavery
163. slave
164. sign, signal, standard
165. forest
166. ally, comrade
167. sister
168. punishment
169. time
170. land, earth
171. highway, road
172. victory
173. farmhouse
174. man, hero
175. manliness, courage
176. life
177. voice, speech, remark

ADVERBS, CONJUNCTIONS, PREPOSITIONS

178. away from, by
179. to
180. and also
181. before (*prep. and adv.*)
182. before (*adv.*)
183. or, either . . . or
184. certainly, at least
185. with
186. why
187. down from, concerning
188. out from
189. and, also, even
190. even
191. by this time, already
192. in, on (*w. abl.*); into (*w. acc.*)
193. far
194. (sign of a question)
195. and not, nor
196. neither, neither . . . nor

197. nōn
198. nunc
199. per
200. post
201. posteā
202. prō
203. quam
204. -que
205. sed
206. trāns
207. tum
208. ubi

Pronouns, Adjectives

209. aequus
210. altus
211. amīcus
212. amplus
213. barbarus
214. bonus
215. certus
216. crēber
217. ēgregius
218. fīnitimus
219. hic (*adj.*, *pron.*), hīc (*adv.*)
220. īdem
221. ipse
222. ille
223. inimīcus
224. inīquus
225. integer
226. is
227. līber
228. longus
229. magnus
230. medius
231. meus
232. noster
233. nōtus
234. novus
235. parvus
236. paucī
237. prīmus...decimus
238. pūblicus
239. pulcher
240. quis
241. reliquus
242. sacer
243. tardus
244. timidus
245. ūnus . . . decem
246. tuus
247. vērus
248. vester

SECOND HALF YEAR

Verbs

249. antecēdō
250. appropinquō
251. audiō
252. cēdō
253. coepī
254. concitō
255. cōnfīdō
256. cupiō
257. dēligō
258. dēmōnstrō
259. dēsum
260. doceō
261. dormiō
262. dubitō
263. ēripiō
264. ignōrō
265. impediō
266. imperō
267. incendō
268. invideō
269. legō
270. licet
271. mūniō
272. noceō
273. ōdī
274. persuādeō
275. perterreō
276. praecipiō
277. praedīcō
278. praesum
279. premō
280. quaerō
281. rīdeō
282. sciō
283. sentiō
284. serviō

197. not
198. now
199. through
200. after, behind (*prep.*)
201. afterwards (*adv.*)
202. in front of, in behalf of
203. than (*conj.*), how? (*adv. of degree*)
204. and
205. but
206. across
207. then
208. where, when

Pronouns, Adjectives

209. level, even, just, fair
210. high, deep
211. friendly (*as noun*, friend)
212. large, distinguished
213. foreign, barbarous
214. good
215. fixed, certain
216. frequent, thick
217. eminent, unusual
218. neighboring
219. this (*adj.*), he (*pron.*), here (*adv.*)
220. the same
221. self, the very
222. that (*adj.*), he (*pron.*)
223. hostile (*as noun*, enemy)
224. uneven, unfavorable, unjust
225. whole, unimpaired
226. this, that (*adj.*), he (*pron.*)
227. free
228. long
229. large
230. middle, middle of
231. my, mine
232. our
233. known
234. new
235. small
236. few
237. first . . . tenth
238. belonging to the state, official, public
239. beautiful
240. who?
241. the rest, remaining, remainder of
242. sacred
243. slow, late
244. fearful
245. one . . . ten
246. your
247. true
248. your

SECOND HALF YEAR

Verbs

249. go before, precede
250. draw near to, approach
251. hear
252. go, yield
253. begin
254. arouse, excite
255. trust
256. desire
257. select, choose
258. point out, show
259. be lacking
260. teach, show
261. sleep
262. doubt, hesitate
263. snatch away
264. be ignorant of
265. hinder
266. command, order
267. set on fire
268. envy
269. pick, gather, read
270. it is lawful, permitted
271. fortify
272. injure
273. hate
274. persuade
275. alarm
276. order, instruct, advise
277. foretell
278. be in command of
279. press, oppress
280. seek, inquire
281. laugh
282. know
283. feel, realize
284. serve

285. sūmō
286. superō

287. temptō
288. trahō
289. trādūcō
290. vincō
291. vulnerō
292. claudō
293. exclūdō
294. interclūdō

295. dō
296. abdō
297. addō
298. circumdō

299. reddō
300. trādō
301. faciō
302. cōnficiō
303. dēficiō
304. excipiō
305. interficiō
306. perficiō
307. praeficiō
308. reficiō
309. satisfaciō

310. iaciō
311. adiciō
312. coniciō
313. dēiciō
314. ēiciō
315. obiciō

316. prōiciō
317. reiciō
318. trāiciō

319. maneō
320. permaneō
321. remaneō

322. pellō
323. expellō
324. impellō
325. repellō
326. pōnō
327. dēpōnō
328. expōnō
329. oppōnō

330. prōpōnō

331. ascendō

332. dēscendō
333. sedeō
334. obsideō
335. cōnsistō

336. dēsistō
337. resistō
338. spērō
339. dēspērō
340. exstruō
341. īnstruō
342. contendō
343. ostendō
344. veniō
345. circumveniō

346. conveniō
347. inveniō
348. perveniō

349. recipiō

350. submittō

351. succēdō

Nouns

352. aciēs
353. adventus

354. aetās
355. altitūdō
356. beneficium
357. cīvis
358. cohors
359. cōpia
360. condiciō
361. cōnsuētūdō
362. cornū
363. corpus
364. cupiditās

365. diēs
366. difficultās
367. dolor
368. domus (*f.*)
369. equitātus
370. exercitus
371. exitus

372. fidēs

373. fīnis

374. genus
375. hostis

376. imperātor

377. imperium
378. inopia
379. iter
380 iūs
381. laus
382. magnitūdō
383. manus (*f.*)
384. mare
385. mēns
386. modus
387. mōns
388. mors

285. take, assume
286. overcome, excel, surpass
287. test, try, attempt
288. drag
289. lead across
290. conquer
291. wound
292. close, confine
293. shut out
294. shut off, cut off, stop
295. give
296. put away, hide
297. add
298. put around, surround
299. give back
300. hand over
301. do, make
302. finish, exhaust
303. fail, revolt, rebel
304. take, accept
305. kill
306. accomplish
307. put in charge of
308. repair
309. satisfy
310. throw, hurl
311. throw to, add
312. hurl
313. throw down
314. throw out
315. throw against, oppose
316. throw forward
317. throw back
318. throw across, pierce
319. remain
320. remain, hold out
321. stay behind, remain
322. drive, defeat
323. drive out
324. drive on, excite
325. drive back, repulse
326. put, place
327. put down, put aside
328. set forth, explain
329. put against, oppose
330. put before, propose
331. climb, ascend, mount
332. descend
333. sit
334. besiege
335. take one's place, stop
336. desist from, cease
337. resist
338. hope
339. lose hope, despair
340. pile up, erect
341. arrange
342. struggle, hasten
343. show
344. come
345. come around, surround
346. come together
347. come upon, find
348. come through, arrive
349. take back (*w.* **sē** withdraw), receive
350. send to the assistance of, yield to
351. come up, succeed

Nouns

352. line of battle
353. a coming (to), arrival
354. age
355. height, depth
356. kindness
357. citizen
358. cohort
359. supply; *plur.* forces
360. condition, terms
361. custom, habit
362. horn, wing (of army)
363. body
364. desire, greed
365. day
366. difficulty
367. grief
368. home, house
369. cavalry
370. army
371. a going forth, outcome, departure
372. good faith, protection
373. end; *plur.* boundaries, territory
374. race, kind
375. enemy (of the state)
376. commander, general
377. command, power
378. need, lack
379. journey
380. justice, right
381. praise
382. size, importance
383. hand, group, force
384. sea
385. mind
386. manner
387. mountain
388. death

389. multitūdō
390. nāvigium
391. nāvis
392. nox
393. ōrātiō
394. ōrdō
395. pars
396. passus
397. pōns
398. potestās
399. ratiō
400. rēs
401. rēs frūmentāria
402. rēs mīlitāris
403. rēs pūblica
404. senātus
405. spatium
406. spēs
407. timor
408. turris
409. urbs
410. vīs
411. vulnus

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

412. ācriter
413. amplē
414. apud
415. autem
416. bene
417. celeriter
418. dīligenter
419. enim
420. facile
421. fortiter
422. graviter
423. inter
424. interim
425. magnopere
426. multum
427. nam
428. nē . . . quidem
429. ob
430. quidem
431. quod
432. propter
433. satis
434. sī
435. sine
436. trāns
437. vērō

Pronouns, Adjectives

438. ācer
439. celer
440. centum
441. commūnis
442. cupidus
443. dexter
444. difficilis
445. ducentī
446. ego
447. equester
448. facilis
449. familiāris
450. fortis
451. frūmentārius
452. gravis
453. idōneus
454. immortālis
455. incolumis
456. levis
457. mīlitāris
458. mīlle
459. multus
460. necessārius
461. nōbilis
462. omnis
463. pār
464. pedester
465. perītus
466. plēnus
467. propinquus
468. praesēns
469. quadringentī
470. quī
471. recēns
472. sescentī
473. similis
474. singulāris
475. sinister
476. suī
477. suus
478. tālis
479. trecentī
480. tū
481. ūndecim . . . vīgintī
482. vīvus

389. multitude
390. boat
391. ship
392. night
393. speaking, speech
394. rank, class
395. part
396. pace (about five feet)
397. bridge
398. power, authority, chance
399. account, theory, manner
400. thing
401. grain supplies
402. military affairs, act of war
403. commonwealth, government
404. senate
405. space of time, distance
406. hope
407. fear
408. tower
409. city
410. force, violence; *plur.* strength
411. wound

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

412. sharply, fiercely
413. fully
414. among, at the home of
415. (*postpositive*) moreover, on the other hand
416. well
417. swiftly, quickly
418. with care
419. (*postpositive*) for
420. easily
421. bravely
422. heavily, weightily, seriously
423. between, among
424. meanwhile
425. greatly
426. much
427. for
428. not even
429. on account of
430. (*postpositive*) indeed, certainly, at least
431. because
432. on account of
433. enough, quite
434. if
435. without
436. across
437. in truth, but

Pronouns, Adjectives

438. sharp, keen
439. swift
440. hundred
441. common
442. desirous, eager
443. right (hand)
444. difficult
445. two hundred
446. I
447. cavalry
448. easy
449. of the household, intimate
450. brave
451. pertaining to grain
452. heavy, serious
453. fit, suitable
454. without death, immortal
455. unharmed, safe
456. light (in weight)
457. military
458. one thousand
459. much, many
460. necessary, urgent
461. (knowable) noble, famous
462. every; *plur.* all
463. equal
464. infantry (*adj.*)
465. skilled, experienced
466. full
467. near, a relative
468. present, in person
469. four hundred
470. who
471. fresh, new, recent
472. six hundred
473. like
474. single, unusual
475. left (hand)
476. himself, herself, themselves
477. his (her, its, their) own
478. such
479. three hundred
480. you
481. eleven . . . twenty
482. alive

THIRD HALF YEAR

Verbs

483. accēdō
484. ambulō
485. arbitror

486. armō
487. attingō
488. augeō
489. collocō

490. commemorō
491. concēdō
492. cōnor
493. cōnsuēscō

494. cūrō
495. dēdūcō
496. dīmicō
497. dispergō
498. ēnūntiō
499. expediō
500. impediō
501. explōrō
502. excitō
503. incitō
504. immittō
505. intericiō

506. iūrō
507. impetrō

508. nāscor
509. nōlō
510. ōrō
511. pateō
512. patior
513. polliceor
514. postulō
515. potior
516. proficīscor

517. prōnūntiō
518. queror
519. recūsō
520. revocō
521. solvō
522. tardō
523. tollō

524. tueor

525. ūtor
526. valeō
527. vereor
528. versor

529. volō
530. currō
531. concurrō
532. occurrō

533. prōcurrō
534. succurrō

535. eō
536. adeō
537. exeō
538. ineō
539. intereō
540. pereō
541. redeō
542. subeō
543. trānseō
544. ferō
545. afferō
546. cōnferō
547. dēferō
548. īnferō
549. offerō

550. perferō

551. referō
552. fugiō
553. perfugiō

554. profugiō
555. refugiō

556. adgredior
557. congredior

558. ēgredior
559. prōgredior

560. hortor
561. cohortor

562. colligō
563. intellegō
564. loquor
565. colloquor

566. mandō

567. commendō
568. moror
569. commoror
570. orior
571. adorior
572. comperiō
573. experior
574. reperiō
575. comportō

576. supportō
577. trānsportō

578. sequor

THIRD HALF YEAR

Verbs

483. go to, advance
484. walk
485. judge, consider, think
486. arm
487. touch, reach
488. increase
489. place together, establish
490. mention
491. yield, give up
492. attempt, try
493. become accustomed to
494. take care, care for
495. lead away
496. fight
497. scatter (apart)
498. announce
499. free from, extricate
500. hinder
501. investigate
502. stir up
503. incite
504. let in, let loose
505. throw between, intervene
506. swear
507. get one's request, secure permission
508. be born
509. be unwilling
510. (speak) beg, ask
511. lie open, be obvious
512. allow, suffer
513. promise
514. demand
515. get possession of
516. start, set out
517. proclaim
518. complain
519. refuse
520. recall
521. loose, set sail, pay
522. check
523. lift up, remove, destroy
524. look at, watch over, maintain
525. use, make use of
526. be strong
527. fear, respect
528. be engaged in, be busy
529. wish, desire
530. run
531. run together, rush
532. run against, run to meet, occur
533. run forward
534. rush to rescue, relieve
535. go
536. go to, visit
537. go out, go forth
538. enter upon, begin
539. perish
540. (go through) perish
541. go back
542. undergo, suffer
543. go across, cross
544. bear, carry, bring
545. bring (to)
546. bring together
547. carry away, refer
548. carry against
549. carry against, present, put in the way of
550. carry through, endure
551. bring back, report
552. flee
553. flee (through), escape
554. flee forth, escape
555. flee back (from), run away from, avoid
556. attack
557. come together, fight
558. step out, go out
559. step forward, advance
560. urge, exhort
561. encourage earnestly
562. gather
563. understand
564. talk, speak
565. talk with, converse
566. put into the hands of, intrust, order
567. intrust
568. delay
569. delay
570. arise, rise
571. attack
572. find out, learn
573. try out, test
574. find, discover
575. carry *or* bring together
576. bring up, furnish
577. carry across, transport
578. follow

579. cōnsequor
580. īnsequor
581. persequor
582. prōsequor
583. subsequor
584. cōnspiciō
585. cōnspicor
586. dēspiciō
587. perspiciō
588. suspicor
589. tribuō
590. attribuō
591. distribuō

Nouns

592. aditus
593. adulēscēns
594. aegritūdō
595. agmen
596. caedēs
597. calamitās
598. cāsus
599. causa
600. centuriō
601. clāmor
602. classis
603. collis
604. commeātus
605. concursus
606. cōnspectus
607. cōnsulātus
608. conventus
609. familia
610. gēns
611. grātia
612. honor
613. impetus
614. labor
615. lēgātiō
616. lēgātus
617. legiō
618. līberī
619. magistrātus
620. maiōrēs
621. metus
622. mōs
623. mūnītiō
624. nātiō
625. obses
626. odium
627. opera
628. opīniō
629. ops
630. opus
631. perfuga
632. perfugium
633. plānitiēs
634. portus
635. quaestor
636. regiō
637. sententia
638. summa
639. suspīciō
640. tēlum
641. ūsus
642. verbum
643. viātor
644. vulgus

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

645. audācter
646. bis
647. causā
648. circiter
649. contrā
650. cum (*conj.*)
651. cum . . . tum
652. diū
653. dum
654. eō
655. etsī
656. hīc
657. ibi
658. inde
659. ita
660. itaque
661. item
662. modo
663. nē
664. nisi
665. nōn modo . . . sed etiam
666. numquam

579. follow closely, overtake, reach
580. pursue
581. pursue closely
582. follow forth, escort
583. follow closely
584. catch sight of, see
585. catch sight of
586. look down on, despise
587. see through, understand
588. suspect
589. assign, distribute
590. assign
591. distribute

Nouns

592. a going to (toward), approach
593. youth
594. illness
595. marching column (of an army)
596. slaughter
597. defeat, misfortune
598. fall, chance, accident
599. cause
600. centurion
601. shout
602. fleet
603. hill
604. supplies
605. a rush together, crowd
606. sight, view
607. consulship
608. a coming together, a meeting
609. household, slaves
610. tribe, people, nation
611. influence, favor; *plur.* thanks
612. office, honor
613. attack
614. work, trouble
615. embassy, deputation
616. envoy, lieutenant
617. legion, regiment
618. children
619. magistracy, magistrate
620. (persons greater in years) forefathers, elders
621. fear, anxiety
622. custom, habit
623. fortification
624. nation, tribe, race
625. hostage
626. hatred
627. work, service, aid
628. thought, reputation
629. wealth, reputation, resources
630. work, need
631. deserter, fugitive
632. place of refuge
633. plain
634. harbor
635. treasurer, quæstor
636. district
637. thinking, thought, opinion
638. sum total, chief command
639. suspicion
640. missile, weapon
641. use, experience
642. word
643. wayfarer, traveler
644. rabble, crowd

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

645. boldly
646. twice
647. for the sake of
648. nearly, about
649. against
650. when, after, since, although
651. not only . . . but also
652. long (*of time*)
653. while, as long as, until, provided
654. thither, there
655. even if, although
656. here
657. there
658. from there, thence
659. so
660. and so
661. likewise
662. only
663. that not, lest
664. if not, unless
665. not only . . . but also
666. never

667. parum
668. plērumque
669. postquam
670. potius
671. priusquam
672. propterea
673. quā
674. quīn
675. quō
676. quōminus
677. quoniam
678. saepe
679. semper
680. sīc
681. sōlum
682. sub
683. tam
684. tamen

Pronouns, Adjectives

685. aliēnus
686. alius
687. alter
688. angustus
689. apertus
690. brevis
691. cēterī
692. commodus
693. complūrēs
694. dīversus
695. dubius
696. extrā
697. firmus
698. imperītus
699. īnfrā
700. iūstus
701. maritimus
702. necesse
703. nocturnus
704. nēmō
705. nihil
706. nōnnūllus
707. nūllus
708. occultus
709. perpetuus
710. posterus
711. prior, prīmus
712. prope
713. prīvātus
714. quadrāgintā
715. quantus
716. quīnquāgintā
717. rēgius
718. secundus
719. sexāgintā
720. sextus
721. singulī
722. sōlus
723. superbus
724. superus
725. tantus
726. tōtus
727. trīgintā
728. turpis
729. tūtus
730. ūllus
731. ultrā
732. ūniversus
733. uterque
734. ūtilis
735. vetus
736. vetustus

FOURTH HALF YEAR

Verbs

737. administrō
738. admīror
739. arcessō
740. compellō
741. compleō
742. conclāmō
743. cōnflīgō
744. cōnsīdō
745. conquīrō
746. crēscō
747. dēcertō
748. dēserō
749. dēterreō
750. dīvidō
751. explicō
752. exstinguō
753. efficiō
754. fīō
755. frūmentor
756. hiemō
757. impōnō

667. little, too little
668. for the most part
669. after (*conj.*)
670. rather, sooner
671. before (*conj.*)
672. for this reason
673. where
674. but that (*w. expressions of doubt*)
675. whither
676. that . . . not, from (*w. expressions of hindrance*)
677. since (*conj.*)
678. often
679. always
680. thus, so
681. only
682. under, beneath, at the foot of
683. so
684. nevertheless

Pronouns, Adjectives

685. belonging to another
686. another
687. the other (of two)
688. narrow
689. open
690. short
691. the other, the rest of
692. fitting, agreeable
693. several, very many
694. different, distant
695. doubtful
696. outside
697. strong
698. unskilled, inexperienced
699. beneath (**imus** = bottom of)
700. just
701. maritime, naval
702. necessary
703. at night, nocturnal
704. no one
705. nothing
706. (not no) = some
707. no (no one *in gen. and abl.*)
708. concealed
709. everlasting
710. next, later
711. earlier, first
712. near
713. private
714. forty
715. how great
716. fifty
717. royal
718. successful
719. sixty
720. sixth
721. one each, one at a time
722. alone, only
723. proud
724. high (**summus** = top of)
725. so great
726. all, whole
727. thirty
728. disgraceful
729. safe
730. any
731. beyond
732. altogether, all
733. both, each
734. useful
735. old
736. old

FOURTH HALF YEAR

Verbs

737. manage
738. wonder at
739. summon, invite
740. drive together, force
741. fill
742. shout
743. strike together, clash, fight
744. halt, encamp
745. search for, collect
746. grow (*intrans.*)
747. decide, fight to a finish
748. desert
749. deter
750. divide
751. unfold, set forth
752. put out
753. bring about
754. be made, become, happen
755. get grain, forage
756. spend the winter
757. put on, impose

758. incolō
759. iniciō
760. interrogō
761. invītō
762. lateō
763. mereō
764. minuō
765. nancīscor

766. occultō
767. opprimō
768. pābulor
769. perturbō
770. poscō
771. praebeō

772. prīvō
773. proelior
774. quiēscō
775. sollicitō

776. studeō

777. sublevō

778. tegō
779. trucīdō

780. vāstō
781. vītō
782. cadō
783. accidō
784. incidō
785. caedō
786. occīdō
787. cernō

788. dēcernō

789. adiungō
790. coniungō
791. comprehendō

792. dēprehendō
793. regō
794. dīrigō
795. statuō
796. cōnstituō

797. īnstituō

798. restituō

799. stō
800. cōnstō

801. īnstō
802. vertō
803. āvertō
804. advertō
805. animadvertō

806. convertō
807. revertō

Nouns

808. aedificium
809. aestus
810. agger

811. angustiae

812. ancora
813. aqua
814. arbor
815. armātūra

816. auris
817. bracchium
818. campus
819. captīvus
820. carrus
821. castellum
822. cliēns
823. colloquium

824. concilium
825. contentiō
826. contumēlia
827. cursus

828. custōdia
829. dēditiō
830. dēfēnsor
831. dētrīmentum
832. digitus
833. disciplīna
834. ēruptiō
835. ēventus
836. exercitātiō
837. explōrātor
838. facultās

839. fīdūcia
840. fossa
841. frōns

842. funditor
843. gener
844. gladius
845. gradus
846. hīberna
847. hōra
848. ignis
849. iūs iūrandum
850. imperātum
851. incendium
852. incommodum

853. industria
854. initium
855. īnsidiae
856. īnstitūtum
857. iugum
858. iūmentum
859. lapis
860. lātitūdō

758. dwell, inhabit
759. throw into, inspire
760. ask
761. invite
762. lie hidden
763. deserve
764. make less, lessen
765. find, get (by chance)
766. conceal
767. overwhelm, crush
768. get fodder, forage
769. disturb, alarm
770. demand
771. hold before, offer, furnish, display
772. deprive of
773. battle
774. rest, become quiet
775. make anxious, tamper with, bribe
776. be eager, be zealous
777. lighten, relieve, assist
778. cover, protect
779. slaughter, massacre
780. lay waste
781. avoid
782. fall
783. happen
784. fall upon, happen
785. slay
786. cut down, kill
787. discern, distinguish
788. decide, determine, decree
789. join to, add
790. join with, unite
791. seize, arrest
792. seize, capture
793. rule
794. guide, direct
795. set up, decide
796. set up, station, decide
797. establish, undertake, begin
798. set back (in place), restore
799. stand
800. stand together, be agreed, be certain, cost
801. press on, threaten
802. turn
803. turn away
804. turn to (toward)
805. attend to, notice, punish
806. turn, change
807. turn back, return

Nouns

808. building
809. heat, tide
810. earth wall, embankment
811. narrow place, critical situation
812. anchor
813. water
814. tree
815. equipment, armament
816. ear
817. arm
818. plain, field
819. captive
820. wagon
821. fortress
822. vassal
823. a talking together, conference
824. meeting, council
825. struggle
826. insult, injury
827. a running, speed, course
828. guard
829. surrender
830. defender
831. defect, loss
832. finger
833. training, discipline
834. sally
835. outcome
836. exercise, practice
837. scout
838. facility, opportunity
839. confidence, pledge
840. ditch
841. forehead, front
842. slinger
843. son-in-law
844. sword
845. step, rank
846. winter quarters
847. hour
848. fire
849. oath
850. order
851. fire, burning
852. disadvantage, defeat
853. industry
854. beginning
855. plot, stratagem
856. custom, institution
857. yoke, ridge
858. beast of burden
859. stone
860. width

861. latus
862. littera

863. lītus
864. mandātum
865. māteria
866. mercātor
867. mora
868. mūnus
869. mūrus
870. nōbilitās
871. nūntius
872. obsidiō
873. occāsiō
874. onus

875. oppidānus
876. opportūnitās

877. oppugnātiō
878. ōs
879. ōs
880. pābulātiō
881. pāgus
882. palūs
883. pecus
884. pedes
885. pēs
886. pīlum
887. plēbs
888. praefectus

889. praetor
890. prex
891. profectiō
892. prōvincia
893. pugna
894. rādīx
895. rēmex
896. respōnsum
897. rīpa
898. sagittārius
899. saxum
900. scientia
901. scūtum
902. sōl
903. speciēs

904. sponte suā
905. statiō
906. stīpendium
907. studium
908. subsidium
909. tempestās

910. tergum
911. terror
912. toga

913. tribūnus
914. trīduum

915. tumulus
916. vadum
917. vallēs
918. vāllum
919. ventus
920. victor
921. vīcus
922. vigilia
923. vinculum
924. vīnea
925. voluntās

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

926. adversus
927. aegrē

928. an
929. at
930. clam
931. cotīdiē
932. deinde
933. eōdem
934. frūstrā
935. grātīs
936. hūc
937. iam prīdem
938. intrā
939. noctū
940. nōndum
941. omnīnō

942. paene
943. palam
944. partim
945. paulātim
946. paulō

947. paulum
948. praesertim
949. praeter
950. praetereā
951. prīdiē
952. prīmō
953. prīmum
954. procul
955. quoque
956. repente
957. rūrsus
958. sīcut (sīcutī)
959. simul
960. statim
961. subitō
962. suprā
963. ultrō

964. ūnā

965. unde
966. undique

967. ūsque
968. vehementer
969. vix

861. side
862. letter of the alphabet; *plur.* epistle
863. shore
864. order
865. timber, stuff
866. trader
867. delay
868. duty, service, gift
869. wall
870. nobility, fame
871. messenger, message
872. siege
873. chance, opportunity
874. burden, cargo, weight
875. townsman
876. advantage, opportunity
877. siege, attack
878. bone
879. face, mouth
880. fodder
881. district, canton
882. swamp
883. cattle
884. foot soldier
885. foot
886. javelin
887. common people
888. governor, captain, mayor
889. prætor, judge
890. prayer
891. departure
892. province
893. fight, battle
894. root, base
895. oarsman
896. answer
897. bank
898. bowman
899. rock
900. knowledge
901. shield
902. sun
903. appearance, pretense
904. of one's own accord
905. outpost, picket
906. tribute, pay, service
907. zeal, enthusiasm
908. reserve, assistance
909. season, stormy weather
910. back, rear
911. dread, fright
912. Roman outer garment, toga
913. tribune
914. period of three days
915. mound
916. ford
917. valley
918. rampart, palisade
919. wind
920. victor
921. village
922. watch (of the night)
923. chain
924. shed
925. good will, purpose, wish

Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions

926. against
927. ill, feebly, with difficulty
928. (whether) . . . or
929. but
930. secretly
931. daily
932. then, next
933. to the same place
934. in vain
935. freely
936. hither
937. long ago
938. within
939. at night
940. not yet
941. on the whole, at all, altogether
942. almost
943. openly
944. partly
945. little by little
946. a little (*w. comparative*)
947. a little
948. especially
949. except
950. besides
951. on the day before
952. at first
953. first
954. at a distance
955. also
956. suddenly
957. again
958. just as, as if
959. at the same time
960. at once
961. suddenly
962. above
963. voluntarily, beyond
964. together, in company
965. whence
966. from all sides, on all sides
967. even till, even to
968. violently
969. scarcely

PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES

970. aeger
971. aliquis
972. citerior
973. cotīdiānus
974. cūnctus
975. decumānus

976. dēfessus
977. duplex

978. excelsus
979. exiguus
980. īnfīrmus
981. plērīque

982. prīstinus
983. quīcumque
984. quīdam

985. quisquam

986. quisque
987. quod sī
988. repentīnus
989. sī quis
990. tot
991. vacuus

Pronouns, Adjectives

970. sick
971. some one, any one
972. on this side, nearer
973. daily
974. all, whole
975. pertaining to the tenth, rear (gate)
976. tired
977. double
978. lofty
979. small
980. weak
981. the most, the majority
982. former, old
983. whoever
984. a certain one
985. any one at all (*with a negative expressed or implied*)
986. each one
987. but if
988. sudden
989. if any
990. so many
991. vacant, destitute of

WORD FORMATION

NOTE. The requirements of the Syllabus in regard to word formation for the first year are here reprinted, as this matter may be found useful for reference and review. For the second year, directions and exercises for the pupils are provided, following the requirements of the Syllabus. Teachers may continue these suggestions as they desire.

FIRST HALF YEAR

a. **Prefixes: ā (ab, abs), ad, con** (prepositional and adverbial force), **dē, ex (ē), in-** (both prepositional and negative uses).

These prefixes are to be used in two ways: first, to form new Latin verbs from simple verbs; secondly, to form English derivatives. The simple verbs to be used in this exercise are those which occur in the required vocabularies for the different half years. The following are examples for the first half year:

dūcō, *lead*,	+ **ab**	= **abdūcō**, *lead away*
	+ **ad**	= **addūcō**, *lead to*
	+ **con**	= **condūcō**, *lead together*
	+ **dē**	= **dēdūcō**, *lead down*
	+ **ē**	= **ēdūcō**, *lead out*
	+ **in**	= **indūcō**, *lead into*
	+ **prō**	= **prōdūcō**, *lead forth*
	+ **re**	= **redūcō**, *lead back*
	+ **trāns (trā)**	= **trādūcō**, *lead across*

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES: *adduce*, *conduce*, *deduce*, *educe*, *induce*, *conduct*, *deduct*, *induct*, *conducive*, *deduction*, etc.

NOTE. Attention should be called to phonetic changes in Latin compounds. For example, **ad + capiō = accipiō; con + locō = collocō.**

b. **Suffixes.** Latin words formed by means of suffixes should be observed carefully and compared with the related words. Except in the case of suffixes that have a uniform and easily defined meaning, it is advisable merely to lead the pupil to associate the words concerned. In the first half year the following types of words should be noted:

(1) *Nouns from Nouns.* For example, **virtūs (vir), servitūs (servus), cīvitās (cīvis).**

(2) *Nouns from Adjectives.* For example, **amīcitia (amīcus), celeritās (celer), dignitās (dignus), dīligentia (dīligēns).**

c. **Derivation.** Since a very large number of English words have come, directly or indirectly, from Latin, special attention should be given to the derivation of such words. Accordingly, ten Latin verbs are assigned for each half year as a basis for study in derivation. From each of these verbs the pupil should be required to make a list of all the important English derivatives. An optional list of ten verbs has been added for each half year in the belief that many teachers will wish to emphasize even more strongly this feature of the study of Latin.

The required and optional lists for the first half year are as follows:

Required		Optional	
1. servō	6. moveō	1. iūdicō	6. habeō
2. locō	7. dūcō	2. pācō	7. moneō
3. vocō	8. mittō	3. parō	8. teneō
4. putō	9. dīcō	4. pugnō	9. agō
5. videō	10. capiō	5. spectō	10. cognōscō

NOTE. A suggested form of arrangement follows:

DERIVATION NOTEBOOK (specimen page)

TYPE 1 (without definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus, *place*	locate, local, locality, location, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate, localization, localize, locally, locative, locomotive, locomotor

Type 2 (with definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus, *call*	vocation: a *calling*, occupation
	vocational: pertaining to a vocation, or *calling*
	vocal: pertaining to the voice
	evoke: *call* out
	convoke: *call* together
	vocative: case of *calling*, case of address
	revoke: *call* back, remand
	invoke: *call* upon, ask for
	vociferous: with large *calling* power, with loud tones
	invocation: a *calling* upon, a prayer

Type 3 (with examples of use in English)

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send*	mission: He was sent on a mission to Europe
	missionary: He was sent as a missionary to China
	missive: The letter was a formidable missive
	missile: Stones were the missiles of early warfare
	transmit: They will transmit the message to us
	remission: He preached the remission of sins
	commit: She was committed to his care
	submit: They submitted to the inevitable
	submissive: The slave was not submissive
	omit: Omit the nonessential

SECOND HALF YEAR

a. **Prefixes: inter, per, prae, prō, sub.**

For suggestions regarding the proper procedure in the study of this list, see the outline of work for the first half year (p. 469).

b. **Suffixes.** It is important to observe carefully the following typical nouns, and to associate them with the verbs from which they are derived:

adventus (adveniō), oppugnātiō (oppugnō), praesidium (praesideō), iūdicium (iūdicō).

Similarly, the following nouns derived from nouns and adjectives should be noted:

pecūnia (pecus), cupiditās (cupiō, cupidus), potestās (possum, potēns), altitūdō (altus).

NOTE. In the second half year both the prefixes and the simple verbs already studied are to be reviewed; the new prefixes are to be compounded with the old verbs, and the old prefixes with the new verbs.

c. **Derivation.** The following ten verbs and the more important English words derived from their roots:

Required		Optional	
1. nāvigō	6. vincō	1. dō	6. trahō
2. doceō	7. sūmō	2. veniō	7. pellō
3. timeō	8. faciō	3. fīdō	8. cōnsulō
4. sedeō	9. iaciō	4. pōnō	9. audeō
5. scrībō	10. audiō	5. terreō	10. mūniō

THIRD HALF YEAR

EXERCISES

I. Consult the general vocabulary and learn the meanings of the prefixes **ante, dis, ob, re, trāns.**

For example, **ante** means *before, in front.* What does **ante-cēdō** mean? **ante-ferō? ante-pōnō?** See the general vocabulary.

Learn also that **sē** means *aside, by itself.* What does **sē-pōnō** mean? **sē-cēdō?**

II. From the vocabulary select and give the meanings of verbs formed with the prefixes in Exercise I.

III. What English words are derived from the words selected in Exercise II?

IV. From an examination of the following nouns and the verbs from which they are derived, what force has the suffix **tor? or?**

imperātor (imperō), quaestor (quaerō), clāmor (clāmō), timor (timeō).

V. Learn the following ten verbs, and make a list of the English words derived from them; show the list to your teacher; after it has been corrected and returned to you, learn the verbs and the English derivatives:

Required		Optional	
1. ōrō	6. regō	1. mandō	6. tribuō
2. portō	7. legō	2. arbitror	7. (ad)iungō
3. stō	8. solvō	3. valeō	8. sequor
4. ferō	9. fugiō	4. cadō	9. tollō
5. (in)colō	10. expediō	5. currō	10. vertō

FOURTH HALF YEAR

Exercises

I. Note the effect of the suffixes upon the meanings of the following words; after each word a related Latin word containing the same root is given (the small numeral indicates the half year in which the word occurred first; if there is no numeral, the word is not in the prescribed vocabulary):

1. TERROR[4], terreō; CLĀMOR[3], conclāmō[4].

2. VIĀTOR[3], via[1]; DĒFĒNSOR[4], dēfendō[1]; EXPLŌRĀTOR[4], explōrō[3]; VICTOR[4], vincō[2]; PERFUGA[3], fugiō[3]; INCOLA, incolō[4], agricola[1]; ADVENA, veniō[2].

3. LEGIŌ[3], legō[2]; DĒDITIŌ[4], dēdō; CONTENTIŌ[4], contendō; ĒRUPTIŌ[4], ērumpō; OBSIDIŌ[4], obsideō[2]; OCCĀSIŌ[4], cadō[4]; OPPUGNĀTIŌ[4], oppugnō[1]; SUSPĪCIŌ[3], suspicor[3]; MŪNĪTIŌ[3], mūniō[2]; LĒGĀTIŌ[3], lēx[1], lēgō; OPĪNIŌ[3], opīnor; STATIŌ[3], stō; ADVENTUS[2], veniō[2]; CONVENTUS[3]; ĒVENTUS[4]; EXITUS[4], eō[3]; ADITUS[3]; CĀSUS[3], cadō[4]; CONCURSUS[3], currō[3].

4. CAEDĒS[3], caedō[4]; SPECIĒS[4], cōnspiciō[3], spectō[1]; FIDĒS[2], fīdō; PRAESIDIUM, subsidium[4], sedeō[2]; PERFUGIUM[3], fugiō[3]; CŌNSILIUM[1], cōnsulō[1]; ODIUM[3], ōdī[2]; INCENDIUM[4], incendō; STUDIUM[4], studeō; INITIUM[4], eō[3]; COLLOQUIUM[4], loquor[3]; IŪDICIUM[1], iūdicō.

5. NŌMEN[1], cognōscō[1]; FLŪMEN[1], fluō; IMPEDĪMENTUM[1], impediō[2]; IŪMENTUM[4], adiungō[4]; VINCULUM[4], vinciō; AGRICULTŪRA, ager[1], colō.

6. VICTŌRIA[1], victor; SCIENTIA[4], sciō[2], sciēns; DĪLIGENTIA[1], dīligō, dīligēns; PRŪDENTIA, prūdēns, prōvidēns, videō[1]; CELERITĀS[1], celer; LĪBERTĀS[1], līber[1]; NŌBILITĀS[4], nōbilis[2], cognōscō[1]; OPPORTŪNITĀS[4], opportūnus; VOLUNTĀS[4], volō[3], volēns; FACULTĀS[4], facilis[2], faciō[2]; SERVITŪS[1], servus[1], serviō[2]; VIRTŪS[1], vir; AEGRITŪDŌ[3], aeger[4]; MULTITŪDŌ[2], multus[2]; LĀTITŪDŌ[4], lātus; FORTITŪDŌ, fortis[2]; DISCIPLĪNA[4], discipulus, discō.

7. FACILIS[2], faciō[2]; ŪTILIS, ūtor[3]; LAUDĀBILIS, laudō; CAPTĪVUS[4], capiō[1]; CUPIDUS, cupiō[2]; OPPIDĀNUS[4], oppidum[1]; PERĪCULŌSUS, perīculum[1]; NĀVĀLIS, nāvis[2]; CĪVĪLIS, cīvis[2]; HOSTĪLIS, hostis[2].

II. Observe the Latin suffixes. Note the forms of these suffixes in the corresponding English words, with any changes. For example, **or** is *or*; **tor** (or **sor**) is *tor* (or *sor*; **dēfēnsor** is for **dēfend-tor**); **iō** and **tiō** are *ion* and *tion* (English uses the stem of the word as shown in the genitive: with **legiō** compare *legion*; with **statiō**, *station*). The suffix **tās** becomes *ty* (as in *nobility*); **tūdō** becomes *tude* (as in *multitude*); **tus** becomes *t* (as in *event*); **tūs** becomes *tue* (as in *virtue*).

The table below gives Latin roots and their Latin and English derivatives (these words are not found in the vocabulary of one thousand words which you are studying carefully).

The following abbreviations are used:

n = noun; a = adjective; v = verb; av = adverb

LATIN ROOTS	LATIN DERIVATIVES	ENGLISH DERIVATIVES
1. **spec**	(v) spectō	(n) aspect
	(n) spectātor	(v) inspect
	(n) spectāculum	(n) inspection
	(v) aspiciō (ad-spiciō)	(n) spectator
	(n) aspectus	(n) spectacle
	(v) circumspiciō	(a) spectacular
	(v) cōnspiciō	(a) circumspect
	(v) perspiciō	(n) circumspection
	(v) prōspiciō	(n) species
	(v) respiciō	(a) conspicuous
	(v) retrōspiciō	(a) suspicious
	(v) speculor (*dep.*)	(v, n) suspect
		(n) perspective
		(n) prospect

Latin Roots	Latin Derivatives	English Derivatives
		(a) prospective
		(n) prospector
		(v, n) respect
		(a) respectable
		(av) respectably
		(n) respectability
		(n) retrospect
		(n) retrospection
		(a) retrospective
		(v) speculate
		(n) speculator
		(n) speculation
2. ten	(v) teneō	(a) tenable
	(a) tenāx	(a) tenacious
	(n) tenācitās	(a) pertinacious
	(v) abstineō	(n) tenacity
	(n) abstinentia	(v) abstain
	(v) contineō	(n) abstinence
	(v) continuō	(v) contain
	(v) dētineō	(n, a) content
	(v) obtineō	(v) continue
	(v) pertineō	(a) continual
	(v) retineō	(a) continuous
	(v) sustineō	(v) detain
		(n) detention
		(v) obtain
		(v) pertain
		(v) retain
		(v) sustain
		(n) sustenance
		(v) maintain
		(v) entertain
		(a) pertinent
		(a) impertinent
		(n) tenant
3. cap	(v) capiō	(v, n) capture
	(n) captīvus	(n) captive
	(n) captīvitās	(n) captivity
	(v) accipiō	(v) accept
	(v) excipiō	(a) acceptable
	(v) recipiō	(n) acceptability
	(v) incipiō	(v) except
	(v) dēcipiō	(n) exception
	(a) capāx	(n) receptacle

Latin Roots	Latin Derivatives	English Derivatives
	(v) suscipiō	(n) recipient
	(v) praecipiō	(a) incipient
	(v) percipiō	(v) participate
	(n) praeceptor	(a, n) principal
	(v) intercipiō	(n) principle
		(n) recipe
		(n) deception
		(n) capacity
		(n) incapacity
		(a) capacious
		(n) precept
		(n) preceptor
		(n) perception
		(av) (im)perceptibly
		(v) emancipate
		(n) emancipation
		(a) susceptible
		(n) susceptibility
4. vid	(v) videō	(n) vision
	(v) prōvideō	(a) visible
	(a) prūdēns	(n) visibility
	(n) prūdentia	(v, n) visit
		(a) visual
		(v) provide
		(n) providence
		(n) provision
		(a) providential
		(a) evident
		(n) evidence
		(a) visionary
		(n) proviso
		(a) prudent
		(n) prudence
		(n) vista

III. Use ten of the above English words in ten English sentences, and ten of the Latin words in ten Latin sentences.

IV. Study the roots of the following words, using a Latin lexicon and an unabridged English dictionary:

cēdō, cadō, caedō, moveō, pellō, vehō, sedeō, habeō, sentiō, vertō, trahō, regō.

ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS

ā as in fāte	ē as in mēte	ō as in ōld	ŭ as in ŭp	c as in call
ȧ as in senȧte	ė as in ėvent	ȯ as in ȯbey	û as in fûr	ç as in çity
ă as in făt	ĕ as in mĕt	ŏ as in nŏt	u̧ as in ru̧le	ch as in school
ä as in ärm	ẽ as in hẽr	ô as in côrk	u̦ as in pu̦ll	g as in go
a̤ as in a̤ll				ġ as in caġe
ȧ as in ȧsk	ī as in īce	ū as in ūse	ȳ as in bȳ	n̲ as in in̲k
a̦ as in wha̦t	ĭ as in ĭt	ū̇ as in ū̇nite	y̆ as in baby̆	qu as in quit
				s̹ as in his̹

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Ăb-syr′tŭs
(sēr)
Ȧ căs′tŭs
Ăc′cȯ
Ȧ chā′iȧ
(y)
Ȧ chĭl′*lās*
Ȧ cū′tĭ-ŭs
(sh)
Ā′dĭ ȧ tŭn′*n*ŭs
Ăd′ū̇ ăt′ū̇ cȧ
Ăd′ū̇ ăt′ū̇ çĭ
*A*ē-ē′tēs̹
*A*ē ġy̆p′tŭs
*A*ē mĭl′ĭ ŭs
*A*ē′sŏn
Ȧ frā′nĭ ŭs̹
Ăf′rĭ cŭs
Ăg′ė dĭn̲′cŭm
Ȧ lē′sĭ ȧ
(sh)

Ăl′ĕx ăn′drĭ ȧ
Alise-Saint*e*-Rein*e*
(ȧ′lēs̹′săn̲t′rĕn′)
Ăl *l*ŏb′rȯ ġēs̹
Ăm băr′*r*ĭ
Ăm′bĭ ā′nĭ
Ăm′bĭl ĭ a̦′tĭ
Ăm bĭ′ȯ rĭx
Ăm′bĭ văr′ĭ tĭ
Ăm′ĭ ĕns̹
Ăm phĭp′ȯ lĭs
Ăm′pĭ ŭs
Ȧ när′tēs̹
Ăn̲ căl′ĭ tēs̹
Ăn′dė brō′ġĭ ŭs
Ăn′dēs̹
Ăn′dĭ
Ăn tĭ′ȯ chŭs
Ăn tō′nĭ ŭs

Ȧ pŏl′*l*ȯ
Ȧ pū′lĭ ȧ
Ăq′uĭ lē′iȧ
(y)
Ăq′uĭ tā′nĭ ȧ
Ā′rär
Ăr′ė cŏm′ĭ çĭ
Är′gȯ na̤*u*ts̹
Är′gŭs
Ā′rĭ ȯ vĭs′tŭs
Är′pĭ nē′iŭs
(y)
Är vẽr′nĭ
Ā′sĭ ȧ
(sh)
Ăth′ȧ măs
Ăt′rė bā′tēs̹
Ā′trĭ ŭs
Ăt′*t*ĭ cŭs
A̤*u* lẽr′çĭ

Ạu′lŭs
Ạu rē′lĭ ŭs
Ạu rŭn′cŭ lē′iŭs
(y)
Ạu′scī
Ȧ văr′ĭ cŭm
Ăx′ŏ nȧ

Băç′ĕ nĭs
Băc′ŭ lŭs
Baē′bĭ ŭs
Băl vĕn′tĭ ŭs
(sh)
Băs′ĭ lŭs
Băt′ȧ vī
Bĕl′ġaē
Bĕl′ġĭ ŭm
Bĕl lŏv′ȧ çī
Bī brăc′tē
Bī′brăx
Bĭb′rŏ çī
Bĭb′ŭ lŭs
Bī ġĕr′rĭ ō′nēş
Bī-thȳ′nĭ
Bī-thȳn′ĭ ȧ
Bĭt′ŭ rī′ġēş
Blī′thō
Bŏd′ŭ ŏg nā′tŭs
Bō′iȧ
(y)
Bō′iī
(y)
Brăt′ŭ spăn′tĭ ŭm
(sh)
Brĭ tăn′nī
Brĭ tăn′nĭ ȧ
Brŭn dĭs′ĭ ŭm
(sh)
Brụ′tŭs

Căb′ŭ rŭs
Cȧ dûr′çī
Çaĕ mā′nī
Çaĕ rō′sī
Çaē′şar

Cā′iŭs
(y)
Căl′ȧ ĭs
Căl′ĕ tī
Căm′ŭ lŏġ′ĕ nŭs
Căn′naē
Căn′tȧ brī
Căn′tĭ ŭm
(sh)
Căp′ŭ ȧ
Căr′nŭ tēş
Căr vĭl′ĭ ŭs
Căs′sī
Căs′sĭ ŭs
(sh)
Căs′sī vĕl lạu′nŭs
Căs′tĭ cŭs
Căs′tŏr
Căt′ȧ măn′tȧ loē′dēş
Căt′ŭ rī′ġēş
Căt′ŭ vŏl′cŭs
Çĕl′taē
Çĕl tĭl′lŭs
Çĕn′ȧ bĕn′sēş
Çĕn′ȧ bŭm
Çĕn′ĭ măġ′nī
Çĕn tē′nĭ ŭs
Çĕ thē′gŭs
Çeŭ′trŏ nēş
Çĕ vĕn′nȧ
Cévennes (sā vĕn′)
Ͼhĕ rŭs′cī
Çĭç′ĕ rŏ
Çī lĭc′ĭ ȧ
(sh)
Çĭm bē′rĭ ŭs
Çĭm′brī
Çĭn ġĕt′ŏ rĭx
Çĭs ăl′pīne
Çī′tȧ
Clăs tĭd′ĭ ŭm
Clạu′dĭ ŭs
Clē′ŏ pā′trȧ

Clō′dĭ ŭs
Cŏc′ŏ sā′tēş
Cŏl′ehī
Cŏl′ehĭs
Cŏm′mĭ ŭs
Cŏn çŏn′nĕ tŏ dŭm′nŭs
Cŏn drụ′sī
Cŏn sĭd′ĭ ŭs
Cŏn vĭc′tŏ lĭt′ȧ vĭs
Cŏr′ĭnth
Cō′rĭ ŏ sŏl′ĭ tēş
Cŏr nē′lĭ ŭs
Cō′rŭs
Cŏt′tȧ
Cŏt′ŭ ā′tŭs
Cō′tŭs
Crăs′sŭs
Crăs′tĭ nŭs
Crē′ŏn
Crēte
Çȳ′prŭs
Çȳz′ĭ cŭs

Dā′çī
Dȧ nū′vĭ ŭs
Dĕl′phī
Dī′ȧ blĭn′tēş
Dī ā′nȧ
Dī′ŏs cŏr′ĭ dēş
Dĭv′ĭ çī ā′cŭs
(sh)
Dĭv′ĭ cŏ
Dŏ mĭt′ĭ ŭs
(sh)
Dŏn′nŏ tạu′rŭs
Dū′bĭs
Dŭm′nŏ rĭx
Dū′rŭs
Dȳr rā′ehĭ ŭm

Ĕb′ŭ rō′nēş
Ĕb′ŭ rŏ vī′çēş

Ē′lĭs
Ĕl′ū sā′tēș
Ĕph′ė sŭs
Ĕp′ŏ rĕd′ŏ rĭx
Ė rĭd′ȧ nŭs
Ė sū′vĭ ī
Ė try′rĭ ȧ
*E*ū′mĕ nēș

Fā′bĭ ŭs
Flăc′*c*ŭs
Flăm′ĭ nĭ′nŭs
Flȧ mĭn′ĭ ŭs
Frė ġĕl′*la*ē
Froụde
Fū′fĭ ŭs
Fū′rĭ ŭs

Găb′ȧ lī
Gȧ bĭn′ĭ ŭs
Gā′iŭs
(y)
Găl′bȧ
Găl′*l*ī
Găl′*l*ĭ ȧ
Găl′*l*ŭs
Gȧ rŭm′nȧ
Gȧ rŭm′nī
Gā′tēș
Gạ*ul*
Ġē′ĭ dŭm′nī
Ġĕm′ĭ nŭs
Ġė nā′vȧ
Ġĕr gō′vĭ ȧ
Ġĕr mā′nĭ ȧ
Glạ*u*′çē
*Gna*ē′ŭs
Gŏ′băn *n*ĭt′ĭ ŏ
(sh)
Gôr gŏb′ĭ nȧ
Gôr tȳn′ĭ ī
Grăc′*ch*ŭs

Grȧ iŏç′ė lī
(y)

Hăd′rụ mē′tŭm
Ha*ĕ*d′ū ī
Hăn′*n*ĭ băl
Hȧ rụ′dēș
Hăs′drụ băl
Hĕl′*l*ē
Hĕl vē′tĭ ī
(sh)
Hĕl′vĭ ī
Hĕr′cū lēș
Hĭ bĕr′nĭ ȧ
Hĭr′*r*ŭs
Hir′tĭ ŭs
(ē) (sh)
Hĭs pā′nĭ ȧ
Hȳ′lăs

Ĭc′cĭ ŭs
(sh)
Ĭl *l*ȳr′ĭ cŭm
Ĭn dū′tĭ ŏ mā′rŭs
(sh)
Ĭ tā′lĭ ȧ
Ĭt′ĭ ŭs
(sh)
Iū′nĭ ŭs
(j)
Iụ*p*′pĭ tĕr
(j)
Iụ′rȧ
(j)

Jā′sŏn

Lăb′ē ō
Lȧ bē′rĭ ŭs
Lā′bĭ ē′nŭs
Lȧ rī′sȧ
Lā′tĭ ŭm
(sh)
Lȧ tŏb′rĭ ġī
Lė măn′*n*ŭs

Lĕm′ŏ vī′çēș
Lĕn′tū lŭs
Lė ŏn′ĭ dăs
Lė pŏn′tĭ ī
(sh)
Leū′çī
Lĕx ō′vĭ ī
Lī′ġĕr
Lĭg′ū rēș
Lĭn′gŏ nēș
Lĭs′cŭs
Lĭt′ȧ vĭc′cŭs
Loire (lwär)
Lū cā′nī
Lū cā′nĭ ŭs
Lū cĭl′ĭ ŭs
Lū′cĭ ŭs
(sh)
Lŭc tē′rĭ ŭs
Lū gŏt′ŏ rĭx
Lū tē′tĭ ȧ
(sh)

Măç′ē dō′nĭ ȧ
Măġ′ė tŏb′rĭ gȧ
Mā′gō
Măn dū′bĭ ī
Măn′dū brā′cĭ ŭs
(sh)
Măn′lĭ ŭs
Mär çĕl′*l*ŭs
Mär′cŏ măn′*n*ī
Mär′cŭs
Mā′rĭ ŭs
Märș
Măt′rŏ nȧ
Măx′ĭ mŭs
Mė dē′ȧ
Mē′dĭ ŏ măt′rĭ çī
Mĕl′dī
Mė nā′pĭ ī
Mĕr cū′rĭ ŭs
Mĕs sā′lȧ

Mē′tĭ ŏ sē′dŭm
(sh)
Mē′tĭ ŭs
(sh)
Mĭ nẽr′vȧ
Mĭ nū′cĭ ŭs
(sh)
Mō′nȧ
Mŏr′ĭ nĭ
Mō′sȧ
Mȳs′ĭ ȧ
(sh)
Mȳt′ĭ lē′nē

Năm *mē*′iŭs
(y)
Năm′nĕ tēş
Năn′tū ā′tēş
När′bŏ
Năs′ū ȧ
(sh)
Nĕm′ĕ tēş
Nẽr′vĭ ī
Nĭt′ĭ ŏb′rŏ ģēş
(sh)
Nŏ rē′iȧ
(y)
Nō′vĭ ŏ dū′nŭm

Ŏç′ĕ lŭm
Ŏc′tŏ dū′rŭs
Ôr ģĕt′ŏ rĭx
Ŏr′ĭ cŭm
Ôr′pheŭs
Ŏ sĭs′mĭ

Pȧ rĭs′ĭ ī
(sh)
Pär′thĭ
P*au*′lŭs
Pē′dĭ ŭs
Pē′lĭ ăs
Pĕ lū′sĭ ŭm
(sh)
Pẽr′gȧ mŭm
Pĕt′rŏ sĭd′ĭ ŭs

Phā′rŭs
Phā′sĭs
Phĭ′neŭs
Phrĭx′ŭs
Pĭc′tŏ nēş
Pĭ′sŏ
Pŏ lȳb′ĭ ŭs
Pŏl′ȳ phē′mŭs
Pŏm pē′iŭs
(y)
Pŏm′pe*ȳ*
Pr*ǣ*′cŏ nĭ′nŭs
Prŏ çĭl′*l*ŭs
Prụ′sĭ ăs
(sh)
*P*tĭ ā′nĭ ī
*P*tŏl′ĕ m*aē*′ŭs
*P*tŏl′ĕ mā′ĭs
Pŭb′lĭ ŭs
Pŭl′chẽr
Pụl′lŏ

Quĭn′tŭs

R*au*′rȧ çĭ
Rĕd′ŏ nēş
Rē′mĭ
Rē′mŭs
R*h*ē′nụs
R*h*ŏd′ȧ nŭs
R*h*ōdeş
R*h*ō′dŏs
Rụ′fŭs
Rụ tē′nĭ

Sȧ bĭ′nŭs
Sā′bĭs
Sȧ gŭn′tŭm
Săl′mȳ dĕs′*s*ŭs
Săm′ȧ rŏ brī′vȧ
Săn′tŏ nēş
Săn′tŏ nĭ
Scĭp′ĭ ō

Scrĭ bō′nĭ ŭs
Sĕ dū′nĭ
Sĕ dū′sĭ ī
(sh)
Sĕg′nĭ
Sĕg′ŏ năx
Sĕ gŏn′tĭ ā′çĭ
(sh)
Sĕ gū′sĭ ā′vĭ
(sh)
Sĕm prō′nĭ ŭs
Sĕn′ŏ nēş
Sĕp tĭm′ĭ ŭs
Sĕq′uȧ nȧ
Sĕq′uȧ nĭ
Sĕ rā′pĭ ŏn
Sẽr tō′rĭ ŭs
Sẽr vĭl′ĭ ŭs
Sẽr′vĭ ŭs
Sĕx′tĭ ŭs
Sĭb′ū sā′tēş
Sĭ lē′nŭs
Sĭl′ĭ ŭs
Sŏs′ĭ lŭs
Sō′tĭ ā′tēş
(sh)
Spĭn′thẽr
Suē′bĭ
(w)
Suĕs′sĭ ō′nēş
(w)
Sū găm′brĭ
Sŭl′*l*ȧ
Sŭl pĭc′ĭ ŭs
(sh)
Sȳm′plĕg′ȧ dēş
Sȳr′ĭ ȧ

Tăm′ĕ sĭs
Tăm′phĭ lŭs
Tär bĕl′lĭ
Tȧ rĕn′tŭm
Tăr′ū sā′tēş
Tăs ģē′tĭ ŭs
(sh)

Tăx′ĭ măg′ū lŭs
Tĕc tŏs′ȧ ġēş
Tĕnc′tė rī
Tĕr′rȧ sĭd′ĭ ŭs
Teū′tŏ nēş
Thames (tĕmz)
Thĕr mŏp′ȳ læ̅
Thē′seūs
Thĕs sā′lĭ ȧ
Thĕs′sȧ lȳ
Thrăx
Tī bē′rĭ ăs
Tĭg′ū rī′nī
Tī tū′rĭ ŭs
Tī′tŭs
Tŏ lō′sȧ
Tŏl′ŏ sā′tēş
Trăl′lēş
Trăns′rhē nā′nī
Trăs′ĭ mē′nŭs
Trē′bĭ ȧ
Trė bō′nĭ ŭs
Trĕv′ė rī

Trī ā′rĭ ŭs
Trĭb′ŏ çēş
Trĭn′ŏ văn′tēş
Tū lĭn′ġī
Tŭl′lĭ ŭs
Tŭl′lŭs
Tū′rŏ nī

Ū′bĭ ī
Ū sĭp′ė tēş
Ŭx ĕl′lŏ dū′nŭm

Văc′ȧ lŭs
Vȧ lē′rĭ ŭs
Văn ġī′ŏ nēş
Vȧ tĭn′ĭ ŭs
Vė lā′nĭ ŭs
Vē′lĭ ŏ căs′sēş
Vĕl lau′nŏ dū′nŭm
Vė nĕl′lī
Vĕn′ė tī
Vė nē′tĭ ȧ (sh)
Vė nū′sĭ ȧ (sh)

Vĕr′ȧ grī
Vĕr bĭg′ė nŭs
Vĕr′çĭn ġĕt′ŏ rīx
Vĕr′tĭ cŏ
Vĕr′ū cloē′tĭ ŭs (sh)
Vė sŏn′tĭ ō (sh)
Vī ĕn′nȧ
Vingeanne (văn zhăn′)
Vĭr′ĭ dŏ mā′rŭs
Vī rĭd′ŏ vīx
Vĭr′ŏ măn′dū ī
Vŏ cā′tēş
Vŏc′cĭ ō (sh)
Vŏ cŏn′tĭ ī (sh)
Vŏl′çæ̅
Vŏl cā′nŭs
Vŏl′sō
Vŏl′ū sē′nŭs
Vŏ rē′nŭs
Vŏs′ė gŭs

Zē′tēş

VOCABULARIES

ABBREVIATIONS

abbr. = abbreviation
abs. = absolute *or* absolutely
act. = active
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb *or* adverbial
c. = common, *i.e. either masc. or fem.*
cf. = cōnfer, *i.e.* compare
comp. = comparative
conj. = conjunction
decl. = declined
dem. = demonstrative
dep. = deponent
distrib. = distributive
emph. = emphatic
esp. = especially
f. or fem. = feminine
fig. = figurative *or* figuratively
freq. = frequentative
impers. = impersonal
indecl. = indeclinable
indef. = indefinite
intens. = intensive
interrog. = interrogative
intrans. = intransitive
irr. = irregular
lit. = literal *or* literally
loc. = locative
m. or masc. = masculine
n. = neuter *or* noun
neut. = neuter
neg. = negative *or* negatively
num. = numeral
opp. = opposed
orig. = originally
p. = participle
pass. = passive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
p.p. = perfect participle
prep. = preposition
pres. = present
pron. = pronoun
reflex. = reflexive *or* reflexively
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, namely
sing. = singular
subjv. = subjunctive
superl. = superlative
trans. = transitive
v. = verb

†, a dagger denotes an assumed form.
1, 2, 3, 4, refer to the regular conjugations of verbs.
Heavy-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.
Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

For numerals see Grammar, § 19. References preceded by G. are to the Grammar; those with Roman numerals are to the Composition Lesson in which the word occurs

abide by, stō, 1 (*with the abl.*)
able (be), possum, *irr.*
about, *adv.*, circiter
about, *prep.*, dē, *with the abl.*
accomplish, perficiō, 3 (IV); cōnficiō, 3 (V)
accord (of their own), suā sponte
accustomed (be), cōnsuēscō, 3, *in perf. tenses*
added (it is), accēdit, 3 (X); additur, 3
adopt, īnsistō, 3 (XXIII)
advance, prōcēdō, 3 (XXIX); prōgredior, 3 (XXV, XXXV)
advantageously, commodē
advise, moneō, 2
afflict, premō, 3
after, *adv.*, post
after, *conj.*, postquam
after, *prep.*, post, *with the acc.*
afterwards, *adv.*, posteā
against, ad (XX), contrā, *with the acc.*
aid, *v.*, iuvō, 1; auxilior, 1 (XXVI)
aid, *n.*, auxilium, auxilī, *n.*; subsidium, subsidī, *n.* (XXXV)
alarm, perturbō, 1 (XXVII); perterreō, 2 (XXXIV)
all, omnis, omne
almost, ferē
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
although, cum, quamquam
always, omnī tempore
am, sum, *irr.*
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
among, inter, *with the acc.*; in (XVIII)
and, ac, atque, et, -que; **and not,** neque
announce, nūntiō, 1
anybody, quis
anything, quid
applause, plausus, -ūs, *m.*
appoint, cōnstituō, 3; dīcō, 3 (XXXIII)
approach, *v.*, adpropinquō ad, 1 (VI); accēdō (XVIII); succēdō, 3 (XX)
Aquitanians, Aquītānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
Argonauts, Argonautae, -ārum, *m.*
arise, coörior, 4
armor, armātūra, -ae, *f.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, 4
ask (for), petō, 3 (X); rogō, 1 (XIII); quaerō, 3 (XIV); repetō, 3 (XXIX)
assemble, conveniō, 4
assign, attribuō, 3

at, ad, *with the acc.*
attach, adiungō, 3
attack, *v.*, adgredior, 3; adorior, 4
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attempt, cōnor, 1
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*
avoid, vītō, 1
await, exspectō, 1
away (be), absum, *irr.*

back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, proelium, proelī, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*; **in line of battle,** in aciē; **plan of battle,** ratiō pugnae
beast of burden, iūmentum, -ī, *n.*
because, quod, proptereā quod; **because of,** propter, *with the acc.*
before, *adv.*, ante
before, *conj.*, priusquam
before, *prep.*, prō, *with the abl.*
beg, obsecrō, 1; **beg for,** petō, 3
began, coepī, *defective*
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m. plur.*
best, optimus, -a, -um
betake one's self, sē cōnferō, *irr.*
betray, prōdō, 3
bird, volucer, -cris, *f.*
boat, linter, -tris, *f.*; **little boat,** nāvicula, -ae, *f.*
booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
born (be), nāscor, 3; orior, 4
both . . . and, et . . . et
boundary, fīnis, -is, *m.*
boy, puer, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, forte
break through, perrumpō, 3 (XIV); perfringō, 3 (XVI)
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, addūcō, 3 (XX); ferō, *irr.* (XXI); **bring about,** efficiō, 3
Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
build, mūniō, 4 (VIII); aedificō, 1
bull, taurus, -ī, *m.*
burn, incendō, 3 (XIII)
business, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*
but, at, sed
by, (*agent*) ā, ab

call, vocō, 1; **call back,** revocō, 1
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
can, possum, *irr.*
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, 3
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carry, ferō, *irr.*; dēferō, *irr.* (XXIX); perferō, *irr.* (XXXIII); **carry on,** gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
Carthage, Karthāgō, -inis, *f.*
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
cavalry, *n.*, equitēs, -um, *m. plur.*; equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
cease, dēsistō, 3
certain, certain one, *pron.*, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam
change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
charge of (take), praesum, *irr.*
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
choose, dēligō, 3
circuit, circuitus, -ūs, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, -is, *c.*

city, urbs, -is, *f.*
clear (*excuse*), pūrgō, 1; **it is clear**, cōnstat, 1
Colchians, Colchī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
cold, frīgus, -oris, *n.*
collect, cōgō, 3; cōnferō, *irr.* (xxx); comparō, 1 (VIII)
come, veniō, 4
coming, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
command, imperātum, -ī, *n.*; **be in command**, praesum, *irr.*; **put in command**, *v.*, praeficiō, 3
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
companion, socius, -ī, *m.*
compel, cōgō, 3
conceal, abdō, 3
conduct, dūcō, 3
conquer, superō, 1
consist, cōnsistō, 3
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, 1
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
consult, cōnsulō, 3
controversy, contrōversia, -ae, *f.*
country, native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
courage, animus, -ī, *m.* (XVI); virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
course, cursus, -ūs, *m.*
cross (over), trānseō, *irr.*
custom, īnstitutum, -ī, *n.*
cut off, prohibeō, 2 (XXVI, XXXIV); interclūdō, 3 (XXXIII)

daily, *adj.*, cotīdiānus, -a, -um; *adv.*, cotīdiē
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, 2
dark, obscūrus, -a, -um
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
decide, cōnstituō, 3
declare, praedicō, 1
decree, dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*
defend, dēfendō, 3
defense, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
delay, moror, 1
demand, postulō, 1 (IV); imperō, 1
depart, discēdō, 3
desert, perfugiō, 3
deserve well, bene mereor, 2
desire, cupiō, 3
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
despair of, dēspērō dē, 1
destroy, interscindō, 3 (XXI)
detain, retineō, 2
determine, statuō, 3
devote, tribuō, 3
die, morior, 3
differ, differō, 3
difficult, difficilis, difficile
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, *f.*
dignity, dignitās, -ātis, *f.*
direction, pars, partis, *f.* (XXVII)
disease, morbus, -ī, *m.*
dismiss, dīmittō, 3
distance, spatium, -ī, *n.*
distant (be), absum, *irr.*
distribute, mētior, 4
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
do, faciō, 3
double, *v.*, duplicō, 1
doubt, dubitō, 1; **there is no doubt**, nōn est dubium
dove, columba, -ae, *f.*
dragon, dracō, -ōnis, *m.*

draw up, īnstruō, 3
drive back, dēiciō, 3 (III); repellō (XIV); **drive out,** expellō, 3; **drive to,** addūcō; 3
Druids, Druidēs, -um, *m. plur.*
dwell, versor, 1

each, uterque, utraque, utrumque (XX)
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.*
easily, facile
easy, facilis, facile
either . . . or, vel . . . vel
eleven, undecim
elsewhere (*to another place*), aliō
embark, nāvem (nāvēs) cōnscendō, 3
encircle, cingo, 3
encourage, cohortor, 1
endure, perferō, *irr.* (XXII); ferō, *irr.*
enemy, hostis, -is, *c.*
engage in, committō, 3; **engage in battle,** proelium committō, 3; proeliō dīmicō, 1 (XXXIV)
enlist, cōnscrībō, 3
enter, ingredior, 3 (*with* intrā, XIX); **enter into,** ineō, *irr.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
envy, invidia, -ae, *f.*
equal (make), aequō, 1
escape, ēvādō, 3
establish, cōnstituō, 3; īnstituō, 3
even if, etsī
excel, praestō, 1; superō, 1 (XXIII)
exhaust, exhauriō, 4
exposed, apertus, -a, -um
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

faction, factiō, -ōnis, *f.*
faithful, fidēlis, -e
famous, praeclārus, -a, -um
far, longē
farther, *adj.*, ulterior, ulterius
fashion, modus, -ī, *m.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favorable, opportūnus, -a, -um
fear, *n.*, timor, -ōris, *m.*
few, paucī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fiercely, ācriter
fifteenth, quīntus decimus, quīntī decimī
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um
fight, *v.*, pugnō, 1 (IX, XX); proeliō contendō, 3 (XII, XVIII)
fill, compleō, 2
find, inveniō, 4; nancīscor, 3 (XVIII)
first (at), prīmō
flank, latus, -eris, *n.*; **on the flank,** ab latere
flee, fugiō, 3
fleece, vellus, -eris, *n.*
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*; **be in flight,** fugiō, 3; **put to flight,** in fugam dō, *irr.*
flow (into), īnfluō, 3
follow, sequor, 3; subsequor, 3 (XXV)
fond, cupidus, -a, -um
for, *conj.*, enim, nam
for, *prep.*, ad, in, *with the acc.*; prō, *with the abl.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forever, in perpetuum
form, draw up, īnstruō, 3
forsake, dēserō, 3
fort, castellum, -ī, *n.*

fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um
free, līberō, 1
freedom, lībertās, -ātis, *f.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
from, ā, ab, dē, (*out of*) ē, ex, *with the abl.*; *after verbs of hindering etc.*, quō minus, *or*, *if the verb is negatived*, quīn
front of (in), prō, *with the abl.*
furnish, ōrnō, 1

gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, gather together, conveniō, 4; **gather about**, circumsistō, 3
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, -ae, *f.*; **a Gaul**, Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, commūnis, -e
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
get together, comparō, 1
give, dō, *irr.*; **give back**, reddō, 3
go, eō, *irr.*; **go (out)**, ēgredior, 3 (IX, XXXIII); exeō, *irr.*
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
golden, aureus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*; **grain supply**, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um; **greater**, maior, maius; **greatest**, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um (V); **how great**, quantus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um
greatly, magnopere
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
grieve, be grieved, dolōre adficior, 3
ground (cause), causa, -ae, *f.*
guard, *v.*, custōdiō, 4; tueor, 2 (XXXV)
guard, *n.*, praesidium, praesidī, *n.*; **on guard**, in statiōne
guilty, nocēns, -entis

Hæduans, Haeduī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
half, dīmidium, dīmidī, *n.*
halt, cōnsistō, 3
hand over, trādō, 3
hand (be at), adsum, *irr.*
happen, accidō, 3
harass, lacessō, 3
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hard pressed (be), labōrō, 1
harm, noceō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
Harpies, Harpȳiae, -arum, *f.*
hasten, contendō, 3; mātūrō, 1 (XX)
have, habeō, 2
he, is, eius
hear, accipiō, 3 (XXXII)
heat, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
hem in, contineō, 2
her, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eius
high, altus, -a, -um; **very high**, altissimus, -a, -um (I); **higher**, superior, superius; **highest**, summus, -a, -um (XXX)
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, (*intensive*) ipse, ipsīus; (*reflexive*) sē
hinder, impediō, 4
his, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eius

hold, obtineō, 2; teneō, 2 (XXVI)
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
hope, *v.*, spērō, 1; **hope for**, spērō, 1
hope, *n.*, spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, equī, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *c.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how great, how large, quantus, -a, -um
huge, ingēns, -entis; immānis, -e (XXXI)
hunting, vēnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
hurl, coniciō, 3 (XXV, XXIX); mittō, 3 (XVI)
hurry, contendō, 3

I, ego, meī
if, sī; **if not**, sī nōn, nisi
ignorance, imprūdentia, -ae, *f.*
image, simulācrum, -ī, *n.*
immediately, statim; prōtinus (XXXV)
in, in, *with the abl.*
inclose, inclūdō, 3
incursion, incursiō, -ōnis, *f.*
indignity, indignitās, -ātis, *f.*
infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*
infirmity, valētūdō, -inis, *f.*
influence, *v.*, permoveō, 2
influence, *n.*, auctoritās, -ātis, *f.*
inform, nūntiō, 1, *with the dat.*; certiōrem faciō, 3, *with the acc.*
inhabit, incolō, 3
innocent, innocēns, -entis
inside, intrā, *with the acc.*
inspire, iniciō, 3
insult, contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
intercept, intercipiō, 3
intercessor, dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*
into, in, intrā (XIX), *with the acc.*
intrust, committō, 3; mandō, 1 (XXXI)
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

Jason, Iāsōn, -onis, *m.*
javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
joy, gaudium, gaudī, *n.*
judge, iūdicō, 1
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*

keep, teneō, 2; cōnservō, 1 (VIII); **keep away**, prohibeō, 2
kill, necō, 1 (VII); interficiō, 3 (XXX)
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
knight, eques, -itis, *m.*
know, intellegō, 3; sciō, 4 (XXVIII)

lack, be lacking, dēsum, *irr.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um; **how large**, quantus, -a, -um
last, suprēmus, -a, -um
later, *adv.*, post
latter, hic, haec, hoc (XXX)
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3; **lead across**, trādūcō, 3; **lead back**, redūcō, 3; **lead out**, ēdūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, *m.*
leap down, dēsiliō, 4

learn, intellegō, 3 (VII); explōrō (VIII); cognōscō, 3 (*in perf. tenses*, **know**)
leave, relinquō, 3
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
letter, (*of alphabet*) littera, -ae, *f.*; (*epistle*) litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*; epistula, -ae, *f.*
lie open, pateō, 2
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, *adj.*, levis, -e
light, *n.*, lūmen, -inis, *n.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. plur.*
little, *adv.*, paulum
living, vīvus, -a, -um
long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um; *adv.*, diū
lose, dīmittō, 3
lower, īnferior, īnferius

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
make, faciō, 3 (*passive* fīō; *see* G. § 45)
man, homō, -inis, *c.*; **man-of-war**, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, *f.*
many, multī, -ae, -a
march, *v.*, iter faciō, 3
march, *n.*, iter, itineris, *n.*; **on the march**, in itinere
meanwhile, intereā
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, *m.*
middle (of), medius, -a, -um
midnight, media nox
mile, mīlle passūs; **miles**, mīlia passuum
mistaken (be), errō, 1
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
moon, lūna, -ae, *f.*; **Moon**, Lūna, -ae (XXXII)
more, amplius (§ 105)
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, 2; **move forward**, prōgredior, 3
much, *adv.*, multum
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*
must, *express by the passive periphrastic* (G. §§ 38. II, 222. II)

name, *v.*, appellō, 1
name, *n.*, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nearest, proximus, -a, -um
necessary (it is), oportet, 2 (XVI); necesse est (XIX)
necessity, necessitās, -ātis, *f.*
neglect, omittō, 3
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, proximus, -a, um
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um
next, posterus (II); proximus, -a, -um; **next day**, postrīdiē eius diēī
night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **by night**, *adv.*, noctū
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um
no (*not any*), nūllus, -a, -um
nobility, nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*
noble, nōbilis, nōbile
nobody, nēmō, *dat.* nēminī; nūllus, nūllīus

not, nōn; **not even,** nē . . . quidem
noted, nōtus, -a, -um
notice, animadvertō, 3
now, iam
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*
nymph, nympha, -ae, *f.*

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*
observe, perspiciō, 3
obtain, obtineō, 2
of, *genitive case*
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on, in, *with the acc. or abl.*
once on a time, once, *adv.*, ōlim
one, ūnus, -a, -um; **one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter
opportunity, facultās, -ātis, *f.* (XXVI); occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.* (VII)
oppose, resistō, 3
oppress, premō, 3
or, aut, (*in questions*) an
oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*
order, *v.*, imperō, 1; iubeō, 2
other, alius, alia, aliud; **the other** (*the rest*), reliquus, -a, -um; **other** (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter
our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex (ē), *with the abl.*
outside, *prep.*, extrā, *with the acc.*
overcome, opprimō, 3

pack, sarcina, -ae, *f.*
palace, rēgia, -ae, *f.*
pardon, ignōscō, 3 (*with the dat.*)
parent, parēns, -entis, *c.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
path, sēmita, -ae, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
perish, pereō, *irr.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
permit, patior, 3; **it is permitted,** licet, 2
persuade, persuādeō, 2 (*with the dat.*)
phalanx, phalanx, -angis, *f.*
picket, statiō, -ōnis, *f.*
pierce, trāiciō, 3
pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3
place, *v.*, pōnō, 3
place, *n.*, locus, -ī, *m.*; *plur.*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
plan, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*; **plan of battle,** ratiō pugnae
plunder, praedor, 1 (XXII); dīripiō, 3 (XXXIV)
point out, dēmōnstrō, 1
poison, venēnum, -ī, *n.*
port, portus, -ūs, *m.*
possession (gain), get (take) possession of, potior, 4 (*with the abl. or gen.*)
power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; imperium, imperī, *n.* (XXVII); potentia, -ae, *f.* (XXXIII); **royal power,** rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, -entis
praise, conlaudō, 1
preceding, superior, superius
prepare, comparō, 1 (XXXIV); parō, 1 (XXXV)
preside over, praesum, *irr.*
promise, prōmittō, 3; polliceor, 2 (XXIV)
propose, prōpōnō, 3
protect, prohibeō, 2 (XXX); mūniō, 4 (XXXIV)
prove, probō, 1
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

publicly, pūblicē
purchase, coëmō, 3
pursue, īnsequor, 3 (VI, XVI, XVIII); prōsequor, 3
pursuit, studium, studī, *n.*
put back, repōnō, 3; **put in charge of,** praeficiō, 3; **put to death,** interficiō; **put to flight,** in fugam dō, *irr.*

quickly, celeriter

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
reach, perveniō ad, 4
ready, parātus, -a, -um
rear, novissimum agmen, -inis, *n.*
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3 (VI); recipiō, 3
redoubt, castellum, -ī, *n.*
reënforcement, subsidium, subsidī, *n.*; **reënforcements,** subsidia, -orum, *n. plur.* (XXV); auxilia, -ōrum, *n. plur.* (XXX, XXXV)
regard (hold), habeō, 2
region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
rejoice, gaudeō, *semi-dep.*, 2
relatives, propinquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
relax, remittō, 3
remain, maneō, 2; remaneō, 2
remove, removeō, 2
repel, prohibeō, 2
reply, respondeō, 2
report, *v.*, renūntiō, 1; nūntiō, 1 (XXXV)
report, *n.*, fāma, -ae, *f.*
resources, facultātēs, -um, *f.* (IX); opēs, *f. plur.* (XXXII)
rest, rest of, reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
retreat, mē recipiō, 3
return, *v.*, *intrans.*, redeō, *irr.* (II): revertor, 3 (VI, XXI, XXIV, XXXVI); *trans.*, reddō, 3
return, *n.*, reditus, -ūs, *m.*
reward, praemium, praemī, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*
rich, (*abundant*) cōpiōsus, -a, -um; (*wealthy*) dīves, -itis; **richer,** dītior, dītius; **richest,** dītissimus, -a, -um
right (*on the right hand*), *adj.*, dexter, -tra, -trum
right, *n.*, iūs, iūris, *n.*; fās, *n.* (XXXI)
river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*
road, iter, itineris, *n.*
rock, rūpēs, -is, *f.*
Roman, *adj.*, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
route, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
run forward, prōcurrō, 3

sacrifice, *v.*, immolō, 1
sacrifice, *n.*, sacrificium, sacrificī, *n.*
safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail, set sail, solvō, 3, *with or without* navem
sake (for the), causā
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* (XXXV)
same, īdem, eadem, idem
say, dīcō, 3
scout, speculātor, -ōris, *m.*
second, secundus, -a, -um; (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum (XXXV)
sedan, lectīca, -ae, *f.*

see, videō, 2; conspiciō, 3 (VI, XXV)
seek, petō, 3
seize, comprehendō, 3 (XI); occupō, 1 (XII)
send, mittō, 3; submittō, 3 (XXV); **send ahead,** praemittō, 3; **send away,** dīmittō, 3; **send back,** remittō, 3; **send forth,** ēmittō, 3; **send out,** dīmittō, 3
separate, dīvidō, 3
Sequanian, Sēquanus, -ī, *m.*
service, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
set about (begin), īnstituō, 3; **set forth,** *trans.*, prōpōnō, 3; **set on fire,** succendō, 3 (XXXI); **set out,** proficīscor, 3; **set sail,** solvō, 3, *with or without* nāvem
settle, compōnō, 3
seven, septem
seventeenth, septimus decimus, septima decima, septimum decimum
several, complūrēs, -ium
severe, gravis, grave
share, commūnicō, 1
sharply, ācriter
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
show (for a), ad speciem
shut off, interclūdō, 3
side, latus, -eris, *n.*; pars, partis, *f.*; **on all sides, from all sides,** undique
siege, obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*
signal, signum, -ī, *n.*
since, cum
six, sex
size, magnitūdō, -inis, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*
slay, concīdō, 3; occīdō, 3 (XVIII)
sleep, somnus, -ī, *m.*
small number, paucitās, -ātis, *f.*
snatch, ēripiō, 3
so, sīc, ita (*generally with verbs*), tam (*with adjectives*); **and so,** itaque; **so great,** tantus, -a, -um; **so that,** ut
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
some, aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōn nūllī, -ae, -a; **some . . . others,** aliī . . . aliī
something, aliquid, alicuius
son, fīlius, fīlī, *m.*
soon, mox
sovereignty, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
stable, stabulum, -ī, *n.*
stand, make a stand, cōnsistō, 3
standard, signum, -ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
station, cōnstituō, 3; pōnō, 3 (XX); conlocō, 1 (XXXV)
storm, *v.*, oppugnō, 1
storm, *n.*, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
subdue, superō, 1
subject, make subject, subiciō, 3
suddenly, subitō
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
summer, aestās, -ātis, *f.*
summon, arcessō, 3
sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.* (XXXII)
superior, superior, superius
supply, grain supply, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
surpass, praecēdō, 3 (*with the acc.*)
surrender, dēdō, 3 (XI, XXIII); trādō, 3 (XVII) [4
surround, circumdō, *irr.*; circumveniō,
sustain, sustineō, 2

swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
swear, iūrō, 1

take (*employ*), sūmō, 3 (XIII); **take back,** recipiō, 3; **take by storm,** expugnō, 1; **take up,** capiō, 3 (XXXIII)
task, negōtium, negōtī, *n.*; labor, -ōris, *m.*
temple, templum, -ī, *n.*
tempt, temptō, 1
ten, decem
tenth, decimus, -a, -um
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
terrify, perterreō, 2
territory, territories, fīnēs, -ium, *m. plur.*
terror, terror, -ōris, *m.*
than, quam
thank, grātiās agō, 3
that, *conj.*, ut, (*with comparatives*) quō; **that not,** (*purpose*) nē, (*result*) ut nōn; quīn (§§ 185, 186; IX, XI)
that, *pron.*, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id
their, (*reflexive*) suus, -a, -um; (*not reflexive*) eōrum, ipsōrum
themselves, (*intensive*) ipsī, ipsae, ipsa; (*reflexive*) suī, sibi
there, ibi, (*thither*) eō
Thessaly, Thessalia, -ae, *f.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*
think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1 (XIII); exīstimō, 1 (XXII, XXXI)
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
thither, eō
thousand, mīlle; *plur.*, mīlia
through, per, *with the acc.*
throw, coniciō, 3; **throw about,** circumiciō, 3 (*with the dat.*)
thus, sīc, ita
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
to, ad, in, *with the acc.*
touch, attingō, 3
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
treasury, aerārium, aerārī, *n.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
tribute, tribūtum, -ī, *n.*
trust (intrust), committō, 3; cōnfīdō, 3 (*with the abl.*, XXXI)
try, cōnor, 1, *with infinitive, or pronoun representing infinitive*; experior, 4, *with noun, or pronoun representing noun*
turn, vertō, 3
two, duo, -ae, -o

under, sub, *with the acc.* (*motion toward*) *or abl.* (*place where*)
undergo, subeō, *irr.*
understand, intellegō, 3
undertake, suscipiō, 3
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um
unless, nisi
until, dum; priusquam (XVIII)
unwilling (be), nōlō, *irr.*
upper, superior, superius
urge, hortor, 1
use, ūtor, 3

vainly, in vain, frūstrā
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*

violence, vīs, vīs, *f.*
visibly, apertē
Vulcan, Volcānus, -ī, *m.*

wage war, bellum gerō, 3
wait, exspectō, I (VI, XIII, XXI); moror, I (XXI, XXIV, XXXIV); **wait for,** exspectō, I
walls, moenia, -ium, *n. plur.*
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*; **carry on war,** bellum gerō, 3; **make war,** bellō, I; **make war on,** bellum īnferō, *irr.* (*with the dat.*)
ward off, prohibeō, 2; (*avoid*) vītō, I (XXXII)
warfare, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*
watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
way, iter, itineris, *n.*
weaken, dēbilitō, I
weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
what, *interrog.*, quid
when, cum, ubi
where, ubi
whether, num, -ne; **whether . . . or,** -ne . . . an, utrum . . . an
while, dum
who, *rel.*, quī, quae, quod; *interrog.*, quis, quid
whoever, whosoever, quīcumque, cuiuscumque
whole, as a whole, omnis, omne
whose, cuius, quōrum
why, cūr
wide, lātus, -a, -um
wife, coniūnx, -ugis, *f.*
winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
wish, volō, *irr.*; **not wish,** nōlō, *irr.*
with, cum, *with the abl.*
withdraw, subdūcō, 3 (XVI); redūcō, 3 (XXXV)
without, sine, *with the abl.*
woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*
write, scrībō, 3
wrong, wrongdoing, iniūria, -ae, *f.*

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yet (*nevertheless*), tamen
you, tū, tuī
young man, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*
your, tuus, -a, -um
yourselves, (*intensive*) vōs ipsī; (*reflexive*) vōs

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A. — ac

A., *abbr. for* **Aulus** (*which see*)

a., *abbr. for* **ante**

ā, *see* **ab**

ab (**ā, abs**), *prep. with abl.*, away from, from. — *With expressions of measure*, off, away: **a milibus passuum duobus**, two miles off. — *With different notion in English:* **ortum est ab**, sprang from, began with; **vacuum ab**, destitute of; **capit initium a**, begins at; **ab tanto spatio**, so far off. — *Esp. with passives*, by. — *Esp. also*, **a fronte**, in front; **a tergo**, from *or* on the rear; **ab infimo**, at the foot; **a dextro cornu**, on the right wing; **a re frumentaria**, in respect to the grain supply. — *In composition*, off, away, apart, without, not

abditus, *p.p. of* **abdo**

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*ab-do* (put)], *trans.*, hide. — *With* **in** *and acc.*, withdraw to (take refuge among). — **abditus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, hidden, remote, removed

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead away, take away

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ab-iacio*], *trans.*, throw away, throw down, throw, hurl

abiectus, *p.p. of* **abicio**

abiēs, -ietis, *f.*, fir *or* spruce (*tree or wood*)

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*ab-rapio*], *trans.*, snatch away, carry away

abs, *see* **ab**

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*abs-caedo*], *trans.*, cut off, tear off, tear away

abscīsus, *p.p. of* **abscīdo**

absēns, -entis, *see* **absum**

absimilis, -e, *adj.*, unlike

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand off, stand away, withdraw; keep aloof

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*abs-teneo*], *intrans.*, refrain: **proelio** (refrain from giving)

abstrāctus, *p.p. of* **abstraho**

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [*abs-traho*], *trans.*, drag away

abstulī, *see* **auferō**

absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be away, be absent: **suspicio** (be wanting). — **absēns**, *pres. p. as adj.*, absent, in one's absence

Absyrtus, -ī, *m.*, brother of Medea

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, be strong in

ac, *see* **atque**

Acastus, -ī, *m.*, son of Pelias

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [*ad-cedo*], *intrans.*, move toward, draw near, approach; be added: **huc accedebat ut,** there was also this (disadvantage) that

acceptus, *p.p. of* **accipio**

accessus, *p.p. of* **accedo**

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [*ad-cado*], *intrans.*, fall to, fall on; happen, occur

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*ad-caedo*], *trans.*, cut into

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*ad-capio*], *trans.*, take, receive; suffer; learn, hear.—**acceptus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, acceptable, pleasing, welcome

acclīvis, -e [*ad-clivus,* slope], *adj.*, sloping, ascending

acclīvitās, -ātis [*acclivis*], *f.*, ascent, acclivity

Accō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans; put to death by Cæsar

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ad-commodo* (fit)], *trans.*, adjust.—**accommodātus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, fitted, adapted

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus, *intrans.*, lie, recline (*at table*)

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully

accurrō, -currere, -currī, *no p.p.* [*ad-curro*], *intrans.*, run to, ride up

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, accuse, blame, find fault with

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp; capable, energetic

acerbē, *adv.*, bitterly: **ferre inopiam** (suffer severely from *etc.*)

acerbitās, -ātis [*acerbus*], *f.*, suffering

acerbus, -a, -um [*acer,* sharp], *adj.*, bitter, hard to bear

ācerrimē, *superl. of* **acriter**

acervus, -ī [*acer,* pointed], *m.*, heap, pile

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, point, sharp edge, edge: **oculorum** (keen glance, glare).—*Esp.*, line, line of battle, array, army

ācriter, *adv.*, sharply; fiercely, violently, hotly: **acriter pugnatum est,** a fierce battle was fought, the fighting was sharp

āctus, *p.p. of* **ago**

acūmen, -inis [*acuo*], *n.*, acuteness

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*acer*], *trans.*, sharpen.—**acūtus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, sharpened, sharp

ad, *prep. with acc. With idea of motion toward*, to, toward, against.—*Of time*, till, at, on: **ad diem,** on the day.—*With numerals*, about

adāctus, *p.p. of* **adigo**

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, make equal to: **moles moenibus** (make as high as); **altitudinem muri** (reach up to); **cursum** (keep up with)

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, covet, become attached to

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*ad-do* (put)], *trans.*, add

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead to, draw to; induce, drive

adēmptus, *p.p. of* **adimo**

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr., trans. and intrans.*, go to, visit; attack, approach

adeō, *adv.*, to that point, thus far, so much

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, *no p.p.* [*cf. eques*], *intrans.*, ride up

adfectus, *p.p. of* **adficio**

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr., trans.*, bring to, bring; cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*ad-facio*], *trans.*, do to, affect.— *With acc. and abl.*, affect with, inflict on, impose.— *In passive*, suffer, receive: **magno dolore adfici,** be greatly distressed

adfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *trans.*, fasten to

adfingō, -fingere, -fīnxī, -fictus, *trans.*, make up in addition

adfīnitās, -ātis [*adfinis*, related], *f.*, relationship: **adfinitatibus coniuncti** (marriages)

adfīxus, *p.p. of* **adfigo**

adflīctō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, dash against, shatter

adflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *trans.*, dash at; overthrow, damage: **naves** (shatter, damage)

adfore, *see* **adsum**

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus [*ad-gradior*, step, go], *dep., trans.*, go toward, march against, attack

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, gather: **se** (gather round, flock to); **se ad amicitiam** (attach one's self to)

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus, *intrans.*, stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in)

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [*ad-habeo*], *trans.*, call in, admit; employ, use

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, encourage, urge

adhūc, *adv.*, up to this time

Adiatunnus, -ī, *m.*, chief of the Sotiates

adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ad-iacio*], *trans.*, throw to, hurl: **aggerem** (throw up); join to, add: **adiecta planitie** (with the addition of)

adiectus, *p.p. of* **adicio**

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*ad-ago*], *trans.*, drive to, drive up (*of cattle etc.*); drive in, drive home (*of piles*), move up (*of towers*), shoot (*of weapons*); force, bind (*by oath*)

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*ad-emo*, take], *trans.*, take away

aditus, -ūs [*adeo*], *m.*, approach, access; means of approach

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *trans.*, join to, attach, add

adiūtor, -ōris [*adiuvo*], *m.*, helper, assistant

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *trans.*, assist, help, be of advantage

adlātus, *p.p. of* **adfero**

administer, -trī, *m.*, servant: **ad sacrificia** (priest, celebrant)

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry into execution, perform, manage, conduct

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans.*, be surprised at, wonder at

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, let go: **admisso equo,** at full speed; allow: **in se facinus** (commit a crime); **dedecus** (permit to be incurred, incur)

admodum, *adv.*, to a degree; very, very much. — *With numerals*, fully, at least, not less than

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *trans.*, warn, urge

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, *intrans.*, grow up

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, *dep.*, *trans.*, attack, assail

adpāreō, -pārēre, -pāruī, -pāritūrus, *intrans.*, come in sight, appear, be evident

adparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, prepare, get ready, make preparations

adpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans. and intrans.*, land (*ships*), bring to land

adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, *trans. and intrans.*, seek to gain, desire; approach

adplicō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātus (-itus), *trans.*, lean against

adpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put near, set before, serve

adprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, approve of

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, approach, come near

adpulsus, *p.p. of* **adpello**

adquiēscō, -ere, -ēvī [*quies*], *intrans.*, become quiet, rest; die

adripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*ad-rapio*], *trans.*, snatch up, seize

adroganter, *adv.*, with presumption, with insolence

adrogantia, -ae, *f.*, insolence, presumption

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, *trans.*, attach (*by formal decree*)

adsiduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, constant, continued

adsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand by: **in conspectu patris** (appear)

adspectus, -ūs [*adspicio*], *m.*, appearance

adspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *trans.*, look at, look on, behold

adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *trans.*, accustom, train

adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, *trans. and intrans.*, accustom; become accustomed

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be near, be present, be at hand, appear

Aduatucī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ, living on the west bank of the Meuse

adulēscēns, -entis, *adj.*, young. — *As noun*, a youth, young man. — *With proper names*, the younger (Jr., *to distinguish a son from his father*)

adulēscentia, -ae, *f.*, youth

adulēscentulus, -ī, *m.* (*often as adj.*), a mere boy, very young

adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *intrans.*, come to, arrive at, reach

adventus, -ūs [*advenio*], *m.*, arrival, approach

adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposed. —*As noun*, opponent, enemy

adversus, *prep. with acc.*, *see* **adverto**

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *trans.*, turn towards: **animum** (turn the attention, notice). — **adversus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, in front, opposed, opposite, unfavorable: **hostibus adversus occurrebant** (right against, in their front); **in adversum os,** right in the face; **flumine** (up, *cf.* **secundum**); **res adversae,** adversity, want of success. — **adversus,** *prep. with acc.*, against

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fly to, fly at

aedificium, -ī [*aedifico*], *n.*, building

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*aedes*, house, *facio*], *trans.*, build

Aeētēs, -ae (*acc.* **-ēn**), *m.*, Æētes, king of Colchis

aeger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, sick, disabled

aegerrimē, *superl. of* **aegre**

aegrē [*aeger*], *adv.*, ill, feebly; with difficulty

Aemilius, -ī, *m.* 1. L. Æmilius Paulus, consul, killed at the battle of Cannæ, 216 B.C. 2. L., a Gaul, a subaltern in Cæsar's Gallic cavalry

aēneus, -a, -um [*aes*], *adj.*, of copper, bronze

aequāliter, *adv.*, evenly, uniformly

aequē [*aequus*], *adv.*, equally

aequinoctium, -ī [*aequus-nox*], *n.*, the time of the equinox, the equinox

aequitās, -ātis [*aequus*], *f.*, fairness, justice. — *Esp.*, **aequitas animi,** contentment

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, make equal, equalize

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; fair, just, equitable. — *Esp.*, **aequus animus,** equanimity, contentment; **aequo Marte,** on equal terms

āēr, āeris (*acc.* **āera**), *m.*, air

aerāria, -ae [*aes*], *f.*, mine

aerārium, -ī [*aes*], *n.*, treasury

aes, aeris, *n.*, copper (*as metal for ships or as money*). *Hence*, money. — *Esp.*, **alienum,** debt (*another man's money*)

Aesōn, -onis, *m.*, Æson, father of Jason

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer

aestimātiō, -ōnis [*aestimo*], *f.*, valuation

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, value, estimate; regard

aestuārium, -ī [*aestus*, tide], *n.*, estuary, marsh

aestus, -ūs, *m.*, heat; tide

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, age, time

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa (*more usually of that part of the continent near Carthage*)

Āfricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa. — *Esp.*, *sc.* **ventus,** the southwest wind (*blowing from Africa to Italy*)

āfuisse, āfutūrus, *see* **absum**

Agēdincum, -ī, *n.*, the chief town of the Senones, now Sens

ager, agrī, *m.*, land, field, country, territory

agger, -eris [*ad-gero*], *m.* (that which is carried to a place), earth (*for a wall*), mound of earth, wall, rampart

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, propose, discuss

agmen, -inis [*ago*], *n.*, a body in motion, army, line (*of troops on the march*): **primum** (the van); **novissimum** (the rear); **claudere** (bring up the rear)

agnōscō, -gnoscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [*ad-(g)nosco*, become acquainted with], *trans.*, recognize

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *trans.*, drive: **sublicas** (drive down); **vineas, turres,** *etc.* (set in motion, move on, advance); act, treat, discuss, plead: **conventum** (hold); **gratias** (render, give, express); **quid agit?** what is one about? **quid agitur?** what is going on?

agricultūra, *see* **cultura**

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing

alacer, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, active, eager, spirited

alacritās, -ātis [*alacer*], *f.*, eagerness, readiness

ālārius, -a, -um [*ala*], *adj.* (belonging to the wings). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, allies, auxiliaries

albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white: **plumbum album,** tin

alcēs, -is, *f.*, elk

Alesia, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon, now Alise-Ste.-Reine

aliās, *adv.*, elsewhere. — *Of time*, at another time, on other occasions: **alias . . . alias,** now . . . now

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*alienus*], *trans.*, make another's, alienate, estrange

aliēnus, -a, -um [*cf.* *alius*], *adj.*, another's, of others, other people's: **fines** (others'). *Hence*, strange, foreign, unfavorable, foreign to the purpose. — *Superl.*, *m. plur. as noun*, perfect strangers

aliō, *adv.*, elsewhere

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time

aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time

aliquantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, considerable. — *Neut. as noun*, a good deal, a considerable part. — **aliquantō** (*as abl. of measure*), considerably, a good deal

aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod), *indef. adj. or pron.*, some, any; some one, any one, something, anything

aliquot, *indecl. adj.*, several, some

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise, differently. — **aliter . . . ac,** otherwise . . . than

alius, -a, -ud, *adj.*, another, other. — *Repeated* (*either in separate clauses or in the same clause*), one . . . another (*plur.*, some . . . others); one one (*thing*), another another: **alius alia causa inlata,**

one giving one reason, another another, *or* alleging different reasons

Allobrogēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people, living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps

alō, alere, aluī, altus, *trans.*, feed, support

Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, the Alps

Alpicī, -ōrum [*Alpes*], *m.*, inhabitants of the Alps

alter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, one (*of two*), the other (*of two*). —*In plur.*, the other party. — *Repeated*, one . . . the other; *in plur.*, one party . . . the other. —*Also*, the second (*of more than two*), another (*the second of three*): **dies** (the second)

alternus, -a, -um [*alter*], *adj.*, alternate, alternating

altitūdō, -inis [*altus*], *f.*, height, depth, thickness (*of a timber*)

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high. —*From opposite point of view*, deep.— *Neut. as noun*, the sea, the deep

alūta, -ae, *f.*, leather

ambactus, -ī, *m.*, vassal

Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Hædui Ambarri

Ambiānī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called, from their name, Amiens

Ambiliātī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe on the Somme

Ambiorix, -īgis, *m.*, an able prince of the Eburones

Ambivaritī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse

ambo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, both

āmentia, -ae [*a-mens*], *f.*, madness, frenzy, insanity

āmentum, -ī, *n.*, strap, thong (attached to a spear to help in hurling it)

amīcē [*amicus*], *adv.*, in a friendly manner

amīcitia, -ae [*amicus*], *f.*, friendship

amīcus, -a, -um [*amo*, love], *adj.*, friendly, well-disposed. — *Masc. as noun*, friend, ally

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send away, let go, let pass; lose, dismiss

amor, -ōris [*amo*, love], *m.*, love, affection

amphora, -ae, *f.*, two-handled jar

amplē, *adv.*, widely, largely. — **amplius,** *comp.*, farther, more, longer

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*amplus-facio*], *trans.*, increase, enlarge, extend

amplitūdō, -inis [*amplus*], *f.*, size, extent, greatness: **cornuum** (spread)

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, wide, great: **dimissis amplioribus copiis** (the greater part of); prominent, splendid, noble, distinguished. — **amplius,** *neut. comp. as noun* (*cf.* **plus**), more, a greater number: **amplius obsidum**

an, *conj., introducing the second member of a double question*, or, or rather.—*Often with the first member only implied*, or: **quid venirent, an speculandi causa** ((or) was it)

Anartēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people in Dacia

Ancalitēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a nation of Britain

anceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, double-headed; double: **proelium** (on both fronts, *of an army facing in two ways*)

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor: **in ancoris,** at anchor

Andebrogius, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Remi

Andēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul, north of the Loire

Andī, -ōrum, *the same as the* **Andes**

angulus, -ī, *m.*, corner

angustē, *adv.*, narrowly, in narrow quarters

angustiae, -ārum [*angustus*], *f. plur.*, narrowness, defile, defiles: **propter angustias** (narrowness of the passage)

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, confined: **in angusto res est,** the position is critical

anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, life.—*Plur.*, soul

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [*animus-adverto*], *trans.*, turn the mind to, attend to: **animadvertere in,** punish; observe

animal, -ālis [*anima*], *n.*, animal

animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, mind, feelings, intellect, spirit.—*Esp.*, constancy, courage, resolution; disposition: **bono animo esse,** be well-disposed; **animi causa,** for pleasure

annālis, -is [*annus*], *m.*, record of events, chronicle

annōtinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, last year's

annus, -ī, *m.*, year

annuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, yearly: **magistratus creatur** (annually)

ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose

ante, *adv.*, before (*of place or time*), in front: **paucis ante diebus,** a few days before.—*Prep. with acc.*, before (*of place or time*).—*In dates*, **ante diem (a. d.) quintum,** on the fifth day before

anteā, *adv.*, before, previously, once

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *trans. and intrans.*, go forward, advance, surpass (*in size etc.*)

antecellō, -cellere, *trans. and intrans.*, excel, surpass

antecursor, -ōris, *m.*, courier

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, place in advance, prefer

antemna, -ae, *f.*, yard (*for sails*), spar

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, think of more importance

antequam, *conj.*, before

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *trans.*, put before, prefer

Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, king of Syria, 224–187 B.C.

antīquitus, *adv.*, from ancient times, from early times, long ago

antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, ancient

anxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, troubled, anxious

Apennīnus, -ī, *m.*, Apennines, a mountain range in Italy

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus, *trans.*, uncover, open.—**apertus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, open, exposed, unprotected: **latus** (the right side, *not covered by the shield*); **impetus maris** (unbroken)

apertē, *adv.*, openly

Apollō, -inis, *m.*, the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana; god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and leader of the Muses. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity

appāreō, *see* **adpareo**

apparō, *see* **adparo**

1. **appellō,** *see* **adpello**

2. **appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *trans.*, call, name, address

appetō, *see* **adpeto**

appōnō, *see* **adpono**

Apr., *abbr. for* **Aprilis**

Aprīlis, -e, *adj.*, of April

aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suited, adapted

apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, with, before; in one's house (company, possession)

Āpūlia, -ae, *f.*, a country of southeastern Italy

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water

aquātiō, -ōnis [*aqua*], *f.*, getting water

aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle.—*Esp.*, the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine Gaul

aquilifer, -erī [*aquila-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*, Gascony, the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, the people of Aquitania, the Aquitani *or* Gascons

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar

Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Saône, a river of Gaul flowing into the Rhone

arbiter, -trī, *m.*, witness, arbitrator

arbitrium, -ī [*arbiter*, judge], *n.*, judgment, will, opinion

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [*arbiter*, judge], *dep.*, *trans.*, think, suppose

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, summon, invite, send for

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *intrans.*, be hot, be on fire; be excited

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep, difficult

Arecomicī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Volcæ

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver; silverware

argilla, -ae, *f.*, clay

Argō, Argūs (*acc.* **Argo**; *no dat. or abl.*), *f.*, Argo, Jason's ship

Argonautae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, Argonauts

Argus, -ī, *m.*, builder of the Argo

āridus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry.—*Neut. as noun*, dry land

ariēs, -ietis, *m.*, ram; battering-ram (*a long timber, armed at the end with metal, for demolishing walls*); buttress (*piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge*)

Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Germans

arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, arms, equipment: **armis ius exsequi,** to maintain authority by force of arms

armāmenta, -ōrum [*armo*], *n. plur.*, implements.—*Esp.*, tackle, rigging

armātūra, -ae [*armo*], *f.*, equipment: **levis armaturae Numidae** (light-armed)

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, equip, arm; rouse, incite.—*Pass.*, arm (*one's self*).—**armātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, armed, in arms, equipped.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, armed men

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, plow

Arpīnēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art.—*Plur.*, the useful arts

artē, *adv.*, closely, tightly

articulus, -ī [*artus*, joint], *m.*, joint

artificium, -ī [*artifex*, artist], *n.*, a trade (*opp. to* **ars,** a higher art)

artus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close: **silva** (thick)

Arvernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Arverni (a tribe in southeastern Gaul).—*Masc. plur.*, the Arverni

arx, arcis [*arceo*, shut in], *f.*, stronghold, fortress, citadel

ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [*ad-scando*, climb], *trans. and intrans.*, climb up, climb, ascend: **navem** (embark)

ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent, going up; means of ascent

Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia, Asia Minor

aspiciō, *see* **adspicio**

at, *conj.*, but, but yet, at least

Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Athens, a city in Greece

atque (ac), *conj.*, and, and especially: **simul atque,** as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, *adj.*, Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul).—*Plur.*, the Atrebates

Ātrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, *trans.*, weave on, make on (*by weaving*)

Atticus, -ī, *m.*, T. Pomponius Atticus, a great friend of Cicero's; he resided chiefly at Athens

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [*ad-tango*], *trans.*, touch at, touch upon, touch, border on

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, allot to, assign

attulī, *see* **adfero**

auctor, -ōris [*augeo*], *m.*, voucher, authority: **auctore hoste,** on the authority of the enemy

auctōritās, -ātis [*auctor*], *f.*, influence, prestige

auctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **augeo.**—*Comp.*, **auctior,** richer, greater

audācia, -ae [*audax*, bold], *f.*, daring, boldness

audācter [*audax*, bold], *adv.*, with daring, boldly, fearlessly; **audacissime**, with the greatest daring

audeō, audēre, ausus, *semi-dep.*, *trans.*, dare, venture. — **ausus, -a, -um**, *p.p. in pres. sense*, daring

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, hear, hear of. — **audiēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, obedient (*with* **dicto**)

audītiō, -ōnis [*audio*], *f.*, hearing, hearsay, report

auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablatus [*ab-fero*], *trans.*, take away, remove

aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī [*ab-fugio*], *intrans.*, flee away, run away

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *trans.*, increase, magnify, add to (*a thing*). — *Pass.*, increase

Aulercus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Aulerci (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul). — *Masc. plur.*, the Aulerci

Aulus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

Aurelius, -ī, *m.*, C. Aurelius Cotta, a Roman consul

aureus, -a, -um [*aurum*], *adj.*, golden

aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer, driver

auris, -is, *f.*, ear

aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold

Aurunculēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Auscī, -ōrum, *m. plur. of adj.*, a tribe of Aquitania

ausus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **audeo**

aut, *conj.*, or. — *Repeated*, either . . . or

autem, *conj.*, but (*the weakest degree of opposition*, *cf.* **sed**), on the other hand, now, moreover, furthermore

auxiliāris, -e [*auxilium*], *adj.*, auxiliary. — *Masc. plur. as noun*, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus [*auxilium*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, give assistance

auxilium, -ī, *n.*, assistance, aid, relief. — *Plur.*, auxiliaries; reënforcements

Avaricum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Bituriges in central Gaul

avāritia, -ae [*avarus*, greedy], *f.*, covetousness, greed, avarice

āvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, carry off, take away

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *trans.*, turn aside, turn away. — **āversus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, turned away; in the rear

avis, -is, *f.*, bird

avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather

Axona, -ae, *f.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, now the Aisne

Bācenis, -is, *f.*, *with* **silva**, a forest in Germany

Baculus, -ī, *m.*, P. Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar's army

Baebius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Baleāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (belonging to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean)

balteus, -ī, *m.*, belt

Balventius, -ī, *m.*, T. Balventius, a centurion in Cæsar's army

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*not Greek or Roman*), uncivilized.—*Masc. plur.*, barbarians, savages

Batavī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Batavi *or* Batavians, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine

Belgae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, the Belgæ *or* Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul

Belgium, -ī, *n.*, the country of the Belgæ

bellicōsus, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*, warlike

bellicus, -a, -um [*bellum*], *adj.*, of war, in war

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*bellum*], *intrans.*, fight, make war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise

bellum, -ī, *n.*, war: **bellum gerere,** wage war

bene [*bonus*], *adv.*, well

beneficium, -ī [*bene-facio*], *n.*, well-doing, service, favor, *often rendered by English plur.*

benevolentia, -ae [*bene-volo*], *f.*, good will, kindness

Bibracte, -is, *n.*, the chief town of the Hædui

Bibrax, Bibractis, *f.*, a town of the Remi

Bibrocī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of southeastern Britain

bīduum, -ī [*bis-dies*], *n.*, two days' time, two days

biennium, -ī [*bis-annus*], *n.*, two years' time

Bigerriōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Pyrenees

bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, two each, two sets of, two (*of things in pairs or sets*), two at a time

bipartītō, *adv.*, in two divisions

bipedālis, -e [*bis-pes*], *adj.*, two-foot (*two feet long, wide, etc.*)

bis, *num. adv.*, twice

Bīthȳnia, -ae, a country in north-western Asia Minor

Bīthȳnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Bithynian. —*Masc. as noun*, Bithynian

Biturīgēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Celtic Gaul

Blithō, -ōnis, *m.*, Sulpicius Blitho, a writer of Roman history

Boduōgnātus, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Nervii

Bōia, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Boii

Bōiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Celtic tribe

bonitās, -ātis [*bonus*], *f.*, goodness: **agrorum** (fertility)

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good: **bono animo esse,** to be well-disposed. —*Neut. as noun*, good, advantage; *plur.*, goods, property

bōs, bovis, *c.*, bull, cow, ox.—*Plur.*, cattle

bracchium, -ī, *n.*, arm

Bratuspantium, -ī, *n.*, a fortified town of the Bellovaci

brevis, -e, *adj.*, short (*of space or time*): **brevi,** in a short space

brevitās, -ātis [*brevis*], *f.*, shortness, short stature: **brevitas temporis,** want of time

Britannī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the Britons
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain
brūma, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice
Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, a family name at Rome. — *Esp.*, D. Junius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins

C, *for* **centum,** hundred
C., *abbr. for* **Gaius,** Caius
Caburus, -ī, *m.*, C. Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus
cadāver, -eris [*cf.* *cado*], *n.*, corpse
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *intrans.*, fall, be killed
cādūceus, -ī, *m.*, a herald's staff, the token of a peaceful embassy
Cadūrcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Cadurci. — *Masc. plur.*, the Cadurci
caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind
caedēs, -is [*caedo*], *f.*, murder, massacre, slaughter
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus, *trans.*, cut, slay, kill
caelestis, -e, *adj.*, heavenly. — *Masc. plur.*, the gods
Caemānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul
caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, sacred rite
Caerōsī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul
caeruleus, -a, -um [*caelum*, sky], *adj.*, dark blue
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, a family name in the gens Iulia. — *Esp.*: 1. C. Julius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and author of the "Commentaries." — 2. L. Julius Cæsar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul
caespes, -itis, *m.*, sod
caesus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **caedo**
Calaïs (*nom. only*), *m.*, one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind
calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, disaster, defeat, misfortune
calceus, -ī, *m.*, shoe
Caletī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northern Gaul
callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd, cunning, skillful
cālō, -ōnis, *m.*, servant, camp follower
campester, -tris, -tre [*campus*], *adj.*, of the plain: **loca** (level plains)
campus, -ī, *m.*, plain, open field
Cannēnsis, -e, *adj.*, of Cannæ, a town in Apulia, where the Romans suffered their worst defeat, in 216 B.C.
Cantaber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain). — *Masc. plur.*, the Cantabri *or* Cantabrians
Cantium, -ī, *n.*, Kent (the southeast corner of Britain)
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, sing
capillus, -ī, *m.*, the hair

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *trans.*, take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize: **locum** (select); **portum** (arrive at, make); **fugam** (take to flight)

capra, -ae, *f.*, goat

captīvus, -a, -um [*capio*], *adj.*, captive. — *Masc. as noun*, captive, prisoner

captus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **capio**

captus, -ūs [*capio*], *m.*, capacity, nature, idea

Capua, -ae, *f.*, the chief city of Campania

caput, -itis, *n.*, head; person; mouth (*of a river*); life: **poenam capitis** (of death); **capitis periculo** (of life)

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, be without, go without

carīna, -ae, *f.*, keel

carmen, -inis, *n.*, song, incantation

Carnutēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat

carpō, -pere, -psī, -ptus, *trans.*, pluck; find fault with

carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious, valuable

Carvilius, -ī, *m.*, a king of part of Kent

casa, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut

cāseus, -ī, *m.*, cheese

Cassī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a British tribe

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius: **bellum** (the war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed)

Cassius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, L. Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C. (*see* **Cassianus**)

Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, a British chief

castellum, -ī [*castrum*], *n.*, fortress, fort, outwork, redoubt

Casticus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani

Castor, -oris, *m.*, twin brother of Pollux

castrum, -ī, *n.*, fortress. — *Plur.*, camp: **castra ponere,** pitch camp; **castra movere,** break camp, move

cāsus, -ūs [*cado*], *m.*, accident, chance (*good or bad*): **casu,** by accident, by chance

Catamantāloe′dēs, -is, *m.*, a chief of the Sequani

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain (*for prisoners*), cable: **in catenas coniecit** (into prison)

Caturigēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people in Roman Gaul

Catuvolcus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Eburones

cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail

causa, -ae, *f.*, reason, excuse, grounds, motive (*for an act*): **satis causae,** sufficient reason. *Abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of. *Also*, case (*in law*): **causam dicere, plead one's cause,** stand trial, be tried

cautē [*cautus*], *adv.*, cautiously

cautus, *p.p. of* **caveo**

Cavarillus, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Hædui

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, *trans. and intrans.*, be on one's guard: **obsidibus cavere,** give hostages as security

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *intrans.*, give way, retreat, retire

celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick, fast

celeritās, -ātis [*celer*], *f.*, swiftness, activity, speed

celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, speedily

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, conceal, hide. — *Pass.*, pass unnoticed

Celtae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, a race in Gaul and Britain. — *More particularly*, the Celts occupying the interior of Gaul

Celtillus, -ī, *m.*, one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner

Cēnabum, -ī, *n.*, the chief city of the Carnutes, north of central Gaul

cēnāculum, -ī [*ceno*], *n.*, dining-room

Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a British tribe

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, ātus, *intrans.*, dine

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, *trans.*, reckon, estimate; think, advise, decree (*of the senate*), determine

cēnsus, -ūs [*censeo*], *m.*, numbering, count, census

centaurus, -ī, *m.*, centaur, a fabulous creature, half man, half horse

Centenius, -ī, *m.*, C. Centenius, a Roman commander defeated by Hannibal

centum (C), *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion (*an officer commanding a* century, *originally a hundred men*)

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, *trans.*, distinguish, see

certāmen, -inis [*certo*, contend], *n.*, struggle, contest, rivalry

certē, *adv.*, certainly, surely, at least

certus, -a, -um (*for* **crētus**), *p.p. of* **cerno** *as adj.*, determined, fixed, certain: **certiorem facere,** inform, order; **dies certa,** appointed day

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag

(cēterus,) -a, -um, *adj.*, the rest of. — *Usually plur.*, the rest, the remaining, the others

Cethēgus, -ī, *m.*, P. Cornelius Cethegus, consul in 181 B.C.

Ceutronēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in the Alps

Cevenna, -ae, *f.*, a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley, now the Cévennes

Chēruscī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Germans

cibārius, -a, -um [*cibus*], *adj.*, pertaining to food. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, provisions: **molita** (ground corn)

cibus, -ī, *m.*, food

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — *Esp.*, Q. Tullius Cicero, brother of Marcus the orator, in Cæsar's service in Gaul as legatus

Cimberius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Suebi

Cimbrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered by Marius and Catulus, 101 B.C.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, a British prince in Kent

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *trans.*, surround, encircle; man (*occupy in a circuit, of walls*)

circinus, -ī [*cf.* **circum**], *m.*, a pair of compasses

circiter, *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.*, about, near, not far from

circuitus, -ūs [*circumeo*], *m.*, circuit, circuitous route, circumference: **in circuitu,** all around

circum, *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.*, about, around

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*circum-caedo*], cut around, cut

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*circum-claudo*], *trans.*, inclose, encircle

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, *irr.*, *trans.*, put around: **murus circumdatus** (encircling, thrown around); surround, encircle

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead around; draw around

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go around. — *As trans.*, visit, make a tour of

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *trans.*, pour around. — *Pass. or reflex.*, crowd around, surround

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*circum-iacio*], *trans.*, throw around

circumitus, *p.p. of* **circumeo**

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send around

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, throw fortifications around (*said of defenders*), fortify

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stitī), *no p.p.*, *trans.*, stand around, surround, hem in, beset

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *trans.*, look about for, examine

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, draw an intrenchment around (*said of besiegers*)

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *trans.*, surround; impose upon, defraud

cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side, this side of

Cita, -ae, *m.*, C. Fufius Cita, a Roman knight

citātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **cito**

citer, -tra, -trum, *adj.* *Usually* **citerior** (*comp.*), nearer, hither (*as adj.*): **provincia, Gallia** (*Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps*)

citharoedus, -ī, *m.*, harpist, minstrel

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, urge on, hurry. — **citātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, in haste: **citatus fertur,** runs very rapidly

citō, *adv.*, quickly: **citissimē,** very rapidly

citrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, this side, within

citrō, *adv.*, to this side: **ultro citroque,** back and forth

cīvis, -is, *c.*, citizen

cīvitās, -ātis [*civis*], *f.*, citizenship, the citizens (*as a body*), a state (*body of citizens*; **res publica,** state *as a thing in itself*); *in Cæsar* tribe, *conventionally translated* state (*cf.* tribus, *part of a state*)

clam, *adv., and prep. with abl.*, secretly; unknown to

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*clamo*, cry out], *trans.*, keep crying out

clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout, outcry

clandestīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, secret

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous; loud, distinct

classiārius, -a, -um [*classis*], *adj.*, of the navy.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, marines, naval forces

classis, -is, *f.*, fleet

Clastidium, -ī, *n.*, a town of Cisalpine Gaul

Claudius, -ī, M. Claudius Marcellus, consul in 196 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *trans.*, close, shut, hem in, fasten: **claudere agmen,** close the line of march, bring up the rear

clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike

clēmentia, -ae [*clemens*, kind], *f.*, kindness, gentleness, mercy

cliēns, -entis, *c.*, dependent, vassal, retainer

clientēla, -ae [*cliens*], *f.*, vassalage: **magnae clientelae,** many vassals; **Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt** (surrendered themselves as vassals to *etc.*)

Clōdius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.*, P. Clodius Pulcher, tribune, bitter enemy of Cicero the orator. He was killed in a fray by Milo (January, 52 B.C.)

Cn., *abbr. for* **Gnaeus**

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*com-acervus*], *trans.*, heap together, heap on top (*of others*)

coāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **cogo**

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, press together

Cocosātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

coëmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*com-emo*], *trans.*, buy up

coëō, -īre, -iī, *no p.p., irr., intrans.*, come together, unite, meet

coepī, -isse, coeptus, *defective, trans.*, began, undertook, started.—**coeptus, -a, -um,** *p.p. used* (*in same sense as the active*) *with pass. infinitives*

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [*com-arceo*, shut up], *trans.*, confine, keep in check

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*com-agito*], *trans.*, consider, think over

cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, connection by birth, family, clan

cognitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **cognosco**

cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [*com-(g)nosco*, learn], *trans.*, learn, find out, investigate, inquire into.—*In perf. tenses*, know

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus [*com-ago*], *trans.*, bring together, collect, assemble, get together. *Hence*, force, compel, oblige: **coactus**, by compulsion

cohors, -hortis, *f.*, body of troops, cohort (*the tenth part of a legion*)

cohortātiō, -ōnis [*cohortor*], *f.*, an encouraging, encouragement

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, encourage, cheer up

Colchī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, inhabitants of Colchis

Colchis, -idis (*acc.* **-ida**), *f.*, a country east of the Black Sea

collis, -is, *m.*, hill

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *trans.*, cultivate; inhabit; worship (*divinities*): **colendi causa**, for purposes of cultivation

color, -ōris, *m.*, color

columba, -ae, *f.*, pigeon, dove

com- (con-, co-), *adv. in composition*, with, together, up. *Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [*com-uro*, burn], *trans.*, burn up, consume

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion

comitium, -ī, *n.*, a part of the Roman Forum.—*Plur.*, assembly of the Roman people, election: **proximis comitiis**, at the last election

commeātus, -ūs [*commeo*], *m.*, trip; supplies (*of an army*), provisions

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, remind one of. *Hence*, speak of, mention, state (*in a narrative*)

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*com-mando*, commit], *trans.*, intrust, commend, surrender

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, go back and forth. — *With* **ad**, visit, resort to

commīlitō, -ōnis [*com-miles*], *m.*, fellow soldier

comminus [*com-manus*], *adv.*, hand to hand, in close combat

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, join: **proelium** (engage in, begin the engagement). — *Also*, trust, intrust: **se barbaris committere** (put one's self in the hands of *etc.*).—*Also*, commit, commit the fault of letting, admit, allow (*to happen*)

Commius, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Atrebates

commodē, *adv.*, conveniently, fitly, readily: **satis commode**, to much advantage; **non satis commode**, not very easily

commodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, fitting, convenient, advantageous. —*Neut. as noun*, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: **commodo rei publicae**, without prejudice to the public interest

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*com-moneo-facio*], *trans.*, remind

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, delay

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*communis*], *trans.*, share, allow to participate in, put into a common stock, communicate: **consilium communicat cum A.**, he acquaints A. with his plan

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, strongly fortify

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general, in common: **res** (the common interest)

commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change

commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, change, exchange: **studium belli agri culturā** (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture)

1. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *trans.*, get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together

2. **comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** *trans.*, compare

compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive together, drive in, force, drive

comperiō, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, *trans.*, find out, ascertain, discover. — **compertus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, certain

complector, -plectī, -plexus, *dep.*, *trans.*, embrace, include, inclose

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *trans.*, fill up, fill; cover, man (*of walls*)

complūrēs, -plūra, *adj.*, *plur.*, very many, a great many

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put together, settle: **bellum** (bring to an end)

comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring together, collect

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *trans.*, seize, catch, arrest, capture

comprobō, -probāre, -probāvī, -probātus, *trans.*, assent to, ratify, sanction

compulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **compello**

con-, *see* **com-**

cōnātum, -ī [*conor*], *n.*, attempt, undertaking

cōnātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conor**

cōnātus, -ūs [*conor*], *m.*, attempt, effort

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *trans. and intrans.*, yield, allow, grant, permit, give permission for, make a concession

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [*com-cado*], *intrans.*, fall down, fall

concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*com-caedo*], *trans.*, cut to pieces, cut down (*kill*), cut up (*land by estuaries*)

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring together; win over, gain, obtain

concilium, -ī, *n.*, meeting; assembly, council, conference

concīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **concīdo**

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, arouse, stir up: **risum** (provoke)

conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, cry out, shout: **ad arma** (call)

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*com-claudo*], *trans.*, shut up, inclose: **mare conclusum** (inclosed, inland)

Conconnetodumnus, -ī, *m.*, a leader of the Carnutes

concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run together, rush up, unite: **concursum est,** there was a rushing together

concursus, -ūs, *m.*, a running together, a dashing together (*collision*); onset, conflict

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*com-damno*], *trans.*, condemn, find guilty

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, terms, condition, terms of agreement

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, give up, pardon

Condrūsī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe on the Meuse

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, bring together, bring up (*soldiers*), hire

cōnferciō, -fercīre, -fersī, -fertus, *trans.*, crowd together. — **cōnfertus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, close, crowded, dense

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, bring together, get together, collect; charge; hold (*a conversation*): **facta** (compare). — *With reflexive*, betake one's self, remove, take refuge

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conferciō**

cōnfestim, *adv.*, in haste, immediately, at once

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*com-facio*], *trans.*, accomplish, complete, finish, end, perform, dispatch; dress (*of skins*); exhaust, wear out

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *semi-dep.*, *intrans.*, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on. — **cōnfīsus, -a, -um,** *p.p. in act. sense*, trusting in

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *trans.*, fasten together, fasten

cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis [*confirmo*], *f.*, assurance, affirmation

cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, strengthen, establish (**pacem**), assure, confirm, reassure, encourage

cōnfīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **confido**

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus [*com-fateor*, confess], *dep.*, *trans.*, confess, acknowledge, admit

cōnfīxus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **configo**

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, be on fire, burn

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctus, *trans. and intrans.*, dash together, dash against, contend, fight

cōnfluēns, -entis, *m.*, meeting of two rivers, confluence

congredior, -gredī, -gressus [*com-gradior*, step], *dep.*, *intrans.*, come together. — *In peace*, unite with. — *Esp. in war*, engage, fight

congressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **congredior**

congressus, -ūs [*congredior*], *m.*, engagement, encounter

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*com-iacio*], *trans.*, throw together, hurl, cast: **se conicere**, throw one's self, rush. — *Less exactly* (*esp. in a military sense*), throw (*into prison*), put (*to flight*), place, station (*cf. military* throw *troops into etc.*), force. — *Fig.*, put together (*of ideas*)

coniectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conicio**

coniūnctim [*coniungo*], *adv.*, in common

coniūnctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **coniungo**

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *trans.*, unite, connect, fasten together

coniūnx, -iugis [*coniungo*], *c.*, husband, wife

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy, confederacy

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, take an oath (*together*); conspire, plot

conlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **confero**

conlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, praise (*in set terms*)

conlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conligo**

conlēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague

conlīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bind together, fasten together

conligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*com-lego*, gather], *trans.*, gather together, collect, acquire. — *With reflexive*, collect one's self, recover

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, place, set, station. — *Esp.* (*with or without* **nuptum**), give in marriage

conloquium, -ī [*conloquor*], *n.*, conference, interview

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, confer, hold an interview

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, attempt, try, endeavor

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [*com-quaero*], *trans.*, search for, seek for, hunt up

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [*com-sanguis*], *adj.*, akin (*by blood*). — *As noun*, kinsman

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [*com-scando*, climb], *trans.*, climb, climb upon: **navem (naves, in naves)** (go on board)

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [*com-scisco*, decree], *trans.*, resolve: **ipse sibi mortem** (commit suicide)

cōnscius, -a, -um [*com-scio*], *adj.*, aware: **sibi conscius**, conscious

cōnscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsi, -scrīptus, *trans.*, enroll, levy, enlist: **epistulam** (compose, write): **patres conscripti**, senators

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus [*freq. of consequor*], *dep.*, *trans.*, overtake, follow up

cōnsecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **consequor**

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, *intrans.*, agree, conspire, make common cause

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, overtake; obtain, secure, attain, succeed in

cōnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *trans.*, connect, join: **manum** (join battle)

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, save, preserve, spare, guard: **odium** (cherish)

cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, reflect on, consider

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman name

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *intrans.*, sit down; take a position, halt, encamp, settle

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, deliberation, a council (*of war, more commonly* **concilium**). — *Esp.*, wise counsel, prudence, discretion. *Hence*, a plan, design, purpose. — *Phrases:* **ipsorum esse consilium** (a matter for them to decide); **consilium capere,** resolve; **quasi consili sit res,** as if it were a matter for consultation; **commune consilium,** concerted action; **publicum consilium,** action of the state, official action

cōnsimilis, -e, *adj.*, very like, just like

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (*of troops*). — *In perf. tenses*, have a position, stand. *Hence*, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (*of ships*), remain, stay. — *With* **in,** occupy, rest on; depend on, consist of

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, console, cheer. — **cōnsōlātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as pres.*, consoling

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight. — **in conspectu,** in one's presence

cōnspicātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **conspicor**

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*com-specio*, look at], *trans.*, catch sight of, see

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus [*conspicio*], *dep.*, *trans.*, catch sight of, see

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, conspire, league together

cōnstanter, *adv.*, steadily, firmly, consistently

cōnstantia, -ae [*constans*, firm], *f.*, firmness, constancy, courage

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, *trans.*, strew over

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, press together, crowd

cōnstitī, *see* **consisto**

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus [*com-statuo*], *trans. and intrans.*, set up, raise, put together, make up; establish, station, arrange, draw up; determine, appoint, agree upon

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intrans.*, agree; be established, appear, be evident (*esp.*, **constat,** it appears); cost

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, *intrans.*, become accustomed. — *In perf. tenses*, be accustomed, be wont. — **cōnsuētus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, accustomed, wont, used

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, habit, custom, manners, practice: **itineris** (usual order of march)

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul (*the title of the chief magistrate of Rome*): **M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus,** in the consulship of *etc.* (*the usual Roman method of giving a date*)

cōnsulāris, -e [*consul*], *adj.*, consular. — *Masc. as noun,* ex-consul

cōnsulātus, -ūs [*consul*], *m.*, consulship

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultus, *trans. and intrans.*, deliberate, consult. — *With dat.*, take counsel for, look out for. — **sortibus consultum (est),** lots were drawn to decide

cōnsultō, *adv.*, purposely, designedly

cōnsultum, -ī [*consulo*], *n.*, decision, decree. — *Esp.*, **senatus consultum,** an order of the senate

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, *trans.*, waste, destroy, spend, exhaust

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctūrus, *intrans.*, rise, rise up. — *Esp. of a session*, break up

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, board up, plank (*floor with planks*)

contāgiō, -ōnis [*com-tango*], *f.*, contact

contemptiō, -ōnis [*contemno,* despise], *f.*, contempt, scorn

contemptus, -ūs [*contemno,* despise], *m.*, contempt, scorn: **contemptui est,** is a matter of ridicule

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentūrus, *intrans.*, strive, try, endeavor; press on, hasten; fight, contend, wage war

contentiō, -ōnis [*contendo*], *f.*, struggle, efforts. — *Esp.*, contest, fighting, dispute

contentus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **contendo** *and* **contineo**

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, *trans.*, interweave, weave together

contigisse, *see* **contingo**

continēns, -entis, *see* **contineo**

continenter, *adv.*, continually, incessantly

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*com-teneo*], *trans.*, hold together; restrain, hold in check, hem in. — *Pass. or with reflex.*, keep within, remain. — **continēns, -entis,** *pres. p. as adj.*, continual, continuous. — *As noun,* the continent. — **contentus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, satisfied

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [*com-tango*], *trans. and intrans.*, touch, reach, join. — *With dat.*, happen

continuātiō, -ōnis [*continuo,* unite], *f.*, continuation: **continuatio imbrium,** incessant rains

continuus, -a, -um [*contineo*], *adj.*, continuous, successive: **dies** (successive)

contiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly, meeting; address, harangue

contrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, opposite, contrary to, against: **contra atque,** contrary to what *etc.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, draw together, gather together, contract, make smaller

contrārius, -a, -um [*contra*], *adj.*, opposite, contrary: **ex contrario,** on the contrary; **in contrariam partem,** in the opposite direction

contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute, quarrel. —*Plur.*, grounds of quarrel

contulī, *see* **cōnferō**

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, outrage, insult, reproach, affront. —*Fig.*, violence (*of waves*)

convallis, -is, *f.*, valley (*inclosed on all sides*)

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *trans. and intrans.*, come together, meet, assemble; agree upon. — *With acc.*, meet, come to. —*Also*, *of things*, be agreed on, be fitting, be necessary: **convenit,** *impers.*, it is agreed

conventus, -ūs [*convenio*], *m.*, assembly

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *trans.*, turn about, turn, change: **signa** (change front, wheel); **conversa signa bipartito intulerunt,** wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; **conversa signa in hostes inferre,** face about and charge the enemy

Convictolitavis, -is, *m.*, a young Hæduan nobleman

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, *trans.*, prove, make good (*a charge etc.*): **avaritia ei convicta est,** he has been found guilty of avarice

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call together, summon, call

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, arise, spring up, break out (*of a war*)

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, plenty, supply. —*Plur.*, resources, supplies, forces

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [*copia*], *adj.*, well supplied, wealthy

cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling hook

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart: **cordi esse,** be dear

cōram, *adv.*, *and prep. with abl.*, face to face, present, in person, in the presence of

Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, a city in Greece

Coriosolitēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aremoric Gaul

corium, -ī, *n.*, hide, skin

Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*, L. Cornelius, consul in 193 B.C.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn. —*Fig.*, wing (*of an army*)

corōna, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown: **sub corona,** at auction (*the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction*)

corpus, -oris, *n.*, the body, the person. —*Also*, a body (*dead*)

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, destroy, ruin, corrupt, bribe

cortex, -icis, *m.* (*also f.*), bark

Cōrus, -ī, *m.*, northwest wind

cōtēs, -is, *f.*, rock, reef

cotīdiānus, -a, -um [*cotidie*], *adj.*, daily

cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*, L. Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar, slain by the Gauls

Cotuātus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Carnutes

Cotus, -ī, *m.*, a young Hæduan nobleman

crassitūdō, -inis [*crassus*, thick], *f.*, thickness

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*: 1. M. Licinius Crassus, consul with Pompey, 55 B.C.; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. P. Crassus (called **adulescens**, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. M. Crassus, another son of the triumvir, quæstor, 54 B.C., in Cæsar's army

crātēs, -is, *f.*, wickerwork, fascine (*a bundle of sticks used to strengthen earthworks in fortification*)

creātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **creo**

crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, numerous, frequent

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *trans. and intrans.*, trust, intrust, believe, suppose

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, burn, consume: **igni cremari**, be burned to death

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, create. — *Esp.*, elect, choose, appoint

Creōn, -ontis, *m.*, a king of Corinth

Crēs, Crētis, *m.*, a Cretan. — *As adj.*, Cretan

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, *intrans.*, grow, increase, swell (*of a river*), increase in influence (*of a man*), grow powerful

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete, a large island southeast of Greece

Crētēnsis, -e [*Creta*], *adj.*, Cretan. — *Masc. as noun*, Cretan

crēvisset, *see* **cresco**

cruciātus, -ūs [*crucio*, torture, *from* *crux*, cross], *m.*, torture

crūdēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel

crūdēlitās, -ātis [*crudelis*, cruel], *f.*, cruelty

crūdēliter, *adv.*, cruelly, with cruelty

crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg

cubīle, -is [*cubo*, lie down], *n.*, resting place, bed, lair

culmen, -inis, *n.*, height, top, summit, roof

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault, blame, guilt

cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation: **agri cultura**, agriculture

cultus, -ūs [*colo*], *m.*, cultivation; civilization, manner of life

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with

cum, *conj.*, *usually with subjv.*, when, whenever, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: **cum . . . tum**, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also; **cum primum**, as soon as

cumulus, -ī, *m.*, pile, heap

cunctātiō, -ōnis [*cunctor*], *f.*, hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., intrans.,* hesitate: **non cunctari quin,** have no hesitation in *etc.*

cūnctus, -a, -um [*coniunctus*], *adj.,* all, all together

cuneātim [*cuneus,* wedge], *adv.,* in the shape of a wedge

cunīculus, -ī, *m.,* burrow; mine

cupidē [*cupidus*], *adv.,* eagerly, zealously, earnestly

cupiditās, -ātis [*cupidus*], *f.,* desire, eagerness, greed

cupidus, -a, -um [*cupio*], *adj.,* eager, desirous, fond of, ambitious (for)

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, *trans. and intrans.,* be eager (for), be anxious, desire (*stronger than* **volo**). — *With dat.,* wish well to, be zealous for

cūr, *adv.,* why (*interrog. and rel.*)

cūra, -ae, *f.,* care, anxiety, attention

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.,* take care, provide for. — *With gerundive,* cause (*to be done*), have (*done*)

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus, *intrans.,* run

currus, -ūs, *m.,* chariot (*cf.* **essedum**)

cursus, -ūs [*curro*], *m.,* running, speed, a run, a course (*space or direction run*): **cursum adaequare,** keep up with; **cursu incitato** *or* **magno,** at full speed

custōdia, -ae [*custos*], *f.,* custody, guard (*state of being guarded*). — *Plur.* (*concretely*), guards, keepers

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*custos*], *trans.,* guard

custōs, -ōdis, *c.,* guard, watchman, keeper, spy

Cȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.,* Cyrenæan. — *Masc. as noun,* Cyrenæan

Cyzicus, -ī, *f.,* a city in Asia Minor

D [*half of* CIↃ, thousand], *Roman numeral for* five hundred

D., *abbr. for* **Decimus**

d., *abbr. for* **diem**

Dācus, -a, -um, *adj.,* Dacian. — *Masc. plur.,* the Dacians, a people living north of the lower Danube

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* find guilty, condemn

Dānuvius, -ī, *m.,* the Danube, flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea

datus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **do**

dē, *prep. with abl.,* from, down from, off from. *Hence,* **qua de causa,** for which reason. — *Esp. in partitive sense,* out of, of: **pauci de nostris.** — *Also,* about, of (*about*), in regard to, concerning, for. — *In expressions of time,* just after, about: **de tertia vigilia.** — *In composition,* away, off, down, through

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [*de-habeo*], *trans.,* owe, be bound, ought, must. — *Pass.,* be due, be owing

dēbilitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* weaken, cripple

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.,* retire, withdraw, withdraw from. — *Esp.* (*from life*), die

decem, *indecl. num. adj.,* ten

dēceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **decipio**

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, *trans. and intrans.*, decide, determine, decree, order; decide by battle, fight out, fight

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, contend (*so as to close the contest*), decide the issue, carry on war, fight (*a general engagement*)

dēcessus, -ūs, *m.*, withdrawal, departure: **aestus** (ebb, fall)

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, *no p.p.* [*de-cado*], *intrans.*, fall (*from a horse*)

decimus, -a, -um [*decem*], *adj.*, tenth

Decimus, -ī [*decimus*], *m.*, a Roman prænomen

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*de-capio*], *trans.*, beguile, deceive

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, make plain, declare, show

dēclīvis, -e [*de-clivus,* slope], *adj.*, sloping down, inclined.—*Neut. plur. as noun*, slopes

dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree, decision

dēcrētus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **decerno**

decumānus, -a, -um [*decimus*], *adj.*, belonging to the tenth: **porta** (the rear gate *of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted*)

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, commander (*of a* decuria *of cavalry, a small squadron*)

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī *or* **-currī, -cursūrus,** *intrans.*, run down, run away, hurry off

dēdecus, -oris, *n.*, disgrace, dishonor

dēditīcius, -a, -um [*dedo*], *adj.*, surrendered.—*Plur. as noun*, prisoners (*taken by surrender*)

dēditiō, -ōnis [*dedo*], *f.*, surrender

dēditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dedo**

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *trans.*, give over, surrender, give up, devote.—*In pass. or with reflex.*, surrender one's self, submit

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead down, lead off, lead away, take away (*of men*); conduct: **re in controversiam deducta** (coming to *etc.*).—*Esp.*, launch (*of ships*); marry (*of women*)

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis [*defatigo*], *f.*, exhaustion

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, wear out, exhaust

dēfectiō, -ōnis [*deficio*], *f.*, falling away, revolt

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *trans.*, ward off, defend one's self against; defend, protect

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [*defendo*], *f.*, defense

dēfēnsor, -ōris [*defendo*], *m.*, defender; means of defense, defense

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, carry down, carry away, carry, take, bring, land (*of ships*).—*Pass.*, be borne down *or* on, drift (*of ships*), turn aside.—*Fig.*, report, lay before; offer, confer

dēfessus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **defetiscor**

dēfetīscor, -fetīscī, -fessus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, crack open.—**dēfessus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, exhausted

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*de-facio*], *trans. and intrans.*, fail, revolt, abandon (*with* **ab**): **animo** (despond)
dēfigō, -figere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *trans.*, drive down, plant, set, fasten
dēfīxus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **defigo**
dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *intrans.*, flow apart, divide (*of a river*)
dēfore, *see* **desum**
dēfōrmis, -e [*de-forma*], *adj.*, uncomely, unshapely, ugly
dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, fly from, avoid, run away
dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*de-iacio*], *trans.*, cast down, cast, drive out, dislodge, kill (*pass.*, fall), deprive: **ea spe deiecti,** disappointed in this hope
dēiectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* deicio
dēiectus, -ūs [*deicio*], *m.*, declivity, slope
deinceps, *adv.*, in succession
deinde, *adv.*, then, next
dēlābor, -lābī, -lapsus, *intrans.*, slip down, descend, fall
dēlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **defero**
dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, delight. — *Pass.*, take delight, delight
dēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deligo (-ligere)**
dēlēctus, -ūs [*deligo*, pick out], *m.*, levy, conscription
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *trans.*, blot out, wipe out; annihilate, destroy
dēlētus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deleo**
dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, discuss, consult, deliberate
dēlictum, -ī [*delinquo*, fail], *n.*, offense
dēligātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **deligo (-āre)**
dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*de-ligo*, bind], *trans.*, tie down, moor, tie
dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*de-lego*, choose], *trans.*, choose out, select. — **dēlēctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, chosen, picked
dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, hide away, hide
Delphī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a town in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo
dēmentia, -ae [*demens*, crazy], *f.*, madness, folly
dēmessus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **demeto**
dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, *trans.*, reap, cut down
dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, move away, emigrate
dēminuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, diminish, lessen, detract
dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send down, let down, let fall. — *In pass. or with reflex.*, let one's self down, descend. — *Fig.*, despond **(se animo)**, be discouraged: **animos** (lose courage). — **dēmissus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, bowed, low
dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus [*de-emo*, take], *trans.*, take down, take off, remove

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, point out, show, state, speak of, make known

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, delay, retard

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, refuse

dēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, ten each, ten (*on each side, or in sets of ten*)

dēnique, *adv.*, at last; finally: **multo denique die,** not till late

dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, thick, crowded, dense

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, declare, warn

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive off, drive away

dēperdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, *trans.*, lose, be deprived of

dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, -peritūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be lost

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, lay down, lay aside, place, deposit; give up, lose, abandon

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, ravage, lay waste

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry off, carry away, remove

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, demand, call for

dēpositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **depono**

dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.*, mediator: **eo deprecatore,** by his mediation

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, beg off, pray for pardon, ask for quarter

dēpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fight it out, fight decisively

dēpulsus, -ā, -um, *p.p. of* **depello**

dērēctē, *adv.*, straight: **ad perpendiculum** (perpendicularly)

dērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **derigo**

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [*de-rego*], *trans.*, straighten out. — **dērēctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, straight, perpendicular

dēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*de-rapio*], *trans.*, snatch away, tear away, pull down

dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, take away, withdraw

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [*de-scando*, climb], *intrans.*, descend, come down, have recourse to, adopt (*with* **ad**)

dēsecō, -secāre, -secuī, -sectus, *trans.*, cut off

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *trans.*, abandon, forsake. — **dēsertus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, deserted, solitary

dēsertor, -ōris, *m.*, deserter

dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, feel the want of, desire, miss, find missing, lose

dēsidia, -ae [*deses*, idle], *f.*, idleness, sloth

dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, mark out, indicate, mean

dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultūrus [*de-salio*, leap], *intrans.*, leap down, leap off, jump out, jump overboard

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *intrans.*, cease, stop, desist from, abandon

dēspectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **despicio**

dēspectus, -ūs [*despicio*], *m.*, a view down, view (*from a height*): **oppidum haberet despectūs** (sheer precipices)

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, cease to hope, despair.—**dēspērātus, -a, -um,** *as pass.*, despaired of.—*Also as adj.*, desperate

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*de-specio*, look], *trans. and intrans.*, look down, look down on; despise

dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, strip, deprive

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, fasten, make fast, make firm

dēstitī, *see* **desisto**

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus [*de-statuo*], *trans.*, set down, abandon, desert

dēstrictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **destringo**

dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *trans.*, draw, unsheathe

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be wanting, fail: **equites Romanis desunt,** the Romans lack horsemen, the Romans are without horsemen

dēsuper, *adv.*, from above

dēterior, -ius, *adj.*, inferior, worse: **deteriora vectigalia facere** (impair)

dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, *trans.*, frighten off, deter, prevent

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*de-teneo*], *trans.*, delay, stop

dētrāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **detraho**

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag off, draw off, snatch (*away*), take away, take off, withdraw

dētrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, avoid, shun

dētrīmentum, -ī [*detero*, rub off], *n.*, loss, injury; defeat, disaster

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*de-turbo*, disturb], *trans.*, drive off (in confusion)

deus, -ī (*nom. plur.* **deī** *or* **dī,** *dat. or abl. plur.* **deīs** *or* **dīs**), *m.*, a god

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *trans.*, carry away, bring along

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come (*to a place, without having planned to come there*), get to

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, *trans.*, conquer completely, overcome

dēvōtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **devoveo**

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *trans.*, vow.—**dēvōtus, -ī,** *m.*, *p.p. as noun*, a sworn follower

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (*on the right hand*).—**dextra, -ae** (*sc.* **manus**), *f.*, the right hand

Diablintēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, goddess of the moon and of hunting, sister of Apollo

diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, sway

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, adjudge, assign: **se in clientelam** (bind); **se in servitutem** (surrender)

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *trans. and intrans.*, say, speak, name; appoint, fix; **ius** (administer); **sententiam** (give)

dictātor, -ōris [*dīco*], *m.*, dictator

dictiō, -ōnis [*dīco*], *f.*, a speaking, a pleading: **causae** (pleading one's cause, trial)

dictum, -ī [*n. p.p. of* **dīco**], *n.*, statement, command: **dicto audiens esse alicui,** be obedient, obey

dīdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*dis-duco*], *trans.*, draw apart, separate, divide

diēs, -ēī, *m. (rarely f. in some uses)*, day: **in dies,** from day to day; **diem ex die ducere,** put off a thing day after day; **ad diem,** on the day

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus [*dis-fero*], *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer; differ

difficilis, -e [*dis-facilis*], *adj.*, not easy, difficult: **iter** (hard to pass over)

difficultās, -ātis [*difficilis*], *f.*, difficulty, trouble

difficulter [*difficilis*], *adv.*, with difficulty

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum [*dis-fido*], *semi-dep.*, *intrans.*, distrust

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [*dis-fundo*], *trans.*, spread out

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger: **pollex** (thumb); finger's breadth

dignitās, -ātis [*dignus*], *f.*, worth, dignity, prestige, rank

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy

diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*dis-iudico*], *trans. and intrans.*, decide, determine

dīlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dīligo**

dīlēctus, -ūs [*dīligo*], *m.*, selection, levy

dīligenter, *adv.*, carefully, with care, with exactness: **parum diligenter,** too carelessly

dīligentia, -ae [*dīligens*, careful], *f.*, care, pains, diligence

dīligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*dis-lego*, choose], *trans.*, love, be fond of

dīlūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxī, *intrans.*, grow light, dawn

dīmēnsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dimetior**

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus [*dis-metior*], *dep.*, *trans.*, measure out (*esp. of a camp*).—**dīmēnsus, -a, -um,** measured

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*dis-mico*, move to and fro], *intrans.*, fight; risk an engagement

dīmidius, -a, -um [*dis-medius*], *adj.*, half.—*Neut. as noun*, a half

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*dis-mitto*], *trans.*, send away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon; dispatch, disband, dismiss

dīreptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **diripio**

dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*dis-emo*, take], *trans.*, break up (*a conference*)

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*dis-rapio,* seize], *trans.*, plunder, pillage, ravage

dis-, dī- (dir-, dif-), *adv. in compounds*, apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Pluto (the god of the underworld, and so of death)

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.*, withdraw, depart, retire, leave (*with* **ab**), go away: **ab officio** (fail in one's duty); **spes hostibus** (forsake, fail)

discessus, -ūs, *m.*, departure, withdrawal

disciplīna, -ae [*disco*], *f.*, instruction, a system (*of doctrine etc.*), a course of instruction

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*dis-claudo*], *trans.*, keep apart, separate, divide

discō, discere, didicī, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, learn

discrīmen, -inis, *n.*, crisis, risk, peril, danger

discussus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **discutio**

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [*dis-quatio,* shake], shake apart, drive away, clear away, remove

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*dis-iacio*], *trans.*, disperse, ruin, destroy, tear off (*yards*).—**disiectus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, scattered, broken, in disorder

disiectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **disicio**

dispālātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wandering, straggling

dispār, -paris, *adj.*, unequal, ill-matched

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersus [*dis-spargo,* scatter], *trans.*, scatter, disperse

dispersus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dispergo**

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, station (*variously*), array (*at several posts*)

dispositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **dispono**

disputātiō, -ōnis [*disputo*], *f.*, discussion, dispute

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, discuss, investigate

dissēnsiō, -ōnis [*dissentio*], *f.*, disagreement, dissension

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus, *intrans.*, disagree (**ab,** with)

dissideō, -sidēre, -sēdī [*dis-sedeo*], *intrans.*, sit apart; disagree, have a quarrel (*with* **ab**)

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*dis-simulo,* make like], *trans. and intrans.*, conceal, disguise; dissemble

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, scatter, disperse: **dissipati,** straggling troops

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus [*dis-suadeo,* advise], *trans.*, advise to the contrary

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*dis-teneo*], *trans.*, keep apart, cut off (*in military sense*), isolate

distō, -stāre [*dis-sto*], *intrans.*, stand apart, be distant: **quantum iunctura distabat,** as far as the distance between *etc.*

distrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag asunder, separate

distribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.*, assign, distribute, divide

distringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus [*dis-stringo*], *trans.*, engage, occupy

distulī, *see* **differo**

dītissimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **dives**

diū, *adv.*, for some time, long: **tam diu,** so long; **quam diu,** as long as; **diutius,** any longer, rather long, too long; **diutissimē,** for the longest time

diurnus, -a, -um [*dies*], *adj.*, of the day, daily: **nocturnis diurnisque itineribus** (by night and day)

diūtinus, -a, -um [*diu*], *adj.*, long continued

diūtius, diūtissimē, *comp. and superl. of* **diu**

diūturnitās, -ātis [*diuturnus*], *f.*, length of time, long continuance

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long-continued, long (*in time*)

dīversus, *p.p. of* **diverto**

dīvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [*dis-verto*], *intrans.*, separate. — **dīversus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, separate, distant, diverse, different

dīves, -itis, *adj.*, rich

Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*: 1. A pro-Roman leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix. — 2. A leader of the Suessiones

Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, a leader of the Helvetii

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, *trans.*, divide, separate. — **dīvīsus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, divided: **Gallia divisa est**

dīvīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods, divine: **res divinae,** matters of religion, religion

dīvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **divido**

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *irr.*, *trans.*, give, concede, assign, grant: **eo mihi minus dubitationis datur,** I have the less hesitation; **se vento** (run before the wind); **hostes in fugam** (put to flight); **negotium uti** (employ one to *etc.*, engage one to *etc.*); **verba** (deceive, outwit)

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *trans.*, teach, show, inform

doctor, -ōris [*doceo*], *m.*, teacher

documentum, -ī [*doceo*], *n.*, warning, example

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *intrans.*, feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve

dolor, -ōris [*doleo*], *m.*, pain, distress, indignation: **magno dolore ferre,** be very indignant; **magno esse dolori,** be a great annoyance *or* sorrow; *almost concrete*, grievance

dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, tricks, stratagem

domesticus, -a, -um [*domus*], *adj.*, one's own, at home, private, personal: **bellum** (internal)

domicilium, -ī [*domus*], *n.*, house, dwelling place, home

dominor, -ārī, -ātus [*dominus*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, rule, be master

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner

domus, -ī (-ūs), *f.*, house, home: **domī,** at home; **domum,** home, to one's home

Donnōtaurus, -ī, *m.*, a Gallic name. —*Esp.*, C. Valerius Donnotaurus, a chief of the Helvii, son of C. Valerius Caburus, and brother of C. Valerius Procillus. The first two names of these persons are Roman, taken from the name of their patron

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*donum*, gift], *trans.*, present, give: **civitate aliquem donare,** give a person the rights of citizenship

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, *intrans.*, sleep

dōs, dōtis [*do*], *f.*, marriage gift, dowry

dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, dragon, serpent

Druidēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the Druids, the priests of the ancient Gallic religion

Dubis, -is, *m.*, the Doubs, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing from the Jura Mountains

dubitātiō, -ōnis [*dubito*], *f.*, doubt, hesitation: **eo mihi minus dubitationis datur,** I feel the less doubt *or* hesitation

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*dubius*], *trans.*, doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful; hesitate

dubium, -ī, *n.*, doubt: **sine dubio,** undoubtedly

dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful: **est dubium,** there is doubt

ducentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, *plur.*, two hundred

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *trans.*, lead, draw, bring, take, spin out; beguile along, keep waiting; consider. — *With or without* **in matrimonium,** marry (*of the man*)

dum, *conj.*, while, so long as; till, until

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, an anti-Roman leader of the Hædui, brother of Diviciacus

duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, *plur.*, two

duodecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve

duodecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twelfth

duodēvīgintī [*duo de viginti*], *indecl. num. adj.*, eighteen

duplex, -plicis, *adj.*, twofold, double: acies (in two divisions)

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*duplex*], *trans.*, double

dūritia, -ae [*durus*], *f.*, hardness, hardship

dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, severe, difficult: **si quid erat durius** (any severe contest)

Dūrus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. —*Esp.*, Q. Laberius Durus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain

dux, ducis [*duco*], *c.*, leader, guide, commander

ē, *shortened form of* **ex,** *prep. with abl.*

eā, *adv.*, that way, in that direction

Eburōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Belgian tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine

Eburovīcēs, -um, *m. plur.*, *in full* **Aulerci Eburovices,** a Gallic tribe south of the Seine not far from the coast

ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *trans.*, proclaim, announce, appoint

ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, *no p.p.* [*ex-disco*], *trans.*, learn by heart, commit to memory

ēditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **edo**

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*ex-do* (put)], *trans.*, put forth, utter: **exempla cruciatusque** (make an example by inflicting severe torture). — **ēditus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, elevated, raised, high

ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus [*ex-doceo*], *trans.*, explain, inform, instruct

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*ex-duco*], *trans.*, lead out, draw (*a sword*)

effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-femina*], *trans.*, enervate, weaken: **animos** (enfeeble)

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus [*ex-fero*], *irr.*, *trans.*, carry out, bring out, carry away; spread abroad, make known; puff up, elate

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbuī [*ex-fervesco*], *intrans.*, boil up, boil over

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*ex-facio*], *trans.*, make, enable, cause, produce: **ut praeberent** (make them afford); **ut sint laboris** (make capable of); **ut posset** (make possible); **classem** (get together, construct)

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [*ex-fodio*], *trans.*, dig out, gouge out

effossus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **effodio**

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [*ex-fugio*], *trans.*, escape, fly from

egēns, -entis, *see* **egeo**

egeō, egēre, eguī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, need, be in want of, lack. — **egēns, -entis,** *pres. p. as adj.*, needy, destitute

egestās, -ātis [*egens*], *f.*, poverty, destitution

ego, meī, *pron.*, *1st person*, I, me. — *Plur.*, **nōs,** we, us

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus [*ex-gradior*, step], *dep.*, *intrans.*, go out, come forth, march out, move beyond: **nave, e navi** (land, disembark); **in terram egredior,** go ashore

ēgregiē [*egregius*], *adv.*, remarkably, finely, extremely well

ēgregius, -a, -um [*ex-grex*, herd], *adj.*, remarkable, eminent, notable, superior, excellent

ēgressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **egredior**

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ex-iacio*], *trans.*, cast out, drive out. — *With reflex.*, rush out, rush

eiusmodī, *as adj. phrase*, of this kind, of such a kind, such

ēlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **effero**

ēlēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **eligo**

elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*ex-lego*, choose], *trans.*, pick out, select. — **ēlēctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, picked (*troops*)

Elusātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*ex-migro*, depart], *intrans.*, remove (*permanently*), emigrate

ēminus [*ex-manus*], *adv.*, at a distance, at long range

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*ex-mitto*], *trans.*, let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl. — *Pass., or with reflex.*, rush out

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *trans.*, buy, purchase

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [*ex-nascor*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, spring out, grow out

ēnātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **enascor**

enim, *conj.*, for, but, now, for in fact: **neque enim,** for that matter even . . . not (*but* **neque enim . . . neque** *is simply* for neither . . . nor)

ēnumerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-numero*], *trans.*, count out, enumerate, relate

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-nuntio*], *trans.*, report, disclose, reveal

eō, īre, iī, itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go, pass, march, advance, proceed

eō, *n. abl.*, *see* **is**

eō [*old dat. of* **is**], *adv.*, thither, there, to that place

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place, in the same place

ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, saddled, caparisoned: **equites** (riding on saddles)

ephippium, -ī, *n.*, horsecloth (*with cushions*), saddle (*less complete than ours*)

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter

Eporēdorix, -īgis, *m.*: 1. A nobleman of the Hædui (vii, chap. 63). — 2. Perhaps a different Hæduan chief (vii, chap. 67)

eques, -itis [*equus*], *m.*, horseman, rider. — *Plur.*, cavalry. — *Esp.* (*as originally serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, who were next in rank to the senate*). *So also*, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*)

equester, -tris, -tre [*eques*], *adj.*, of knights, of cavalry

equitātus, -ūs [*eques*], *m.*, cavalry

equus, -ī, *m.*, horse

ērēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **erigo**

ēreptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **eripio**

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward

Ēridanus, -ī, *m.*, a river

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus [*ex-rego*], *trans.*, set up straight, raise up, arouse, encourage. — **ērēctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, high, upright

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus [*ex-rapio*, seize], *trans.*, snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue: **se eripere ne,** save one's self from *doing a thing*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, wander, stray; be mistaken

error, -ōris [*erro*], error, mistake, delusion

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [*ex-rumpo*, burst], *trans. and intrans.*, cause to burst out; burst out, make a sally

ēruptiō, -ōnis [*erumpo*], *f.*, a breaking out, sortie, rush

essedārius, -ī [*essedum*], *m.*, chariot fighter

essedum, -ī, *n.*, chariot (*of Gaulish pattern; used in war especially by the Britons*)

Esuviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe in northwestern Gaul

et, *conj.*, and: **et . . . et,** both . . . and

etiam, *adv.*, also, even, even now, yet: **quin etiam,** nay more

etiamtum [*etiam-tum*], *adv.*, even then

Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, a country of western Italy

etsī, *conj.*, even if, although, though

Eumenēs, -is, *m.*, king of Pergamum (in Asia Minor), 197–159 B.C.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus [*ex-vado*, go], *intrans.*, go forth, escape

ēvello, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [*ex-vello*, pluck], *trans.*, pull out, pluck out

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus [*ex-venio*], *intrans.*, come out, turn out, happen

ēventus, -ūs [*evenio*], *m.*, result, issue, fate, success

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-voco*], *trans.*, call out, call forth, summon. — **ēvocātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj. and noun*, reënlisted veteran

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*ex-volo*, fly], *intrans.*, fly out, rush out

ex (**ē**), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from; in consequence of, according to: **una ex parte,** on one side; **ex itinere,** on the march (*starting from it*); **ex vinculis,** in chains (*doing something from them*); *so*, **ex equis,** on horseback. — *In composition*, out, from, off, completely, up, after, un-

exāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* exigo

exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-agito*, *freq. of ago*, drive], *trans.*, harass, persecute

exāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*examen*, tongue of a balance], *trans.*, weigh

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-animus*], *trans.*, deprive of breath, kill. — **exanimātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, out of breath, exhausted

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsus, *intrans.*, be inflamed, be provoked, rage

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans.*, hear distinctly

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.*, go out, withdraw, retire

excello, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, *trans. and intrans.*, surpass, excel

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*ex-caedo*], *trans.*, cut out, cut off, break down (*gates*)

exciō, -cīre, -cīvī, -cītus, *trans.*, call out, summon

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*ex-capio*], *trans.*, take up, receive; follow, come after; **vada** (meet, be exposed to, *of ships*)

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, rouse, stimulate; raise (*towers*), kindle (*fire*)

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*ex-claudo*], *trans.*, shut out, cut off

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, think out, invent

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, torture, torment

excubitor, -ōris [*excubo*], *m.*, sentinel

excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, *intrans.*, lie outside; stand guard

excursiō, -ōnis [*ex-curro*, run], *f.*, sally, sortie, rush

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, excuse, exculpate

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, precedent, example

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go forth, go out, emigrate

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [*ex-arceo*, drive off], *trans.*, train, practice, exercise; rouse, exasperate; enforce (*a law*)

exercitātiō, -ōnis [*exerceo*], *f.*, practice, exercise

exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*exerceo*], *trans.*, train, practice. — **exercitātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, trained

exercitus, -ūs [*exerceo*], *m.*, army

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustus, *trans.*, drain off; carry off (*earth*); wear out, exhaust

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*ex-ago*], *trans.*, pass, finish: **aestas exacta erat** (was ended)

exiguē [*exiguus*], *adv.*, scantily, meagerly, barely

exiguitās, -ātis [*exiguus*], *f.*, scantiness, meagerness

exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow, scanty, small, meager

eximius, -a, -um [*ex-emo*, take], *adj.*, exceptional, remarkable; very high (**opinio**)

existimātiō, -ōnis [*existimo*], *f.*, estimate, opinion

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ex-aestimo*], *trans. and intrans.*, estimate, believe, think, suppose, judge, deem, imagine

exitus, -ūs [*cf. exeo*], *m.*, outlet, exit; end, last part; result, turn (*of fortune*), outcome

expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*ex-pes*], *trans.*, set free, free, extricate; arrange, station (*of troops*). — **expedītus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, quick, active, light-armed (*of troops*), in light marching order

expedītiō, -ōnis [*expedio*], *f.*, expedition: **misit in expeditionem** (detached)

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive out; dispel

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, *dep.*, *trans.*, experience, try: **fortunam** (risk, try)

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, expiate: **incommodum** (wipe out, make good, retrieve)

expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, *trans.,* fill out, fill up, complete

explicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī (-plicuī), -plicātus (-plicitus), *trans.,* explain, describe, state

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.,* scout

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* investigate, search, examine.— **explōrātus, -a, -um,** *p.p.,* assured, certain: **explorata victoria,** being assured of victory; **habere omnia explorata,** know certainly

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.,* place out, set forth: **exercitum** (disembark, *also* draw up, array)

exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* carry out, carry away

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, *no p.p., trans.,* demand

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [*ex-premo*], *trans.,* force out; raise up

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* take (*by storm*), capture

expulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **expello**

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [*ex-quaero*], *trans.,* search out, ask for

exquīsītus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **exquiro**

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep., trans.,* follow out, follow up: **ius** (enforce, execute)

exsiliō, -silīre, -siluī [*ex-salio*], *intrans.,* leap out

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus, *intrans.,* stand out, rise up, come out: **malacia** (ensue)

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.,* look out for, wait to see, expect, anticipate; wait

exstīnctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **exstinguo**

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīnctus, *trans.,* extinguish, destroy

exstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intrans.,* stand out

exstrūctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **exstruo**

exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *trans.,* heap up, build up

exsul, -ulis, *m.,* exile

exter, -era, -erum, *adj.,* outer, outside.— **extrēmus, -a, -um,** *superl.,* farthest, extreme, last: **extremi,** *as noun,* the rear; **ad extremum,** till the last, at last

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, *no p.p., trans. and intrans.,* fear greatly, dread

extrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.,* outside, out of

extrāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **extraho**

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.,* drag out, draw out

extrēmus, *see* **exter**

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, *trans.,* shut out (*by dikes*)

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, *trans.,* strip off: **armis exutis,** deprived of arms

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *trans.,* burn up

faber, -brī [*facio*] (*m. of* **faber,** skillful), mechanic, engineer (*in an army*)

Fabius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. —*Esp.:* 1. Q. Fabius Maximus, consul and dictator in the Second Punic War.—2. Q. Fabius Labeo, consul in 183 B.C.—3. Q. Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C. on the Rhone. —4. C. Fabius, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul.—5. L. Fabius, a centurion

facilis, -e [*facio*], *adj.*, easy, convenient. — **facile,** *n. as adv.*, easily, conveniently

facinus, -oris [*facio*], *n.*, deed; misdeed, crime

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *trans. and intrans.*, make, do, act. — *Used in a great variety of senses as in English:* **coniurationem** (form); **sementes** (do planting); **iter** (march, travel, proceed).—*So in pass.*, happen, result, occur: **non sine causa fit,** it is not without reason; **fit ut,** the result is that. —**factum, -ī,** *n. of p.p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either*, act, thing done, *etc.*—**fīō, fierī,** *as pass. in all senses*

factiō, -ōnis [*facio*], *f.*, party, faction

factum, -ī, *see* **facio**

facultās, -ātis [*facilis*], *f.*, ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, resources, supply

fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech (*tree or wood*)

Falernus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Falernian (*of the* Falernus ager *in Campania*)

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, *trans. and intrans.*, deceive: **spes aliquem** (disappoint). — **falsus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, deceived; false, unfounded

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning hook. —*Also*, hook (*of similar form for demolishing walls*)

fāma, -ae, *f.*, speech, common talk, reputation; rumor, story

famēs, -is (*abl.* **famē,** *fifth decl.*), *f.*, hunger, starvation: **famem tolerare,** keep from starving, appease hunger

familia, -ae, *f.*, collection of attendants, household; kin, kin and their dependents

familiāris, -e [*familia*], *adj.*, of the household: **res** (estate, property). —*Esp. as noun*, friend

fās, *n.*, *indecl.*, right (*in conscience, or by divine law*): **non est fas** (permitted, allowed)

fastīgātē, *adv.*, sloping

fastīgium, -ī [*fastigo*], *n.*, elevation, slope, descent

fastīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring to a point.—*Esp.*, **fastīgātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, inclined, sloping

fātum, -ī [*for*, speak], *n.*, fate, lot, destiny

faucēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, throat, jaws

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *intrans.*, favor, be favorable to

fax, facis, *f.*, torch, firebrand, fire

fefellisse, *see* **fallo**

fēlīcitās, -ātis [*felix*, lucky], *f.*, good fortune, good luck

fēlīciter [*felix*, lucky], *adv.*, luckily, successfully

fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman

femur, -inis *or* **-oris,** *n.*, thigh

ferāx, -ācis [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile

ferē, *adv.*, almost, about; usually, for the most part.—*With negatives*, hardly

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, bear, carry, endure, tolerate: **magno dolore ferre,** be much pained, take it very hard; **moleste (graviter) ferre,** be annoyed at, take amiss, be indignant at.—*Also*, assert, declare, say

ferrāmentum, -ī [*ferrum*], *n.*, tool (*of iron*), implement

ferrāria, -ae [*ferrum*], *f.*, iron mine

ferreus, -a, -um [*ferrum*], *adj.*, of iron, iron (*made of iron*)

ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, steel, sword

fertilis, -e [*fero*], *adj.*, fertile, fruitful

fertilitās, -ātis [*fertilis*], *f.*, fertility, productiveness

ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, ferocious

fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*ferveo-facio*], *trans.*, heat, heat red-hot

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, glow, be hot, be red-hot

fībula, -ae [*figo*, fasten], *f.*, clasp, buckle

fictilis, -e [*fingo*], *adj.*, made of clay, earthen

fictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **fingo**

fidēlis, -e [*fides*], *adj.*, faithful

fidēs, -eī, *f.*, promise, pledge: **fidem facere,** give assurance.—*Also*, good faith, fidelity, pledge, promise; belief; **Caesaris fidem sequi** (come under, surrender one's self to); **in fidem se permittere (venire),** place themselves under the protection of *etc.*

fīdūcia, -ae [*fidus*, trusty], *f.*, confidence, reliance

figūra, -ae, *f.*, shape, form

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter

fīlius, -ī, *m.*, son

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus, *trans.*, mold; invent, contrive.—**fictus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.; n. plur. as noun*, fictions

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*finis*], *trans.*, set bounds to, limit, measure

fīnis, -is, *m.*, limit, end: **quem ad finem,** as far as.—*Plur.*, territories, country

fīnitimus, -a, -um [*finis*], *adj.*, neighboring, adjacent.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, neighbors

fīō, *pass. of* **facio**

fīrmiter [*firmus*], *adv.*, steadily, firmly

fīrmitūdō, -inis [*firmus*], *f.*, solidity, strength (*of resistance*)

fīrmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, firm, steady

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile driver

Flaccus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, demand earnestly

Flāminīnus, -ī, *m.*, T. Quinctius Flamininus, Roman envoy sent

to demand the surrender of Hannibal

Flaminius, -ī, *m.*, C. Flaminius Nepos, consul, commander in the battle of Lake Trasimenus

flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *trans.*, bend, turn

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *trans. and intrans.*, weep; weep for

flētus, -ūs [*fleo*], *m.*, weeping, lamentation

flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, *intrans.*, blow

flōrēns, -entis [*pres. p. of floreo*, bloom], *adj.*, blooming. — *Fig.*, flourishing, prosperous, influential

fluctus, -ūs [*fluo*], *m.*, wave

flūmen, -inis [*fluo*], *n.*, river

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus, *intrans.*, flow

foederātus, -a, -um [*foedus*], *adj.*, allied, federated

foedus, -eris, *n.*, treaty, league, compact

fōns, fontis, *m.*, fountain, spring

fore, *for* **futūrum esse**; *see* **sum**

forem, *for* **essem**; *see* **sum**

foris, -is, *f.*, door

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, shape, form, appearance; beauty

fors, fortis, *f.*, chance. — **forte,** *abl. as adv.*, by chance, as it happened

forte, *see* **fors**

fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave, courageous

fortiter [*fortis*], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, undauntedly

fortitūdō, -inis [*fortis*], *f.*, bravery, prowess

fortuītō, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, luck, fortune, chance, fate, lot (*one's* fortune), chances (**belli**), success (*good or bad*); *plur.*, fortunes, property

forum, -ī, *n.*, market place

fossa, -ae [*fodio*, dig], *f.*, ditch, trench

fovea, -ae, *f.*, pitfall

frāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **frango**

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *trans.*, break, wreck; break down, crush

frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother

frāternus, -a, -um [*frater*], *adj.*, of a brother, fraternal

fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, fraud

Fregellae, -ārum, *f.*, a town of Latium

fremitus, -ūs [*fremo*, roar], *m.*, murmur, confused noise, roar

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, crowded, numerous, in great numbers

frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying on

frīgidus, -a, -um [*frigeo*, be cold], *adj.*, cold

frīgus, -oris [*frigeo*, be cold], *n.*, cold. — *Plur.*, cold seasons

frōns, frontis, *f.*, front, brow: **a fronte,** in front

frūctuōsus, -a, -um [*fructus*], *adj.*, fruitful

frūctus, -ūs, *m.* [*fruor*], crops, income, profit, returns

frūmentārius, -a, -um [*frumentum*], *adj.*, of grain: **loca** (fruitful in grain); **res** (grain supply, provisions)

frūmentātiō, -ōnis [*frumentor*], *f.*, foraging expedition

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus [*frumentum*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, forage, gather grain

frūmentum, -ī [*fruor*], *n.*, grain. — *Plur.*, crops

fruor, fruī, frūctus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, enjoy (*abl.*)

frūstrā, *adv.*, to no purpose, without effect, in vain

frūstror, -ārī, -ātus [*frūstrā*], *dep.*, *trans.*, disappoint, deceive

frūx, frūgis, *f.* [*cf. fruor*], fruit. — *Plur.*, crops

Fūfius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. *See* **Cita**

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight: **se fugae mandare,** take to flight; **in fugam dare,** put to flight

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus [*fuga*], *trans. and intrans.*, flee, fly from, run away. — *Fig.*, shun, avoid. — **fugiēns,** *pres. p. as noun*, fugitive

fugitīvus, -a, -um [*fugio*], *adj.*, runaway. — *As noun*, runaway slave

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*fuga*], *trans.*, put to flight, rout

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, smoke

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke

funda, -ae, *f.*, sling

fundāmentum, -ī, *n.*, foundation

funditor, -ōris [*funda*], *m.*, slinger

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, *trans.*, pour; scatter; rout

fūnebris, -e [*funus*], *adj.*, of a funeral. — *Neut. plur. as noun*, funeral rites

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, perform, discharge (*abl.*)

fūnis, -is, *m.*, rope

fūnus, -eris, *n.*, death, funeral

Furius, -ī, *m.*, L. Furius, consul in 196 B.C.

furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy, fury

fūrtum, -ī [*fur*, thief], *n.*, theft, a theft

fūsilis, -e [*fundo*], molten, liquid, soft

fūsus, *p.p. of* **fundo**

futūrus, *see* **sum**

Gabalī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people, dependents of the Arverni

Gabīnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

gaesum, -ī, *n.*, javelin

Gāius, -ī, *m.*, Caius, a Roman prænomen

Galba, -ae, *m.*, a Gallic and Roman family name. — *Esp.*, P. Sulpicius Galba, consul in 200 B.C.

galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet (*usually of leather*)

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Rubicon, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Gauls, Gallic

gallīna, -ae, *f.*, hen

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic. — *As noun*, a Gaul, the Gauls. — *Also*, a Roman family name

Garumna, -ae, *m.*, a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne

Garumnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees

Gatēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people of Aquitania

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, *semi-dep.*, *intrans.*, be delighted, rejoice

gaudium, -ī [*gaudeo*], *n.*, joy

gāvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **gaudeo**

Geminus, -ī, *m.*, C. Servilius Geminus, consul in 217 B.C.; killed in the battle of Cannæ, 216 B.C.

Genāva, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva

generātim [*genus*], *adv.*, by tribes

gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, clan, people

genus, -eris, *n.*, race, family (stock); kind, sort, class.—*Also, abstractly*, kind, character, nature, method **(pugnae)**

Gergovia, -ae, *f.*, a city in the land of the Arverni, in southeastern Gaul

Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany, bounded by the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea

Germānicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Germans, German

Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German.—*As noun*, a German

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *trans.*, carry on, manage, wage (*war*), hold (*a magistracy*), do (*any business*).—*Pass.*, be done, go on (*of operations*): **res gestae,** exploits, operations, campaign; **gesta,** events

gestus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **gero**

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus [*gens*], *trans.*, bring forth, produce.—*In pass.*, spring up, arise

gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword

glāns, glandis, *f.*, nut, acorn.—*Also*, ball, missile

Glaucē, -ēs (*acc.*, **-ēn**), *f.*, daughter of Creon king of Corinth

glēba, -ae, *f.*, clod, lump

glōria, -ae, *f.*, fame, glory

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus [*gloria*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, glory in, boast of (*abl.*)

Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix

Gorgobina, -ae, *f.*, a city in the territory of the Hædui

Gortȳniī, -ōrum, *m.*, Gortynians (of Gortyna, a city in Crete)

Gracchus, -ī, *m.*, Ti. Sempronius Gracchus, consul in 215 and 213 B.C.

Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Greeks, Greek.—*As noun*, a Greek

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of the Alps

Grāius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Graian (*referring to a section of the Alps*).—*Adj. or noun*, Grecian

grandis, -e, *adj.*, large, of great size

grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, good will, favor. *Hence*, influence, friendship.—*Esp.*: **gratias agere,** thank; **gratias habere,** be grateful; **gratias (gratiam) referre,** pay off an obligation; **gratiam inire,** secure

the gratitude of any one. — *With gen.*, for the sake of, on account of

grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, congratulation, rejoicing

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus [*gratus*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, congratulate

grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasing, grateful

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy. — *Fig.*, serious, severe, hard: **gravioris aetatis,** of more advanced years; **si gravius quid acciderit,** if anything serious should occur; **ne quid gravius statueret,** that he would not pass any very severe judgment

gravitās, -ātis [*gravis*], *f.*, weight. — *Fig.*, importance, power

graviter [*gravis*], *adv.*, heavily, with great weight, with force. — *Fig.*, severely, seriously: **graviter ferre,** take to heart

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*gravis*], *trans.*, make heavy. — *Pass. as dep.*, be unwilling, object

gubernātor, -ōris [*guberno*, steer], *m.*, pilot, helmsman

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, taste, eat

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *trans. and intrans.*, have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: **castra** (occupy); **orationem** (deliver); **se habere,** be; **rationem habere,** have regard for. — *With p.p.*, have, hold, keep: **redempta habere,** buy up and hold. — *Also*, consider

habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, dwell, live

hāc, *adv.*, by this route, this way, here

Hadrūmētum, -ī, *n.*, a town on the coast of Africa

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — *Masc. as noun*, a Hæduan, the Hædui

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*freq. of* **haereo,** stick], *intrans.*, get caught, stick, struggle (*caught in a marsh*)

Hamilcar, -aris, *m.*, father of Hannibal

Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, the great Carthaginian, one of the greatest of generals

Harpȳiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, Harpies (loathsome creatures, half women, half birds)

Harūdēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe originally from Jutland

Hasdrubal, -alis, *m.* 1. Brother-in-law of Hannibal. — 2. Brother of Hannibal

haud, *adv.*, not at all, not

Helvēticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian (*see* **Helvetius**)

Helvētius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Helvetii

Helviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

herba, -ae, *f.*, plant

Herculēs, -is, *m.*, mythical Greek hero, son of Jupiter

Hercynius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany)

hērēditās, -ātis [*heres*, heir], *f.*, inheritance

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland

hībernus, -a, -um [*hiems*], *adj.*, of winter, winter (*as adj.*).—*Neut. plur.* (*sc.* **castra**), winter quarters

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, these, he, they, this man (woman *or* thing).—*Referring to things mentioned before* (*but with more emphasis than* **is**): **hic pagus unus,** this one canton. —**hōc,** *n. abl.*, *used adverbially*, in this respect, on this account, by so much.—*Often* **hic . . . ille,** the one . . . the other, this (*near by*) . . . the other (*farther off*)

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place, there (*of a place just mentioned*)

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*hiems*], *intrans.*, pass the winter

hiems, -emis, *f.*, winter

hinc, *adv.*, from here, hence

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, Spain

Hispānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish

hodiē [*hoc die*], *adv.*, to-day, now

homō, -inis, *c.*, human being, man (*including woman*)

honestus, -a, -um [*honor*], *adj.*, respected, honorable

honor (honōs), -ōris, *m.*, honor, respect: **honoris causā,** out of respect.—*Also*, honorable position

honōrificus, -a, -um [*honor-facio*], *adj.*, honorable

hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour (*of the day*).—The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always one twelfth of the solar day

horreō, horrēre, horruī, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, bristle; shudder at, dread

horribilis, -e [*horreo*], *adj.*, terrible, dreadful

horridus, -a, -um [*horreo*], *adj.*, bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, encourage, urge on, address

hospes, -itis, *m.*, host.—*Also*, guest, stranger. *Hence*, guest-friend

hospitium, -ī [*hospes*], *n.*, the relation of host (*or* of guest *or* of guest-friend). *Hence*, friendship, hospitality

hostia, -ae, *f.*, animal for sacrifice, victim

hostis, -is, *c.*, stranger, enemy (*of the state*)

hūc, *adv.*, hither, here (*in sense of* hither), to this (place *etc.*; *cf.* **eo,** *adv.*): **huc accedebant,** to these were added

huiusmodī, *see* **hic** *and* **modus**

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, civilization, cultivation, refinement

hūmānus, -a, -um [*homo*], *adj.*, civilized, cultivated, refined

humilis, -e [*humus*, ground], *adj.*, low, shallow.—*Fig.*, humble, poor

humilitās, -ātis [*humilis*], *f.*, lowness, shallowness.—*Fig.*, humble position, insignificance

Hylās, -ae, *m.*, one of the Argonauts

I, *Roman numeral for* one

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, lie, lie dead.—**iacentes,** *pres. p. as noun*, the slain

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *trans.*, throw, hurl, cast: **aggerem** (throw up)

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*freq. of iacio*], *trans.*, toss, bandy about (*of talk*), discuss, boast

iactūra, -ae [*iacio*], *f.*, loss, sacrifice (*of men in war*)

iactus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **iacio**

iaculum, -ī [*iacio*], *n.*, javelin

iam, *adv.*, now, by this time, at last, already, at length

ianua, -ae, *f.*, door

Iāsōn, -onis, *m.*, leader of the Argonauts

ibi, *adv.*, there

Iccius, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the Remi

ictus, -ūs [*ico*, strike], *m.*, stroke

Īd., *abbr. for* **Idus**

idem, eadem, idem [*is-dem*], *dem. adj. and pron.*, the same; the same thing (things), the same

identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly, again and again

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted

Īdūs, -uum, *f. plur.*, the Ides (a day of the month falling originally at the full moon; in Cæsar's time, on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months)

igitur, *adv.*, therefore, then

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire.—*Plur.*, camp fires

ignōminia, -ae [*in-*, not, (*g*)*nomen*, name], *f.*, disgrace

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ignarus*, ignorant], *trans.*, not know, be ignorant of.—*Pass.*, be unobserved

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [*in-*, not, (*g*)*nosco*, know], *intrans.*, overlook, pardon

ignōtus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, (*g*)*notus*, known], *adj.*, unknown, strange

ille, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that (*of something remote; cf.* **hic**); *as pronoun* (*opposed to some other emphatic word*), he, she, it, they: **hic . . . ille,** this . . . that, the other; the latter . . . the former

illīc, *adv.*, there (*more remote; opposed to* **hīc**, *near by*), in that place

illō, *adv.*, thither, there (*in sense of* thither), that way

Īllyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace)

imber, imbris, *m.*, rain storm, rain

imitor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, imitate, copy

immānis, -e, *adj.*, monstrous, huge, enormous

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, let in, let down (*into*), insert, throw (*upon*), send against, let loose

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*in-mola*, meal], *trans.*, sacrifice

immortālis, -e, *adj.*, immortal

immūnitās, -ātis [*immunis*, free], *f.*, freedom (*from public burdens*)

impedīmentum, -ī [*impedio*], *n.*, hindrance: **esse impedimento,** to hinder.—*Esp. in plur.*, baggage, baggage train (*including the beasts of burden*)

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [*in-pes*], *trans.*, entangle, hamper, interfere with, hinder, embarrass, impede

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive on.—*Fig.*, instigate, incite, impel

impendeō, -ēre, *intrans.*, overhang

impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive, very high (*of price*)

imperātor, -ōris [*impero*], *m.*, commander (*in chief*), general

imperātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of impero*], *n.*, an order, a command

imperītus, -a, -um [*in-peritus*], *adj.*, unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in

imperium, -ī [*impero*], *n.*, command, control, supremacy, power (*military*), rule (*both sing. and plur.*); order, command

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, demand; order (*in military sense*), rule, command

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, accomplish (*anything by a request*), succeed in (*obtaining*), obtain (*a request*)

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, rush, attack, violence, fury: **impetum facere,** charge

impius, -a, -um, *adj.*, impious (*offending divine law*)

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, implore, beseech

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, place on, mount (*men on horses*), put (*on board*)

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, import

impositus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **impono**

impraesentiārum [*in praesentia rerum*], *adv.*, for the present

imprīmīs *or* **in prīmīs,** *adv.*, among the first, especially, particularly

improbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, wicked

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unforeseen: **improviso (de improviso),** on a sudden, unexpectedly

imprūdēns, -entis [*in-prudens*, foreseeing], *adj.*, not expecting, incautious, off one's guard

imprūdenter [*imprudens*], *adv.*, unwisely, imprudently

imprūdentia, -ae [*imprudens*], *f.*, ignorance, want of forethought

impugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, attack, invade, charge

impulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **impello**

impūne [*impunis*, unpunished], *adv.*, with impunity

impūnitās, -ātis [*impunis*, unpunished], *f.*, freedom from punishment, impunity

īmus, *see* **inferus**

in-, *prefix, with the force of a negative; cf. English* un-

in, *prep.* (*a*) *With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on*, into, on, within, to, against, among. — *Of time*, for, to, till. — *Often where English has a different conception*, in, on: **abdere in silvas**, hide in the woods; **in eos exempla edere** (visit on). — *In adverbial expressions where no motion appears*, in, according to, with, to: **in eam sententiam**, to this purport. — *Esp.*: **in Caesarem incidit**, happened to meet Cæsar; **in fugam conicere**, put to flight

(*b*) *With abl., of rest*, in, on, among, within. — *Often*, in the case of, in respect to: **in eo**, in his case, in regard to him. — *Esp.*: **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in primis**, among the first, especially

(*c*) *In composition, as adv.*, in, on, toward, against

inānis, -e, *adj.*, empty, vain, idle

incautē, *adv.*, incautiously, carelessly

incendium, -ī [*incendo*], *n.*, a burning, fire

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *trans.*, set fire to, burn. — *Fig.*, rouse, excite

incēnsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **incendo**

inceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **incipio**

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [*in-cado*], *intrans.*, fall upon, fall into; fall in with, meet, occur, happen

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*in-caedo*], *trans.*, cut into

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*in-capio*], *trans. and intrans.*, begin, undertake

incīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **incīdo**

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite. — **incitātus, -a, -um**, *p.p.*, angered, spurred on: **incitato equo**, at full gallop; **incitato cursu**, at full speed. — *Esp.*, **se aestus incitare** (rush in)

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*in-claudo*], *trans.*, shut in, imprison

incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown: **res** (that I know nothing about)

incola, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant

incolō, -colere, -coluī, *no p.p., trans. and intrans.*, inhabit, live, dwell

incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, unhurt, safe

incommodē, *adv.*, inconveniently, unfortunately

incommodus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inconvenient, unfortunate. — **incommodum, -ī**, *n. as noun*, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss

incrēdibilis, -e [*in-*, not, *credo*], *adj.*, marvelous, extraordinary, incredible

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, upbraid, taunt, revile

incursiō, -ōnis [*incurro,* run at], *f.*, attack, invasion

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, upbraid, rebuke, chide

inde, *adv.*, from there, thence, from the place (*which etc.*); then

indicium, -ī, *n.*, information; indication, sign: **per indicium,** through an informer

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *trans.*, order, proclaim, appoint

indigeō, -ēre, -uī, *intrans.*, need, want, be dependent on

indignitās, -ātis [*indignus*], *f.*, unworthiness, disgrace, outrage

indignor, -ārī, -ātus [*indignus*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, be indignant

indignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy

indīligēns, -entis, *adj.*, negligent, careless, heedless

indīligenter [*indiligens*], *adv.*, carelessly, negligently

indīligentia, -ae [*indiligens*], *f.*, carelessness

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, draw on. *Hence,* cover: **scuta pellibus.** — *Also,* lead on. *Hence,* induce, impel

indulgentia, -ae [*indulgeo*], *f.*, indulgence, favor, clemency

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, favor, treat with indulgence

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, *trans.*, put on

indūtiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, truce

Indūtiomārus, -ī, *m.*, a chief of the Treveri

ineō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*, enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, gain, secure. — *Esp.:* **inita aestate,** at the beginning of summer; **inire rationem,** make a calculation, adopt a scheme; **inire consilium,** form a plan; **inire numerum,** enumerate

inermis, -e [*in-,* not, *arma*], *adj.*, unarmed, defenseless

iners, -ertis [*in-,* not, *ars*], *adj.*, cowardly, sluggish, unmanly

īnfāmia, -ae [*infamis,* infamous], *f.*, dishonor, disgrace

infandus, -a, -um [*in-for,* speak], *adj.*, unspeakable, awful

īnfāns, -antis [*in-,* not, *fans, pres. p. of for,* speak], *c.*, child, infant

īnfectus, -a, -um [*in-,* not, *factus*], *adj.*, not done. — *Esp.*, **re infecta,** without success

īnfēlīx, -īcis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, bring in, import, put on: **bellum** (make); **signa** (advance, make a charge); **terrorem** (inspire). — *Fig.*, cause, inflict, commit

īnferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, low: **inferior pars,** the lower end; **ab inferiore parte,** down below, *of a river.* — **īnfimus (īmus), -a, -um,** *superl.*, lowest, the bottom of: **infimus collis,** the foot of the hill

īnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*in-facio*], *trans.*, stain, infect

īnfimus, *see* **inferus**

īnfīnītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unbounded, countless, endless

īnfīrmitās, -ātis [*infirmus*], *f.*, feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness

īnfīrmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak, feeble: **naves** (unseaworthy)

īnfitior, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, deny

īnflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, *trans.*, bend down. — *Pass. or with reflex.*, become bent

īnflexus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **inflecto**

īnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -fluxūrus, *intrans.*, flow into, empty into

īnfrā, *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.*, below, farther down, less than

īnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus, *trans.*, pour in

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, huge, enormous

ingredior, -gredī, -gressus [*in-gradior*, step], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, march into, enter, march in

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*in-iacio*], *trans.*, throw into, throw upon; place in, put on, embark; inspire

iniectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **inicio**

inimīcitia, -ae [*inimicus*], *f.*, enmity, hostility

inimīcus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *amicus*], *adj.*, unfriendly, hostile. — *Masc. as noun*, enemy (*personal, or not in war*)

inīquitās, -ātis [*iniquus*], *f.*, inequality; unfairness, unfavorableness

inīquus, -a, -um [*in-*, not, *aequus*], *adj.*, uneven; unjust, unfavorable, unfair. — *Comp.*, **iniquior locus,** less favorable position

initium, -ī [*ineo*], *n.*, a beginning, the first of: **initium capere,** begin, start; **initium facere transeundi,** start to cross, begin crossing

initus, *p.p. of* **ineo**

iniūria, -ae [*in-*, not, *ius*], *f.*, injustice, outrage, wrong

iniussū, *adv.*, without orders

inlātus, *p.p. of* **infero**

inligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bind on, attach, fasten to

inlūdō, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsus, *trans.*, make sport of, deceive

inlūstris, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, famous: **inlustriore loco natus,** of distinguished ancestry

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, be inspired, be excited

innītor, -nītī, -nīxus *or* **-nīsus,** *dep.*, *intrans.*, lean upon. — **innīxus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, leaning on

innocēns, -entis [*in-*, not, *nocens*, *pres. p. of noceo*], *adj.*, harmless, guiltless, innocent

innocentia, -ae [*innocens*], *f.*, blamelessness

inopia, -ae [*inops*, needy], *f.*, scarcity, privation, want of supplies

inopīnāns, -antis, *adj.*, unsuspecting, not suspecting

inquam, inquis, inquit, *etc.*, *defective*, *intrans.*, say

inrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsus, *trans. and intrans.*, ridicule, laugh at

inrīdiculē, *adv.*, without humor

inrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans. and intrans.*, break in, break into, storm

inruptiō, -ōnis [*inrumpo*], *f.*, attack, raid, incursion

īnsciēns, -entis, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware

īnscientia, -ae [*insciens*], *f.*, ignorance, lack of acquaintance with

īnscius, -a, -um, *adj.*, not knowing, unaware

īnsecūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **insequor**

īnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow up, pursue

īnserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, *trans.*, insert, stick in

īnsidiae, -ārum [*insideo*, sit in], *f. plur.*, ambush, treachery, plot: **per insidias,** with deception, treacherously

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus [*insidiae*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, lie in wait, make treacherous attacks, plot against

īnsignis, -e [*in-signum*], *adj.*, marked, memorable. — **īnsigne, -is,** *n. as noun*, signal, sign, decoration (*of soldiers*)

īnsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultus [*in-salio*, leap], *trans.*, leap on

īnsimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, charge, accuse

īnsinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*in-sinus*, bosom], *trans. and intrans.*, slip in. — *With reflex.*, slip in

īnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *trans. and intrans.*, stand on, stand, keep one's footing. — *Fig.*, adopt **(rationem pugnae)**

īnsolenter, *adv.*, insultingly, insolently, arrogantly

īnspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, look on: **inspectantibus nobis,** before our eyes

īnstabilis, -e, *adj.*, unsteady

īnstar, *n.*, *indecl.*, in the likeness of (*with gen.*)

īnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*in-statuo*], *trans.*, set up, set in order: **opus** (finish). — *Also*, provide, procure, get ready. — *Also*, set about, undertake, adopt (*a plan etc.*), begin, set on foot. — *So*, teach, train, habituate

īnstitūtum, -ī [*n. p.p. of* **instituo**], *n.*, habit, practice, custom

īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, *intrans.*, be at hand, press on; threaten, impend, menace

īnstrūctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **instruo**

īnstrūmentum, -ī [*instruo*], *n.*, furniture, equipment, tools and stores

īnstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *trans.*, build, fit up, fit out, set in order, arrange, draw up (*of troops*)

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trained

īnsuētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccustomed, unused

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island

īnsuper, *adv.*, on the top, from above

integer, -gra, -grum [*in-*, not, **tango**, touch], *adj.*, untouched, unwearied, fresh; *as noun*, fresh troops. — *Esp.*, not entered upon (*of business*); **re integra,** before anything was done

integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus, *trans.*, cover over **(turres coriis)**

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*inter-lego,* gather], *trans.*, learn, know, find out, discover, understand

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus, *trans.*, stretch, strain.—*Esp. of the mind or eyes*, be intent, be absorbed: **animis intentis in ea re,** with their minds absorbed in this business

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among: **inter aciem,** in the line.—*Of time*, within, for.—*Often in a reciprocal sense:* **inter se,** with (to, from, *etc.*) each other *or* one another; **cohortati inter se,** encouraging each other *or* one another; *similarly*, **obsides inter eos dandos curavit,** arranged for their exchanging hostages

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.*, come between, go between, lie between, pass (*of time*): **ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere,** exist between them and the Hædui

interceptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **intercipio**

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*inter-capio*], *trans.*, intercept, cut off

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [*inter-claudo*], *trans.*, cut off, shut off, block (*roads*): **fugam** (stop, cut off)

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *trans.*, forbid, prohibit: **Gallia Romanis interdicere,** exclude the Romans from Gaul

interdiū, *adv.*, in the daytime

interdum, *adv.*, for a time, sometimes

intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, perish, die, be killed

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*inter-facio*], *trans.*, kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*inter-iacio*], *trans.*, throw in (*between*).—*Pass.*, lie between, intervene: **spatio interiecto** (intervening; *i.e.* at a . . . distance, after an . . . interval)

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile

interior, -ius, *adj.*, inner, interior, more intimate.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, **interiores,** men in the interior, men in the town

interitus, -ūs [*intereo*], *m.*, destruction, death

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans. and intrans.*, leave off, discontinue, stop: **neque diem neque noctem** (not cease day or night); **spatiis intermissis,** leaving intervals; **nocte intermissa,** a night intervening

interneciō, -ōnis [*cf. neco*], *f.*, extermination, annihilation

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, interrupt, interfere with

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put in between, interpose, allege: **nulla suspicione belli interposita,** no suspicion of war appearing to hinder

interpres, -pretis, *c.*, mediator, interpreter

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, interpret, explain

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, question, ask

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break down (*of bridges*), destroy

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *trans.*, tear down

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be between, be in, be engaged in: **non amplius interest,** there is an interval of not more than *etc.*—*Esp.*, *impers.*, it is of importance, it concerns

intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, distance apart, interval

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come up, arrive

interventus, -ūs [*intervenio*], *m.*, intervention, help

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, *trans.*, weave in, weave together

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, into, within, inside

intrītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwearied

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, enter, go in

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead in, bring in, march in (*troops*)

introeō, -īre, -iī, -itus [*intro*, within, *eo*, go], *trans. and intrans.*, come in, enter

introitus, -ūs [*introeo*], *m.*, entrance, approach

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send in

intrōrsus [*intro*, within, *versus*, *p.p. of verto*], *adv.*, inside, within

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus, *dep.*, *trans.*, look at

intulī, *see* **infero**

inūsitātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unaccustomed

inūtilis, -e, *adj.*, of no use, unserviceable

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, *trans.*, find, learn

inventor, -ōris, *m.*, discoverer

inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, become established, become fixed.—*Perf.*, be an old campaigner (in)

invictus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquerable, invincible

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *intrans.*, envy

invidia, -ae, *f.*, hatred, envy, unpopularity

inviolātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, inviolate; sacred

invīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **invideo**

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, invite, request, attract

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling.—*Often rendered as adv.*, against one's will

ipse, -a, -um, *intens. pron.*, himself *etc.* (*as opp. to some one else; cf.* **sui**, *reflex.*, *referring to the subject*), he *etc.* (*emph.*), he himself *etc.*: **ipsi inter se** (*reciprocal*), each other

īra, -ae, *f.*, anger

īrācundus, -a, -um [*ira*], *adj.*, of a violent temper

is, ea, id, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this (*less emph. than* **hic**), that (*unemphatic*), he, she, it: **quae pars ea** *etc.*, the part which *etc.* — **eo,** *n. abl.*, so much; **eo magis,** all the more; **eo gravius,** so much the more severely

iste, ista, istud, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that of yours, that

ita, *adv.*, so, in this way, thus, as follows: **ut . . . ita,** as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; **ita . . . ut,** in proportion as, as; **non ita,** not so very, not very

Italia, -ae, *f.*, Italy (in Cæsar's time not including the great plain at the north of the peninsula)

itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly, therefore

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so also, in the same way

iter, itineris [*eo*, go], *n.*, road, march, journey: **in itinere,** on the road; **iter facere,** march, travel; **magnis itineribus,** by forced marches

iterum, *adv.*, a second time, again: **semel atque iterum,** again and again

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, *trans.*, order, command, bid

iūdicium, -ī [*iudex*, judge], *n.*, judgment (*judicial*), trial, opinion; **iudicio,** by design; *often translated by* court

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*iudex*, judge], *trans.*, decide, judge, think, consider; declare, proclaim: **nihil gravius de civitate** (think nothing harsh about *etc.*)

iugum, -ī [*iungo*], *n.*, yoke: **sub iugum mittere** *was an insult inflicted on a conquered army.* — *Also*, ridge

iūmentum, -ī [*iugum*], *n.*, beast of burden

iūnctūra, -ae [*iungo*], *f.*, a joining, joint: **quantum iunctura distabat,** as far as the distance apart (*of two things joined*)

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *trans.*, join, unite, attach together

iūnior, *comp. of* **iuvenis**

Iūnius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, the god of light and the heavens, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans

Iūra, -ae, *m.*, a chain of mountains in Gaul, running northeast from the Rhone to the Rhine

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, swear, take an oath

iūs, iūris, *n.*, justice, right, law: **iūs iūrandum,** oath

iussū, *abl. used as adv.*, by order, by command

iūstitia, -ae [*iustus*], *f.*, justice

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just, lawful. — *Also*, complete, perfect, regular: **populi Romani iustissimum est imperium,** the Romans are best entitled to dominion

iuvencus, -ī [*iuvenis*], *m.*, young bull

iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young.—*As noun*, a young man (*not over forty-five*), a youth: **iuniores,** the younger soldiers

iuventūs, -ūtis [*iuvenis*], *f.*, the youth, the young men

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, *trans.*, help, aid, assist

iūxtā, *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.*, next, near, close by

Kal., *abbr. for* **Kalendae** *and its cases*

Kalendae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, the Calends (the first day of the Roman month)

Karthāginiēnsis, -e [*Karthago*], *adj.*, Carthaginian.—*Masc. as noun*, Carthaginian

Karthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage, a city of Phœnician colonists on the northern coast of Africa

L, *Roman numeral for* fifty

L., *abbr. for* **Lucius**

Labeō, -ōnis, *see* **Fabius**

Laberius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name.—*Esp.*, T. Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Pompey

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, exertion; trouble, hardship

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*labor*], *intrans.*, toil, exert one's self; be hard pressed, labor

labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip; edge, rim

lac, lactis, *n.*, milk

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Lacedæmonian.—*Masc. as noun*, Lacedæmonian

lacessō, -cessere, -cessīvī, -cessītus, *trans.*, attack, harass, assail, skirmish with

lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, reservoir, lake

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, *trans.*, wound.—*Fig.*, break (**fidem**)

laetitia, -ae [*laetus*], *f.*, joy, gladness

laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad

languidē, *adv.*, feebly

languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, spiritless: **languidior,** with less spirit

languor, -ōris, *m.*, weariness

lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone

laqueus, -ī, *m.*, slip noose

largior, -īrī, -ītus [*largus*, abundant], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, give lavishly; give bribes, give presents

largiter, *adv.*, lavishly: **largiter posse,** possess powerful influence

largītiō, -ōnis [*largior*], *f.*, lavish giving, bribery

lassitūdō, -inis [*lassus*, weary], *f.*, weariness, exhaustion

lātē, *adv.*, widely: **latius,** too far; **longe lateque,** far and wide

lateō, latēre, latuī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, be concealed, pass unnoticed

lātitūdō, -inis [*latus*, broad], *f.*, breadth, width

Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii

latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber

latrōcinium, -ī [*latro*], *n.*, robbery, brigandage

latus, lateris, *n.*, side (*of the body*). — *Also, generally*, side, flank, end (*of a hill*)

lātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **fero**

lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide, extensive

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*laus*], *trans.*, praise, commend

laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, credit, glory

lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvī (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), *trans.*, wash. — *In pass. used reflexively*, bathe

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, loosen, open out, extend

lectīca, -ae, *f.*, portable chair, sedan, litter

lēgātiō, -ōnis [*lēgo*, dispatch], *f.*, embassy

lēgātus, -ī [*lēgo*, dispatch], *m.*, ambassador, envoy. — *Also*, lieutenant, legatus

legiō, -ōnis [*lego*, gather], *f.*, legion

legiōnārius, -a, -um [*legio*], *adj.*, of a legion, legionary

Lemannus, -ī, *m.* (*with* **lacus** *either expressed or implied*), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman

Lemovīcēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe in central Gaul west of the Arverni

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, gentle, smooth

lēnitās, -ātis [*lenis*], *f.*, gentleness

lēniter, *adv.*, gently

Lepontiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Alps

Leucī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of eastern Gaul

levis, -e, *adj.*, light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle

levitās, -ātis [*levis*], *f.*, lightness, fickleness

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, lighten; relieve

lēx, lēgis, *f.*, statute, law

Lexoviī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northwestern Gaul

libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly, with pleasure

liber, -brī, *m.*, book

līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free, unrestricted

līberālitās, -ātis [*liberalis*, generous], *f.*, generosity, liberality

līberāliter, *adv.*, generously, kindly (**respondit**): **oratione prosecutus** (addressing in generous language)

līberē, *adv.*, freely, boldly, without restraint

līberī, -ōrum [*līber*, free], *m. plur.*, children

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*līber*], free, set free, relieve (*from some bond*): **liberare se,** secure one's freedom

lībertās, -ātis [*līber*], *f.*, liberty, freedom, independence

liceor, licērī, licitus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, bid (*at an auction*)

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *intrans.*, *impers.*, be allowed: **id sibi** *etc.* (that they be allowed); **per te licet,** you allow, you do

not hinder; **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission

Liger, -eris, *m.*, a river of western Gaul, now the Loire

Ligurēs, -um, *m.*, Ligurians, a people of northwestern Italy

līnea, -ae, *f.*, line

Lingonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of eastern Gaul

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue. *Hence*, language

lingula, -ae [*lingua*], *f.*, tongue of land

linter, -tris, *f.*, skiff, boat

līnum, -ī, *n.*, flax

Liscus, -ī, *m.*, chief magistrate of the Hædui in the year 58 B.C.

Litaviccus, -ī, *m.*, a Hæduan chief

littera, -ae, *f.*, letter (*of the alphabet*). — *Plur.*, writing, alphabet, letter (*written message*), records, literature

lītus, -oris, *n.*, shore, beach

locus, -ī, *m.* (*sing.*), *n.* (*generally plur.*), place, spot, region (*esp. in plur.*), point, ground (*in military language*); rank; position, character; opportunity; situation, condition: **obsidum loco,** as hostages

locūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **loquor**

longē, *adv.*, far, absent, distant: **non longius mille (triduo)** (not more than); **longe nobilissimus** (far, altogether)

longinquus, -a, -um [*longus*], *adj.*, long (*of time and space*), distant, long-continued

longitūdō, -inis [*longus*], *f.*, length

longurius, -ī, *m.*, long pole

longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long (*of space and time*), tedious: **in longiorem diem,** to a more distant day

Longus, -ī, *m.*, Ti. Sempronius Longus, consul defeated by Hannibal at the Trebia

loquor, loquī, locūtus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, speak, talk, converse

lōrīca, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail. — *Also*, breastwork, rampart

Lucānī, -ōrum, *m.*, Lucanians, a people of southern Italy

Lūcānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

Lucterius, -ī, *m.*, a Gallic name

Lugotorix, -īgis, *m.*, a British prince

lūmen, -inis, *n.*, light

lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon. *Also personified*, **Luna,** the Moon

lūx, lūcis [*cf.* **luceo,** shine], *f.*, light, daylight: **prima luce, orta luce,** *or* **luce,** at daybreak

lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, luxury, riotous living

M, *Roman numeral for* thousand

M., *abbr. for* **Mārcus**

māceria, -ae, *f.*, wall of soft clay, wall

māchinātiō, -ōnis [*machina,* machine], *f.*, contrivance, engine, derrick

Magetobriga, -ae, *f.*, a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls

magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, magic

magis, *adv.*, more, rather: **eo magis**, so much the more, all the more. —**maxime**, *superl.*

magister, -trī, *m.*, master, commander

magistrātus, -ūs [*magister*], *m.*, magistracy (*office of a magistrate*).—*Concretely*, magistrate

magnificus, -a, -um [*magnus-facio*], *adj.*, splendid, grand, magnificent

magnitūdō, -inis [*magnus*], *f.*, greatness, size, stature, force (**venti**), severity (**supplici**)

magnopere, *see* **opus**

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree*), large, extensive, important, serious (**motus**), heavy (**portoria**), high (**aestus**), loud (**vox**): **magni habere**, to value highly, make much account of; **magni interest**, it is of great importance. — **maior**, *comp. in usual sense.* — *Also*, **maior** (*with or without* **natu**), elder, older. —*In plur. as noun*, elders, ancestors. — **maximus**, *superl.*, largest, very large, greatest, very great, *etc.*: **maximis itineribus**, by forced marches

Māgō, -ōnis, *m.*, brother of Hannibal

maiestās, -ātis [*maior*], *f.*, majesty, dignity

maior, *see* **magnus**

malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm

male, *adv.*, badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — **peius**, *comp.* — **pessime**, *superl.*

maleficium, -ī [*male-facio*], *n.*, harm, mischief

mālō, mālle, māluī, *no p.p.* [*mage* (*for magis*), *volo*], *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, wish more, wish rather, prefer

malum, -ī [*malus*], *n.*, evil, mischief, misfortune

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad. — **peior**, *comp.* — **pessimus**, *superl.*

mālus, -ī, *m.*, mast, beam (*upright*)

mandātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of mando*], *n.*, command, instructions; message

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, intrust, instruct, commit: **se fugae** (take to)

Mandubiī, *m. plur.*, a tribe north of the Hædui

Mandubracius, -ī, *m.*, a Briton

māne, *adv.*, in the morning

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *intrans.*, stay, remain, stay at home. —*Fig.*, continue, stand by (**in eo quod**)

manipulus, -ī [*manus*], *m.*, handful; maniple (*two centuries, a third of a cohort*)

Mānlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. —*Esp.*, C. Manlius Volso, consul in 189 B.C.

mānsī, *see* **maneō**

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, *trans.*, tame. —*Pass.*, **mānsuēfīō**, be tamed

mānsuētūdō, -inis [*mansuetus*, tame], *f.*, gentle disposition, kindness

manus, -ūs, *f.*, the hand: **in manibus nostris**, within hand's reach.

fighting us hand to hand; **manum conserere**, engage battle.—*Also*, company, band, troop

Mārcellus, -ī, *m.*, M. Claudius Marcellus, (1) a famous Roman general; (2) a consul in 183 B.C.

Marcomannī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

mare, -is, *n.*, the sea: **nostrum** (*i.e.* the Mediterranean); **mare Oceanum,** the ocean

maritimus, -a, -um [*mare*], *adj.*, of the sea, maritime, naval, on the sea: **aestus** (in the sea); **ora** (the seashore)

Marius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.*, C. Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.) and freed Rome from the fear of a northern invasion

Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards worshiped as the god of war.—*See* **aequus**

mās, maris, *adj.*, male.—*Noun*, a male

matara, -ae, *f.*, javelin (*used by the Gauls*)

māter, -tris, *f.*, mother, matron: **mater familias** (*old gen. of* **familia**), matron

māteria, -ae, *f.*, wood, timber

mātrimōnium, -ī [*mater*], *n.*, marriage, matrimony: **in matrimonium ducere,** marry

Matrona, -ae, *m.*, a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, now the Marne

mātūrē, *adv.*, early, speedily

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*maturus*], *trans. and intrans.*, hasten, make haste

mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, early.—*Also*, ripe, mature

maximē, *adv.*, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: **ea maxime ratione,** in that way more than any other; **maxime confidebat,** had the greatest confidence

maximus, *see* **magnus**

Maximus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

Mēdēa, -ae, *f.*, daughter of Æetes king of Colchis

medicīna, -ae, *f.*, art of healing, medicine

mediocris, -cre [*medius*], *adj.*, middling, moderate: **spatium** (a little, no great); **non mediocris,** no little, no small degree of

mediocriter, *adv.*, moderately: **non mediocriter,** in no small degree

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of northeastern Gaul

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [*medius-terra*], *adj.*, inland

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, the middle of (*as noun in English*), mid-: **in colle medio** (half way up); **locus medius**

utriusque (half way between); **de media nocte,** about midnight

Meldī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul between the Seine and the Marne

melior, *comp. of* **bonus**

membrum, -ī, *n.*, limb, part of the body

meminī, -isse, *defective, trans. and intrans.*, remember

memor, -oris, *adj.*, mindful

memoria, -ae [*memor*], *f.*, memory, recollection: **memoria tenere,** remember; **nostrā memoriā,** within our memory, in our own time

Menapiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine

mēns, mentis, *f.*, intellect, mind, state of mind, feeling: **mentes animosque,** minds and hearts

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month

mēnsūra, -ae [*metior*], *f.*, measure: **ex aqua mensurae,** measures by the water clock

mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention

mercātor, -ōris [*mercor*, trade], *m.*, trader

mercātūra, -ae [*mercor*, trade], *f.*, traffic, trade

mercēs, -ēdis [*merx*, merchandise], *f.*, hire, pay, wages

Mercurius, -ī, *m.*, Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc.

mereor, -ērī, -itus (*also* **mereo,** *active*), *dep., trans. and intrans.*, win, deserve, gain.—*Also* (*from earning pay*), serve: **mereri de,** serve the interests of, render service to

merīdiānus, -a, -um [*meridies*], *adj.*, of midday

merīdiēs, -ēī [*medius-dies*], *m.*, midday, noon.—*Also*, the south

meritum, -ī [*n. p.p. of mereor*], *n.*, merit, service, kindness: **quo minus merito,** the less by the fault

meritus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* **mereor**], *adj.*, deserved, fit, proper

Messāla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, *dep., trans.*, measure out, deal out, distribute

Mētius, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul, in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

metō, metere, messuī, messus, *trans.*, cut, reap, gather

metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear

meus, -a, -um, *possessive pronominal adj.*, my, mine

mihi, *see* **ego**

mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, legionary soldier (heavy infantry, *as opposed to other arms of the service*)

mīlitāris, -e [*miles*], *adj.*, of the soldiers, military: **res militaris,** warfare

mīlitia, -ae [*miles*], *f.*, military service

mīlle, *indecl. adj.* (*rarely noun in sing.*), *with plur.* **mīlia, -ium,** *neuter noun*, thousand: **mille passus** *or* **mille passuum** (*cf.* G. § 20. note), thousand paces, mile

Minerva, -ae, *f.*, Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts

minimē, *adv.*, least, very little, not at all

minimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *superl. of* **parvus,** smallest, least.—*Neut. as noun and adv.*, the least, least, very little

minor, -us, *adj.*, *comp. of* **parvus,** smaller, less: **dimidio minor,** half as large.—*Neut. as noun and adv.*, less, not much, not so: **quo minus,** that . . . not

Minucius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.:* 1. M. Minucius Rufus, master of horse under Fabius, routed by Hannibal.—2. Q. Minucius, consul 193 B.C.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*minus*], *trans. and intrans.*, lessen, weaken, diminish: **aestus** (ebb)

mīrāculum, -ī, *n.*, wonder, miracle

mīror, -ārī, -ātus [*mirus*], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, wonder, wonder at.—**mīrātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. in pres. sense*, surprised

mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, surprising, marvelous, wonderful

miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor

misericordia, -ae [*misericors*, merciful], *f.*, mercy, pity, clemency

miseror, -ārī, -ātus [*miser*], *dep.*, *trans.*, bewail, complain of

missus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **mitto**

missus, -ūs, *m.*, a sending: **missu Caesaris,** under Cæsar's orders

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *trans.*, send, dispatch, discharge, shoot: **sub iugum mittere,** send under the yoke; **tragulam** (throw)

mōbilis, -e [*moveo*], *adj.*, easily moved, movable, fickle, hasty

mōbilitās, -ātis [*mobilis*], *f.*, mobility, inconstancy, fickleness

mōbiliter, *adv.*, easily, readily

moderor, -ārī, -ātus [*modus*], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, control, regulate, restrain

modo, *adv.*, only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: **non modo,** not only

modus, -ī, *m.*, measure, quantity. *Hence*, manner, fashion, style, method: **quem ad modum,** how, just as, as

moenia, -ium [*munio*], *n. plur.*, fortifications, walls of a city

mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass; dike, dam

molestē, *adv.*, heavily, severely: **moleste ferre,** take it ill, be vexed at

molestia, -ae, *f.*, annoyance, vexation

mōlīmentum, -ī [*molior*, strive], *n.*, trouble, difficulty, exertion

molitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **molo**

mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft; weak, feeble

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *trans.*, grind

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *trans.*, remind, warn, advise, urge, instruct

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain, height

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, point out, make known, show

mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, wonder, monster

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, grounds of delay

morātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **moror**

morbus, -ī, *m.*, sickness, disease

mōribus, *see* **mōs**

Morinī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ

morior, morī, mortuus [*mors*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, die

moror, -ārī, -ātus [*mora*], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, retard, check, delay

mors, mortis, *f.*, death: **ipse sibi mortem conscīvit**, he committed suicide

mortuus, -a, -um, dead, *p.p. of* **morior**

mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, usage. — *Plur.*, customs, habits, character

Mosa, -ae, *m.*, a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse

mōtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **moveo**

mōtus, -ūs [*moveo*], *m.*, movement, disturbance, uprising: **celer atque instabilis** (changes, *of the passage of events in maritime warfare*)

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *trans.*, set in motion, move, remove: **castra** (move *from a place to another*; *also, absolutely*, break camp)

mox, *adv.*, soon

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman

multitūdō, -inis [*multus*], *f.*, great number; the multitude, the common people

multō, *see* **multus**

multum, *see* **multus**

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, many: **multo die**, late in the day; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night. —**multum**, *neut. as noun and adv.*, much. —*Also*, *plur.*, **multa**, many things, much, a great deal. —*Abl.*, **multō**, much, far: **multo facilius**. —*Comp.*, **plūs, plūris**, *n. noun and adv.: plur., all genders, as adj.*, more, much, very; *as noun*, several, many. — *Superl.*, **plūrimus, -a, -um**, most, very many, very much: **quam plurimi**, as many as possible; **plurimum posse**, have most power, be very strong *or* influential; **plurimum valere**, be strongest, have very great weight

mundus, -ī, *m.*, universe, world

mūnīmentum, -ī [*munio*], *n.*, a fortification. — *Plur.*, a defense

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *trans. and intrans.*, fortify; defend

mūnītiō, -ōnis [*munio*], *f.*, a fortification, works, defenses

mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty: **munus militiae**, military service. —*Also*, gift, present

mūrālis, -e [*murus*], *adj.*, of a wall, wall-: **pila** (*heavy javelins for service in siege operations*)

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, change

Mȳsia, -ae, *f.*, a country of Asia Minor

nactus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **nanciscor**

nam, *conj.*, for

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, a Helvetian ambassador to Cæsar

Namnetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of western Gaul

namque, *conj.*, for (*a little more emphatic than* **nam**)

nancīscor, -cīscī, nactus, *dep., trans.,* find, get, obtain

Nantuātēs, -um, *m. plur.,* a tribe of Gaul, near the Lake of Geneva

Narbō, -ōnis, *m.,* a city of the Roman province of Gaul, now Narbonne

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, *dep., intrans.,* be born, arise, spring up, be raised (*of beasts*). — **nātus, -a, -um,** *p.p.,* sprung, born

Nasua, -ae, *m.,* a leader of the Suebi

nātālis, -e [*natus*], *adj.,* of birth: **dies natalis,** birthday

nātiō, -ōnis [*cf.* **nascor**], *f.,* race, tribe, clan

nātīvus, -a, -um [*cf.* **nascor**], *adj.,* native, natural

nātō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.,* swim, float

nātūra, -ae [*cf.* **nascor**], *f.,* nature, character

nātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **nascor**

nātus, -ūs [*cf.* **nascor**], *m.,* birth: **maiores natu,** elders

naufragium, -ī, *n.,* shipwreck

nauta, -ae, *m.,* sailor, boatman

nauticus, -a, -um [*nauta*], *adj.,* of a sailor (*or* sailors), naval

nāvālis, -e [*navis*], *adj.,* of ships, naval

nāvicula, -ae [*navis*], *f.,* small vessel, skiff

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [*navigo*], *f.,* voyage, traveling by sea

nāvigium, -ī [*navis*], *n.,* vessel (*a general term*), boat

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*navis*], *intrans.,* sail

nāvis, -is, *f.,* ship, vessel, boat: **oneraria** (transport); **longa** (war galley)

nāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* do zealously: **operam** (do one's best)

-ne (*enclitic*), *adv. and conj.,* not? (*as a question, cf.* **nonne**), whether, did (*as a question in English*), do, *etc.* — *See also* **necne**

nē, *conj.,* lest, that . . . not, not to (*do anything*), from (*doing anything*), in order that . . . not, for fear that. — *After verbs of fearing,* that. — *Also adv.,* **ne . . . quidem,** not even

nec, *see* **neque**

necessārius, -a, -um [*necesse*], *adj.,* necessary: **tempus** (critical). — *Also, as noun,* kinsman, close friend. — *Abl. as adv.,* **necessāriō,** necessarily, unavoidably

necesse, *indecl. adj.,* necessary, inevitable. — *With* **est,** one must

necessitās, -ātis [*necesse*], *f.,* necessity, constraint, compulsion

necessitūdō, -inis [*necesse*], *f.,* intimacy, close relations

necne [*nec-ne*], *conj.,* or not (*in double questions*)

necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.,* put to death, kill, murder

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*nec-lego,* gather], *trans.,* disregard, neglect

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.,* say no, say . . . not, refuse

negōtior, -ārī, -ātus [*negotium*], *dep., intrans.,* do business

negōtium, -ī [*nec-otium*, ease], *n.*, business, occupation, undertaking: **quid negoti,** what business? **dare negotium alicui,** employ one, give in charge to. — *Less definitely,* matter, thing. — *Also,* difficulty, trouble

Nemetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō [*ne-homo*], *c.*, no one, nobody: **non nemo,** many a one

nēquāquam, *adv.*, in no way, by no means

neque (nec), *conj.*, and not, and yet . . . not, nor: **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor; **neque enim,** for . . . not

nēquīquam, *adv.*, to no purpose, in vain

Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Nervii, Nervian

Nervius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Nervian. — *Masc. plur.*, the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew, muscle. — *Fig., in plur.*, strength, vigor

nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī, not know: **nescio quis,** I know not who

neu, *see* **neve**

neuter, -tra, -trum [*ne-uter*], *adj. and pron.*, neither. — *Plur.*, neither party, neither side

nēve (neu), *conj.*, and not, nor

nex, necis, *f.*, violent death, execution

nihil, *see* **nihilum**

nihilum, -ī [*ne-hilum*, trifle] (*also indecl.*, **nihil**), *n.*, nothing: **nihil reliqui,** nothing left; **nihil respondere,** make no answer. — **nihilō,** *abl. as adv.*, none, no; **nihilo minus,** none the less; **nihilo setius,** nevertheless. — **nihil,** *acc. as adv.*, not at all: **non nihil,** somewhat

nisi, *conj.*, unless, except

Nitiobrogēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

nītor, nītī, nīxus *or* **nīsus,** *dep., intrans.*, struggle, strive: **niti insidiis** (rely upon)

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow

nōbilis, -e [*cf. nosco*], *adj.*, famous, noble, well-born. — *Plur. as noun,* the nobles

nōbilitās, -ātis [*nobilis*], *f.*, the nobility, the nobles

nocēns, *see* **noceo**

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, *no p.p., intrans.*, injure, harm, harass. — **nocēns, -entis,** *pres. p. as adj.*, guilty

noctū, *adv.*, by night

nocturnus, -a, -um [*nox*], *adj.*, nightly, nocturnal, by night

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *no p.p.* [*ne-volo*], *irr., intrans.*, be unwilling, wish not to: **noli, nolite,** do not (*with infin.*)

nōmen, -inis [*cf. nosco*], *n.*, name; account: **nomine dotis** (on account of, as); **suo nomine,** on his own account; **nomine obsidum,** under pretense of hostages

nōminātim [*nomen*], *adv.*, by name (*individually*)

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, name, mention, call by name

nōn, *adv.*, not: **non est dubium,** there is no doubt; **nōn nihil,** something, somewhat; **nōn nūllus,** some; **nōn numquam,** sometimes

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, ninety

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet

nōnne [*non-ne*], *interrog. adv.*, *suggesting an affirmative answer*, not?

nōnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, ninth

Nōrēia, -ae, *f.*, a city of the Norici

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Norici, Norican

nōs, *see* **ego**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, *trans.*, learn, become acquainted with.—*In perf. tenses*, know

noster, -tra, -trum, *possessive pronominal adj.*, our, ours.—*In plur.*, our men (*the Romans*), our forces

nōtitia, -ae [*notus*], *f.*, acquaintance with, knowledge

nōtus, *p.p. of* **nosco**

novem, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine

Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire.—2. A town of the Suessiones

novitās, -ātis [*novus*], *f.*, novelty, strangeness

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, fresh; strange: **res novae,** a change of government, revolution.—**novissimus, -a, -um,** *superl.*, latest, last: **agmen** (the rear)

nox, noctis, *f.*, night: **prima nocte,** in the early part of the night; **multa nocte,** late at night

noxia, -ae [*cf.* *noceo*], *f.*, crime, guilt

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus, *intrans.*, marry (*of the woman*)

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*nudus*], *trans.*, lay bare, expose, strip

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, bare, unprotected, exposed

nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, not any, no.—*As noun*, no one.—**nōn nūllus,** some; *plur. as noun*, some, some persons

num, *interrog. adv.*, *suggesting a neg. answer; no corresponding word in English*

nūmen, -inis, *n.*, will, power; divinity

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number: **in hostium numero habuit** (in the place of, as, *etc.*, *euphemism for* slaughtered)

Numida, -ae, *m.*, Numidian, of northern Africa. The Numidians were famous cavalrymen under Hannibal; they were used in the Roman army also

numquam, *adv.*, never

nunc, *adv.*, now

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*nuntius*], *trans.*, bring word, report

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger. *Hence*, news: **nuntium mittere,** send word; **per eorum nuntios** (agents)

nūper, *adv.*, lately, recently, not long ago

nūptum, *see* **nūbō**

nūtus, -ūs [*nuo*, nod], *m.*, a nod: **ad nutum,** at one's command

nympha, -ae, *f.*, nymph

ob, *prep. with acc.*, against; on account of, for: **ob eam rem**, for this reason, on this account.—*In composition*, towards, to, against, over

obaerātus, -a, -um [*ob-aes*], *adj.*, bound in debt.—*As noun*, debtor, servant for debt

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, draw over, overcast; lead towards, lead against: **fossam** (throw out, *in a military sense*, carry along)

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*ob-iacio*], *trans.*, throw against, throw in the way, present, set up, expose. —**obiectus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, lying opposite, lying in the way

obiectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **obicio**

obitus, -ūs [*obeo*], *m.*, destruction, annihilation, death

oblātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **offero**

oblinō, -linere, -lēvī, -litus, *trans.*, smear, daub

oblīquē, *adv.*, obliquely, slanting

oblīvīscor, -līvīscī, -lītus, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, forget

obscūrō, -scūrāre, -scūrāvī, -scūrātus, *trans.*, darken, cover, hide

obscūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ob-sacrum*, sacred thing], *trans.*, entreat, beg

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, pay attention to: **iudicium** (follow, comply with); **diem natalem** (keep, celebrate)

obses, -idis [*cf. obsideo*], *c.*, hostage

obsessus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **obsideo**

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [*ob-sedeo*, sit], *trans.*, blockade, beset, guard

obsidiō, -ōnis [*cf. obsideo*], *f.*, siege, blockade: **obsidione liberare** (from besetting enemies)

obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, seal up, seal

obstrictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **obstringo**

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, *trans.*, bind: **habere obstrictas** (under obligation)

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, comply with, submit to

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, implore

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*ob-teneo*], *trans.*, retain, maintain, occupy, possess; gain, acquire, obtain

obtrectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, detraction, disparagement

obtulī, *perf. of* **offero**

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, meet

obviam, *adv.*, in the way of, to meet

occāsiō, -ōnis [*ob-cado*], *f.*, opportunity

occāsus, -ūs [*ob-cado*], *m.*, a falling, a setting (*of the sun*): **solis** (the sunset, the west)

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*ob-caedo*], *trans.*, kill, massacre: **occisi**, the slain

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*occultus*], *trans.*, conceal, hide

occultus, -a, -um [*p.p. of occulo*, hide], *adj.*, concealed: **in occulto**, in secret

occupātiō, -ōnis [*occupo*], *f.*, occupation, business affairs: **occupationes tantularum rerum,** engagement in such trifling matters

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, seize, take possession of: **regna** (usurp).—**occupātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, engaged, employed, busy

occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus [*ob-curro*, run], *intrans.*, meet, come on, find: **eo** (run, *to meet an enemy*)

Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean

Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, a town in Cisalpine Gaul

octāvus, -a, -um [*octo*], *num. adj.*, eighth

octingentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, *plur.*, eight hundred

octō, *indecl. num. adj.*, eight

Octodūrus, -ī, *m.*, a town of the Veragri

octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty

oculus, -ī, *m.*, the eye

ōdī, ōdisse, *defective*, *trans.*, hate, detest

odium, -ī [*cf. odi*], *n.*, hatred

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [*ob-fendo*, strike], *trans. and intrans.*, dash against, hurt: **animum** (hurt the feelings)

offēnsiō, -ōnis [*offendo*], *f.*, offense: **sine offensione animi,** without wounding one's feelings

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus [*ob-fero*], *irr.*, *trans.*, throw in one's way, offer: **se morti** (expose one's self to); **quos sibi oblatos** (placed in his power)

officium, -ī, *n.*, service, performance of a duty; duty, allegiance, obligation: **discedere ab officio,** fail in one's duty

ōlim, *adv.*, once on a time, once

omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [*ob-mitto*], *trans.*, let go by, disregard: **consilium** (leave untried, neglect)

omnīnō [*omnis*], *adv.*, altogether, entirely, in general, on the whole, only, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (*with negatives*)

omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, the whole of.—*In sing.*, every: **omni tempore,** on all occasions, always.—*In plur.*, *a short expression for* all others

onerārius, -a, -um [*onus*], *adj.*, for burdens: **naves** (transports)

onus, -eris, *n.*, burden, weight.—*Esp.*, **tanta onera navium,** ships of such weight

opera, -ae [*opus*], *f.*, work, pains, attention: **operam navare,** do one's best; **operam dare,** devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains

operiō, -perīre, -peruī, -pertus, *trans.*, cover

opīniō, -ōnis [*opinor*, think], *f.*, notion, expectation, idea, reputation: **celerius omni opinione,** quicker than any one would suppose; **opinione praecipere,** anticipate

oportet, -ēre, -uit, *intrans.*, *impers.*, it ought, it is best: **poenam sequi** (the punishment was to follow); **frumentum metiri** (he ought *etc.*)

oppidānus, -a, -um [*oppidum*], *adj.*, of a town.—*Plur. as noun*, townspeople

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, stronghold, town

oppleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [*ob-pleo*], *trans.*, fill up, fill

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*ob-pono*], *trans.*, oppose

opportūnē, *adv.*, opportunely

opportūnitās, -ātis [*opportunus*], *f.*, timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable chance

opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, opportune, advantageous, lucky

oppositus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* **oppono**], *adj.*, opposed, opposite

oppressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **opprimo**

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [*ob-premo*], *trans.*, overwhelm, crush, overpower, surprise

oppugnātiō, -ōnis [*oppugno*], *f.*, siege, attack

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*ob-pugno*], *trans.*, attack, lay siege to

†**ops, opis** (*sing. in gen., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire*), *f.*, help, aid. — *Plur.*, resources, means, strength, wealth

optātus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* **opto**, wish], *adj.*, desired

optimē, *superl. of* **bene**

optimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **bonus**

opus, *n.*, *indecl.*, need, necessity: **si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset,** if he needed anything of Cæsar; **si quid opus facto,** if anything needs to be done

opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor.—*In a military sense*, a work, works, fortifications.—*In abl.*, **magno opere,** very much, very, greatly; **quanto opere,** how much; **tanto opere,** so much, so, so earnestly; *often as one word*, **magnopere, tantopere**

ōra, -ae, *f.*, shore, coast

ōrāculum, -ī [*oro*], *n.*, oracle

ōrātiō, -ōnis [*oro*], *f.*, speech, address, discourse, argument

ōrātor, -ōris [*oro*], *m.*, speaker, ambassador, envoy

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle: **orbis terrarum,** the circle of lands, the whole world

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, series, row, tier, rank (*of soldiers*), grade (*of centurions, as commanding special* **ordines** *of soldiers, also the* centurions *themselves*), arrangement, order

Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, a nobleman of the Helvetii

orior, orīrī, ortus, *dep., intrans.*, arise, spring up.—*Fig.*, begin, start, arise, have its source.—**oriēns, -entis,** *pres. p. as adj.*, rising: **sol** (sunrise, the east)

ōrnāmentum, -ī [*orno*], *n.*, an adornment; an honor

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, adorn, equip, furnish.—*Fig.*, honor.—**ōrnātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, furnished, well-equipped, honored

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, speak; pray, entreat

Orpheus, -ī, *m.*, a Thracian bard, whose lyre could charm beasts and move rocks and trees

ortus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* orior
ōs, ōris, *n.*, the mouth, the face
Osismī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [*obs-(= ob-)tendo*], *trans.*, present, show, point out, make known, state, declare
ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, display, exhibit
ōtium, -ī, *n.*, repose, inactivity, quiet
ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg

P., *abbr. for* **Publius**
pābulātiō, -ōnis [*pabulor*], *f.*, a foraging, getting fodder
pābulum, -ī [*cf.* *pasco*, feed], *n.*, fodder
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*pax*], *trans.*, pacify, subdue.—**pācātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, peaceable, quiet
Padus, -ī, *m.*, the Po, the principal river of Italy
paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *trans.*, *impers.*, it repents (*one*), one repents, one regrets
pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton
palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly: **palam facere,** make known
palma, -ae, *f.*, the palm (*of the hand*); palm tree
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh
Pamphȳlius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pamphylian, name of the Mediterranean sea near Pamphylia, a region of southwestern Asia Minor
pandō, pandere, pandī, passus *or* **pānsus,** *trans.*, spread out: **passis manibus,** with outstretched hands; **passis capillis,** with disheveled hair
pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, alike, like
parātus, *see* **paro**
parcē [*parco*], *adv.*, sparingly, frugally
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, *intrans.*, spare.—*Esp.*, save alive: **parcendo,** by economy, by frugality
parēns, -entis [*pario*, bear], *c.*, parent
pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, appear; obey, submit to
pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *trans.*, bring forth; produce, obtain
Parīsiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the district where Paris is now
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, procure, provide, prepare, arrange. —**parātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, ready, prepared
pars, partis, *f.*, portion, part, share. —*Often of position or direction merely*, side, direction, region: **una ex parte,** on one side; **ex utraque parte,** on both sides.—*Fig.*, **qua ex parte,** in which respect; **omnibus partibus,** in all respects.—*Esp.*, **tres partes,** three quarters (*three parts out of four*); **ex parte,** in part.—**partim,** *old acc. as adv.*, in part, partly, some . . . others
partim, *see* **pars**
partior, -īrī, -ītus, *dep.*, *trans.*, divide
partus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pario**

parum, *adv.*, not much, not sufficiently: **parum diligenter**, too carelessly

parvulus, -a, -um [*parvus*], *adj.*, small, slight, insignificant

parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, slight, little

passim, *adv.*, in all directions, all about

passus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pando**; *also p.p. of* **patior**

passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace (*the distance from the point where the heel leaves the ground to the point where the same heel again touches the ground; really a double step, about five Roman feet*): **mille passūs** *or* **mille passuum**, *a Roman* mile, *five thousand feet*

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [*pateo-facio*], *trans.*, lay open, open, open up

patefīō, -fierī, *pass. of* **patefacio**

pateō, -ēre, -uī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, be extended, lie open, spread, extend.—**patēns, -entis**, *pres. p. as adj.*, open, exposed

pater, -tris, *m.*, father.—*Plur.*, ancestors

paternus, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, paternal, of a father

patior, patī, passus, *dep.*, *trans.*, suffer, endure, allow, permit

patria, -ae [*pater*], *f.*, native land, country

patrius, -a, -um [*pater*], *adj.*, ancestral, of one's fathers

patruus, -ī [*pater*], *m.*, uncle (*on the father's side*)

paucitās, -ātis [*paucus*], *f.*, small number

paucus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *almost always in plur.*, few, some few: **paucis (pauca) respondit** (in a few words, briefly)

paulātim, *adv.*, little by little, a little at a time, gradually

paulisper, *adv.*, a little while

paulō [*abl. of* **paulus**, little], *adv.*, a little, slightly

paululum [*paulum*], *adv.*, a very little

paulum, -ī [*neut. of* **paulus**, little], a little.—*As adv.*, a little, a short distance, somewhat

Paulus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Aemilius**

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, favor

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, go wrong, commit a fault

pecūnia, -ae [*pecus*], *f.*, money, wealth

pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle (*esp. sheep and goats*): **pecore vivere** (flesh *of cattle*).—*Plur.*, cattle, flocks and herds

pedālis, -e [*pēs*], *adj.*, a foot thick

pedes, -itis [*pes*], *m.*, footman, foot soldier.—*Collectively*, the infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre [*pedes*], *adj.*, of infantry, of persons on foot: **copiae** (the foot, the infantry)

peditātus, -ūs [*pedes*], *m.*, foot, infantry

Pedius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name—*Esp.*, Q. Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul

peior, *see* **malus**

peius, *see* **male**

Peliās, -ae, *m.*, a mythical king of Thessaly, uncle of Jason

pellis, -is, *f.*, hide, skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*): **sub pellibus,** in tents, *i. e.* in the field

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *trans.*, beat, drive, defeat, repulse

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *trans.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out. — *Also*, pay (*a penalty*), suffer (*punishment*)

penitus, *adv.*, far within: **penitus ad extremos fines** (clear to, all the way to)

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, along, over, among, by means of. — *In composition, as adv.*, very, exceedingly, completely

perāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **perago**

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*per-capio*], *trans.*, acquire, learn, feel, hear

percontātiō, -ōnis [*percontor,* inquire], *f.*, inquiry

percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursus, *trans. and intrans.*, run along

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [*per-quatio,* shake], *trans.*, hit, strike, run through

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, learn thoroughly, get by heart

perditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **perdo**

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus, *trans.*, destroy, ruin. — **perditus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, ruined, desperate, abandoned

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead through, lead along, conduct, bring over, make (**fossam**). — *Fig.*, prolong, win over, bring

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, perish, be killed

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, ride through (*or* around)

perexiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very small

perfacilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, carry through (*or* over): **opinionem** (spread); **consilium** (carry over); **famam** (bring). — *Also*, bear through (*to the end*), endure, suffer, submit to

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*per-facio*], *trans.*, accomplish, complete, finish; bring about

perfidia, -ae [*perfidus,* treacherous], *f.*, treachery, faithlessness

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [*per-frango*], *trans.*, break through

perfuga, -ae [*cf. perfugio*], *m.*, fugitive, deserter

perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, run away, escape to, desert

perfugium, -ī [*perfugio*], *n.*, place of refuge, refuge

perfungor, -fungī, -fūnctus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, fulfill, perform (*abl.*)

Pergamēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pergamum (a city of northwestern Asia Minor). — *Masc. as noun*, Pergamene

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus [*per-rego*], *intrans.*, keep on, advance

perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus [*periculum*], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, try, make tests to ascertain, be put in peril

perīculōsus, -a, -um [*periculum*], *adj.*, dangerous

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, test, trial. *Hence*, peril, danger, risk

perītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skilled, skillful

perlātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **perfero**

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus [*per-lego*, read], read through, peruse

permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *intrans.*, remain (*to the end*), continue, hold out, persist

permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, grant, allow, give up, intrust

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, influence, affect. — **permōtus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, much affected, much influenced, overcome

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsī, -mulsus, *trans.*, soothe, pacify

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.*, destruction, ruin

perpaucus, -a, -um, *adj., always in the plur.*, very few, a very few

perpendiculum, -ī, *n.*, plumb line: **ad perpendiculum,** perpendicularly

perpetior, -petī, -pessus [*per-patior*], *dep.*, *trans.*, bear steadfastly, suffer, endure

perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: **in perpetuum,** forever, permanently. — **perpetuō,** *abl. as adv.*, forever, constantly, continually

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [*per-quaero*], *trans.*, search for, inquire about

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans. and intrans.*, break through, force one's way through

perruptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **perrumpo**

perscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *trans.*, write in full, set down, state, describe, recount

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow up, pursue, attack

persevērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, persist

persolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solūtus, *trans.*, pay, suffer (*punishment*)

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *trans.*, see through; understand, learn, observe, discover

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *trans. and intrans.*, induce, persuade. — *Pass.* (*impers.*), be persuaded (*dat. of person*), be satisfied, believe

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territus, *trans.*, terrify, alarm

pertinācia, -ae [*pertinax*, obstinate], *f.*, obstinacy, stubbornness

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, *no p.p.* [*per-teneo*], *intrans.*, tend, extend; have to do with: **eodem illo ut** *etc.* (have the same purpose)

pertulī, *see* **perfero**

perturbātiō, -ōnis [*perturbo*], *f.*, disturbance, alarm, panic

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, roam about, scatter

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, arrive at, reach, come, arrive: **ad hunc locum** (come to this point); **pars** (*of property*, come, fall)

pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot. — *Esp.*, **pedem referre,** draw back, give way

petō, petere, petīvī, petītus, *trans.*, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to. *Hence*, ask, request: **petentibus Haeduis** (at the request of *etc.*); **fugam** (take to)

Petrosidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name. — *Esp.*, L. Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Cæsar's army

phalanx, -angis, *f.*, phalanx

Phāsis, -idis (*acc.* **-im**), *m.*, a river flowing into the Black Sea

Phīneus, -ī, *m.*, a blind king of Thrace

Philippus, -ī, *m.*, Philip (V), king of Macedonia, 220–179 B.C.

Phrixus, -ī, *m.*, son of Athamas (a mythical king)

Pictonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe south of the Loire

pīlum, -ī, *n.*, javelin

pīlus, -ī, *m.*, century (*of third line of legionary soldiers*): **primi pili centurio,** primipilar centurion, the ranking centurion of the legion

pinna, -ae, *f.*, parapet, battlement

piscis, -is, *m.*, fish

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.:* 1. L. Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B.C., and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar's wife; consul with A. Gabinius in 58 B.C. — 3. M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in 61 B.C. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian

pix, picis, *f.*, pitch

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intrans.*, please. — *Esp. in third person*, it pleases (*one*), one likes, one determines

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, pacify, appease

plānē, *adv.*, flatly, clearly, entirely

plānitiēs, -ēī [*planus*], *f.*, plain

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, flat, level, even: **carinae planiores** (less deep, less rounding)

plausus, -ūs, *m.*, clapping (*of hands*), applause, approval

plēbs, -is (*or* **plēbēs, -ēī**), *f.*, the common people

plēnē, *adv.*, fully, entirely, completely

plēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, full

plērusque, -aque, -umque, *adj.*, *only in plur.*, most of, very many. — **plērumque,** *acc. sing. as adv.*, generally, usually, for the most part, very often

plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead

plūrimus, *see* **multus**

plūs, *see* **multus**

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty; punishment

Poenus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Carthaginian. — *Masc. as noun*, Carthaginian

pollex, -icis, *m.*, the thumb

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, *dep.*, *trans.*, offer, promise: **liberaliter** (make liberal offers)

pollicitātiō, -ōnis [*polliceor*], *f.*, offer, promise

pollicitus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **polliceor**

Polybius, -ī, *m.*, a celebrated Greek historian, intimate friend of the younger Scipio, whom he accompanied on his military expeditions

Polyphēmus, -ī, *m.*, one of the Argonauts

Pompēius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile or family name.—*Esp.:* 1. Cn. Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Cæsar, consul with M. Crassus in 55 B.C. — 2. Cn. Pompeius, an interpreter of Q. Titurius Sabinus

pondus, -eris, *n.*, weight

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *trans.*, lay down, place, put: **castra** (pitch); **praesidium** (station, *but see below*).—*Fig.*, place, lay, make depend on: **in fuga praesidium** *and* **spem salutis in virtute** (find, found, seek). — **positus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, situated, lying, depending on

pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge

Pontus, -ī, *m.*, a country of northeastern Asia Minor

populātiō, -ōnis [*populor*], *f.*, a plundering, raid

populor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep.*, *trans.*, ravage, devastate

populus, -ī, *m.*, people, nation, tribe: **populus Romanus** (*the official designation of the Roman state*)

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, *trans.*, stretch forth: **porrecta loca pertinent** (stretch out in extent)

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry, bring, convey

portōrium, -ī, *n.*, duty, toll

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, haven, port

poscō, poscere, poposcī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, demand, require, claim

positus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pono**

possessiō, -ōnis [*possideo*], *f.*, possession, occupation; possessions, lands

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessus [*por-* (= *pro-*)*sedeo*, sit], *trans.*, occupy (*in a military sense*), possess, hold

possum, posse, potuī, *no p.p.*, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be able, can, *etc.*: **plurimum posse,** be most powerful, have very great influence; **largiter posse,** have great influence; **tantum multitudine posse,** be so strong in numbers; **equitatu nihil posse,** have no strength in cavalry; **quicquid possunt,** whatever power they have; **quid virtute possint,** the prowess of, how formidable they are by their valor; **fieri posse,** be possible; **ut spatium intercedere posset** (might intervene); **quam maximum potest,** the greatest he can

post, *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.*, behind, after: **post se, in** their rear

posteā, *adv.*, afterwards

posteāquam, *conj.*, after

posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the next, later: **postero die**, the next day; **in posterum**, the next day. *Plur. as noun*, posterity. — **postrēmus, -a, -um**, *superl.*, last. — **postrēmō**, *abl. as adv.*, lastly, finally

postquam, *conj.*, after

postrēmō, *see* **posterus**

postrēmus, *see* **posterus**

postrīdiē [*posterus-dies*], *adv.*, the next day: **postridie eius diei**, the next day after that

postulātum, -ī [*n. p.p. of postulo*], *n.*, demand, request, claim

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, claim, ask, request, require: **tempus anni** (make necessary)

potēns, -entis [*pres. p. of possum*], *adj.*, powerful, influential

potentātus, -ūs [*potens*], *m.*, the chief power, supremacy

potentia, -ae [*potens*], *f.*, power, authority (*not official or legal*)

potestās, -ātis [*potis*, able], *f.*, power (*official*, *cf.* **potentia**, *and civil, not military*, *cf.* **imperium**), control, ability, opportunity, chance: **sui potestatem facere**, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them

potior, potīrī, potītus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, become master of, get the control of (*abl. or gen.*)

potior, -us, -ōris, *adj.*, preferable. — **potius**, *acc. as adv.*, preferably, rather

potissimum [*potissimus*], *adv.*, in preference to all else, most of all, chiefly

potītus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **potior**

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in comparison with. — *Esp. with words implying hindrance*, for, on account of (*some obstacle*). — *In composition*, before others, very, before, at the head of

praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharpened to a point, pointed

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus [*prae-habeo*], *trans.*, offer, present, furnish

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus, *intrans.*, take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one's guard

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *trans.*, go before; excel, surpass

praeceps, -cipitis [*prae-caput*], *adj.*, headlong, in haste: **locus praeceps**, a steep incline, a precipitous place

praeceptum, -ī [*p.p. of praecipio*], *n.*, an instruction, an order

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*prae-capio*], *trans.*, take beforehand, anticipate; order, give instructions

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*praeceps*], *trans.*, throw headlong: **se** (plunge headlong)

praecipuē [*praecipuus*, special], *adv.*, especially

praeclārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, brilliant; splendid, famous

Praecōnīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run before, outstrip, anticipate

praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, prey, plunder

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, proclaim, assert, describe, boast

praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictus, *trans.*, foretell, predict

praedor, -ārī, -ātus [*praeda*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, plunder, take booty

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead before, construct in front

praefectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **praeficio.** — *As noun, see* praeficio

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, place before, esteem above, prefer, prefer to (*with* **quam**): **se alicui** (show one's self better than)

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*praefacio*], *trans.*, put before, place in command of, set over. — **praefectus, -ī,** *m. of p.p. as noun*, captain (*esp. of cavalry*), commander, officer

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send forward, send on, send ahead

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize, distinction

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, choose rather, prefer

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, prepare beforehand

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put in command, set over

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *trans.*, break off

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scripsī, -scriptus, *trans.*, order, direct, give directions

praescrīptum, -ī [*n. p.p. of praescribo*], *n.*, an order, orders

praesēns, -entis, *see* **praesum**

praesentia, -ae [*praesens*], *f.*, presence, the present moment: **in praesentia,** for the moment, at the moment

praesertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly

praesidium, -ī [*praesideo*, sit before], *n.*, a guard, garrison, a force; fortification, intrenchment; protection, safety: **in fuga praesidium ponere,** seek safety in flight; **intra praesidia,** within the lines

praestāns, -stantis [*praesto*], *adj.*, remarkable, conspicuous

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātus, *trans. and intrans.*, stand before, excel, be superior: **praestat,** it is better. — *Also, causatively*, furnish, display: **officium** (discharge, perform)

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be in front, be at the head of, be in command: **magistratui** (hold). — **praesēns, -entis,** *pres. p.*, present, immediate: **pluribus praesentibus,** in the presence of many

praeter, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, along by, past, beyond. — *Fig.*, except, beside, contrary to

praetereā, *adv.*, furthermore, besides

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr., trans. and intrans.*, go by, pass by, pass over. — **praeteritus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, past. — *Esp.*, **praeterita,** *n. plur.*, the past

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, let slip, omit, neglect

praetor, -ōris [*praeeo*, go before], *m.*, commander. — *Esp.*, prætor, *one of a class of magistrates at Rome:* **legatus pro praetore** (lieutenant in command, *acting as a prætor*)

praetōrius, -a, -um [*praetor*], *adj.*, of a prætor (*in all its senses*): **praetoria cohors,** the bodyguard *of a commander*

praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, *trans.*, burn at the end

premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *trans.*, press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus, *trans.*, seize, take, grasp

pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, cost, value

† **prex, precis** (*sing. in dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire*), *f.*, prayer, entreaty

prīdiē, *adv.*, the day before

prīmipīlus [*primus-pilus*], *m.*, the first centurion

prīmō [*abl. of primus*], *adv.*, at first

prīmum [*acc. of primus*], *adv.*, first, in the first place: **cum primum,** as soon as; **quam primum,** as soon as possible

prīmus, *see* **prior**

prīnceps, -ipis [*primus-capio*], *adj.*, first, chief, foremost: **locus** (chief, highest); **ea princeps persolvit** (was the first to). — *Often as noun*, leader, chief: **legationis** (head)

prīncipātus, -ūs [*princeps*], *m.*, foremost position, first place, leadership

prior, -us, -ōris, *adj.*, former, before: **priores,** those in front. — **prius,** *n. as adv.*, before (*see also* **priusquam**). — **prīmus, -a, -um,** *superl.*, first: **agmen** (front); **in primis,** especially. — *See* **primo** *and* **primum**

prīstinus, -a, -um [*prius*], *adj.*, old, former: **pristinus dies,** the day before

prius, *see* **prior**

priusquam, *conj.*, earlier than, before. *Often separated*, **prius . . . quam**

prīvātim [*privatus*], *adv.*, privately, as private persons

prīvātus, -a, -um [*p.p. of privo*, deprive], *adj.*, private, personal

prō (**prōd** *in some compounds*), *prep. with abl.*, in front of, before. *Hence*, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: **pro explorato,** ascertained, as certain. — *Also*, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, considering, in return for, for. — *In composition*, before, forth, away, for, down (*as falling forward*)

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intrans.*, go forward, advance: **longius** (go to a distance)

Procillus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

prōcōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, proconsul, ex-consul (*during his term of service abroad*)

procul, *adv.*, at a distance, afar, from afar

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, *no p.p.* [*pro-cumbo,* lie], *intrans.*, fall, sink down, lie down; incline, slope

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, care for, have charge of, attend to

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, *intrans.*, run forward, charge, rush out

prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus [*prod* (*see pro*), *eo*], *irr.*, *intrans.*, go forth, come forth, come out, go forward

prōditiō, -ōnis [*prodo*], *f.*, treason, treachery

prōditor, -ōris [*prodo*], *m.*, traitor, betrayer

prōditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **prodo**

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*pro-do,* put], *trans.*, give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead out, bring out, draw up (*troops*); protract, prolong

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [*proelium*], *dep.*, *intrans.*, fight (*in war*)

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle, contest, skirmish: **committere** (engage, join battle, risk a battle)

profectiō, -ōnis [*proficiscor*], *f.*, a setting out, departure

prŏfectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proficiscor**

prōfectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proficio**

professus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **profiteor**

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*pro-facio*], *trans. and intrans.*, accomplish: **satis ad laudem profectum est,** enough has been done for glory

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -fectus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, start, leave, depart, set out: **ad proficiscendum pertinere** (to a journey)

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus [*pro-fateor,* confess], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, declare publicly, state

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, dash to the ground; put to rout, rout

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, flow forth, rise

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intrans.*, flee, escape

prōgnātus, -a, -um [*pro-(g)natus, p.p. of (g)nascor*], *adj.*, sprung from: **prognati ex,** descendants of

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus [*pro-gradior,* step, go], *dep.*, *intrans.*, go forward, march forward; proceed, go

prōgressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* progredior

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [*pro-habeo*], *trans.*, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, forbid; protect

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*pro-iacio*], *trans.*, throw forward, throw away, abandon: **se ex navi** (leap)

proinde, *adv.*, therefore, hence

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send forth.—*Fig.*, promise

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, move forward, advance, push forward

prōmptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, quick, active

prōmunturium, -ī, *n.*, headland

prōnē, *adv.*, with a slope

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, make known, communicate, give orders, declare, make proclamation

prōpatulum, -ī, *n.*, open place; court

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near.—*Fig.*, almost, nearly.—**propius,** *comp.*, *adv.*, nearer: **propius tumulum** (*as prep.*).—**proximē,** *superl.*, *adv.*, lately, last

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, *trans.*, drive away, repulse, rout, dislodge, force back

properē, *adv.*, quickly

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, hasten, hurry

propinquitās, -ātis [*propinquus*], *f.*, vicinity.—*Esp.*, nearness in blood, relationship

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near at hand, near.—*Esp. by blood*, related.—*As noun in plur.*, relatives

propior, -us, -ōris [*prope*], *adj.*, nearer.—**proximus,** *superl.*, nearest, next, neighboring: **bellum** (last).—*With force of prep.*, **proximi Rhenum,** nearest the Rhine

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, place before; offer, put in the way, make known, state, represent

proprius, -a, -um [*prope*], *adj.*, of one's own: **fines** (particular); **hoc proprium virtutis** (a peculiar property, a mark)

propter [*prope*], *adv.*, *and prep. with acc.*, close by.—*Also*, on account of

propterea, *adv.*, on this account.—*With* **quod,** because

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fight in defense

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, repel, keep off, drive off

prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow (*of a ship*)

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, *trans.*, dash down, overthrow, demolish

prōrutus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proruo**

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, pursue, escort; address

prōspectus, -ūs [*prospicio*], *m.*, outlook, view

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, *trans.*, look forward, look out, watch; provide for, take care

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be useful, benefit, assist

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [*protego*], *trans.*, protect, cover

prōtinus, *adv.*, straightway, forthwith, at once

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge

prōvectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **proveho**

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *trans.*, carry forward.—*In pass.*, be carried forth, sail

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, *trans.*, foresee, take care, provide, arrange beforehand: **satis est provisum,** sufficient provision has been made

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, office (*of a commander or governor*), province (*in general*); *also*, a province (*governed by a Roman magistrate*).—*Esp.*, the Province (*of Gaul*)

prōvinciālis, -e [*prōvincia*], *adj.*, of a province.—*Esp.*, of the Province (*of Gaul*)

prōvīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **provideo**

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, rush out, fly out (*of cavalry etc.*)

proximē, *see* **prope**

proximus, *see* **propior**

prūdentia, -ae [*prudens*, foreseeing], *f.*, foresight, discretion

Prūsiās, -ae, *m.*, a king of Bithynia (in northern Asia Minor) to whom Hannibal fled

Ptiānii, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

pūblicē, *adv.*, in the name of the state, publicly

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*publicus*], *trans.*, make state property, confiscate

pūblicus, -a, -um [*populus*], *adj.*, of the people, of the state, public: **res publica,** commonweath, state

Pūblius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

pudor, -ōris, *m.*, sense of shame, sense of honor

puer, -ī, *m.*, boy, servant, slave.—*Plur.*, children (*of either sex*): **a pueris,** from childhood

puerīlis, -e [*puer*], *adj.*, of a child: **aetas** (of childhood)

puerulus, -ī [*puer*], little boy

pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight: **ad pugnam,** for fighting

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *intrans.*, fight, engage.—*Often impers. in pass.*, **pugnatum est** *etc.*, they fought, the fighting continued

Pullō, -ōnis, *m.*, T. Pullo, a centurion in Cæsar's army

pulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **pello**

pulsus, -ūs [*pello*], *m.*, stroke, beat: **pulsu remorum praestare** (the working *etc.*)

pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, clean, clear; excuse, free from suspicion

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, think, suppose, consider

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *only with* **montes,** the Pyrenees, mountains between France and Spain

Q., *abbr. for* **Quintus**

quā, *rel. adv.*, by which (*way*), where

quācumque, *rel. adv.*, by whichever (*way*), wherever

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, forty each, forty (each *being often omitted in English*)

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty

quadringentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj., plur.*, four hundred

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *trans.*, search for, look for, inquire about, inquire, ask: **eadem** (make the same inquiries)

quaesīvī, *see* **quaerō**

quaestiō, -ōnis [*quaero*], *f.*, investigation

quaestor, -ōris [*quaero*], *m.*, quæstor (*the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army*)

quaestus, -ūs [*quaero*], *m.*, acquisition, gain

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort? **qualis ascensus** (what is the nature of?)

quam, *adv. and conj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how? — 2. *Rel.*, as, than. — *Often with superlatives*, as . . . as possible: **quam maximus,** the greatest possible; **quam maxime,** (to) the utmost; **quam maxime potest,** as much as he can

quamdiū (*often written separately, see* **diu**), *rel. adv.* (*with antecedent omitted*), as long as

quamquam, *conj.*, although

quamvīs, *adv.*, as you please, however, no matter how

quandō, *adv.*, at any time: **si quando,** if ever, whenever

quantō [*quantus*], *adv.*, by how much, (by as much) as

quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how great? how much? **quantum boni,** how much good? **quantae civitates** (how important?). — 2. *Rel.*, as great as, as much as: **tantum . . . quantum,** so (as) much . . . as

quārtus, -a, -um [*quattuor*], *num. adj.*, fourth

quasi, *conj.*, as if

quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four

quattuordecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fourteen

-que, *conj.*, and. — *Sometimes connecting the general with the particular*, and in general, and other

queror, querī, questus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, complain, bewail, lament

questus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **queror**

quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj.*, which? what?

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, that. — *Often where a dem. pron. is used in English*, this, that. — *Often implying an antecedent*, he who, *etc.*: **ea quae,** things which, whatever. — **quō,** *abl. of measure of difference as adv.*, the (*more, less, etc.*)

quī, qua (quae), quid, *used after* **si, ne, ubi,** *etc.*, *indef. adj.*, any

quicquam, *see* **quisquam**

quīcumque, quae-, quod-, *indef. rel. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever

quīdam, quae-, quod- (quid-), *indef. adj. and pron.*, a certain, certain, a kind of: **quidam ex militibus** (one)

quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least, certainly: **ne . . . quidem,** not even, not . . . either

quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest, sleep, repose

quiētus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* *quiesco*, keep quiet], *adj.*, at rest, quiet, peaceable

quin [*qui* (*old abl.*), *-ne*]: 1. *Corroborative adv.*: **quin etiam**, nay even, in fact.—2. *Conj. after expression of negative thought* (*doubt*, *hindrance*, *abstention*, *etc.*) *modified by negative word*, but that, that, from (*doing a thing*), to (*do a thing*): **non dubito quin**, I do not doubt that

quīnam, quae-, quod-, cuius-, *interrog. pron.*, who? *etc.* (*emph.*): **quibusnam manibus** (with what possible?)

quīndecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen

quīngentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, *plur.*, five hundred

quīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, five at a time, five each

quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifty

quīnque, *indecl. num. adj.*, five

quīnquerēmis, -is, *f.*, quinquereme (*a vessel with five banks of oars*)

quīnquiēs [*quinque*], *adv.*, five times

quīntus, -a, -um [*quinque*], *num. adj.*, fifth

Quīntus, -ī [*quintus*], *m.*, a Roman prænomen

quis, quae, quid, cuius: 1. *Interrog. adj. and pron.*, who? which? what?—2. *Indef. pron.*, one, any one, anything

quisnam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *interrog. pron.*, who? *etc.* (*emph.*)

quispiam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any, any one, any thing

quisquam, *no fem.*, **quid- (quic-), cuius-**, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any, any one, anything

quisque, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, each, each one, every

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid, cuiuscuius, *indef. rel. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whatever

quīvis, quae-, quid-, cuius-, *indef. adj. and pron.*, any you please, any one, any whatever (*affirmative*), any (*whatever*)

1. **quō**, *see* **quī**

2. **quō**, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, whither?—2. *Rel.*, whither, into which, as far as.—3. *Indef.*, anywhere

3. **quō**, *conj.*, in order that (*with comparatives*), that: **magis eo quam quo** (than that, than because).—*Esp.*, **quō minus**, that not, so that not, from (*doing a thing*)

quoad, *conj.*, as far as, until, as long as

quod, *conj.*, because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that: **quod si**, but if

quō minus, *see* 3 **quo**

quoniam [*quom* (= *cum*), *iam*], *conj.*, inasmuch as, since, as

quoque, *adv.*, *following the word it affects*, also, as well

quōqueversus *or* **quōquōversus**, *adv.*, in every direction, all about

quot, *indecl. adj.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how many?—2. *Rel.*, as many, as many as, the number which

quotannīs [*quot-annus*], *adv.*, every year, yearly

quotiēns, *adv.*: 1. *Interrog.*, how often? how many times?—2. *Rel.*, as often as

quotiēnscumque [*quotiens*], *adv.*, however often, whenever

rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root. —*Plur.*, roots (*of a tree*); foot (*of a mountain*)

raeda, -ae, *f.*, wagon

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough

rapiditās, -ātis [*rapidus*, swift], *f.*, swiftness, rapidity

rapīna, -ae [*rapio*, seize], *f.*, plunder. —*Plur.*, plundering

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *trans.*, snatch, seize

rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, few; rare, unusual

ratiō, -ōnis [*reor*], *f.*, a reckoning, an account. —*Also*, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, plan, science, manner, method, consideration: **rationem habere**, take an account, have regard to; **rationem habere ut**, take care that *etc.*

ratis, -is, *f.*, raft

ratus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **reor**

Rauracī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the upper Rhine

re-, red-, *prefix*, back, again, away

rebelliō, -ōnis [*re-bellum*], *f.*, renewal of war, uprising

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, new, fresh, late

receptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **recipio**

receptus, -ūs [*recipio*], *m.*, retreat, way of retreat, refuge

recessus, -ūs [*recedo*], *m.*, retreat

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [*re-cado*], *intrans.*, fall again, fall back, fall upon, be visited, recoil, return

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*re-capio*], *trans.*, take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit. —*With reflexive*, retreat, withdraw

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, read aloud

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly

rēctus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* **rego**], *adj.*, straight

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, get back, recover, regain

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*re-causa*], *trans. and intrans.*, refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; make objections; *followed by* **quin** *or* **quo minus** (refuse to); **periculum** (refuse to incur)

red-, *see* **re-**

redāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **redigo**

redditus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **reddo**

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*red-do* (put)], *trans.*, give back, restore, pay, render

redēmptus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **redimo**

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, go back, return, come down again: **summa** (be referred)

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*red-ago*], *trans.*, bring back, reduce, render, bring under, make

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [*red-emo*], *trans.*, buy back, redeem, purchase, buy

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*red-integro*, make whole], *trans.*, renew, restore, revive

reditiō, -ōnis [*redeo*], *f.*, return

reditus, -ūs [*redeo*], *m.*, return

Redonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of western Gaul, between the lower Loire and the Channel

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back

referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, bring back, return, report. — *Esp.:* **gratias (gratiam)** (make return, show one's gratitude); **pedem** (retreat, draw back). — *With reflexive*, retreat, retire

reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*re-facio*], *trans.*, repair, refresh: **se ex labore** (rest); **exercitum** (allow to recover)

refrāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **refringo**

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [*re-frango*], *trans.*, break away, break in **(portas)**: **vim fluminis** (break)

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intrans.*, run away, escape

refulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsī, *intrans.*, flash back, gleam, shine

rēgia, -ae [*rex*], *f.*, palace

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, country, district

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*regnum*], rule, reign, govern

rēgnum, -ī [*cf. rego*], *n.*, kingdom, royal power, throne.—*Plur.*, royal power

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus, *trans.*, direct, manage, rule, have control of

reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*re-iacio*], *trans.*, throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, be weakened, be deadened

relātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **refero**

relictus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **relinquo**

religiō, -ōnis [*rė-ligo*, bind], *f.*, religious scruple, religion, religious observance, religious matter, service of the gods, superstition

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictus, *trans.*, leave behind, abandon, leave.—*Pass.*, be left, remain

reliquiae, -ārum [*reliquus*], *f.*, remnants

reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, left, remaining, the rest, the others, future: **nihil est reliqui,** there is nothing left; **nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt,** made the greatest possible speed.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, the rest

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, *intrans.*, remain behind, remain, stay

remedium, -ī, *n.*, remedy, cure

rēmex, -igis [*remus*], *m.*, oarsman, rower

Rēmī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ about the present site of Rheims

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, row

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, move back, return

reminīscor, -minīscī, *no p.p.*, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, remember

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, let go back, send back, throw back; relax, cease to use, give up

remollēscō, -mollēscere, *no perf.*, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, soften, become feeble

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, move back, move away, send away, remove, put out of the way.—**remōtus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, far away, remote

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus [*re-munus*], *dep.*, *trans.*, repay, requite

rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar

Rēmus, -ī, *m.*, one of the Remi

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*cf.* **novus**], *trans.*, renew

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring back word, report, proclaim

reor, rērī, ratus, *dep.*, *trans.*, think

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsus, *trans.*, drive back, repulse: **ab hac spe repulsi,** disappointed in this hope

repente, *adv.*, suddenly

repentīnus, -a, -um [*repens*, sudden], *adj.*, sudden, hasty, unexpected.—**repentīnō,** *abl. as adv.*, suddenly

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus [*re-pario*, get], *trans.*, find out, discover: **reperti sunt multi,** there were many

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, *trans.*, seek again, demand back, ask for: **poenas** (inflict, exact)

rēpō, rēpere, rēpsī, rēptus [*cf.* **serpens**], *intrans.*, creep, crawl

repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, *trans.*, put back, store away

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, carry back

repperī, *see* **reperiō**

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, make present, do at once

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, *trans.*, blame, censure

repressus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **reprimo**

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [*re-premo*], *trans.*, check

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, spurn, refuse, reject

repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, resist; be in opposition

repulsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **repello**

requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus [*re-quaero*], *trans.*, seek again, request, need, miss: **in se indulgentiam** (lament the loss of)

rēs, reī, *f.*, property, business, affair, matter, thing (*in the most general sense*), fact, occurrence, event, case, action, act.—*Often to be translated from the context.*—*Esp.:* **imperitus rerum,** ignorant of the world; **commutatio rerum,** change of fortune; **re vera,** in truth, really; **rem gerere,** conduct operations, fight; **res secundae,** prosperity; **res publica,** commonwealth; **res familiaris,** property;

rēs militāris, warfare; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply; **novae rēs**, revolution; **quā rē**, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (*circumstance etc.*), why; **quam ob rem**, *interrog.*, why? — *rel.*, on which account, for which reason

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, *trans.*, cut away, break down, destroy

rescīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītus, *trans.*, find out, learn, discover

rescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, *trans.*, transfer (*by writing*)

resēdisse, *see* **resido**

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, keep back, reserve, hold in reserve

resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, *intrans.*, sit down; settle down, become calm, subside

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stand back, stop, withstand, resist, remain

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [*re-specio*, look], *trans. and intrans.*, look back, look back at, consider, regard

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus, *trans. and intrans.*, reply, answer

respōnsum, -ī [*n. p.p. of respondeo*], *n.*, reply. — *Plur.*, reply (*of several parts*)

rēs pūblica, *see* **res**

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, spit out; spurn, reject

restituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus [*re-statuo*], *trans.*, replace, restore, make anew

retentus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **retineo**

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*re-teneo*], *trans.*, hold back, retain, maintain, restrain (**quin**, from *doing something*), arrest: **memoriam** (preserve)

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, drag back, bring back

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus, *trans.*, tear away, pull away

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, *intrans.*, return (*in perf. tenses*). — *Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses*, return, go back, come back

revinciō, -vincīre, -vīnxī, -vīnctus, *trans.*, make fast, fasten, bind

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call away, call off, recall

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine

Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone

Rhodius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Rhodes (an island S.W. of Asia Minor), Rhodian. — *Masc. as noun*, Rhodian

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank

rīsus, -ūs, *m.*, laugh, laughter

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, brook, stream

rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak [powerful

robustus, -a, -um [*rōbur*], strong,

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, ask, request, ask for

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *m.*, Roman. — *Masc. as noun*, a Roman

rōstrum, -ī [*rodo*, gnaw], *n.*, beak. — *Esp. of a ship*, beak, ram

rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel
ruber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, red
rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble
Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen
rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, rumor, report
rūpēs, -is, *f.*, cliff, rock
rūrsus, *adv.*, back, again, in turn
Rutēnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the borders of Provence

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name; *see* **Titurius**
Sabis, -is, *m.*, a river of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Meuse, now the Sambre
sacrificium, -ī [*sacrum*, sacred thing, *facio*], *n.*, sacrifice
sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sacrificium*], *trans. and intrans.*, sacrifice
saepe, *adv.*, often: **minime saepe,** most rarely. — **saepius,** *comp.*, many times, repeatedly
saepenumerō, *adv.*, oftentimes, many times
saepēs, -is [*cf.* *saepio*, hedge in], *f.*, hedge
saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītūrus [*saevus*, fierce], *intrans.*, be angry, rage, be violent
sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow
sagittārius, -ī [*sagitta*], *m.*, archer, bowman
sagulum, -ī, *n.*, cloak (*military*)
Saguntum, -ī, *n.*, a town of eastern Spain
Salmydēssus, -ī, *m.*, a town in Thrace
saltus, -ūs, *m.*, wooded height, mountain pass
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, health, well-being, welfare, safety .
sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus [*cf.* *sacer*, sacred], *trans.*, make sacred, solemnly establish (*by law*). — **sānctus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, holy, sacred, inviolable
sanguis, -inis, *m.*, blood
sānitās, -ātis [*sanus*], *f.*, sound mind, good sense
Santonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the western coast of Gaul
Santonī, *see* **Santones**
sarcina, -ae [*sarcio*, sew up], *f.*, pack. — *Plur.*, baggage (*soldiers'* packs)
sarmentum, -ī, *n.*, *only in plur.*, fagots, brushwood
satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently. — *Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj.*, enough, sufficient: **satis habere,** consider sufficient, be satisfied
satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus, *intrans.*, satisfy, make amends, excuse one's self, apologize
satisfactiō, -ōnis [*satisfacio*], *f.*, apology
saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded
saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock
scālae, -ārum [*scando*, climb], *f. plur.*, ladder, scaling ladder
scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat
scelerātus, -a, -um [*scelus*], *adj.*, villainous, accursed
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness
scientia, -ae [*sciens*, *pres. p. of scio*], *f.*, knowledge, skill
scīlicet [*scire licet*], *adv.*, evidently

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, *trans.*, cut, tear, tear up

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *trans.*, know

Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, a Roman family name. — *Esp.*: 1. P. Cornelius Scipio, consul in 218 B.C., repeatedly defeated by Hannibal. — 2. P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, who defeated Hannibal at Zama

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *trans. and intrans.*, write

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield

sē, *see* **sui**

sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, *intrans.*, go apart, go away, withdraw

sēcrētō [*secretus*, separate], *adv.*, in private, privately

sectiō, -ōnis [*seco*, cut], *f.*, booty

sectūra, -ae [*seco*, cut], *f.*, mine, shaft

sēcum, *for* **cum se**

secundum, *see* **secundus**

secundus, -a, -um [*sequor*], *adj.*, following, second; favorable, successful: **secundiores res,** greater prosperity. — **secundum,** *neut. acc. as prep. with acc.*, along, in the direction of, in accordance with: **secundum flumen,** down stream

secūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **sequor**

sed, *conj.*, but, but yet

sēdecim [*sex-decem*], *indecl. num. adj.*, sixteen

sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessus, *intrans.*, sit, be seated

sēdēs, -is [*sedeo*, sit], *f.*, seat. *Hence*, abode, settlement

sēditiōsus, -a, -um [*seditio*, sedition], *adj.*, seditious, factious

Sedūnī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Alps

Sedusiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Germans

Segonax, -actis, *m.*, a British king

Segontiācī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Britain

sēgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*se-*, apart, *grex*, flock], *trans.*, separate, keep out, exclude

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a people of Gaul west of the Rhone

sēiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [*se-*, apart, *iungō*], *trans.*, disunite, separate

semel, *num. adv.*, once: **semel atque iterum,** more than once, again and again

sēmentis, -is [*semen*, seed], *f.*, a sowing: **sementes facere,** sow grain

sēmita, -ae, *f.*, path

semper, *adv.*, all the time, always

Sempronius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

senātor, -ōris [*senex*], *m.*, senator

senātus, -ūs [*senex*], *m.*, senate. — *Esp.*, the senate (*of Rome*)

senex, *gen.* **senis,** *adj.*, old. — *As noun*, old man

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, six each, six

Senonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe on the Seine

sententia, -ae [*sentio*], *f.*, opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose; a judgment, a sentence

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *trans.*, perceive, know, see, think, learn about, learn

sentis, -is, *m.*, brier

sēparātim, *adv.*, separately, privately

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, separate. — *Esp.*, **sēparātus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, separate

septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven

septentriōnēs, -um [*septem-triones*, plow oxen], *m. plur.*, the seven plow oxen (*the stars of the Great Bear*). — *Hence*, the north

septimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, the seventh

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um [*septuaginta*], *num. adj.*, the seventieth

septuāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, seventy

sepultūra, -ae [*sepelio*, bury], *f.*, burial, burying

Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the Seine

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Sequani (*a tribe of Gaul on the Rhone*). — *Masc. plur. as noun*, the Sequani

sequor, sequī, secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow, accompany: **poena** (be inflicted on); **fidem** (come under, surrender to)

Ser., *abbr. for* **Servius**

sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, *trans.*, plant, sow

serpēns, -entis [*part. of serpo*, creep], *f.*, serpent

Sertōrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

servīlis, -e [*servus*], *adj.*, of a slave, servile: **tumultus** (the servile revolt, *the war of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73–71* B.C.)

Servilius, -ī, *m.*, a gentile name

serviō, -īre, -iī, -ītūrus [*servus*], *intrans.*, be a slave to: **rumoribus** (be blindly guided by, follow)

servitūs, -ūtis [*servus*], *f.*, slavery, servitude

Servius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, keep, preserve: **praesidia** (hold, maintain)

servulus, -ī [*servus*], *m.*, young slave, boy

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave

sescentī, *see* **sexcentī**

sēsē, *see* **sui**

sēsquipedālis, -e [†*sesquiped-* (a foot and a half) + *alis*], *adj.*, a foot and a half (thick)

sētius, *adv.*, less: **nihilo setius,** none the less

seu, *see* **sive**

sevēritās, -ātis [*severus*, strict], *f.*, strictness, harshness

sēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call aside, call out

sex, *indecl. num. adj.*, six

sexāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixty

sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, *plur.*, six hundred

Sextius, -ī, *m.*, a gentile name

sī, *conj.*, if. — *Esp.*, to see if, whether: **id si fieret,** should this happen

sibi, *see* **sui**

Sibusātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

sīc, *adv.* (*with v.; cf.* **tam** *with adj. or adv.*, **ita** *with either*), so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus.— **sīc utī,** *as conj.*, just as, just as if

siccitās, -ātis [*siccus*, dry], *f.*, dryness, drought, dry weather

sīcut, sīcutī = sīc utī

sīdus, -eris, *n.*, star

signifer, -ferī [*signum-fero*], *m.*, standard bearer

significātiō, -ōnis [*significo*], *f.*, signal, warning

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*signum-facio*], *trans.*, make signs, indicate, make known, show

signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal.—*Esp.*, standard (*for military purposes*). —*Phrases:* **signa inferre,** advance to attack, charge; **conversa signa inferre,** change front and charge; **ad signa consistere,** rally round the standard

silentium, -ī [*silens*, silent], *n.*, stillness, silence.—**silentiō,** *abl.*, in silence, silently

Silēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Greek historian

Sīlius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods

silvestris, -tre [*silva*], *adj.*, woody, wooded

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar

simul, *adv.*, at the same time: **simul atque** *or* **ac** (*or without* **atque** *or* **ac**), as soon as

simulācrum, -ī [*simulo*], *n.*, image, likeness

simulātiō, -ōnis [*simulo*], *f.*, pretense, deceit

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, pretend

simultās, -tātis [*similis*], *f.*, rivalry

sīn, *conj.*, but if

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without

singillātim [*singuli*], *adv.*, singly, one by one

singulāris, -e [*singuli*], *adj.*, solitary, single; unique, extraordinary

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj., plur.*, one at a time, single, each, one by one.—*Often to denote distribution*, one to each: **ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere** (each from his); **inter singulas legiones** (between each two)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left: **sub sinistra (manu),** on the left

sinō, sinere, sīvī, situs, *trans. and intrans.*, permit, allow

situs, -ūs, *m.*, situation, position

sīve (seu), *conj.*, if either, or if: **sive . . . sive,** either . . . or, whether . . . or

socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law

societās, -ātis [*socius*], *f.*, fellowship, alliance, league

socius, -ī [*cf.* **sequor**], *m.*, companion, ally, comrade

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.—*Also personified*, Sol, the Sun

soldurius, -ī, *m.*, soldurius, follower

soleō, solēre, solitus, *semi-dep., intrans.*, be wont, be accustomed

sōlitūdō, -inis [*solus*], *f.*, loneliness. *Hence*, wilderness

sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, stir up, instigate, offer bribes to, tempt

solum, -ī, *n.*, soil, foundation, bottom, earth: **solum agri,** bare ground

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.—**sōlum,** *n. acc. as adv.*, alone, only

solūtus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **solvo**

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *trans.*, unbind, loose.—*Esp., with or without* **navem (naves),** set sail

somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister: **soror ex matre,** half sister

sors, sortis, *f.*, lot (*for divination*), chance

Sōsilus, -ī, *m.*, a Spartan (of Sparta, a city in Greece), teacher and historian

Sōtiātēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus, *trans.*, scatter, sprinkle

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, extent, distance; time, space of time: **quantum fuit diei spatium,** as much as there was time for

speciēs, -ēī [*specio*, see], *f.*, sight, show, appearance

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*specio*, see], *trans. and intrans.*, look at, regard; face

speculātor, -ōris [*speculor*], *m.*, spy, scout

speculātōrius, -a, -um [*speculator*], *adj.*, scouting, reconnoitering **(navigia)**

speculor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., trans. and intrans.*, spy, reconnoiter: **speculandi causa,** as a spy

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*spes*], *trans.*, hope, hope for, expect

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, expectation: **summam in spem venire,** have the greatest hope

spīritus, -ūs [*spiro*, breathe], *m.*, breath.—*Also*, spirit. *Hence, in plur.*, pride, arrogance, temper

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, rob, deprive

sponte (*abl.*), *f.*, of one's own accord, voluntarily

stabilitās, -ātis [*stabilis*, steady], *f.*, steadiness, firmness

stabulum, -ī [*sto*], *n.*, stable, stall

statim [*sto*], *adv.*, at once, immediately

statiō, -ōnis [*sto*], *f.*, position, post, picket: **in statione,** on guard

statua, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, statue

statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*status*], *trans.*, set up; establish, resolve upon, determine, decide

statūra, -ae [*sto*], *f.*, stature, size

status, -ūs [*sto*], *m.*, position, condition, situation

stetī, *see* **stō**

stīpendiārius, -a, -um [*stipendium*], *adj.*, tributary, under tribute

stīpendium, -ī [*stips*, gift, *pendo*], *n.*, tribute

stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, *intrans.*, stand, abide by

strāmentum, -ī, *n.*, straw, thatch

strepitus, -ūs [*strepo*, roar], *m.*, noise, confused din

stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictus, *trans.*, draw, unsheathe

studeō, studēre, studuī, *no p.p.* [*studium*], *intrans.*, be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (*with dat.*)

studium, -ī, *n.*, eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (*for a thing*), enthusiasm; a pursuit (*to which one is devoted*), an occupation

stultē, *adv.*, foolishly

stupeō, -ēre, -uī, *intrans.*, be stunned, be amazed

sub, *prep.* (*a*) *With abl.* (*of rest in a place*), under: **sub oculis,** before the eyes

(*b*) *With acc.* (*of motion towards a place*), under, close to. — *Of time*, toward, just before: **sub vesperum**

(*c*) *In composition, as adv.*, under; up to; secretly; in succession; slightly

subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, *trans.*, draw up, lead up: **navem** (beach, draw up)

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans.*, go under, undergo, come up, approach

subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus, *trans.*, dig under, stab (*underneath*)

subfossus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **subfodio**

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*sub-iacio*], *trans.*, throw under, place below, subject, expose to. — *Also*, throw up. — **subiectus, -a, -um,** *p.p. as adj.*, lying near

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [*sub-ago*], *trans.*, bring under, subdue

subitō, *see* **subitus**

subitus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* **subeo**], *adj.*, sudden, quick, hasty. — **subitō,** *abl. as adv.*, suddenly

sublātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **tollo**

sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, lighten, raise, raise up, assist. — *With reflexive*, rise up. — **sublevātus,** *p.p.*, supporting one's self

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake

subluō, -luere, -lūtus, *trans.*, wash beneath, wash

subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, supply, furnish, provide

submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, *trans.*, send up, send to one's assistance, reënforce

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *trans.*, drive off, dislodge

subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, *trans.*, dig under, undermine

subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, *dep.*, *trans.*, follow on, follow, succeed to

subsidium, -ī [*sub-sedeo*, sit], *n.*, reënforcement, help, relief, support, assistance

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, stop behind, halt, make a stand: **ancora** (hold)

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be under, be near, be close by, approach

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, *trans.*, take away, carry away

subvectiō, -ōnis [*subveho*], *f.*, bringing up, transportation, conveyance

subvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, *trans.*, bring up

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, *intrans.*, come under, come to the support of, assist

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [*sub-cedo*], *trans. and intrans.*, come up to, advance, succeed to, take the place of, come next; be successful, prosper

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *trans.*, set on fire

successus, -ūs [*succedo*], *m.*, close approach

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus [*sub-caedo*], *trans.*, cut under, cut down

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus [*sub-curro*], *intrans.*, run to support, run to help, succor

sūcus, -ī, *m.*, juice

sudis, -is, *f.*, stake

Suēbī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians

Suēbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Swabian.—*As noun*, a Swabian (*man or woman*)

Suessiōnēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a tribe of the Belgæ

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [*sub-facio*], *trans.*, appoint, choose; *intrans.*, be sufficient, be adequate

suffrāgium, -ī, *n.*, ballot, vote

Sugambrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe

suī, sibi, sē, *reflex. pron.*, himself, *etc.*—*Often to be translated by the personal pron.*, he, *etc.; also*, each other.—*Esp.*, **inter se,** from (with, by, *etc.*) each other

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, a Roman family name.—*Esp.*, L. Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called Sulla the Dictator

Sulpicius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *irr.*, *intrans.*, be (*exist*).—*Also, with weakened force*, be (*as a mere copula*).—*Phrases:* **sibi esse in animo,** that they had in mind, intended; **multum sunt in venationibus** (much engaged)

summa, -ae, *f.*, top; sum, total, main part: **belli** (the general management, the chief control); **imperi** (chief command)

summus, *see* **superus**

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [*sub-emo*, take], *trans.*, take, get, assume: **sumere supplicium de,** inflict punishment on; **laborem** (spend); **vitam** (take)

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [*sumptus*], *adj.*, expensive, costly

sūmptus, -ūs [*sumo*], *m.*, expense

superbē, *adv.*, haughtily, arrogantly

superior, *see* **superus**

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, be superior to, prevail,

overcome, conquer, defeat; survive (**vitā**)

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, *intrans.*, sit above. *Hence,* be above, decline, refrain from

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *irr., intrans.*, be over, be left, remain, survive

superus, -a, -um, *adj.*, higher, being above (*of space only*). — *Comp.*, **superior,** higher, upper, preceding (*of time*), superior, victorious. — *Superl.*, **suprēmus,** highest. — *Also,* **summus,** highest, the highest part of, the top of. — *Fig.*, greatest, most important, perfect, supreme, most violent

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītūrus [*sub-peto,* aim at], *intrans.*, be on hand, be supplied, hold out

supplēmentum, -ī, *n.*, supply, re-enforcement

supplex, -icis, *c.*, suppliant

supplicātiō, -ōnis [*supplico,* supplicate], *f.*, supplication; a thanksgiving (*to the gods, decreed by the senate*)

suppliciter, *adv.*, as suppliants

supplicium, -ī, *n.*, punishment (*usually of death*)

suppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [*sub-pono*], *trans.*, place under

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sub-porto*], *trans.*, bring up, convey, supply, furnish

suprā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, above, beyond

suprēmus, *see* **superus**

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [*subs* (= *sub*), *capio*], *trans.*, take upon one's self (**sibi**), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo

suspendō, -pendere, -pendī, -pēnsus [*subs* (= *sub*), *pendo*], *trans.*, hang up, hang

suspicātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **suspicor**

suspīciō, -ōnis [*sub-specio,* look], *f.*, suspicion, an indication: **neque abest suspicio,** and suspicion is not wanting

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus [*cf.* *suspicio*], *dep., trans.*, suspect: *p.p. as adj.*, under suspicion

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*sustineo*], *trans. and intrans.*, sustain, hold out

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [*subs* (= *sub*), *teneo*], *trans. and intrans.*, hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop; **sustinere se,** stand up

sustulī, *see* **tollo**

suus, -a, -um, *possessive pronominal adj.* (*reflex., referring back to the subject*), his, her, its, their, *etc.* — *Often without a noun,* **suī,** their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; **sua,** their (his) possessions; **se suaque omnia,** themselves and all they had

Symplēgadēs, -um, *f. plur.*, fabulous rocks, dashing against each other, in the Black Sea

Syria, -ae, *f.*, a country bordering on the eastern end of the Mediterranean Sea

T., *abbr. for* **Titus**

tabellārius, -ī [*tabula*], *m.*, letter carrier, messenger

tabernāculum, -ī [*taberna*, hut], *n.*, tent

tabula, -ae, *f.*, record (*written on a board covered with wax*), document, list

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitus, *trans. and intrans.*, be silent; keep secret, conceal. — **tacitus, -a, -um**, *p.p. as adj.*, silent, in silence

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, so great, this (*of something preceding*), the following

tam, *adv.* (*with adj., p., or adv.; cf.* sic) so, so much

tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, still, however

Tamesis, -is, *m.*, the Thames, a river of Britain

tametsī, *conj.*, although, though

Tamphilus, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Baebius**

tamquam, *conj.*, as if

tandem, *adv.*, at last. — *In questions, to add emphasis*, pray, tell me, *or translated only by emphasis*

tantō [*tantus*], *adv.*, by so much

tantopere, *see* **opus**

tantulus, -a, -um [*tantus*], *adj.*, so small, so little, so trifling

tantummodo, *adv.*, only, merely

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so much, so great, such (*of magnitude*): **tanti est**, is of so much weight; **tanta exiguitas temporis**, so little time. — **tantum**, *n. as adv.*, only, merely

Tarbellī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

tardē, *adv.*, slowly, tardily, with delay

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*tardus*], *trans.*, retard, check, hinder

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish

Tarusātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Aquitania

Tasgetius, -ī, *m.*, a prince of the Carnutes

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull

Taximagulus, -ī, *m.*, a prince of Britain

Tectosagēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Volcæ

tēctum, -ī [*n. p.p. of tego*], *n.*, roof, house

tēctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **tego**

tegimentum, -ī [*tego*], *n.*, covering

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, *trans.*, cover, thatch, hide, conceal

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon (*of offense*), javelin, spear

temerārius, -a, -um [*temere*], *adj.*, reckless, rash, hasty

temerē, *adv.*, blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily

temeritās, -tātis [*temere*], *f.*, indiscretion, rashness, haste, foolhardiness

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (*of a wagon etc.*)

temperantia, -ae [*temperans, pres. p. of tempero*], *f.*, self-control, prudence

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*tempus*], *trans. and intrans.*, control; refrain, restrain one's self from (**quin**)

tempestās, -ātis [*tempus*], *f.*, season, weather. — *Esp.*, bad weather, storm

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, try, attempt, make an attempt on: **per vim tempto,** try to force

tempus, -oris, *n.*, a division of time, a time, time (*in general*), occasion, opportunity, a crisis: **tam necessario tempore,** at so critical a moment; **omni tempore,** at all times, always

Tencterī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a branch of the Usipetes

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, *trans.*, stretch, stretch out, pitch (*tent*)

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: **se tenere,** remain; **memoriā tenere,** remember

tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, delicate, tender, young

tenuis, -e, *adj.*, thin, delicate, feeble, poor

tenuiter [*tenuis*, weak], *adv.*, thinly, slightly

ter, *num. adv.*, three times, thrice

Terentius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.*, C. Terentius Varro, consul, defeated by Hannibal at Cannæ

tergum, -ī, *n.*, the back: **terga vertere,** turn and fly; **a tergo,** in the rear

ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, three each, three at once

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth; land, region; ground.—*Plur.*, world

Terrasidius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

terrēnus, -a, -um [*terra*], *adj.*, of earth

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, *trans.*, frighten, alarm, deter

terribilis, -e, *adj.*, dreadful, frightful

territō, -āre, *no perf.*, *no p.p.* [*terreo*], *trans.*, frighten

terror, -ōris [*terreo*], *m.*, fright, alarm, panic

tertiō [*tertius*], *adv.*, for the third time

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, third (*in order*); **pars** (one third)

testāmentum, -ī [*testor*, testify], *n.*, a will

testimōnium, -ī [*testis*], *n.*, proof, evidence

testis, -is, *c.*, witness

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise.—*Esp.*, a covered column (*made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another*)

Teutonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), *m. plur.*, a great German people in Jutland, who, with the Cimbri, overran Gaul in 113 B.C.; defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. at Aquæ Sextiæ

texō, -ere, -uī, -tus, *trans.*, weave

Thermopylae, -ārum, *f.*, a pass on the east coast of Greece, site of three famous battles

Thēseus, -ī, *m.*, a mythical king of Athens

Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, a country in northern Greece

Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, Thrace, a country north of Greece

Ti., *abbr. for* Tiberius

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, the river on which Rome is situated

Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen (first name)

tignum, -ī, *n.*, a log, a timber, a pile

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Tigurini.—*Masc. plur.*, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii

timeō, -ēre, -uī, *no p.p., trans. and intrans.*, be afraid, fear.—*With dat.*, be anxious for, be anxious about: **nihil** (have nothing to fear).—**timentēs,** *pres. p. as noun*, the timid, the fearful

timidē, *adv.*, with timidity: **non timide**, fearlessly

timidus, -a, -um [*timeo*], *adj.*, cowardly, frightened, timid

timor, -ōris [*timeo*], *m.*, alarm, fear, dread

tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctus, *trans.*, wet, dye

Titūrius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name.—*Esp.*, Q. Titurius Sabinus, a legatus of Cæsar, killed in an ambuscade prepared by Ambiorix

Titus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman prænomen

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, bear, endure, hold out, support: **famem** (keep from starvation)

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *trans.*, raise, carry, carry off: **ancoras** (weigh). *Hence*, remove, take away, destroy: **conloquium** (break off).—*Esp.*, **sublātus, -a, -um,** *p.p.*, elated

Tolōsa, -ae, *f.*, an important city in the western part of the Province, now Toulouse

Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the people of Toulouse

tormentum, -ī [*torqueo*, twist], *n.*, torture.—*Also*, an engine (*for throwing missiles*)

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, *trans.*, scorch, burn

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many

totidem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number

tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the whole, the whole of, all, entire.—*Often translated by an adverb*, entirely, throughout

trabs, trabis, *f.*, a beam, a timber

trāctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **traho**

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [*trans-do* (put)], *trans.*, hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend.—*Also*, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate, relate

trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [*trans-duco*], *trans.*, lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over, transfer

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *trans.*, drag, drag along, drag in, draw in

trāiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [*trans-iacio*], *trans.*, throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce

trāiectus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **traicio**

trāiectus, -ūs [*traicio*], *m.*, passage, route

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātus [*trans-no*, swim], *trans. and intrans.*, swim across

tranquillitās, -ātis [*tranquillus*, still], *f.*, stillness, calm

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, over. *Hence*, on the other side of.—*In composition, as adv.*, over, across, through

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Transalpine

trānscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsūrus [*trans-scando*, climb], *intrans.*, climb across, board (*ships*)

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, cross, pass over, pass through, pass by

trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *irr.*, *trans.*, carry over, transfer, change the place of: **bellum ad aliquem** (direct against)

trānsfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus, *trans.*, pierce through

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus [*trans-gradior*, step], *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, step across, step over, cross

trānsitus, -ūs [*transeo*], *m.*, going over, crossing

trānslātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **transfero**

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, bring over, carry over

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, living across the Rhine.—*Masc. plur. as noun*, the people across the Rhine

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, thwart, rib (*of a ship*)

trānsversus, -a, -um [*p.p. of transverto*, turn across], *adj.*, transverse: **fossa** (a cross ditch)

Trasimēnus, -ī, *m.*, a lake in Etruria, famous for Hannibal's victory over the Romans in 217 B.C.

Trebia, -ae, *m.*, a river in northern Italy, where Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C.

Trebius, -ī, *m.*, a gentile name

Trebōnius, -ī, *m.*, a gentile name

trecentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, *plur.*, three hundred

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans. and intrans.*, tremble at; shake, tremble

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium**, *num. adj.*, three

Trēverī, -ōrum, *m. plur.* (*sing.* **Trēvir**), a people in northeastern Gaul

Tribocēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* (*with or without* **militum** *or* **militaris**), tribune of the soldiers, military tribune

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [*tribus*, tribe], *trans.*, distribute. *Hence*, grant, render, assign, attribute: **magnopere virtuti** (attribute it so very much to valor)

tribūtum, -ī [*n. p.p. of tribuo*], *n.*, tribute

trīduum, -ī [*tres-dies*], *n.*, three days' time, three days

triennium, -ī [*tres-annus*], *n.*, three years

trīgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, three each, three sets of

Trinovantēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a people of southern Britain

tripartītus,-a,-um [*tres-partitus*], *adj.*, divided in three.—*Esp.*, **tripartītō,** *abl. as adv.*, in three divisions

triplex, -icis [*tres; cf. plico,* fold], *adj.*, threefold: **acies** (triple, in three divisions *or* lines)

trirēmis, -is, *f.*, trireme (*a vessel with three banks of oars*)

trīstis, -e, *adj.*, sad, gloomy, dejected

trīstitia, -ae [*tristis*], *f.*, sadness

truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk

tū, tuī, *plur.* **vōs,** *pers. pron., 2d person*, you

tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet

tueor, tuērī, tūtus, *dep., trans.*, watch, guard, protect

tulī, *perf. of* **fero**

Tulingī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii

Tullius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Tullus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name

tum, *adv.*, then (*at a time indicated by the context*), at this time: **cum . . . tum,** not only . . . but also

tumultus, -ūs [*cf. tumeo,* swell], *m.*, uproar, confusion, commotion. — *Esp.*, uprising, revolt

tumulus, -ī [*tumeo,* swell], *m.*, hill, mound

tunc [*tum*], *adv.*, then, at that time, just then

turma, -ae, *f.*, squadron, troop (*of horse, consisting of thirty men*)

Turonī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Also called **Turones**

turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly; unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable

turpitūdō, -inis [*turpis*], *f.*, baseness; disgrace

turris, -is, *f.*, tower

tūtus, -a, -um [*p.p. of* **tueor**], *adj.*, protected, safe, secure. — **tūtō,** *abl. as adv.*, in safety, safely

ubi, *adv. and conj.*, where, in which: **ibi ubi,** in the place where. — *Also, of time*, when: **ubi primum,** as soon as

Ubiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the Rhine

ubīque, *adv.*, everywhere, anywhere

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, *dep., trans.*, punish, take vengeance on, avenge

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* **-īus,** *adj.*, a single, any.—*Masc. as pronoun*, anybody, any one

ulterior, -us, -ōris [*ultra*], *adj.*, farther, more remote.—*Superl.*, **ultimus, -a, -um,** farthest, last: **ultimi,** those in the rear

ultrā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, beyond

ultrō, *adv.*, to the farther side, beyond: **ultro citroque,** this way and that, back and forth. — *Esp.*: voluntarily, freely, besides

ultus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **ulciscor**

umbra, -ae, *f.*, shadow, shade

umquam, *adv.* (*with neg.*), ever: **neque . . . umquam,** and never

ūnā, *adv.*, together, along with them *etc.*, at the same time, in the same place, also

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which

ūndecimus, -a, -um [*unus-decimus*], *num. adj.*, eleventh

undique, *adv.*, from every side, from all quarters

unguentum, -ī, *n.*, ointment

ūniversus, -a, -um [*unus-versus, p.p. of verto*], *adj.*, all together, all (*in a mass*), entire

ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* **-īus**, *adj.*, one, a single, the same, alone, only.—*Neut. as noun*, one thing

urbānus, -a, -um [*urbs*], *adj.*, of a city.—*Esp.*, of the city (Rome), in the city

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.—*Esp.*, the city (Rome)

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, *no p.p.*, *trans.*, press, press hard

ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstus, *trans.*, burn

Usipetēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the lower Rhine

ūsque, *adv.*, all the way, even to, all the time, till, even till

ūsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **ūtor**

ūsus, -ūs [*utor*], *m.*, use, practice, experience; advantage, service.—*Esp.*: **usus est**, is necessary, it is necessary, there is need; **ex usu, usui**, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; **usu venire**, happen, turn out, come to pass

ut (utī), *adv. and conj.*: (*a*) *Interrog.*, how?—(*b*) *Rel.*, as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was: **ut semel**, when once, as soon as.—*Esp. with subjv.*, that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that; *after verbs of fearing*, that not

uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* **-trīus**, *adj. and pron.*: (*a*) *Interrog.*, which (*of two*)?—(*b*) *Rel.*, whichever (*of two*), the one who *or* which (*of two*).—*Neut.*, **utrum**, *adv.*, whether

uterque, utra-, utrum-, *gen.* **utrīus-**, *adj. and pron.*, both: **medium utriusque**, between the two.—*Plur.*, *of sets:* **utraque castra**, both camps; **utrique**, both parties

utī, *see* **ut**

ūtilis, -e, *adj.*, useful, of use, helpful

ūtilitās, -ātis [*utilis*], *f.*, advantage, benefit, service

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, *dep.*, *intrans.*, *with abl.*, use, exercise, practice, employ, have (*in sense of* enjoy *or* employ), possess

utpote, *adv.*, inasmuch as, seeing that (*see the note on* lviii, 5)

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides

utrobīque, *adv.*, on both sides, in both ways

utrum, *see* **uter**

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife

V, *Roman numeral for* five

Vacalus, -ī, *m.*, the west branch of the Rhine at its mouth

vacātiō, -ōnis [*vaco*], *f.*, freedom (*from something*), exemption, immunity

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, be vacant, be unoccupied, lie waste

vacuus, -a, -um [*cf.* **vaco**], *adj.*, free, vacant, destitute of (**ab** *or abl.*)

vadum, -ī [*cf.* **vado,** go], *n.*, ford.—*Plur.*, ford, shoals, shallows.—**vado,** by fording

vagīna, -ae, *f.*, sheath

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, *dep., intrans.*, roam about, roam, wander

valēns, -entis, *pres. p. of* **valeo**

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, *intrans.*, be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful.—*Often with n. pron. or adj. as acc. of kindred meaning:* **plus valere,** be more powerful; **plurimum valere,** be very strong, have great influence; **quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent,** whatever strength they have is in infantry.—**valēns,** *pres. p. as adj.*, strong

Valerius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

valētūdō, -inis [**valeo**], *f.*, health.—*Also*, ill health, illness

vallēs, -is, *f.*, valley

vāllum, -ī, *n.*, palisade, rampart

Vangionēs, -um, *m. plur.*, a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, diverse

vās, vāsis (*plur.* **vāsa, -ōrum**), *n.*, vessel, jar

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**vastus**], *trans.*, lay waste, devastate, ravage

vāstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; immense, vast

vāticinātiō, -ōnis [**vaticinor,** foretell], *f.*, divination

-ve, *conj., enclitic*, or

vectīgal, -ālis [*cf.* **veho,** carry], *n.*, tribute.—*Plur.*, revenues

vectīgālis, -e [*cf.* **veho,** carry], *adj.*, tributary: **vectigales habent,** make tributary

vehementer [**vehemens,** violent], *adv.*, violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly

vehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, *trans.*, carry, bear.—*Pass.*, be borne, go, ride, sail

vel, *conj.*, or: **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or.—*As adv.*, even

Velānius, -ī, *m.*, a Roman gentile name

Veliocassēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a tribe of western Gaul along the lower Seine

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, *n.*, a town of the Senones

vellus, -eris, *n.*, fleece

vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, curtain, veil; sail

velut, *adv.*, even as, just as: **velut si,** just as if

vēnātiō, -ōnis [**venor,** hunt], *f.*, hunting, the chase.—*Plur.*, hunting, hunting excursions

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [**venum,** sale, **do** (put)], *trans.*, put to sale, sell

Venellī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul

vēnēnātus, -a, -um [**venenum**], *adj.*, poisonous, venomous

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison

Venetī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a coast tribe of western Gaul

Venetia, -ae, *f.*, the territory of the Veneti

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti

venia, -ae, *f.*, favor, pardon

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, *intrans.*, come, go.—*See also* **usus**

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [*freq. of* **venio**], *intrans.*, come often, visit

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind: **vento se dare,** run before the wind

Venusia, -ae, *f.*, a town in southern Italy

Veragrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic people on the upper Rhone

Verbigenus, -ī, *m.*, a canton of the Helvetii

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word: **pluribus verbis,** at great length; **verba dare,** deceive, outwit; **facere verba,** speak

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, a young noble of the Arverni, head of the Gauls in their great war for independence

vereor, -ērī, -itus, *dep.*, *trans. and intrans.*, fear, be afraid, dread.—**veritus,** *p.p. in pres. sense*, fearing

vergō, -ere, *no perf.*, *no p.p.*, *intrans.*, incline, slope

vergobretus, -ī, *m.*, Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Hædui

vērīsimilis, -e [**verus-similis**], *adj.*, probable, likely

veritus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **vereor**

vērō, *adv.*, in truth, in fact, certainly. — *With weakened force*, but, on the other hand, however

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**verto**], *trans.*, turn, deal with. — *Esp., in the pass. as dep.*, engage in, be, fight (*as indicated by the context*)

versus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **verto**

versus [*p.p. of* **verto**], *adv., and prep. with acc.*, towards, in the direction of: **ad (in) . . . versus,** towards

versus, -ūs [**verto**], *m.*, a turning; a verse (*of poetry*)

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, one of the Nervii

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *trans.*, turn: **terga** (turn and flee)

Verucloetius, -ī, *m.*, a noble of the Helvetii

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; right: **re vera,** in truth, really.—*Neut. as noun*, the truth

verūtum, -ī, *n.*, light spear, dart

Vesontiō, -ōnis, *m.*, the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon

vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening

vester, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, your, yours

vēstīgium, -ī, *n.*, footstep, footprint, track. — *Esp.*, **eodem vestigio,** in the same spot

vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, robe, dress

vestītus, -ūs [**vestio,** clothe], *m.*, clothing, garments

veterānus, -a, -um [**vetus**], *adj.*, veteran

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus, *trans.*, forbid

vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, former, of long standing

vēxillum, -ī, *n.*, flag

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, harass, annoy, overrun, ravage

via, -ae, *f.*, road, way, route, march

viātor, -ōris [*via*], *m.*, traveler

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, *plur.*, twenty (*apiece*)

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, twentieth: **secundo et vicesimo,** twenty-second

vicis (*gen.*), *f.*, change, turn: **in vicem,** in turn

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim, sacrifice

victor, -ōris [*vinco*], *m.*, victor.—*Often as adj.*, triumphant, victorious

victōria, -ae [*victor*], *f.*, victory

victus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **vinco**

vīctus, -ūs [*vivo*], *m.*, life; means of living, food

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *trans.*, see, observe, examine, take care.—*In pass.*, be seen; seem, seem best

Vienna, -ae, *f.*, a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne

vigilia, -ae [*vigil*, awake], *f.*, watch. *The Romans divided the night into four watches*

vīgintī, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty

vīmen, -inis, *n.*, twig (*flexible, for weaving*)

vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus, *trans.*, bind, fetter

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *trans. and intrans.*, conquer, defeat, prevail

vīnctus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **vincio**

vinculum, -ī [*vincio*], *n.*, chain: **ex vinculis,** in chains

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, claim, demand; avenge: **in aliquem** (inflict punishment); **Galliam in libertatem** (establish the liberty of Gaul)

vīnea, -ae, *f.*, vine arbor; shed (defense, *for a besieging party*)

vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, abuse: **hospites** (injure)

vir, virī, *m.*, man, husband

vīrēs, *see* **vīs**

virgō, -inis, *f.*, maiden, virgin

virgultum, -ī, *n.*, *only in plur.*, shrubbery, thicket, bushes

Viridomārus, -ī, *m.*, a nobleman of the Hædui

Viridovīx, -īcis, *m.*, a prince of the Venelli

virītim [*vir*], *adv.*, man by man, to each separately

Viromanduī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a Belgic tribe near the Remi

virtūs, -ūtis [*vir*], *f.*, manliness, valor, courage.—*Also*, merit (*generally*), noble conduct, virtue; *plur.*, merits, brave acts

vīs, vīs, *f.*, force, might, violence.—*Esp.*: **vi cogere** (forcibly); **vim facere,** use violence.—*Plur.*, **vīrēs,** strength, force, powers, bodily vigor

vīsus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **video**

vīsus, -ūs, *m.*, sight, vision

vīta, -ae [*cf.* ***vivo***], *f.*, life, the course of life

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, escape, avoid, dodge

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, *intrans.*, live: **lacte** (live on)

vīvus, -a, -um [***vivo***], *adj.*, alive, living

vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely

vōbīs, *see* **tu**

Vocātēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, a people of Aquitania

Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, a king of Noricum

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *trans.*, call by name, call, summon, invite

Vocontiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, a tribe in southeastern Gaul

Volcae, -ārum, *m. plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

Volcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan (*the god of fire and metals*)

volgus, -ī, *n.*, the crowd, the common people. — **volgō,** *abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally, everywhere

volnerātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of* **volnero**

volnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [***volnus***], *trans.*, wound, hurt

volnus, -eris, *n.*, wound

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, *intrans.*, fly

volō, velle, voluī, *no p.p.*, *irr.*, *trans. and intrans.*, wish, be willing, want: **quid sibi vellent, what they** wanted

Volsō, -ōnis, *m.*, *see* **Manlius**

voltus, -ūs, *m.*, look, expression, countenance, face: **voltum fingere,** conceal one's feelings

volucer, -cris, -cre [*cf.* **volo,** fly], *adj.*, winged; *fem. as noun*, bird

voluntās, -ātis [***volo,*** wish], *f.*, willingness, consent, desire, will, approval

voluptās, -ātis [*cf.* ***volo,*** wish], *f.*, pleasure, delight

Volusēnus, -ī, *m.*, a Roman family name. *Esp.*, C. Volusenus, one of Cæsar's officers

Vorēnus, -ī, *m.*, L. Vorenus, a centurion in Cæsar's army

vōs, *see* **tu**

Vosegus, -ī, *m.*, the Vosges (mountains in eastern Gaul)

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *trans. and intrans.*, vow, make a vow

vōx, vōcis [*cf.* ***voco***], *f.*, voice, word, expression, shout. — *Collectively*, cries, words, talk. — *Plur.*, talk, reports

X, *Roman numeral for* ten

Zama, -ae, *f.*, a town in northern Africa, near which Hannibal was defeated by Scipio in 202 B.C.

Zētēs, -ae, *m.*, one of the Argonauts, son of the north wind

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

The numerals refer to *sections* of the Grammar (pp. 305 ff.) and of the Latin Composition (pp. 405 ff.). References preceded by L. C. refer to sections of the Latin Composition.